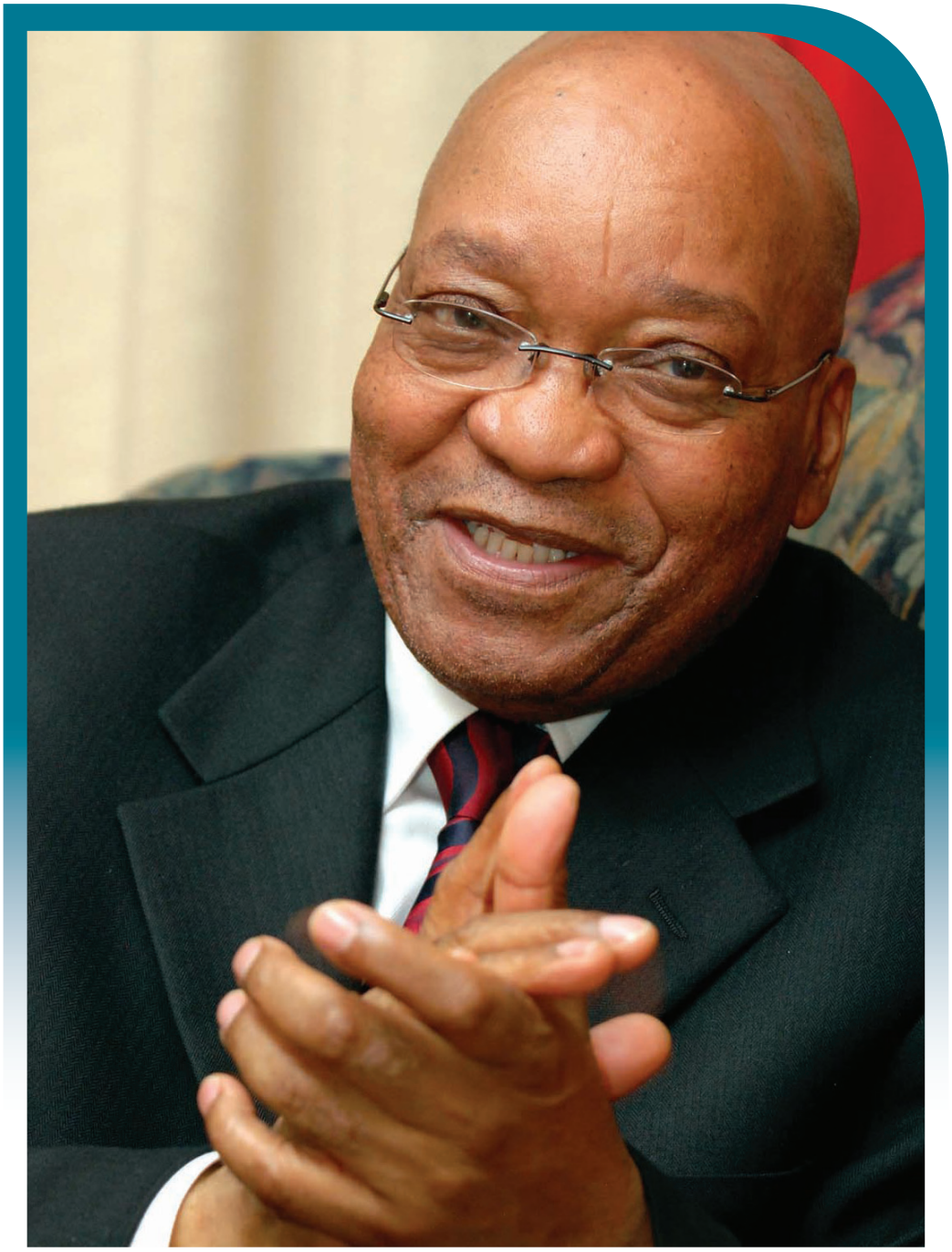
2013/14

Dedicated to the memory
of Madiba
1918 – 2013

Foreword



It is an honour for me, as President of the Republic of South Africa, to present the *South Africa Yearbook 2013/14*.

The *Yearbook* is not just as a reference work but as a record of the strides South Africa made in the political term from 2009 to 2014.

This *Yearbook* documents the tremendous change and progress South Africa has experienced in the past five years as government and the nation focused our attention on the priorities of employment; the fight against crime and corruption; health, education as well as rural development and land reform.

These priorities were spelt out in 2009 as we commenced a political term that also culminated in the celebration of 20 Years of Freedom, and the fifth general election in a democratic South Africa in 2014.

South Africa is a developing democracy and developing economy that faces many challenges, but our resolve to meet these challenges is reinforced by the progress we have already made.

From making sure that just about all children of school-going age are at school, to widening access to antiretroviral treatment for HIV, to providing water, electricity and housing to South Africans, we have reason to be proud.

We can be proud too of the progress made in making it easier for South Africans to start up businesses or for foreign investors to develop a footprint here, and of the role we are playing to create and maintain a better Africa and a better world.

This *Yearbook* documents how, working together, we have ensured that South Africa is a much better place in which to live, work and invest today than it was before 1994, when the liberation struggle ended the dark era of apartheid.

Today, South Africans and the world share not just in what we have created since 1994 or under this administration since 2009, but people at home and abroad share the hope that our future will be even better in the years to come.

We have a great deal to do to reverse the legacy of apartheid and to ensure that we take radical steps to place the economy in the hands of the millions of South Africans who were excluded from economic participation under apartheid.

Building a better future will be inspired by the change we have already effected.

I trust this *Yearbook* will simultaneously be a source of information and inspiration; inspiration that will move users of this publication to become active in building an even better South Africa.

Let's all work together to move South Africa forward.

Jacob Zuma
President of the Republic of South Africa
July 2014

Credits

South Africa Yearbook 2013/14
Twenty-first edition
(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook)*
ISSN 0302-0681

Editors: Elias Tibane and Antonia Vermeulen

Editorial support: Malphia Honwane and Dakalo Takalani.
Support services: Este Koorts and Carel Mojela.

Picture coordinators: Elmond Jiyane, Elizabeth Mpila and Busi Malungwane.
Images supplied by: GCIS; SA Tourism; MediaClub South Africa; Gautrain; Transnet; South African Police Service; SA Tourism.

Design and layout: Rachel Sekhu

Compiled, edited and published by Government Communications (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Telephone: 012 473 0349
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
South Africa Yearbook on Facebook:
www.facebook.com/#!/pages/South-Africa-Yearbook/149867311752264

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by CTP

ISBN 978-0-621-42864-3
ISSN 1022-9515
Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number: 57-40609

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the *South Africa Yearbook*, or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. The information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za).*

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in August 2014.

Index

The index is arranged word-by-word. All Acts and legal documents are listed alphabetically in shortened form under the entry 'Acts'. Names starting with South Africa or South African are listed under SA and for names of Departments see Dept. Acronyms and abbreviations of names are used in the index – for the written out forms of such names, consult the Addendum page 447-465.

//hapo museum (Pretoria) 75
2010 FIFA World Cup 27, 370, 379
4x4 regulations 172

A
Aardklop (Potchefstroom) 67
Abalone 11, 56-58, 320, 393
ABC (Agricultural Business Chamber) 35
ABC (Audit Bureau of Circulations) 90
Absa Museum and Archives, Johannesburg 76-77
Acsa 430
ACT 66
Acts
- Adjustments Appropriation Act 2012 185
- Administration of Estates Act 1965 278
- Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act 1998 412
- Adult Basic Education and Training Act 2000 118
- Advisory Board on Social Development Act 2001 353
- Africa Growth and Opportunity Act 108
- Africa Institute of South Africa Act 2001 340
- African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act 2001 249-250
- Agricultural Credit Act 1966 32
- Agricultural Pests Act 1983 33
- Agricultural Produce Agents Act 1992 33
- Agricultural Product Standards Act 1990 33
- Agricultural Research Act 1990 33
- Air Quality Act 2004 156
- Air Quality Amendment Bill 2013 157
- Air Service Licensing Amendment Act 2008 412
- Allied Health Professions Act 1982 228
- Amendment of Certain Laws Act 2005, 2012 278, 287
- Animal Identification Act (Aida) 2002 47
- Antarctic Treaties Act 1996 156
- Appropriation Act 2012 185
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act 2007 340
- Attorneys Amendment Act 1993 284
- Auditor General Act 1995 328
- Bill of Rights 279
- Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act 2010 220-221
- Black Administration Act 1927 278, 287
- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act 2003 103, 382
- Broadcasting Act 1999 82, 83
- Central Energy Fund Act 1977 136
- Central Energy Fund Act 1977 136
- Child Care Act 1983 354
- Child Justice Act 2008 278, 292
- Children's Act 2005, 2007 278, 291, 353
- Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act 1996 228
- Civil Aviation Act 2009 412
- Coastal Management Act 2008 156
- Community Schemes Ombud Service Act 2011 240
- Companies Act 1973 212, 243
- Competition Amendment Act 2009 100
- Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act 1983 32
- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996 82, 250
- Constitution Seventeenth Amendment Act 278
- Constitutional Court Complementary Act 1995 278
- Consumer Protection Act 2008 103
- Control of Markets in Rural Areas Ordinance 1965 32
- Cooperative Banks Act 2007 185
- Cooperatives Act 1981, 2005 33, 103
- Copyright Act 1978 103
- Correctional Services Act 1998, 2008 295
- Credit Agreements Act 1980 194

Credit Rating Services Act 2012 185
Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Act 2010 314
Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill 2013 278, 314
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Act 2007, 2012 278
Criminal Procedure Act 1977, 2012 279, 295, 314, 315
Cross-Border Transport Amendment Act 2008 412
Cultural Institutions Act 1998 62
Culture Promotion Act 1983 62
Currency and Banking Act 1920 190
Dangerous Weapons Act 1968
Dangerous Weapons Bill 2012 314
Deeds Registries Act 1937 334
Defence Act 2002 321, 328
Dental Technicians Act 1979 228
Development Bank Act 2002 194
Diamond Amendment Act 2005 302
Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act 2001 328
Disaster Management Act 2002 32, 213
Division of Revenue Act 2012 185
Domestic Violence Act 1998 278
Dumping at Sea Control Act 1980 156
Education Laws Amendment Act 2002 2005, 2007 118, 119
Education White Paper on Early Childhood Development 2000 118
Education White Paper on Inclusive Education 2001 171
Electricity Act 1987 136
Electricity Regulation Act 2006 135
Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill 136
Electronic Communications Act 2005 82, 340
Electronic Communications and Transactions Act 2002 82, 115
Employment Equity Act 1998 113
Employment Insurance Act 1996 113
Employment of Educators Act 1998 118
Environment Conservation Act 1989 165
Estate Agents Affairs Act 1976 240
Explosives Act 2003 314
Fertiliser and Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act 1947 32
Film and Publications Act 1996 75
Financial Advisory and Intermediaries Act 2002 195
Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act 2001 196
Financial Intelligence Centre Act 2001 328
Financial Markets Act 2012 185, 195
Financial Services Board Act 1990 196
Firearms Control Act 2000 314
Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act 1972 228
Foreign States Immunities Act 1981 249
Forestry Laws Amendment Act 2005 50
Friendly Societies Act 1956 196
Fund-Raising Act 1978 353
Further Education and Training Colleges Act 2006 128
Gas Act 2001 136
Gas Regulator Levies Act 2002 136
General and FET Quality Assurance Act 2001 119, 128
Genetically Modified Organisms Act 1997 32
Geoscience Act 1993, 2010 302, 340
Hazardous Substances Act 1973 147, 228
Health Professions Act 1974 228
Heraldry Act 1962 62
Higher Education Act 1997, 2008 128
Housing Act 1997 240
Human Sciences Research Council Act 2008 340
Human Tissue Act 1983 228
Immigration Act 2002 309, 311, 582
Immigration Amendment Act 2004, 2011 309, 311
Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act 2002 429
Immigration Act 2002 220-221
Independent Broadcasting Authority Act 1993 91
Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act 2000 82
Independent Electoral Commission Act 1996 206
Independent Systems and Market Operator Bill 136
Insolvency Act 1936 278
Inspection of Financial Institutions Act 1998 196
Integrated Coastal Management Act 2008 156
Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act 1996 103
Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development Act 2008 340
Intelligence Services Act 2002, 2005 328
Intelligence Services Oversight Act 1994 328
Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act 2005 207
International Trade Administration Act, 2002 103
Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act 2001 278
Judicial Matters Amendment Act 2012 278
Judicial Service Commission Act 1994 278
Judicial Service Commission Amendment Act 1994 278
Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act 2008 286
Labour Relations Act 1995 113
Legal Aid Act 1969 278
Legal Deposit Act 1997 62, 78
Legal Practice Bill 278
Legal Succession to the South African Transport Service Amendment Act 2008 412
Liquor Act 2003 103
Livestock Brands Act 1962 32
Livestock Improvement Act 1977 33
Local Government
Municipal Demarcation Act 1998 207
Municipal Finance Management Act 2003 185, 207
Municipal Property Rates Act 2004, 2009 207
Municipal Structures Act 1998 207
Municipal Systems Act 2000, 2011 207
Long-Term Insurance Act 1998 196
Lotteries Act 1997 190
Magistrates' Act 1993 278
Magistrates' Courts Act 1944, 1993 240, 278
Maintenance Act 1998 278
Marine Living Resources Act 1998 33, 156
Meat Safety Act 2000 32
Medical Research Council Act 1991 228
Medical Schemes Act 1998 227
Medicines and Related Substances Act 1965 228
Mental Healthcare Act 2002 228, 353
Military Veterans Act 2011 321
Military Veterans Affairs Act 1999 321
Mine Health and Safety Act 1996 302
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act 2002 136, 301
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Amend ment Bill 302
National Advisory Council on Innovation Act 1997 340
National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act 1996 62
National Arts Council of South Africa Act 1997 62
National Conventional Arms Control Act 2002 321
National Council for Library and Information Services Act 2001 62
National Credit Act 2005 194
National Development Agency Act 1998 353
National Education Policy Act 1996 118
National Energy Act 2008 135
National Energy Regulator Act 2004 136
National Environmental Management Act 1998, 1999, 2003, 2004, 2008 136, 156, 432
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act 2004 156
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Amend ment Bill 2013 157
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 2004 156, 157
National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act 2008 156
National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Bill 157
National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 2003, 2004, 2009 156

National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Bill 2013 157
National Environmental Management: Waste Act 2008 156
National Environmental Management: Waste Amend ment Bill 2013 157
National Environment Laws Amendment Act 2008, 2009 156
National Film and Video Foundation Act 1997 61
National Forests Act 1998 33, 50
National Gambling Act 1996 190
National Health Act 2003, 2013 227, 228
National Health Laboratory Service Act 2000 228
National Heritage Council Act 1999 61
National Heritage Resources Act 1999 61
National House of Traditional Leaders Act 1997, 2009 207, 213
National Key Points Act 1980 321
National Land Transport Act 2009 412
National Library of South Africa Act 1998 62
National Nuclear Regulator Act 1999 136
National Ports Act 2005 415
National Prosecuting Authority Act 1998 278
National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act 2008 136
National Research Foundation Act 1998 340
National Road Traffic Amendment Act 2008 412
National Sport and Recreation Act 1998, 2007 368
National Strategic Intelligence Act 1994 328
National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act 1999 128
National Traditional Affairs Bill 207
National Veld and Forest Fire Act 1998, 2001 33, 50
National Water Act 1998 432
National Welfare Act 1978 353
Native's Land Act 1913 337
Natural Scientific Professions Act 2003 340
Nedlac Act 1994 113
New Forests Act 1998 54
NQF Act 2008 119
Nuclear Energy Act 1999 136
Nursing Act 2005 228
Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act 1973 228
Occupational Health and Safety Act 1993 111, 113
Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 1993 114
Older Persons Act 2006 353
Onderstepoort Biological Products Incorporation Act 1999 33
Organised Crime Act 1998 278
Organised Local Government Act 1997 208, 212
Pan South African Language Board Act 1995 62
Patents Act 1978 103
Pension Funds Act 1956 196
Perishable Products Export Control Act 1983 33
Petroleum Pipelines Act 2003 136
Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act 2004 136
Petroleum Products Act 1977 135
Pharmacy Act 1974 228
Plant Breeders' Rights Act 1976 32
Plant Breeders' Rights Amendment Bill 32
Plant Improvement Act 1976 33
Postal Services Act 1998 82
Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act 2000 103
Precious Metals Act 2005 302
Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act 1992 353
Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act 2008 353
Prevention of Organised Crime Act 1998 278
Prince Edward Islands Act 1948, 156
Probation Services Act 1991 353
Problem Animals Control Ordinance 1978 32
Promotion of Access to Information Act 2000 62, 278
Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 2000 278
Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimi nation Act 2000 278
Protection of State Information Bill 2011 328
Public Audit Act 2004 190
Public Finance Management Act 1999 82, 278, 368
Public Protector Act 1994 278
Public Service Act 1994 82, 215, 278, 368
Publicly Financed Research and Development Act 2008 340
Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Rev enue Laws Act 1012 185
Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act 1963 294
Refugee Amendment Act 2011 221
Refugees Act 1998 220-221
Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act 1998 328
Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provi sion of Communication-Related Information Act 2002 328
Rental Housing Act 1999, 2007 240
Restitution of Land Rights Act 1994 332
Right of Appearance in Courts Act 1995 284
Road Accident Fund Amendment Act 2005 412
Rules Board for Courts of Law Act 1985 278
SA Boxing Act 2001 368
SA Citizenship Act 1995, 2010 220-221
SA Companies Act 1973, 212
SA Council for Educators Act 2000 123
SA Geographical Names Council Act 1988 62
SA Human Rights Commission Act 1994 278
SA Institute for Drug-Free Sport Act 1997 368
SA Judicial Education Institute Act 2008 278, 284
SA Law Reform Commission Act 1973 278
SA Library for the Blind Act 1998 62
SA Medical Research Council Act 1991 228
SA National Space Agency Act 2008 340
SA Police Service Act 1995 314
SA Post Office Act 2011 82
SA Postbank Limited Act 2010 82
SA Qualifications Authority Act (Saqa) 1995 128
SA Schools Act 1996 118
SA Social Security Agency Act 2004 353
SA Transport Service Amendment Act 2008 412
SA Weather Services Act 2001 156
Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act 2010 368
SAPS Act 1995, 2012 314, 328
Science and Technology Laws Act, 2014 340
Scientific Research Council Act 1988 340
Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act 1973 156
Sea Fishery Act 1988 33, 156
Sea Shores Act 1935 156
Second-hand Goods Act 2009 316
Sectional Titles Act 1986 491
Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act 2011 239
Securities Services Act 2004 196
Sentech Act 1996 82
Sheriffs Amendment Act 2012 278
Short-Term Insurance Act 1990 196
Skills Development Act 1998 113
Small Business Development Act, 1981 103
Small Claims Court Act 1984 278
Social Assistance Act 2008, 2010 354
Social Housing Act 2008 240, 248
Social Service Professions Act 1978 354
Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act 1996 278
State Attorney Act 1957 278
Sterilisation Act 1998 228
Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act 1970 33
Superior Courts Act 278
Supervision of the Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act 1996 196
Supervision of the Road Accident Fund Act 1993 196
Supreme Court Act 1959 278
Tax Administration Act 2011 187
Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act 2012 185
Taxation Laws Amendment Act 2012 185

Technology Innovation Act 2008 340
Tobacco Products Control Act 1993 228
Tourism Act 1993 382
Tourism Bill 2012 382
Trade Marks Act 1993 103
Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 2003 207, 214
Unemployment Insurance Act 1996 113
Use of Official Languages Bill 62
Usury Act 1968 194
Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act 1962 32
Water Research Act 1971 432
Water Services Act 1997 432
White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa 2000 156
White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage 62
White Paper on Climate Change 112
White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity 1997 156
White Paper on Defence 1996 321
White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa 118
White Paper on Energy Policy 1998 135
White Paper on Environmental Management 1998 156
White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Manage ment 2000 156
White Paper on Intelligence 1994 328
White Paper on Local Government 1998 207
White Paper on National Climate Change Response 2011 156
White Paper on Post-School Education and Training 131
White Paper on Safety and Security 315
White Paper on Sport and Recreation 2011 368
White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development 2002 141
Witness Protection Act 1998 278
Women Empowerment and Gender Equality Bill 354
World Heritage Convention Act 1999 156
Addo Elephant National Park 162, 400
ADPA 305
advertising 92
Advisory Board on Social Development 356
Advisory Committee on Financial Service Providers 195
Afasa 35
Afcon 2013 372
Afis 299
Africa Institute of South Africa 342
African Botanic Gardens Network 161
African plateau 2
African Renaissance 14, 26, 249, 250
African Renaissance Fund 259
Afrikaans Language Museum (Paarl) 75
AFU 281
Aggeneys mine 308
Agis 44
agribusiness 34-35, 194
Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan 43
Agricultural Drought Management Plan 43
agriculture
see also Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Eastern Cape 3-4
Free State 4
Gauteng 6
KwaZulu-Natal 7
Limpopo 8
Mpumalanga 8
North West 10
Northern Cape 9
Western Cape 11
AgriSA 35
Agritourism 404
AGSA 190
Agulhas current 1, 2, 4, 145
Agulhas National Park 162, 175, 395
AHPCSA 230
Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier National Park 9, 162, 163, 397
AIDS see HIV/AIDS
AIP 90, 91
Air Force Museum 76
air-quality management 171
Airlift Strategy 422
airlines 423
airports 7, 8, 9,11, 107, 110, 246, 392, 413 422
Alexander Bay 397
Alexkor 109
Algoa Bay 400
All-Africa Games 368
Amatola mountain region 400-401
AMP 305
ANA 119-120
ANC 19, 21-29
ANC Youth League 21
Andi 351
Anglo American Corporation of South Africa 6, 269, 350
Anglo-Boer/South African War, 1899-1902 18-19
Antarctic Treaty 265
Ant-corruption bureau 216
anti-retrovirals 233
Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action 358
apartheid 21-25
Apartheid Museum (Johannesburg) 77, 406
APRM 251
aquaculture 58, 172
aquariums 167
ARC 35-36, 344
ArcelorMittal 346
archery 369, 370
architecture 71, 76, 390, 391, 393, 407
archives 77-78
arms control 250
Armscor 327
Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign 427-428
art galleries 70, 392, 402
arts
and culture see Dept of Arts and Culture
institutions 66
Arts Alive International Festival 67, 70
ArtsCape (Cape Town) 62, 66
ARV 225, 226, 227, 233, 234, 236, 352
ASA 92
ASELPH 235-236
Asidi 126-127
ASSAf 342
astronomy 28, 340, 348, 349
asylum seekers 224
ATAF 189
athletics 373
Atlantic Ocean 11, 58, 325, 395
ATNS 413-414
AU 250-251
AUC 256
AUPSC 250
PCRD 251, 259
regional economic communities 251
Standby Force 323
Audio-Visual Remand System 293
Augrabies Falls National Park 9, 162, 175, 397
AUPSC 250
automotives 106
AVMP 335
Awesome Africa Music Festival 68
AWHF 80

B

Bafana Bafana 367, 378
Bakone Malapa Museum (Polokwane) 8, 77, 402
banking industry 193-194
Barberton mountain land 310
Basa (Business and Arts South Africa) 66

Batho Pele ('People First') 218-219
battlefields 77, 410
Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area 162, 402
BBBEE 55, 105, 244, 384
  Codes of Good Practice 104, 105, 382
  National Empowerment Fund 103, 104
BBSDP 105-106
beaches 384
BEE 105
  forestry 55
  human settlements 245
  mineral resources 302, 310
  tourism 384
  trade and industry 104-105
  transport 414
beef cattle farming 40
beekeeping 52
Benguela Current 176, 393
BER 346
biking 373-374
biodiversity/biological diversity 173-174
  aquatic 348
  biomes 174-176
Biodiversity biomes 174-176
  multilateral agreements (biodiversity-related) 174
  SA environmental observation network (Saeon) 348
biofuel 144
bioregions 159
biosafety 174, 176
biosphere reserves 163-164
Blind SA 79, 363
Bloemfontein 4, 398-399
Blood River/Ncome battlefield 410
Blue Drop Programme 439
Blue Flag 384
Blyde River Canyon 404-405
BMCC 91
BNC 256, 257, 259, 261, 269, 272, 274
Bohlabela district 403
Bontebok National Park 396
Bophirima District 404
border
  posts 189
  safeguarding 323
  security 318
botanical gardens 161-162
Botshabelo historical village 405
boxing 369, 375
Brand South Africa 206
Breaking New Ground Strategy 243, 246
breeding centres 167-168
Brics trade alliance 254
British colonial era 14-17
Broadband Infraco 85, 110
broadband infrastructure development 85
Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa 91
BRT system 425-426
BSA 375
Budget Forum 212
Bureau of Heraldry 66
Bushveld Complex and escarpment 310
Business Against Crime 316, 322
Business Partners Limited 104
business process services 106-107
Business South Africa 114

C

cabinet ministers 204
cadastral services 334
Cadastral surveys management 334, 335
Call of South Africa 63
canoeing 375
Cape Agulhas 1, 395
Cape Argus Cycle Tour 374, 389
Cape Floral Kingdom 174
Cape Floristic Region 11
Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site 11
Cape Metropole tourism 390
Cape Peninsula 311
Cape Peninsula University of Technology 344, 425
Cape Town 11, 12, 172, 211, 390, 391
Cape Town City Ballet 70
Cape Town International Jazz Festival 67, 68, 390
Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve 163
Cape winelands
  tourism 390-391
Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve 163
Capricorn district
  tourism 402
CAPS 120
Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety 174, 176
CASP 35
Castle Control Board 327
cattle farming 40
CBD 162, 173
CBE 112
CBRTA 414
CC 285
CCMA 1133
CCOD 229
CDP 160
CDWs 216
Cederberg Wilderness Area 394
CEF 139-140
CellC 87, 363
CEM 122
census 28
Central District (North West)
  tourism 403
Central Drug Authority Board 358
Central Karoo
  tourism 393
Central University of Technology (Free State) 71
CF 114
CGE 202, 362
CGS 304-305, 345
Chamber of Mines 303-304
Champion Tree Project 52-53
CHE 128
chemicals
  management 170
  waste management 170
chess 379
child
  abuse 282
  headed families/households 354, 358, 365
  health 226, 364
  justice 291
  pornography 75, 87, 355
  protection 282, 316, 319, 354, 362
  support grants 353, 357, 359, 361
Childline South Africa 362
China 10, 102, 198, 253, 260, 261, 381
CHP 246
Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital 236
CIDB 112
CIS 195
Cites 177-178
citizenship 221
citrus 38-39
civil aviation 413-414, 416, 422, 430
climate change 43, 171
Climate Change Programme 43
clothing and textiles 12, 106
CLPA Report 362
CMAs 435, 436
coal 143, 308
  energy resource 308
  reserves 9, 143
  underground gassification 152
coastal
  forest 408, 409

management 172-173
patrol 424
research 347-348
coastline 1
protecting 169
Code of Advertising Practice 92
Coega IDZ 4, 139, 146, 426, 427
CoEs 350, 352
coffee 3, 8
Collect-a- Can 171
collective bargaining 123, 261
commercial
crime 319
forests 54-55
radio 89
Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities 202, 283
Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims 214
Commonwealth 21, 26, 255
communications see Dept of Communications
community
courts 287-288
development 149, 151, 203, 216, 325, 331, 360, 365
policing 316
radio 89
television 89
Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases 229
Competition Appeals Court 100
Competition Commission 100
Competition Tribunal 286
Comrades ultra-marathon 377, 378, 389, 408
Comsec 329
conservation
aquariums and oceanariums 167
areas 9, 162, 163, 397
biodiversity 174-176
biosphere reserves 163-164
botanical gardens 161-162
breeding centres 167
habitat- and wildlife management areas 165
national parks 162-163, 387, 389
protected areas 11, 54, 64, 158, 162, 164-166, 175, 179
protected land and seascapes 165
scientific reserves 162
snake and reptile parks 167-168
TFCAs 163
wetlands 165
world heritage sites 1, 164, 383, 389
zoological gardens 166-167
consolidation subsidies 242
Constitution 201-202
preamble 201
fundamental rights 201-202
funding provisions 201
Constitutional Court 285
Constitutional Court Library 79
Constitutional development
see Dept of Justice and Constitutional Development
consumer protection 103, 195
Continental Capacity Development Programme 218
control
of sojourn 222-223
of travellers 222
Convention on Migratory Species 174, 176
Cooperative Banks Development Agency 194
cooperative governance
see Dept of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
copper 309
Correctional Services
see Dept of Correctional Services
Correctional Supervision and Parole Board 296
Corruption 186, 207, 211, 216, 220, 251, 280, 314, 319, 359
Cosmos Country 405
cotton 37
Council for Medical Schemes 229-230
court services 284
court system see Judicial system
CPA 336-337
CPSI 217
Cradle of Humankind 311
crafts 71-72
CRDP 125, 331, 332, 334, 335-336, 338
cricket 375
crime
intelligence 313, 320
investigation 319
organized 319-320
prevention 315, 361
Crime Stop 319
criminal jurisdiction 288
criminal records 320
CRL Commission 283
CRLR 335
cross-border transport 414
CRU Programme 247
CSD 177
CSIR 342-343
cultural
tourism 388
villages 388, 403
Cultural Heartland (Mpumalanga) 405
customs duty 188
CWP 212
cycling 373-374

D

dairy farming 39-40
Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme 441-442
dams and water schemes 438
dance 70, 80, 406
Dassen Island 162, 163
DBSA 194
De Beers 6, 17, 351
De Beers Museum (Kimberley) 76
De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre 167,
De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre 403
De Wildt Vulture Unit 167
deaf, support for 364
debt management 184
Decade of Action for Road Safety 428
deceased estates 290-293
deeds registration 334-335
Defence see Dept of Defence and Military Veterans
Defence Force Service Commission 326
Defiance Campaign 22, 24
Denel 110, 327
deportation 224
Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries 31-60
Agriculture 31-49
advisory services 46
analytical services 43
budget and funding 33-34
cooperation and trade 48-49
credit and assistance 34
economy 33
extension services 46
farm income 34
genetically modified organisms (GMOs) 44
import and export 42-43
legislation and frameworks 32-33
prices and income 33-34
products 36-42
programmes, projects and initiatives 42-47
regulation services 47-48
regulatory services 42
resource management 43-44
risk management 43
role players 34-36
Safcol
soil degradation 44

training and research 46-47
veterinary services 35
weather and climate 43
Fisheries 55-60
aquaculture 58
industry and products 56
legislation and policies 56-57
recreational fishing 58-59
resource management 57-58
subsistence fishing 58
Forestry 49-56
afforestation 49, 55
BBBEE Charter 55
community forestry 55
forest management 53
industry and exports 50
legislation 50
participatory forestry 51-51
plantation yields 55
role players 50-51
research and training 51
resources 53-54
socio-economic reform 55
Dept of Arts and Culture 61-80
architecture 71
archives 77
arts festivals 67, 68
arts institutions 66
community art centres 66
crafts 71-72
cultural industries 69
cultural tourism 67-68
dance 70
design 72
education and training 73, 78
festivals 67-69
funding 62
film 73-74
Film and Publication Board (FPB) 74-75
heraldry 66
indigenous music and oral history 80
initiatives 67
international relations 79-80
languages 64
legislation and policies 61-62
library and information services 77-79
literary awards 73
literature 72-73
museums 75-77
music awards 68-70
national anthem 63
national coat of arms 63
national flag 62-63
national orders 63-65
national symbols 62,65
natural history museums 76
photography 71
programmes, projects and initiatives 67
rock art 70-71
role players 64
theatre 68
visual arts 70
Dept of Basic Education 118-127
access to free and quality basic education 125
Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025 119-120
adult education and training 131
budget and funding 121
CAPS 120-121
ECD 125
Eco-Schools programme 124
education infrastructure 126
educational portal 124-125
educator development 125-126
infrastructure 126
learner health 127
learners with special needs 125
learning and teaching support material 124
legislation and policies 118-119
no-fee schools 117, 119, 125
NSNP 127
nutrition programme 121, 127
planning and delivery 123
programs and projects 124-128
provincial departments of education 121-122
satellite broadcasting 124
school infrastructure 121, 126
school safety 127
school sport 127
role players/statutory bodies 121-124
school enrichment programmes 127
unions 123-124
Dept of Communications 81-93
advertising 92
advertising awards 92
broadband access 86-87
broadcasting digital migration 85
community radio 89
community television 89
cybercrime and cybersecurity 87
funding and expenditure 82
international relations 92-93
internet 86
job creation 86
journalism awards 92
legislation 82
magazines 90
media 88-90
media awards 92
media organisations and roleplayers 90-91
mobile communications 87-88
news agencies 91-92
newspapers 90-91
online media 90
philatelic services 88
policy and strategies 82
postal sector 88
Postbank 88
Postnet 88
print 90
programs and initiatives 85
radio 89
role players 82-85
rural development strategy 85-86
satellite broadcasting 90
social media 87
television 89
Telkom 87-88
Dept of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs 206-214
budget 207
disaster management 213
houses of traditional leaders 213-214
legislation and policies 207
local government 208-213
municipalities 208-209
provincial government 207-208, 209
traditional affairs 213
traditional leadership 213
Dept of Correctional Services 294-300
budget 295
detention 299-300
electronic monitoring 299
fingerprint system 299
improving service delivery 296
inmate statistics 299
learnership programme 298
legislation and policies 295
mother and baby units 297
offender labour 298-299
operational structure of facilities 299
overcrowding 293, 296, 300

parole boards 296, 299
programmes and projects 296-298
remand detention 299-300
role players 295-296
service delivery 296
social reintegration 300
victor-offender dialogue 298
Dept of Defence and Military Veterans 321-327
border safeguarding 323
budget and funding 322-323
Chief of the SANDF 324
Defence Reserve Force 324
Defence Secretariat 323
defence strategy 321
force employment, preparation 322
functions 323
legislation and policies 321
maritime safety and security 325
military strategy 321-322
military veterans 326
organisational structure 323-326
peace operations 323
role players 326-327
Secretary for Defence 323-324
skills development 322, 324, 327
Dept of Economic Development 99-102
budget and funding 100
Competition policy 100
Green economy 101-102
international cooperation 102
legislation and policies 100
new growth plan 101
programmes and projects 100-101
role players 103-105
Dept of Energy 135-154
budget and funding 137-138
building standards 137
carbon capture and storage 150
climate change strategy 153
cross-border gas trade 154
efficiency 136-137
energy efficiency strategy 136-137
global environment 153-154
hybrid energy systems 146-147
Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch 141
import and export of fuel products 154
international cooperation 152-153
legislation and policies 135-136
LPG strategy 137
New Build Programme 149-150
nuclear 138, 140, 147
oil and gas 139, 140, 142
projects, programmes and initiatives 158-161
renewable and alternative fuels 143-144
renewable energy 147, 151
resources 141-147
role players 138-140
sustainable development 153
Dept of Environmental Affairs 155-180
air-quality management 171
biodiversity 173
biodiversity biomes 174-176
biodiversity guideline 157-158
biodiversity-related multilateral agreements 174
breeding centres 167
budget and funding 155-156
environmental impact management 171-173
environmental resources 161-168
habitat and wildlife management areas 165
international cooperation 176-179
job creation 178-179
legislation and policies 156-158
managing environmental resources 168-171
mining guideline 157-158
private-sector involvement in conservation 168
protected areas 162
protected land and seascapes 165
role players 160-161
scientific reserves 162
sustainable development 178
sustainable-use areas 165
urban environmental management 179
waste management strategy 170
wetlands 165
wilderness areas 162
Dept of Finance see National Treasury
Dept of Foreign Affairs see Dept of International Relations and Cooperation
Dept of Health 225-237
budget and funding 229
child health 226
communicable and non-communicable diseases 234
facilities 232
healthcare system 227
human resources 235
immunisation 225, 226, 233
infrastructure 236
legislation and policies 227-228
life expectancy 226
managing diseases 234-235
maternal health 226
medical schemes 229, 232
programs and projects 232-235
re-engineering primary health care 232-233
research and development 236
resources 231
role players 229-231
women's health 226-227
Dept of Higher Education and Training 127-134
budget and funding 131-132
further education and training 130
human resource development 133
legislation and policies 128
libraries in higher education 134
NSA 134
NSF 134
NSFAS 134
partnerships 128, 134
policy framework 131
programmes and projects 132
resources 129
role players 132-134
skills development 128-129
work integrated learning 133
Dept of Home Affairs 220-224
asylumseekers 224
budget 220
citizenship 221
control of sojourn 222
control of travellers 222
immigration 221-222
legislation and policies 220-221
permanent residence 223
population register 221
removal of undesirable persons 224
role players 224
temporary residence 223
visas 222
Dept of Housing see Dept of Human Settlements
Dept of Human Settlements 239-248
budget 242
emergency housing 247
finance institutions 243
housing institutions 244
housing subsidies 242
international relations 248
legislation and policies 239-240
programmes and projects 246-248
rapid housing 241-242
rental housing for the poor 247
resources 245-246
role players 244-245

stakeholder management 244
subsidies 242-243
sustainable human settlements 246
urban development 241
youth build 244
Dept of International Relations and Cooperation 249-275
Africa 255-260
African Union 250
Americas 267-268
Asia and Middle East 260-261
Australasia and Pacific Islands 265
BRICS trade alliance 254
budget and funding 250
Central Africa 258-259
Central Asia 262-263
Commonwealth 255
disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control 250
East Asia 261
Eastern Europe 275
Europe 271-273
foreign policy 250
G20 254
IBSA trade alliance 255
Indian Ocean islands 258
international relations 255-275
IOR-ARC 255
Latin America and the Caribbean 268-270
legislation 249- 250
Mediterranean Europe 274
Middle East 265-267
NAM 255
Nepad 251
Nordic countries 273-274
North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa 259-260
peacekeeping operations 323
role players 250-275
Russian Federation 275
SADC 251-252
South Asia 263
South-East Asia 263-265
southern Africa 255-259
UK and Ireland 270-271
United Nations 252-253
WHO 254
Dept of Justice and Constitutional Development 277-294
budget and funding 279
case management 292-293
court performance 292
court services 284
domestic violence 289
human rights 279
human trafficking 289-290
Integrated Justice System 293
international relations 293-294
judicial system 285
legal practitioners 284-285
legislation and policies 278-279
legislative development 290
litigation services 290
maintenance 289
Office of the Family Advocate 291
remand system 293
restorative justice 292
role players 279-294
transformation of state legal services 279
Dept of Labour 112-115
child labour 113
dispute resolution 113
job fairs 114
labour policy and industrial relations 113
legislation and policy 113
programmes and projects 114-115
role players 113-115
UIF 113
Dept of Mineral Resources 301-311
acid mine drainage 307-308
BEE 302
beneficiation strategy 302
budget and funding 302-303
geology 310-311
health and safety 306
illegal mining 306
job creation 307
legislation and policies 301-302
licencing 306
mining industry 303, 305, 306
projects and initiatives 305-308
regulation 309
rehabilitation of mines 307
resources 308-309
role players 303-305
stability in mining sector 306
sustainable development 307
Dept of Police 313-321
air wing 318
border security 318
borderline control 318
budget 315
commercial crime 319
community policing 316
crime intelligence 320
crime prevention 315
criminal records 320
detective services 318-319
DPCI 316, 317319, 320
emergency response services 317
firearms and liquor control 316
forensic sciences 320
functions 323
goals 314
international assistance 318
JCPS 289, 291, 293, 295, 314, 317
legislation 314
mobile operations 318
operational response services 317-318
organised crime 319
partnership policing 316
protection and security services 320-321
Railway Police 317
reservists 316-317
SAPS 313
specialised investigations 319
strategic planning 314
training 313, 316
victims 216
VIP Protection Services 320
visible policing 315
Dept of Public Enterprises 108-111
budget and funding 108-109
role players 109-111
Dept of Public Service and Administration 215-219
anti-corruption 216
legislation and policies 216
programmes and projects 218-219
role players 215-218
Dept of Public Works 111-112, 219-210
budget 220
Green Buildings Framework 112
legislation and policies 111
programmes and projects 112
role players 112
Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform 331-338
budget and funding 333
cadastral services 334
cadastral surveys 334
deeds registration 334-335
geospatial services 334
land reform 337-338
legislation and policies 332-333
mapping 334
National Reference Group 333-334
programmes and projects 335-337

recapitalisation and development 338
role players 333-335
Dept of Science and Technology 339-352
budget and funding 342
human-capital development 351
ICT 349-350
IKS 350
international cooperation 351
legislation 340
nanotechnology strategy 341-342
national research facilities 348
natural resource development 351
policy and strategies 340-341
private sector involvement 350-351
programmes and projects 348-352
research and development strategy 341
research, development and innovation 348
role players 342-348
space science and technology 348-349
Ten-Year Innovation Plan 341
Dept of Social Development 353-365
budget 353
care and support partnerships 361
childcare legislation 354
Childline South Africa 362
children and youth 362
community development 365
crime prevention 361
deaf support 364
HIV and Aids 360-361
job creation 360
legislation and frameworks 353-354
NPOs 355
older people 364
people with disabilities 362-363
poverty alleviation 358-359
programs and projects 357-361
protecting vulnerable groups 282
recruitment and retention of social workers 365
relief boards 357
role players 354-357
scholarships 365
social assistance 356
social security 359-360
training and skills development 365
VEP 361
welfare services 353, 362
youth development 360
Dept of Sport and Recreation 367-379
achievements 373-379
awards 372
budgeting and funding 368
indigenous games 372
legislation and policies 368
major events 372-373
programmes and projects 370-372
role players 368-370
school sport programme 371
sport federations 369-370
youth development 370-371
Dept of State Security 327-329
Comsec 329
Domestic Branch 328
Foreign Branch 328-329
Intelligence Academy 329
legislation and policies 328
National Communications 329
Office for Interception Centre (OIC) 329
vetting 329
Dept of Tourism 381-410
adventure tourism 388
awards 386
budget and funding 382
business tourism 388
cruise tourism 388
cultural tourism 388
domestic tourism 387
excellence requirements 385
guidelines for international tourists 386-387
international tourism 386-387
legislation and policies 382
medical tourism 388-389
Meetings Africa 383-384
nature-based tourism 389
niche tourism markets 387-389
programmes and projects 384-386
regional tourism 389-410
role players 382-384
rural tourism 389
sports tourism 389
strategy 384-385
tourist guiding 387
township tourism 389
wine tourism 389
Dept of Trade and Industry 102-108
automotives 106
BBBEE 105
BBSDP 105
black economic empowerment 105
broadening participation 107
budget and funding 103
business process services 106
clothing and textiles 106
green industries 107
industrial development 106
infrastructure plan 106
international cooperation 108
international trade 103
IPAP 106
legislation and policies 103
outsourcing and offshoring 108
programmes and projects 105-108
resources 105
role players 103-105
SOEs 109
special economic zones 107
technology support 105
trade investments and exports 108
Dept of Transport 411-430
airlift strategy 422
Arrive Alive 427-428
civil aviation 413-414, 416, 422, 430
BEE 414
budget 411-412
freight transport 423-425
infrastructure development 426-427
legislation 412
maritime affairs 424-425
non-toll projects 420
passenger rail safety 428-429
programs and projects 419-420
public transport 419, 425
public transport strategy 419
rapid public transport network 419
resources 421-423
road infrastructure 419, 420, 421
role players 412-419
rural transport 420
rural transport strategy 422
safety of travellers 427-430
scholar transport 420
search and rescue services 429-430
Dept of Water Affairs 431-446
budget and funding 434-435
education and awareness 445
legislation 431-432
local government support approach 443
managing and developing water resources 439
managing water quality and waste water 439
monitoring programmes 443-444
policies and strategies 432-433
programmes and initiatives 439-445

regional and international cooperation and initiatives 445
resources 436-438
role players 435-436
water and sanitation 433, 434, 436, 441
Water-resource management 444
youth development 445
Dept of Women, Children and People with Disabilities 354-355
deputy ministers 204
Deputy President 29, 202, 205
desalination strategy 434
Desert Biome 176
desertification 173
Design Indaba Conference and Expo 2013 72
detective services 318-319
diamond(s) 309
fields 311
tourism 396
Diepkloof Farm Museum (Heidelberg) 77
disarmament 250
disaster management 213
Discount Benefit Scheme 243
dispute resolution 113, 196, 287, 292
dividend-withholding tax 188
Ditsong Museum 76
DNA for CDM 151
domestic
capital market bonds 196-197
expenditure 97
output 96, 99
violence 282, 286, 289, 291, 299, 316
Drakensberg
escarpment 310
tourism 410
drought management 43
droughts 43, 437
drug
abuse 361
eradication 315-316
Durban
tourism 408
Durban-Gauteng Freight Corridor 415
Durban Institute of Technology 7, 129, 425
Durban Local History Museum 76
Durban Museum of Natural History 76
Duzi canoe marathon 408

E

e-Cadastre 333, 335
early colonial period 14
early inhabitants 13
Early Warning System 43, 104, 170, 173
East Coast 7, 56, 67
East Griqualand
tourism 408-409
East London 17, 402, 426
East London Museum 76
Eastern Cape 3
agriculture, fisheries and forestry 3-4
industry 4
tourism 400-402
Eastern District (North West) 403-404
ECD 125, 358
Eco-Schools programme 124
Economic Development Department
see Dept of Economic Development
Economic Sectors and Employment Cluster 203
economy 95-116
see also Department of Economic Development
domestic expenditure 97-98
domestic output 96-97
economic indicators 96-99
employment 98-99
exchange rates 99
price inflation 99
ecosystems 56, 158, 164, 172, 173, 176, 347, 348, 409, 435, 437, 438, 444
ecotourism 41, 162, 402
Edoardo Villa Museum (Pretoria) 70
education
see Dept of Basic Education; Dept of Higher Education and Training
EEZ 169
eFiling 189
EIA regulations 171, 172
EIAMS 172
EIPWP 112, 179, 216, 219-220, 125, 155, 358
elections 206
Electoral Court 285, 286, 291
electricity 143
demand 102, 140, 143, 146
Elephant Coast 409
ELRC 123
emergency
housing 247
medical care 282
response services 317
employment 98-99
equity 287, 363
eNaTIS 419-420
energy see Dept of Energy
Engelenburg House Art Collection (Pretoria) 75
environment see Dept of Environmental Affairs
environmental
affairs see Dept of Environmental Affairs
impact management 171, 172
resources 161-162, 168
EPWP 112, 219, 358
equality courts 287
erosion 173
Eskom 110, 140, 346
estate duty 186
e.tv 89-90
EU 271
EU-AU Strategic Partnership 251
exchange
control 198-199
rates 198
excise duty 187

F

Fabi 55
FAO 55
farm resident subsidies 243
farming see Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
FCS units 282
ferrous metals 309
festivals 67-68, 73-74
FET 130-131
FFC 185-186
FIC 185
FIFA 2010 World Cup see 2010 FIFA World Cup
film festivals 74
Fina World Cup 372
finance see National Treasury
firearms control 316
First Decade of Freedom 25-26
Fish River reserve 401
fisheries/fishing
see also Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Eastern Cape 3-4
Western Cape 11
fishery control
recreational fishing 57, 58-59
subsistence fishing 58
vessel monitoring 169
FLISP 241, 243
Flood Assistance Scheme 43
floods 43
FNB Dance Umbrella 70
FOCAC 261
food banks 360

Food for All Programme 359
Food Import and Export Standards 42
food security 47-48
FoodBank South Africa 360
foreign investment 102, 198, 221
forensic sciences 320
Forest Biome 176
Forest Stewardship Council 53
forestry/forests
see also Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Eastern Cape 3-4
Mpumalanga 9
Forum of Black Journalists 91
fossils 9, 13, 76, 164, 310, 311, 398, 401, 402, 406
FPB 74-75
Free State 4
agriculture 4
manufacturing and industry 5
mining 4
tourism 398-400
free-to-air television 89-90
Freedom Charter 22, 407
Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust 91
Freedom Park (Pretoria) 75
freight transport 423-425
Freshwater Programme 443
fruit 37-39
FSB 194-195
FSC (Forest Stewardship Council) 53
FSPs 195, 196
FTA 252
FTFA 55
Fynbos Biome 175-176

G

G20 186, 195, 254, 266, 268
G77 250, 264
G8 251
Gallows Memorial 296
Gallows Memorialisation Project 296
gambling 190
game farming/ranching 8, 41, 42
game parks/reserves 7, 8, 163, 400-404
national parks 162-163, 387, 389
game ranching 41-42
Garden Route
tourism 391-392
gas (natural) 141-142
gas trade agreement 154
Gateway International Airport (Polokwane) 7
Gateway Project 300
Gauteng 5
industry and agriculture 6
mining and manufacturing 6
technology 6
tourism 405-408
Gautrain 422
GCIS 214-215
GEMS 217
geological formations 310-311
geology 310-311
geospacial services 334
GEPF 111
Gertrude Posel Gallery (Wits) 70, 72
GHG emissions 142, 152, 153, 177, 178
Giant's Castle 7, 410
Gitoc 217
global trade 38, 47, 254
GMOs 44
goat farming 40
gold 308
Golden Gate Highlands National Park 310
golf 375-378
Governance and Administration Cluster 203
Government 202-205
bonds 196-197
Cabinet 202
clusters 203, 205
communications 214, 266
Constitution 201-202
elections 206
law-making 205
local government 208-213
monitoring and evaluation 206
National Assembly 202
National Council of Provinces 202
Parliament 202
performance assessment 206
Presidency 205
Printing Works 224
programmes and initiatives 206
provincial government 202, 207, 209-211
systems 201-224
GPW 224
Graaff-Reinet 401
Grahamstown 401
grains 36
Grass and Wetlands (Mpumalanga) 405
Grassland Biome 175
Great Escarpment 2, 310
Great Karoo 3, 393
Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park 163
Great North Road 7
Great Trek 16, 407
Greater Mapungubwe TFCA 163
green
economy 101-102
industries 107
Green Buildings Framework 112
Green Drop Programme 439
Green Economy 178
Green Economy Modelling Report 158-159
Green Kalahari tourism 397
groundwater
resources 438-439
strategy 433
GTL 140, 141, 142
Guardian's Fund 289, 290

H

Halfway House Pilot Project 297-298
Hantam Karoo tourism 398
harbours 3, 7, 9, 379, 392, 408, 426
see also ports
HartRAO 348
HDA 245
health
see also Dept of Health
facilities 232
insurance 226, 233
professionals 231-232
Health Sector 10-point Plan 233
Hedcom 122
Heidelberg 6, 77, 392, 407
Hesa 133
high courts 285-286
higher education
institutions 129-130
libraries 134
Highlands Meander 405
historically disadvantaged 107, 148, 205, 215, 302, 442
history 19-36
Anglo-Boer/South African War 18-19
Apartheid 21-25
British colonial era 14-17
early colonial period 14
early inhabitants 13-14
First Decade of Freedom 25-26
mineral revolution 17-18
Second Decade of Freedom 26-29
segregation 19-20
HIV/AIDS 227

advocacy, awareness and outreach 361
and TB 227
ARV treatment 225, 226, 227, 233, 234, 236
care and support 361
counselling and testing 234
national strategic plan 229, 233
orphans 356, 359, 361
support 360
Youth Programme 360-361
Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park 409
hockey 376
Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre 167
Home Affairs see Dept of Home Affairs
honeybush tea 37-38
horseracing 408
hospitals 232
houses of traditional leaders 213-214
housing
see also Dept of Human Settlements
institutions 244
subsidies 242-242
HPCSA 230, 231, 232
HPSCA 230
HRDCSA 133
HRDSSA 117
HSRC 343
human
rights 253, 279, 283
settlements see Dept of Human Settlements
trafficking 289-290
Human Development Cluster 203
Human Settlements Vision 2030 240-241
hydrocarbon gas industry 140
hydropower 144-145
HYI 385

I

IAEA 138, 147, 148, 149
IBSA trade alliance 255
Icasa 82, 84, 85, 87, 89
ICC 294
ice hockey 376
ICEB 363
ICFR 55
ICMS 293
ICT 349-350
IDC 105, 183
IDP 208, 211
IDZs 4, 7, 103, 107, 146
IEC 206
IECs 139
Ieri 346-347
IFP 25, 27
IFSNP 47
IKS 241, 350
ILAM 80
Ilima/Letsema Campaign 35
Imbeleko Project 297-298
IMF 182, 184, 254
Immigration 221
Imvelo Tourism Award 386
Inclusionary Housing Policy 242
income tax
offenders (courts for) 288
personal 187
Indian Ocean 1, 159, 169, 325, 408, 409
islands 258
indigenous
forests 53-54
games 373
music 80
individual subsidies 242
industrial development 106
industrial minerals 309
Industry see also Dept of Trade and Industry
Eastern Cape 4
Free State 5
Gauteng 6
KwaZulu-Natal 7
Limpopo 8
Mpumalanga 9
Northern Cape 10
Western Cape 11
INEP 149
inflation 99, 184, 191, 193, 197
Infrastructure Development Cluster 203
Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme 152
Innovation Hub 6
Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops 9
Institute of Environment and Recreation Management 56
institutional subsidies 243
insurance companies 196
Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework 292-293
intelligence services see Dept of State Security
Inter-African Phytosanitary Council 48
international
bonds 197
cooperation see Dept of International Relations and Cooperation
law 28, 221, 249, 252, 287, 294, 321, 429
relations see Dept of International Relations and Cooperation
tax agreements 189
tourism 386, 388
International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation 161
International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster 205
International Legal Relations 293-294
Internet 86
Investing in Culture Programme 67
IOR-ARC 255
IPAP 101, 102, 103, 104, 106
IPID 313
IRB 371
IRDP 247-248
Iron Age 13, 403, 405
iron ore 10, 98, 308, 310, 424, 427
IRP 148
ISHP 234
iSimangaliso Wetland Park 1, 161, 164, 389, 409
iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority 161
ISS 347
Itac 103-104
iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences 348
IWF 104-105
IWR 347
IWRM 440
Iziko Museum (Cape Town) 75-76
Izimbizo 205

J

JCPS Cluster 205
job fairs 114-115
Jock of the Bushveld 405
Johannesburg
tourism 406-407
Johannesburg Zoological Gardens 166
journalism awards 92
Joy of Jazz International Festival 67, 68
JSC 282-283
JSCD 326
JSE 199
Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services 296
Judicial system
CC 285
CFM 292-293
circuit local divisions 286
civil jurisdiction 286
community courts 287
courts for income-tax offenders 288
criminal jurisdiction 288
domestic violence 289

equality courts 287
high courts 285
Labour and Labour Appeal Court 285
Land Claims Court 285, 286
magistrates' courts 286-287
maintenance 288-289
regional courts 286
SCA 285
sexual offences courts 288
small claims courts 287
traditional courts 287
Junior LandCare 45
Justice see Dept of Justice and Constitutional Development
Justice and Correctional Services 277-300

K

Kalahari
San (Bushmen) 9, 13, 66, 71, 388, 392
tourism 396-397
Kalahari Gemsbok National Park
see Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
Kamberg Nature Reserve 7, 410
Karakul 10, 40, 400
Karoo 310-311
tourism 401
Karoo National Park 393
Keep Rugby Clean campaign 317
Keiskamma Valley 3
Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park 397
Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign 121
Khoi-san 13, 14, 15, 16, 63, 75, 207, 213
Khoikhoi 13, 14
Kimberley 17, 76, 311, 396
King Shaka International Airport 413
Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden 11
Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (Oudshoorn) (KKNK) 68, 392
Kleinplasie (Worcester) 76
Knysna-Tsitsikamma region 11
Koeberg Nuclear Power Station 147, 148
Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve 163, 395
Komati River Basin Water Authority 436
Kosi Bay 67, 165
Kosi Bay Nature Reserve 409
Kruger House Museum (Pretoria) 77
Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport 8
Kruger National Park 8, 168, 169, 403, 404, 405
Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve 164
KwaZulu-Natal 6
industry and agriculture 7
tourism 408
KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route 410
KwaZulu-Natal Museum 76
Kyoto Protocol 136, 151, 161, 171, 177

L

Labour see Dept of Labour
Labour Appeal Court 285
Labour Court 285
Lake Chrissie 405
Lake Sibaya 409
lakes 2
Land Affairs see Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform
Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa 34, 194
land and its people 1-12
climate 2
coastline 1
lakes 2
languages 2-3
oceans 1
people 2
provinces 3-12
relief features 2
religion 3
rivers 2
Land Bank see Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa
Land Claims Court 286, 332
land reform 335, 337
Land Reform Programme 337-338
LandCare Programme 44
Langebaan Lagoon 163, 394
Langkloof 3, 37
languages 2-3, 64
see also official languages
Law Society of South Africa 284
Learning Academy 224
LED 212
Legal Aid South Africa 279
Legal Deposit Committee 78-79
legal practitioners 284
legal services 290
legislation
agriculture 32-33
arts and culture 61-62
basic education 118-119
communication 82
cooperative governance 207
correctional services 295
defence 321
economy 100
education 118-119, 128
energy 135-136
environment 156-158
fisheries 56-57
forestry 50
health 227
home affairs 220-221
human settlement 239-240
international relations 249-250
justice and constitutional development 278-279
labour 113
law-making 205
mineral resources 301-304
police 314
public service and administration 216
public works 111
rural development and land reform 332-333
science and technology 340
social development 353-354
sport and recreation 368
state security 328
tourism 382
trade and industry 103
transport 412
water affairs 431-432
Lejweleputswa 399-400
Lesotho Highlands Water Project 153, 256, 445
Lesotho plateau 2
LGSA 208
LGTAS 211
Liasa 78
libraries in the higher education sector 134
Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre 167, 403
Lilizela/Imvelo Tourism Award 386
Limpopo 7
agriculture 8
industry and mining 8
tourism 402-403
liquid fuels 141, 151
liquor control 315, 316
LIS 77, 78, 79
literacy 78, 119, 120, 121, 124
literature 72, 73
Little Green Book Project 371
Little Karoo
tourism 392-393
livestock 39
local government 208-213
Loerie Awards 92

Lowveld 8. 9, 403, 405
LPG 141, 142,
Luthuli Museum (KwaDukuza) 75

M
Madikwe Game Reserve 404
Mafikeng 10
Mafisa 34-35
Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa 90,92
magazines 90, 91
Magistrates' Commission 283
Magistrates' courts 286, 318
Mahikeng 10, 403
Mahikeng Airport City Project 107, 413
Maintenance Turnaround Strategy 289
maize 6, 11, 32, 34, 36, 44
malaria 226, 346, 387
Mandela, former Pres Nelson 21, 22-24, 29, 71, 75, 126, 164, 220, 342, 372, 390, 407
manganese 309
manufacturing
  Free State 5
  Gauteng 6
  Mpumalanga 9
  North West 10-11
mapping 304, 305, 334
Mapungubwe 13, 164, 388, 402
Maputo Development Corridor 7
marine
    see also of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
  life 56, 409
  pollution and sustainability 169
  protected areas 166
  research 347-348
  resources 3, 57
  vessel monitoring 169-170
Marion Island 1, 162
maritime affairs
  administration 424
  safety 325, 429
  Samsa 416, 417, 424, 425
  training 425
  transport 424
Market Abuse Directorate 196
Market Theatre (Johannesburg) 68, 406
Master of the High Court 290
Mbeki, former Pres Thabo 25, 26, 27, 407
McGregor Museum (Kimberley) 76
MCH 226
MDB 212
MDDA 89, 92, 215, 225
MDGs 3, 117, 252, 348
measles 226
media 88-90
Media Institute of Southern Africa 91
Media Workers' Association of South Africa 91
Medical Parole Advisory Board 296
medical practioners 231-232
medical schemes 232
medicine
  plants 49, 54
  traditional 350. 406
Medicines Control Council 229
Medunsa 129
MeerKAT 339
Meetings Africa 383
Melrose House (Pretoria) 77
meteorite impact sites 311
metropolitan municipalities 211
Mfecane 14, 16
MHSC 304
MHSI 306
Michaelis Collection (Cape Town) 75
microlending industry 194
Midlands, tourism 410
Midmar Mile 389, 408, 410
MIG 211-212, 213
military veterans 325-326
Million Trees Programme 53
mine health and safety 306
mineral
  resources see Dept of Mineral Resources
  revolution 17-18
  wealth 449-454
mining
  Free State 4-5
  Gauteng 6
  Limpopo 8
  North West 10
  Northern Cape 10
Mining Charter 105, 302, 307
mining industry 10, 303
  Chamber of Mines 303-304
  Mineworkers 11, 302, 306
Mintek 304, 344-345
Misa 211
M-Net 90, 91
mobile communications 87-88
Modjadji Nature Reserve 403
Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre 167
Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards 92
monetary policy 193
Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer 178
Mopani district
  tourism 403
Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition 69
Mossel Bay 52, 141, 391, 392
Motheo
  tourism 398-399
Mother City 11
motor vehicles 96, 98, 172, 265, 420
motorsport 376-377
mountain biking 373-374
MPAs 158, 166
MPC 191, 193
Mpumalanga 8
  agriculture and forestry 9
  industry and manufacturing 9
  tourism 404-405
MQA 303
MRC 345
MRCC 424, 429, 430
Mrs Ples 76, 406
Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum (Pietermaritzburg) 75
MTN 69, 87, 126, 372, 374
MultiChoice 90
municipalities 208-209
Museum Africa (Johannesburg) 76
Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria) 76
museums 75-77
music 68-69, 80
  awards 69-70
Musina 8
Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy 61, 67

N
N6 Route tourism 401
NAASP 250, 251
NAC 66
Naci 343
NAEHMP 444
Nafu 35
NAM 255
Nama-Karoo Biome 174-175
Namaqua National Park 397
Namaqualand tourism 397
NAMC 39, 42
nanotechnology 341-342
Nareg 333
NARF 347
Narysec 337

Nat Nakasa Award for Media Integrity 92
Natal Museum (Pietermaritzburg) 75, 410
Natal University of Technology 51
National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS 356-357
National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee 43
National Arbor Week 52
National Archives (Pretoria) 77
National Arts Festival (Grahamstown) 67, 68, 401
National Arts Festival (Oudtshoorn) 392
National Assembly 202
National Association of Broadcasters 91
National Automated Archival Information System 77
national botanical gardens 161-162
National Chemical Monitoring Programme 444
National Climate Change Strategy 153
National Consumer Tribunal 194
National Council for Correctional Services 296
National Cultural History Museum (Pretoria) 76
National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime 361
National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum 213
National Energy Efficiency Strategy 136
National English Literary Museum (Grahamstown) 75
National Family Policy 354
National Film and Video Foundation 74
National Forest Protection Strategy 55
National Forestry Action Programme 54
National Geospatial Information 334
National Groundwater Strategy 433
National Herbarium of South Africa 162
National Heritage Council 64
National House of Traditional Leaders 213
National Housing Programme 245, 325
National Institute for Communicable Diseases 231, 235
National Institute for Tropical Diseases 346
National Land Type Survey 43
National LPG Strategy 137
National Museum (Bloemfontein) 75, 76
National Oral History Association 77
national parks 163, 387, 389, 397
National Population Register 221
National Prosecutions Service 281
National Register for Sex Offenders 288
National Register of Oral Sources 77
National Rental Housing Strategy 247
National School Nutrition Programme 127
National Senior Certificate 120, 122, 133
national symbols 62, 65
National Tourism Sector Strategy 384
National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements 385
National Toxicity Monitoring Programme 444-445
National Treasury 181-199
  Auditor-General 190
  banking industry 193-194
  budget framework 182
  budget overview 183-184
  debt management 184
  enforcement 196
  expenditure planning and statistics 182
  financial advisors and intermediaries 195
  financial expenditure 182-185
  financial institutions 185-190
  financial sector 190-194
  financial systems 184-185
  fiscal policy framework 182
  gambling 190
  growing the economy 182-183
  international development and cooperation 183
  international tax agreements 265
  legislation and policies 185
  licensing of financial service providers 196
  monetary policy 193
  norms and standards 195
  public finance 181, 182, 185
  Sars performance 189
  statistics 190
  tax administration 186-187
National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency 245
National Water Week 445
National Youth Service 324-325
Natmap 419
Natural Forests Protected Areas System 54
natural gas 139, 141-142, 154
natural history collections 76
nature reserves 7, 8, 163, 389, 393, 401, 402, 405
NBF 174
NBSAP 174
NCACC 326
NCDs 234
NCHM 75, 76
NCLIS 78-79
Ncome-Blood River battlefield 410
NCOP 202, 205, 332
NCR 194
NDA 355-356
Ndebele Museum (Middelburg, Mpumalanga) 77
NDMC 213
NDP 2030 205-206
Necsa 138
Nedlac 114
Needu 122-123
NEES 136
NEF 104
Nelson Mandela Museum (Mthatha) 75
Nelson Mandela Sports Day 372
Nelspruit
  tourism 404
Nemisa 81, 82, 84
Neotel 87
Nepad 251
netball 377
news agencies 91-92
Newspaper Association of South Africa 90
newspapers 90-91
NFAC 50
NFSD 157
NFVF 61, 74, 78
NFVSA (Pretoria) 77, 79
NGB 190
NGOs 231
NGP 86, 95
Ngqura 415, 426, 427
NHBRC 245
NHFC 243
NHI 233-234
NHLS 231, 346
Nipmo 344
NKC 213
Nkosi Sikilel' iAfrika 63
NLB 190
NLDS 39
NLS 66
NLSA 77-78, 79
NMMU 3, 51, 71, 130, 341
NMSRT 386
NMT 421
NNEECC 140
NNR 138
"No Drop" Assessments 439-440
non-ferrous metals 96, 319
non-profit organisations 357
non-proliferation and arms control 250
North Coast
  tourism 409
North West 10
  agriculture 11
  mining and manufacturing 10
  tourism 403-404
North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service 79

North West University 133, 139
Northern Cape 9
agriculture and industry 10
mining 10
tourism 396-398
Northern Flagship Institution (Pretoria) 75
NPA 281
NPR 415
NQF 132
NRDS 340, 341
NRF 343-344
NSA 134
NSBA 174
NSBAC 103
NSDS 128-129
NSF 134
NSFAS 134
NSNP 127
NSP on HIV, AIDS, STDs and TB 233
NSRP 370
NSVC 373
nuclear energy 147
Nuclear Energy Policy 138
Nurcha 245
nurses 232
nutrition 47, 121, 127, 226, 338, 359
nuts 8-10, 49
NWRI Programme 440
NWRS 432-433, 438
NYDA 360
Nylsvley Nature Reserve 402
NZG 348

O

OBP SOC Ltd 36
ocean energy 145
oceanariums 167
oceans 1
OECD 95
Office for Witness Protection 281
Office of the Family Advocate 291
official languages 3, 64, 66
OHS 111, 113
OIC 329
oil 141-142
oil and gas reserves 141, 160
oilseeds 36
Olympic Games 369, 376
Onderstepoort 36
One City Festival (Taung) 68
One-school-a-week campaign 126
online media 90
OPDs 79
Operation Funda 297
Operation Vala 296-297
Oppikoppi 68
OR Tambo International Airport (Johannesburg) 5, 110, 413, 418, 422, 423
oral health professionals 232
oral history 80
Oral History Programme 77
Orange River 2, 10, 37, 38, 176, 397, 399
Order of Ikhamanga 63, 64, 65
Order of Luthuli 63, 64, 65
Order of Mapungubwe 63, 64, 65
Order of Mendi for Bravery 63, 64, 65
Order of the Baobab 63, 64, 65
Order of the Companions of OR Tambo 63, 64, 65
Organised Crime 319
OSD 124, 434
ostrich farming 392
Overberg
tourism 395-396

P

Palama 218
palladium 309
Panorama (Mpumalanga) 404-405
PanSALB 62, 66
PAP 26
Paralympic Games 368
Parliament 202
parole boards 296, 299
Passenger Rail Agency of SA 414-415
PCC 212
PCLU 281
peacekeeping 323
people with disabilities 203, 243, 354, 355, 362-363
Performing Arts Centre of the Free State (Bloemfontein) 4, 66
Performing Arts Council of the Free State 60
permanent residence 223
pest control 47
PetroSA 140, 141, 142
PFM 55
PGM 301, 305, 308, 309
Phalaborwa 8, 169, 308, 309
pharmaceuticals 230, 232, 341, 346
pharmacists 232
PHC 225, 232,
philatelic services 88
photography 71
PHP 244
Phuthaditjhaba Public Library (Free State) 79
PIC 186
PICC 104, 242, 246, 422, 426, 440
Pietermaritzburg
tourism 410
pig farming 40-41
Pilanesberg Complex 311
Pilanesberg National Park 10, 403
Pilgrim's Rest (Mpumalanga) 104
Pioneer Open Air Museum (Pretoria) 77
pipelines 423-424
platinum group metals 308-309
Playhouse Company (Durban) 62, 66
PMSA 90, 91
PNC on ISAD 85
police see Dept of Police
Polokwane 7, 8, 39, 402
poor people
rental housing 247
population register 221
pornography
children 75, 87, 355
Port Elizabeth 400
Port Elizabeth Museum 76
Port Nolloth 397
Portfolio Committee on Corrections 295
ports 423, 427
postal sector 88
Postbank 88
Postnet 88
poultry farming 40-41
poverty
anti-poverty strategy 421
relief 31
rental housing 247
War on Poverty Campaign 358-359
power stations 9, 110, 132, 140, 144, 145, 150, 405, 434, 441, 442
Prasa 411, 414-415, 426
Presidency 205
Presidential Hotline 206
press see media; print
Pretoria
tourism 407-408
price inflation 99
Primary Animal Health Care Programme 35
primary market bonds 197

Primedia Crime Line 319
Prince Edward Island 1, 162, 166, 169
print 90
Professional Photographers of South Africa 91
Project Mikondzo 357-358
property rates 188
protected areas 11, 54, 64, 158, 162, 164-166, 175, 179
  Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area 402
  biosphere reserves 163-164
  Cape Floristic Region 11
  Fynbos Biome 175-176
  MPAs 158, 166
  Nama-Karoo Biome 174-175
  natural forests 50, 53, 54, 176
provinces 3-12
  Eastern Cape 3-4
  Free State 4-5
  Gauteng 5-6
  KwaZulu-Natal 6-7
  Limpopo 7-8
  Mpumalanga 8-9
  North West 10-11
  Northern Cape 9-10
  Western Cape 11
provincial
  executive councils 3, 207, 209-211
  government 202, 207-208, 209-211
  health departments 227, 236
  hospitals 232
PSC 216
PSDF 208
Public Art Programme 67
Public Protector 284
Public Service see Dept of Public Service and Administration
Public Service Month 218
public transport 419, 425
publishing see media; print

Q
Qhubeka 372
Quality Council for Trades and Occupations 132-133

R
RAC 48
radio 89
  astronomy 340, 348, 349
  museum 395
  telescope 9, 339, 344, 348
radioactive waste management 147
RAF 415-416
rail transport 422, 426
railway policing 317
rainfall 2, 3, 7, 9, 13, 37, 43, 175, 176, 437
Ramsar Convention 163, 164, 165, 174, 176
Raw Water Pricing Strategy 433
RBIG Programme 440
Rea Vaya see BRT
RECs 251, 252
recycling 170-171
Red Location Museum (Port Elizabeth) 77
Refugee Appeal Board 220
refugees 220, 221, 224
Regional Bulk Infrastructure Program 440
regional courts 286, 289
REID 336
REIPPP Bidding Programme 148-149
relief features 2
religion 3
renewable energy 151
rental housing 247
residence 223
resource management 43, 57
restorative justice 292
retail bonds 196
retirement funds 196
RFSTP 48
Rhino poaching 168-169
RHLF 244
Rhodes University 3, 80, 347
rhodium 308, 309
RHP 443-444
Richards Bay 7, 143, 415, 427
Richtersveld 9, 159, 162-164, 175-176, 397
RIM 157
Risa 343
risk management 32, 42, 43, 329
rivers and lakes 2
road(s)
  infrastructure 419, 420, 421
  municipal roads 421
  national roads 421
  provincial roads 421
  safety 415-428
  toll roads 421-422
Robben Island 11, 164, 390
Robben Island Museum (Cape Town) 62, 75, 164, 390
rock art 4, 13, 63, 64, 70-72, 388, 391, 394, 401
Roggeveld scarp 2
rooibos tea 10, 37-38
rowing 375
Royal Natal National Park 7, 164, 410
RSR 415
RTIA 416
RTMC 416
RTMS 419
rugby 371
Rules Board for Courts of Law 282
running 377-378
rural
  development see Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform
  subsidies 243
  transport 420
Rustenburg
  tourism 404
RWH 434, 442

S
SA Accreditation Authority 85
SA AMD Industries Association 326
SA Army 322, 324
SA Board for Sheriffs 283
SA Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) (Cape Town) 76
SA Dental Technicians Council 230
SA Guild of Motoring Journalists 91
SA Maritime Training Academy 425
SA Museum (Cape Town) 76
SA Museum for Military History (Johannesburg) 77
SA Music Week 69
SA National Council for the Blind 363-364
SA National Gallery (Cape Town) 76
SA National Parks 155, 162-163, 397
SA Post Office 82-83
SA Typographical Union 91
SA Union of Journalists 91
SA Wetlands Conservation Programme 165
SAA 110, 418-419
SAAF museum (Pretoria) 76, 407
SAAO 348
SAAQIS 171
Saasta 343
SAB Journalism Awards 92
Saba 363
SABC 83
SABDC 73
SABS 345-346
SACAA 416
SACE 123
SACSSP 356
Sacu 188
  Agreement 104, 188
SADC 36, 48

SADC-EU Economic Partnership Agreement 271
SADPMR 304
SADTC 230
Saeon 348
Safcol 50-51, 109
Safety and Security see Dept of Police
Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee 347
SAGNC 64
Sahra 64, 77
SAHRC 283-284
Saiab (Grahamstown) 76, 348
SAIDS 368-369
sailing 378
SAJEI 284
SALB 79
Saldanha Bay 1, 104, 424
Salga 212-213
SALRC 280-281
Samas 69-70
SAMHS 322, 324
Sammy Marks Museum (Pretoria) 77
Samsa 416-417
SAN 322, 324,
San people (Bushmen) 9, 13, 66, 71, 388, 392
  language 64, 182
  rock art/engravings 4, 9, 391, 394, 399, 403
Sanac 229
Sanai 328
Sanbi 160-161, 347
SANC 231
Sancor 347-348
SANDF see Dept of Defence and Military Veterans
Sanedi 138, 347
Sanef 91, 92
Saneri 151
Sanlam Community Press Awards 92
Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award 92
SANParks 162-163
Sanral 417-418
SANReN 340, 350
Sansa 344
SAPC 230-231
Sapo 82-83
SAPP 140
Sappi 55
Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa Pica Awards 92
SAPS see Dept of Police
Saqa 132
Sarah Baartman 169
SARB 190-193
  functions 192
  system of accommodation 191
SARS 186
Sasar 429-430
Sascoc 368
Sasol 139-140, 346
Sassa 356
SAT 382, 386
satellite broadcasting 90
Savanna Biome 174
Sawen 104
SAWS 161
SAX 111, 419
SCA 285
SCCU 281
School Sport Programme 371
schools see Dept of Basic Education
Science and Technology
    see Dept of Science and Technology
scientific reserves 162
SCRHD 241-242
SDIP 296
Second Decade of Freedom 26-29
secondary market bonds 197
Securities Transfer Tax 188
Seda 104
segregation 19-20
semi-precious stones 10
Sentech 83-84, 85
Sere Wind Farm 151-152
Servcon Housing Solutions 244
Seta 133-134
SEZs 107
SFF 151
shale gas exploration 305-306
S'hamba Sonke Road Maintenance Project 420
sheep farming 40
SHF 244
SHRA 240, 244, 248
signal distribution 83, 84
silver 5, 308, 309
SIP7 246
SIPs 440-441
Sita 217
SIU 279-280
SKA 339, 348-349
skills development
  levy 188
  youth 332
slaves/slavery 14, 15, 67, 290, 391
small claims courts 287
Small-scale Fisheries Policy 56
small stock farming 40
smallholder development 45-46
SMMEs 107
snake parks 167-168
Soca 282
soccer 378
social
  crime prevention 241, 361
  development see Dept of Social Development
  grants 26, 83, 214, 295, 353, 356, 359, 361
  housing 240-243, 247, 248
  security/assistance 186, 353, 356, 359, 360, 412, 415
  workers 356, 365
Social Protection and Community Development Cluster 203
socio-economic reform 55
SOEs 108, 109, 141, 358
soil degradation 44
SoilCare 45
solar energy/power 145-146, 152
  CSP 145, 149, 153
  solar-thermal power 151
South African War see Anglo-Boer/South African War
South Coast 409-410
South Sotho Museum (Witsieshoek) 77
Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds 168
Southern district (North West)
  tourism 404
Soweto 5, 23, 399, 407
Space science 348-349
Specialist Press Association 91
Spier Summer Festival (Western Cape) 68, 391
Splashy Fen Music Festival (Durban) 68
spoken word poetry 72
sport and recreation see Dept of Sport and Recreation
sport(s)
  achievements 373-379
  awards 372
  federations 369-370
Springbok (Antidorcas marsupialis) 167, 176, 397, 402, 410
Springbok (national animal symbol) 62, 65
Springbok (town) 397
Springboks (rugby) 377
State Diamond Trader 305
State Legal Services 290
State Theatre Pretoria 62, 66
Stellenbosch 77, 390
Stellenbosch University 51, 346
Sterkfontein 311, 406

Sterkfontein caves 13, 404, 406
Sterkfontein Dam 400, 441
Stone-Age 13, 403, 406, 407, 410
Storage Atlas 150
Strate Limited 199
STT 188
substance abuse 361
subtropical fruit 38-39
Succulent Karoo Biome 175
sugar 36-37
Sunshine Coast 401-402
surfing and surfski 378
sustainable
  human settlements 246
  livelihoods 166, 241, 388
  use of natural resources 163, 165
Swartkrans 164, 311
swimming 378-379
SWPN-SA 436

T

Table Bay 14, 390
Table Mountain 311
Tankwa Karoo National Park 163, 398
TAU SA 35
Taung child 13
tax
  calendar 189
  on international travel 188
  system 187
Tax Ombud 187
taxi industry 418, 421
taxonomic research 160-161
TB 225, 226, 227, 229, 231, 233, 236, 304, 343, 360
TCCs 282, 289
tea 3, 7, 8, 10, 38, 350, 394
technology
    see also Dept of Science and Technology
  Gauteng 6
  transfer 47, 341, 342
telecommunications see Dept of Communication
Television
  community 89
  free-to-air 89-90
  migration to digital 85
  M-Net 90, 91
  SABC 82, 83, 89, 91
  satellite broadcasting 90, 124
  signal distribution 83, 84
  STBs 85
  Top TV 90
Telkom 87-88
temporary residence 223
tennis 379
TEP 383
tertiary education see Dept of Higher Education and Training
TFCAs 163
TFR 424
TGCSA 384
Thabo Mofutsanyana 399
theatre 68
Theiler Veterinary Science Museum (Onderstepoort, Pretoria) 76
Theta 384
Thicket Biome 176
ThinkSport Journal Project 371
Thubelisha Homes 244
Thulamela 13, 403
Thusong Service Centres 114, 214
Thutong educational portal 124
TIA 344
TMNP 163, 390
TNPA 415, 418
tobacco 37
tourism see Dept of Tourism
Tourism BBBEE Charter Council 384
Tourism Indaba 383
Tourism Month 387, 388
traditional
  affairs 213
  councils 213
  courts 287-288
  leadership 213
Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority 436
transfer duty 187
Transnet 111, 418
  multiproduct pipeline 141, 424
Transnet National Ports Authority 415, 418
Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Tournament 373
transport see Dept of Transport
Transvaal Museum (Pretoria) 76
TRC 282, 291
Treaty of Pelindaba 138
TRP 421
Tsitsikamma 54, 176, 402
Tsitsikamma National Park 53, 162, 173, 402
Tsonga Open-Air Museum (Tzaneen) 8
Tsongakraal (Letsitele) 77
TSP 385
Tswaing meteorite crater and museum 76, 311, 406
Tutu, Archbishop Desmond 2, 25
Two Oceans Aquarium (Cape Town) 167
Two Oceans Ultra Marathon 377

U

UIF 113, 188
uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park 7, 164, 310, 388, 389, 408, 410
Umalusi 119, 121, 122
UN and South Africa
  CBD 162, 173
  Conference on Sustainable Development 178
  Conference on Trade and Development 26, 67
  CSD 177
  Economic Commission for Africa 351
  Ecosoc 253
  UNCCD 173
  Unesco 253
  UNFCCC 176-177
  UNHRC 253
  UNGA 28, 252, 428, 445
  UNSC 252-253
  UNSCF 254
  World Food Programme 45, 47
unemployment 26, 95, 98-100, 112, 212, 219, 239, 298, 324, 337, 353, 360
Unesco World heritage sites 10, 164-165
Union Buildings 6, 15, 22, 29, 205, 220, 407
universities 129
University of Cape Town 132, 350, 364, 390
University of Fort Hare 3, 235
University of Johannesburg 6, 129
University of KwaZulu-Natal 7, 70, 73, 132, 350
University of Mpumalanga 122, 129
University of Pretoria 6, 32, 51, 55, 70, 132, 235, 406, 413
University of South Africa (Unisa) 6, 70, 126, 257, 319, 360
University of the Free State 129
University of the Western Cape 129
University of the Witwatersrand 6, 70, 175, 305, 348
University of Venda 133
University of Zululand 294
Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo) 397-398
Upper Karoo Bioregion 159
urban development 241
Urban Greening Fund 56
Uridashi bonds 197
Usaasa 82, 84
USAID programme 342
USDG 213, 241, 242
uShaka Marine World, Durban 167, 408,

V
Vaal Dam 406, 441
Vaal River 9, 17, 158, 311, 398, 400, 440
System 435, 441
Vaal Triangle 6
Vaal University of Technology 71
Valdivia Group 173, 265
VAT 187
Vaya Mzanzi 387
vegetables 39
vehicle identification 315
VeldCare 45
VEP 361
veterinary services 35
Vhembe (Limpopo)
tourism 402-403
Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront 167, 377, 390
Video Remand Solution 293
violence
against women and children 253, 352, 355, 357, 362
domestic 282, 289, 291, 299, 316
gender-based 253, 282, 284, 289, 355, 357
Virgin Mobile 87
visas 222
visual arts 70, 71
viticulture 32, 34
Vodacom 87, 126
Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums 92
Voortrekker Museum (Pietermaritzburg) 75
Voortrekker Museum (Winburg) 400
Vredefort Dome 4, 165, 311, 389, 400

W
WADA 369
Walter Sisulu University of Technology 3, 129, 130, 350
WAR 442
War Museum of the Boer Republics (Bloemfontein) 75, 77
waste
management 170
water 439
water
affairs see Dept of Water Affairs
allocation 442
boards 435
conservation 442
demand management 442
monitoring 443
pricing 433
quality 439
re-use strategy 433-434
schemes 438
water-management 432, 433, 439, 440, 445
agencies/institutions 435, 436
water-resource management 45, 347, 444
drought management 43
Freshwater Programme 443
NWRS 432-433, 438
regional and international cooperation 445
wetlands 443
Water Tribunal 436
Waterberg 402, 434
mountain range 8
tourism 402
Waterberg Biosphere Reserve 163
WaterCare 45
weather 43
WEF 28, 95, 104, 250, 445
welfare services 208, 353, 362
West Coast
tourism 393-395
West Coast National Park 163, 394
Westcor 153
Western Cape
agriculture and fisheries 11
industry 11-12
tourism 389-390
wetlands 165-166
WfGD 433
WfW Programme 156, 219, 444
WHA (World Health Assembly) 254
WHO 254
Wild Coast 401
Wild Frontier (Mpumalanga) 405
wilderness areas 162
wildlife crimes 174, 264
Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum (Pretoria) 76
William Fehr Collection (Cape Town) 75
William Humphreys Art Gallery (Kimberley) 75, 76
wind power 146, 148
Windybrow Theatre (Johannesburg) 66, 68
wine 38
Witness Protection 27, 279, 281
Wits Theatre (Johannesburg) 70
Witwatersrand
Basin 308, 310
geological formation 310
women
economic empowerment 104, 172, 253, 318, 354, 355
entrepreneurs 104
health 226
(in)science awards 352
participation in sport 374-377
Women in Housing 244
Women in Water 442
Women's Month 316
woodlands 54
Working for Energy Programme 150-151
Working for Fisheries Programme 57
Working for Water 156, 157, 219, 444
Working for Wetlands 443, 444
Working for Woodlands 444
Working on Fire Programme 50, 156, 300, 444
Workplace Challenge Programme 105
World AIDS Day 216, 357
World Environment Day 160
World Food Programme 45, 47
World Health Assembly 254
World Heritage Convention 80, 161, 176
world heritage sites 164-165
World Wetlands Day 160
WRC (World Radio Conference) 81
WRC (Water Research Commission) 347, 435-436
WSSD 178
WTE 436
WTO 42, 49
WUAs 435

X
Xhariep 399

Y
Youth Build SA Programme 244-245
Youth development 324, 360, 445
Youth Development Programme 370
Youth Jobs in Waste Programme 170

Z
.za Domain Name Authority 84
ZCC 402
Zero Hunger Campaign/Programme/Strategy 337
zoological gardens 165-166
Zulu kingdom 14
Zululand, tourism 409
Zuma, President Jacob 27, 29, 126, 206, 280, 407

Index

Land and its people

With its spectacular views, stunning wildlife, and unbeatable biodiversity, in contrast with its bustling modern cities and vibrant economy, South Africa is often described as "A world in one country."

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

There are eight world heritage sites and seven different biomes. It is considered the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km^2.

According to Census 2011, the shift of the national boundary over the Indian Ocean in the north-east corner of KwaZulu-Natal to cater for the Isimangaliso Wetland Park increased South Africa's land area.

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands. The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The 3 000-km coastline is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours and stretches from the Mozambican border in the east to the Namibian border in the west. The Atlantic and Indian oceans meet at Cape Point in the continent's south-western corner.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola. The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 464 mm, compared to a world average of about 860 mm. While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes – such as Australia – owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level.

On the interior plateau the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30°C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places.

South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter. There is a striking contrast between temperatures on the country's east and west coasts, owing respectively to the warm Agulhas Current and cold Benguela Current that sweep the coastlines.

The people

Archbishop Emeritus Desmond Tutu coined the well-known phrase "the Rainbow Nation" to describe the melting pot of people and cultures living together in South Africa.

South Africa is a nation of diversity, with more than 50 million people and a wide variety of cultures, languages and religious beliefs.

Black South Africans are in the majority, making up 79,2% of the population, while white and coloured people each make up about 9%, and the Indian/Asian population 2,5%.

Languages

English is the mother tongue of only 9,6% of the population, but it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. English is also most widely used for official and commercial communication.

Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	17	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	15	19	7
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	18	19	3
Mthatha	27	16	21	4
Musina	34	21	25	7
Nelspruit	29	19	23	6
Pietermaritzburg	28	18	23	3
Polokwane	28	17	20	4
Port Elizabeth	25	18	20	9
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	31	20	24	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

In October 2013, South Africa hosted the 10th biannual International Conference on Language and Development, in conjunction with the British Council.

The 10th conference was the second to be convened in sub-Saharan Africa. It coincided with reviews of progress made towards achieving the eight United Nations Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) by development professionals and policy makers worldwide, as the 2015 MDG deadline approaches. This was an opportunity to explore the role of language in contributing to the achievement of the MDGs, specifically: MDG 2: Achieving universal primary education; MDG 3: Promoting gender equality and empowering women, and MDG 8: Developing a global partnership for development.

Owing to South Africa's cultural diversity, the country has 11 official languages. They are Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Government developed the Use of Official Languages Bill in 2012 as part of promoting social cohesion. Another important part of this was the protection and promotion of indigenous knowledge systems, which included promoting formal indigenous knowledge education and assisting indigenous communities to establish cooperative structures to organise themselves.

Religion

According to August 2012 polls released by the Win-Gallup International Religiosity and Atheism Index, which measures global self-perceptions on belief, religious South Africans dropped from 83% of the population in 2005 to 64% in 2012.

According to the survey, 28% of South Africans do not consider themselves religious and 4% said they were atheists.

The provinces

South Africa is divided into nine provinces, namely Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and the Western Cape each with its own legislature, premier and executive council.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 169 966 km^2, is roughly the size of Uruguay. It is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13,9% of the total land area.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho
Principal languages:
IsiXhosa 78,8%
Afrikaans 10,5%
English 5,6%
Population: 6 562 053
Percentage share of the total population: 12,67%
Area: 168 966 km^2
Mid-year population estimates, 2013

Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
isiZulu	22,7%	isiNdebele	2,1%
isiXhosa	17,6%	siSwati	2,5%
Afrikaans	13,3%	Tshivenda	2,4%
Sesotho sa Leboa	9,4%	Xitsonga	4,4%
English	8,2%	Sesotho	7,6%
Setswana	8,2%	Sign Language	0,5%

Mid-year population estimates, 2013

The province has a population of more than 6,5 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast.

The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Port Elizabeth and has two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Over the last three years the Imvaba Fund has supported 49 cooperatives with a disbursement of R31 million.

Most of these cooperatives are in the agricultural and manufacturing sectors.

Working with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, the province uses the feedstock market to develop commercial black farmers. To this end, 25 farms in the Fish River Valley were bought for land redistribution in 2012/13.

The trading posts initiative will link rural producers with agro-processing facilities, with targeted sites being Ncora and Mqanduli. This project has been allocated R73 million from the Jobs Fund, with matched government funding of R18 million.

The Community Forest Development initiative attracted R113 million from the Jobs Fund, and R30 million in provincial government funding. These initiatives supported 134 farmers and created more than 1 000 direct jobs in 2013.

Industry

The Eastern Cape Provincial Planning Commission, established in April 2012, is on course to extrapolate the provincial implications of the National Development Plan (NDP).

The Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) has operational investors on site with private investment of more than R1,2 billion. In addition, secured private investments of R5,4 billion were implemented, with investments of more than R8 billion in the project pipeline. The East London IDZ secured R2,2 billion in investments, with a project pipeline of R12,7 billion.

The automotive sector remains an important sector of the provincial economy. By March 2014, the Nelson Mandela Bay Logistics Park had secured component supplier private investments of R647 million, and the East London IDZ was at an advanced stage of establishing the Metals Surface Treatment Plant. The investment of R600 million by the Chinese Original Equipment Manufacturers was on track, with factory construction underway in Coega.

The province continues to prioritise the green economy in sectors such as solar, wind, biofuel and biomass. Of the 18 wind energy projects awarded as Independent Power Producers by the Department of Energy, 11 are from the Eastern Cape with a total investment value of R18 billion. A R1,1-billion biofuel factory investment in Cradock is envisaged.

In 2013, the province launched the Provincial Industrial Jobs Stimulus Programme, including a R50-million fund, which is administered in partnership with organised business and labour.

Free State

The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho	64,2%
Afrikaans	12,2%
isiXhosa	7,5%

Population: 2 745 590

Percentage share of the total population: 5,3%

Area: 129 825 km^2

Mid-year population estimates, 2013

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2013*, there were over 2,7 million people in the Free State on about 129 480 km^2 of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure and with Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km^2 and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km^2 of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Mining

The NDP has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone. The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope

of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the Free State from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km^2.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The province also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was launched in November 2012. This project was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's capital expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project, located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal, received a R3,5 billion capital injection.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy. Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, which started in 2013, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2.

The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145 specialised ammonia rail tankers and other ancillary facilities.

The project is in line with growth in the explosives and fertiliser markets and operations.

The roll-out of broadband infrastructure and digital migration has been included in Strategic Infrastructure Project 15 with Broadband Infraco appointed as the coordinator.

One of the private sector initiatives regarding broadband was FibreCo's start of construction of the first 1 000-km link connecting Bloemfontein with Johannesburg and East London in May 2012. The construction of FibreCo's fibre optic network in the Free State resulted in the employment of over 718 people through local sub-contractors.

Gauteng

The *2013 Mid-year Population Estimates* show that Gauteng remains the most populous province with an increase in the population size from 23,7% of the national proportion in 2011 to 24% in 2013. Gauteng contributes 34,5% to South Africa's GDP and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Over four million or 29% of people with jobs in South Africa are located within the geographic confines of Gauteng. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

The population of 11 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. Johannesburg, is the capital of the province. South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

The Gauteng Enterprise Propeller (GEP), an entity that falls under the province's Economic Development Department, signed a partnership with the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) that is expected to boost small businesses and create jobs.

The GEP's new partnership would, through supplier links between small enterprises

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu	19,79%
Afrikaans	12,4%
English	13,27%

Population: 12 272 263

Percentage share of the total population: 24%

Area: 18 178 km^2

Mid-year population estimates, 2013

By 2013, foreign and domestic investments facilitated by the Gauteng Growth and Development Agency created a total 2 441 permanent jobs and 768 temporary jobs. This amounts to a total of 3 209 jobs created.

and bigger firms, assist in transforming the province's and South Africa's economy. Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville. Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa (Unisa) is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary learning institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

From the lower ground floor of the Carlton Centre or "The roof of Africa" as it is popularly known it only takes 45 seconds for the lift to reach the top floor. The skyscraper, which houses both offices and shops and offers venue facilities, is one of South Africa's well known buildings. The five-star Carlton Hotel has 30 stories. The Carlton Centre is one of Johannesburg's popular tourist attractions.

The major gold and diamond mining houses all have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

In 2013, the Innovation Hub signed a funding agreement with the Jobs Fund for the expansion of the Coachlab programme, which is aimed at fast-tracking the development of world-class resources for the local high-tech sector by preparing information and communications technology (ICT) postgraduates for entry to the job market place as active and industry-ready knowledge workers. The expansion of the Coachlab programme will broaden access to 100 unemployed graduates and an additional 50 unemployed matriculants. The Gauteng Investment Centre, launched in 2013, hosted 52 trade missions during 2013/14.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal's western boundary.

The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films *Zulu* (1964) and *Yesterday* (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel *Cry, the Beloved Country*, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban, as well as agricultural and forestry industries.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

In June 2013, investors in pulp and paper at about R4 billion and fertilisers at about R1 billion with a potential to create over 1 000 jobs were secured for the Richards Bay IDZ.

The development of the 50-year master plan, which will map the long-term vision of this Special Economic Zone, was concluded in August 2013.

A Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) was signed between the Richards Bay IDZ and a similar entity in Oman, Salalah Free Zone, in 2012. Once the servicing of land is completed, there will be a readily available market for the planned agri-processing plant.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu	77,8%
Afrikaans	1,5%
English	13,1%

Population: 10 267 300

Percentage share of the total population: 19,8%

Area: 94 361 km^2

Mid-year population estimates, 2013

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit. The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane
Principal languages:
Sesotho sa Leboa 52,9%
Tshivenda 16,7%
Xitsonga 16,9%
Population: 5 404 868
Percentage share of the total population: 10,4%
Area: 125 754 km^2
Mid-year population estimates, 2013

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi power station, a new dry-cooled, coal-fired power station, is under construction near Lephalale. It is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to just more than four million people, according to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2013 Report*, with the principle languages being Siswati and isiZulu.

With a surface area of only 79 490 km^2, it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit
Principal languages:
siSwati 27,67%
isiZulu 24,1%
isiNdebele 10%
Population: 4 039 939
Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%
Area: 76 495 km^2
Mid-year population estimates, 2013

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela (previously Nelspruit) is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni (previously Witbank), Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8,1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld subregion industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province.

Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. When Kusile power station near Delmas is completed in 2016 it will be the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 MW of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only 1,1 million people on 361 830 km^2 of land.

About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley
Principal languages:
Afrikaans 53,75%
Setswana 33,08%
Population: 1 145 861
Percentage share of the total population: 2,2%
Area: 372 889 km^2
Mid-year population estimates, 2013

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports. Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope (better known as the SKA Project). Developed by scientists from 17 countries, it will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world. Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Trans-

frontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25,6% of South Africa's Colombard vines and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Mining

Mining contributes 27,6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel. Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela (previously known as South Sishen). New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and job losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of 3,5 million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the *Mafikeng Siege*, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

The province boasts various tourist attractions including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust. A portion of one of South Africa's seven Unesco world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

North West

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana	63,38%
Afrikaans	8,96%
isiXhosa	5,51%

Population: 3 509 953

Percentage share of the total population: 6,8%

Area: 140 882 km^2

Mid-year population estimates, 2013

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23,3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg,

In August 2013, the North West Department of Agriculture and Rural Development planted a variety of vegetables and fruit trees for 70 families in Marikana, Segwaelane, Wonderkop and at the local home-based care centre near Rustenburg. This is part of the department's "One family, one food garden" campaign, which aims to combat vitamin and mineral deficiency, which is the leading cause of malnutrition in many rural areas. The activity also represents the call to make every day a Mandela Day.

Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	49,6%
isiXhosa	24,7%
English	20,2%

Population: 5 822 734

Percentage share of the total population: 11,2%

Area: 129 462 km^2

Mid-year population estimates 2013

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", houses Parliament and is South Africa's legislative capital. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbsch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

In October 2013, Lonely Planet named Cape Town as one of the top 10 cities to visit in 2014.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys be-tween mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports.

South Africa's 300-year-old wine industry is based in the south of the province. The region produces 3,1% of the world's wine and is ranked ninth in overall volume production, with 100 200 ha under vines for wine production.

Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

In October 2013, *SAF3*, the new television show running in the United States of America, and already sold worldwide, was being filmed on location in Cape Town. *SAF3* was one of the biggest TV series yet filmed in South Africa, bringing 103 filming days, over 200 jobs, and approximately R160-million into the local economy. All post-production was done in South Africa, which was a first for an international television series of this scale. Cape Town has proved again that it's a film-friendly destination, and it's reaping the benefits.

The Department of Trade and Industry's rebate, which offers international productions like *SAF3* up to 25% of their qualifying South Africa spend back, is also a big incentive for foreign filmmakers.

Industry

The Western Cape economy contributes roughly 14,5% to South Africa's GDP, growing at an average of 3,2% a year. Sectors such as finance, real estate, information and communication technology, retail and tourism have shown substantial growth, and are the main contributors to the regional economy.

Cape Town remains the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montague Gardens, Parow and Retreat.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks, as well as petroleum companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry, are based in the Western Cape.

After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector. The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "Highveld," where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good

Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of southeast Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion. As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The countdown to the 20th anniversary of South Africa's freedom and democracy began with the launch of the Freedom Fridays Campaign on 20 September 2013. It was a call to all South Africans to take pride in their nation and to celebrate the road the country has travelled since 1994.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

The year 2013 marked the 100th anniversary of the Union Buildings in Pretoria. Situated on Meintjieskop overlooking the city, the Union Buildings were originally built to house the entire Public Service of the Union of South Africa. It now not only houses the offices of the President, and is the site of presidential inaugurations, but is also a major tourist attraction.

Designed by Sir Herbert Baker in 1908, building began in 1909 and was completed by 1913. At the time, it was the largest building in the country and possibly the largest construction work undertaken in the Southern Hemisphere. It took about 1 265 artisans, workmen and labourers almost three years to build, using 14 million bricks for the interior office walls, half a million cubic feet of freestone, 74 000 cubic yards of concrete, 40 000 bags of cement and 20 000 cubic feet of granite.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities.

The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once

the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer Government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peas-

antry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley kaSeme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation represent-

ing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act of 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War, in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas."

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development," divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations," each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence," supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums

were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

It was the 60th anniversary of the 1952 women's march in 2012. You strike a woman – you strike a rock! *Wathint' abafazi, wathint' imbokodo*! In 1956, with these words thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women's courage and strength in South Africa. During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women (FSAW). With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African Government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a "reference book" at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to JG Strijdom, South Africa's Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different

A statue of former South African President Nelson Mandela was unveiled in Washington in September 2013 at the spot where thousands of Americans from all walks of life symbolically surrendered their liberty to demand Mandela's release from prison and the freedom of millions of South Africans from the bonds of apartheid.

The nine-foot high statue by Cape Town sculptor Jean Doyle stands outside South Africa's newly-renovated embassy on Massachusetts Avenue. The figure is modelled from photographs of the South African statesman striding triumphantly to freedom on 11 February 1990, after 27 years of incarceration.

residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in "wrong" areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents. The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial

rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more

friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing

programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in June 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government took stock of the first decade of freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014.

Following these elections, President Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the DA 16,6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to existing government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprise the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system.

Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57,6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23,9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

As part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission (NPC) in The Presidency finalised the *National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030* in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

In August 2012, the Chairperson of the NPC, Minister Trevor Manuel, handed the revised NDP 2030 over to President Zuma during a Joint Sitting of both Houses in Parliament. The revised document, entitled *Our future – make it work*, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The Presidency will lead the formulation of the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which includes key targets from the NDP and other plans such as the New Growth Path, National Infrastructure Plan and Industry Policy Action Plan.

The Presidency and National Treasury will work with government departments to clarify roles and responsibilities, ensure that plans and budgets are aligned, and develop clear performance indicators for each programme.

Government will focus on areas where implementation of existing policies needs to improve and will hold focused discussions to overcome obstacles to implementation. It will also engage with other sectors to understand how they are contributing to the NDP's implementation and to identify any obstacles they face.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

The objective of a better life for the people of South Africa, the continent of Africa and the world at large was at the heart of the country's successful hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties in Durban towards the end of 2011. Aware of the fact that Africa is the continent most affected by the impact of climate change, South Africa was committed to ensuring that Durban delivered a fair and balanced outcome that would help secure the future of our planet. The resulting Durban Platform outcome was a coup for South Africa and the African continent.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a nonpermanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal. In January 2012, the UNSC President saw the adoption of Resolution 2033 that provides for closer cooperation between the UN and the AU.

In the conduct of its international relations, South Africa is committed to garnering support for its domestic priorities, promoting the interests of the African continent, enhancing democracy and human rights, upholding justice and international law in relations between nations, seeking the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promoting economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 25 May 2012 the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa.

The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa. The core, i.e. the region with the highest concentration of receivers, will be constructed in the Northern Cape, about 80 km from the town of Carnarvon (the same site where the MeerKAT is being constructed). The sparse aperture array (low-frequency array) will be built in Western Australia.

Over the next few years, teams of radio astronomy scientists and engineers from around the world will work together to scope and finalise the design of the SKA.

In July 2012, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, then Minister of Home Affairs, was elected as the first female head of the AU Commission and the first person from South Africa to hold this position. In September 2012, she received the UN South-South Award for Global Leadership.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc). It is one of the principal organs of the UN, alongside the Security Council and General Assembly. South Africa completed its two-year non-renewable, non-permanent membership of the Security Council on 31 December 2012, and immediately assumed the membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. South Africa last served in Ecosoc from 2004 to 2006.

Released in September 2012, the World Economic Forum's *Global Competitiveness Report 2012/13* confirmed that South Africa remained the most competitive economy in sub-Saharan Africa.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa.

The mining sector, which is historically the backbone of South Africa's economy, faced labour unrest during 2012, culminating in wildcat strikes at Marikana where, sadly, 44 people were killed.

On 16 December 2013, President Jacob Zuma unveiled a nine-metre bronze statue of former President Nelson Mandela at the Union Buildings, where Madiba was inaugurated as South Africa's first democratically elected President on 10 May 1994.

Results showed that the country's population grew to 51,8 million people from 44,8 million in 2001, representing a 15,5% increase over the last decade.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka, was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Nelson Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013.

Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities.

His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

Agriculture

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors are crucial to South Africa's socio-economic development. However, the future of these sectors depends on critical issues such as climate change, population growth, skills shortages, changes in consumer needs and shifts in the global economy and related markets.

The key priorities of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) are therefore, aligned to alleviating poverty, creating employment and improving food security. Added to this, the department focuses on the conservation and sustainable use of the country's natural resources in the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The department's overall responsibilities include production and resource management, agricultural support services, trade and economic development, food safety and biosecurity, forestry, and marine aquaculture.

As one of the most employment-intensive sectors of the economy, agriculture's potential impact on empowerment and poverty relief is much larger than its actual weight in the economy suggests. While the primary agricultural sector contributes about 3% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP), it represents about 7% of formal employment. If the entire value chain of agriculture is taken into account, its contribution to GDP reaches about 12%.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle-ranching in the bushveld and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation.

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa, with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation. Therefore, the expansion of South Africa's forest resources remains one of the department's main objectives to ensure growth, transformation and sustainability of the sector.

As a natural resource, the fisheries sector is also recognised as a potential area for economic growth. The mandate for fisheries management includes fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture.

Broadening the scope of aquaculture will provide the opportunity to increase the production

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries hosted the third Global Conference on Agriculture, Food and Nutrition Security and Climate Change in Johannesburg in December 2013. The conference was convened in partnership with The Netherlands, Vietnam and United States governments.

of fish and other aquatic food species, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources. Through the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the department strives to ensure effective stakeholder engagement and management, as well as advancing the transformation agenda in the sector.

Legislation and frameworks

Subsequent to a tender process, the University of Pretoria was appointed as the service provider to assist the department with the review of all its legislation in 2012.

The following key legislation guides the actions and decision-making of the sector:

- The Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act, 1962 (Act 71 of 1962) provides for the establishment, powers and functions of the South African Veterinary Council; the registration of people practising veterinary and para-veterinary professions and control of the practising of veterinary and para-veterinary professions, and was amended in 2012.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2012 (R' million)

Field crops	
Maize	25 035
Wheat	5 468
Hay	3 976
Grain sorghum	417
Sugar cane	6 117
Groundnuts	553
Tobacco	494
Sunflower seed	2 386
Soya beans	2 394
Other	2 410
Total	**49 250**
Horticulture	
Viticulture	4 131
Citrus fruit	7 906
Subtropical fruit	2 615
Deciduous and other fruit	10 361
Vegetables	9 422
Potatoes	5 297
Other	2 546
Total	**42 278**
Animal products	
Wool	2 168
Poultry and poultry products	37 547
Cattle and cattle products	18 123
Sheep and goats slaughtered	4 109
Pigs slaughtered	3 667
Milk	11 318
Other	3 968
Total	**80 900**
Grand total	**172 428**

Source: Directorate: Statistics and Economic Analysis, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

- The Fertiliser and Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act 36 of 1947) regulates the registration of fertilisers, stock feeds, agricultural remedies, stock remedies, sterilising plants and pest control operators, and provides for control over the acquisition, disposal, sale and use of fertilisers, farm feeds, agricultural remedies and stock remedies.
- Consultation regarding the Plant Breeders' Rights Amendment Bill was underway to replace the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act 15 of 1976). The Bill aims to strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights relevant to new plant varieties, which in turn positively impacts on the competitiveness of South Africa's agricultural sector.
- The Genetically Modified Organisms (GMO) Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997) provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, and states that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity. The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences.
- The Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework of 2005 address agricultural risk management and climate change, and are supplemented by climate change-related policies and programmes.
- The Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000) provides for measures to: promote meat safety and the safety of animal products; establish and maintain essential national standards in respect of abattoirs; regulate the import and export of meat and establish meat safety schemes.
- The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983) provides for control over the use of natural agricultural resources to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, and the combating of weeds and invader plants.
- The Control of Markets in Rural Areas Ordinance, 1965 (Ordinance 38 of 1965).
- The Problem Animals Control Ordinance, 1978 (Ordinance 14 of 1978).
- The Livestock Brands Act, 1962 (Act 87 of 1962) regulates the registration of a brand in the name of an owner of livestock for the purpose of identifying the livestock.
- The Agricultural Credit Act, 1966 (Act 28 of 1966) provides for a system of assistance to people or undertaking to farming operations, and for control in respect of assistance rendered.

- The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 (Act 70 of 1970) regulates the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture. Investigations are conducted by the provincial department in support of the execution of the Act.
- The Plant Improvement Act, 1976 (Act 53 of 1976) provides for the registration of establishments where plants and propagation material are sold and packed, for the introduction of schemes for the certification of certain propagation material, for the requirements to which plants and propagation material sold for the purposes of cultivation must conform and for quality control over plants and propagation material imported or exported.
- The Livestock Improvement Act, 1977 (Act 25 of 1977) regulates the collection and sale of semen and ova and the artificial insemination and in-ovulation of certain animals, the establishment of a system for the evaluation and certification of the performance of certain animals quality control regarding the importation and exportation of certain animals, semen, ova and eggs the incorporation of livestock breeders' societies and the maintenance of the legal personality of livestock breeders' societies and the granting of certain exclusive powers relating to the registration of pedigrees of certain livestock.
- The Cooperatives Act, 1981 (Act 91 of 1981) regulates the formation, registration, management and functioning of various types of co-operative and the winding up and dissolution of cooperatives.
- The Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983) provides for the control of perishable products intended for export from South Africa and for the continued existence of a statutory board to bring about the orderly and efficient export of perishable products from the country.
- The Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983) introduces measures for the prevention and combating of agricultural pests.
- The Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) establishes a juristic person, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC), to undertake agricultural research and regulate matters regarding the ARC's proceedings, powers, duties, management, control, employees, financing and related matters.

In February 2013, the Minister of Labour announced the new wage determination for farmworkers. The new minimum wage, as of 1 March 2013 to 28 February 2014, was pegged at R105 per day (up from R69 a day) for employees who work nine hours a day – or R11,66 per hour, R525 weekly or R2 274,82 per month. The Department of Labour will take action against employers who do not comply with the new sectoral determination for farmworkers.

- The Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990) provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products and other related products, with a view to the maintenance of certain standards regarding the quality of products and packing, marking and labelling.
- The Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act 12 of 1992) provides for the establishment of an Agricultural Produce Agents Council and fidelity funds.
- The Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999) provides for the establishment of a company to manage the institution, the appointment of directors and the holding and disposal of shares in the company.
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem, the long-term sustainable use of marine living resources and the orderly access to exploitation, use and protection of certain marine living resources; and for the exercising of control over marine living resources in a fair and equitable manner for the benefit of all the citizens of South Africa.
- The National Forest Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) allows for an exemption for the use and handling of protected trees and their products; and authorises the Minister to establish a trust, in respect of state forests under certain circumstances.
- The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) reforms the law on veld and forest fires and repeals certain provisions of the Forest Act, 1984 (Act 122 of 1984).
- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and the orderly exploitation, use and protection of certain marine resources; and also provides for the exercise of control over sea fisheries.

Budget and funding

Agricultural economy

The budget of R6,178 billion allocated to the department was distributed as follows: Administration was allocated R663,9 million; Agriculture R4,554 billion; Forestry R525,5 million, and Fisheries R434 million.

Prices and income

The gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2012 was estimated at R171 258 million, compared to R149 774 million the previous year – representing an increase of 11,5%.

This increase can be attributed mainly to an increase in the value of field crops.

The gross value of animal products, field crops and horticultural products contributed 47,2%, 28,3% and 24,5%, respectively, to the total gross, value of agricultural production.

The poultry-meat industry made the largest contribution (17,4%), followed by maize (14,3%) and cattle and calves slaughtered (10,3%). Producer prices of agricultural products increased on average by 11,9% from 2011 to 2012.

The weighted average price of field crops increased by 20,9%. The prices of dry beans increased by 52,5%, cotton by 34,5%, oil seeds by 30,2%, summer grains by 28,1%, hay by 17,7%, sugar cane by 10,3% and winter grains by 1,6%. The price of tobacco declined by 2,7%.

Producer prices of horticultural products rose by 6,6%. Prices of vegetables, viticultural products and fruit increased by 9,7%, 5,2% and 4,6%, respectively.

The weighted average price of animal products increased by 8,7% from 2011. Prices received for dairy products, poultry meat, slaughtered stock and pastoral products increased by 17,2%, 12,1%, 2% and 1,9% respectively.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses, plus the value of changes in inventories) for the year that ended 31 December 2012 amounted to R167 394 million, compared to R146 993 million in 2011 – an increase of 13,9%. The increase can be ascribed mainly to farmers receiving better prices for products in general, but in particular prices of field crops, which improved by 23%; and those of animal products, which were 8,7% higher.

Gross income from field crops increased by 24,4%, to R44 804 million in 2012. Income from maize at R23 813 million was R7 143 million or 42,9% more than in the previous 12 months. Income from groundnuts and grain sorghum showed increases of 42,6% and 34,8%, respectively. Income from wheat increased by 13,2% to R5 254 million.

Income from sugar cane at R6 117 million was 15,6% higher than in the previous year. Income from tobacco increased by 6,9% to R422 million. Income from cotton improved by 71,5%. Gross income from horticultural products increased by 7,9%, from R38 694 million in 2011 to R41 749 million in 2012. Income from deciduous fruit at R10 231 million was only 7% up on 2011.

Income from subtropical fruit increased by 8,9% to R2 608 million. Income from vegetables increased by 10,1% to R14 757 million, and that from viticulture by 10,9% to R3 987 million. Income from citrus increased by only 1,8% and amounted to R7 872 million.

Gross income from animal products was 11,9% higher in 2012 than in 2011 and amounted to R80 841 million, compared to R72 271 million. Red-meat producers earned R18 171 million from slaughtered cattle and calves, against the previous R17 436 – an increase of 4,2%. Income from slaughtered sheep rose by 10,9%, from R3 220 million to R3 571 million. Income from poultry-meat production increased by 16,8% to R29 845 million. Income from egg production, at R7 961 million, was 7,6% higher than in the previous year. Producers earned R11 036 million from milk production, which was 19,7% more than in the previous year. Income from wool increased by 11,6% to R2 167 million.

Nett farm income amounted to R51 423 million for the year ending 31 December 2012, which is 20,5% higher than in the previous 12 months.

Salaries and wages, which represented 10,9% of total farming costs, amounted to R13 241 million. Interest paid by farmers to banks and other financiers was estimated at R5 674 million, or 4,8% of total farming cost.

Role players

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (the Land Bank) (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the State (1%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

The Land Bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services to the commercial farming sector and agribusiness, and make available financial products to new entrants to agriculture from historically disadvantaged backgrounds.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa)

Mafisa is a scheme that provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. Mafisa loans were initially restricted to agricultural enterprises, but following the incorporation of the forestry and fisheries subsectors into the department of agriculture, the credit policy is under review so that it can also cater for these two subsectors.

The national commemoration of the annual World Food Day was held on 16 October, in North West.

Loans are provided at 8% interest and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DAFF as retail intermediaries. Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the department as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria. Loans of up to R25 000 can be granted without security. Most of the loans disbursed are in respect of livestock, sugar cane and grain crops. Though the scheme caters for the entire value chain of the three subsectors, most of the loans disbursed by October 2013, were for primary agriculture.

Agri South Africa (AgriSA)

AgriSA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves some 70 000 large and small commercial farmers.

On behalf of its members, AgriSA promotes the development, profitability and stability of commercial agriculture through its involvement and input at national and international policy levels.

Agricultural Business Chamber

The Agricultural Business Chamber is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably, and prosper as a result. Other focus areas include:

- serving the broader and common business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa
- facilitating considerable networking opportunities, so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment
- being involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (Nafu)

Nafu was established in 1991 to create a home for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. Nafu has members all over South Africa who have constituted themselves into regional unions. The union draws its members from a very broad base that includes farmers, agri-businesses, farmers' organisations, corporations and individuals who support Nafu's objectives and goals.

The African Farmers' Association of South Africa (Afasa)

In February 2013, Afasa welcomed the budget allocation of R6,2 billion to support the growth and development of smallholder farmers. The DAFF is expected to support smallholder farmers through conditional grants such as the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (Casp), LandCare Programme, Ilima/Letsema Programme, as well as the mobilisation of farmers, women and youth into agricultural cooperatives. Afasa is South Africa's official representative of black and smallholder farmers.

Veterinary services

Veterinary public health and food safety aspects, in relation to animal products, remain a priority and are receiving increasing attention. The department has set aside R100 million for the Primary Animal Health Care Programme. Special attention is being given to the major rehabilitation of existing infrastructure, as well as the building of new clinics, animal health centres and other animal-handling facilities. Mobile veterinary vehicles will also be considered for remote areas. These efforts support the creation of an enabling environment for the planned Compulsory Community Service Programme for newly qualified veterinarians.

Agricultural Research Council

By May 2013, the ARC had successfully implemented the Animal Improvement Scheme, aimed at improving the performance, competitiveness and efficiencies of smallholder farmers, through the application of practical scientific approaches to breeding and management of livestock.

Through this scheme, the number of participating smallholder farmers increased from 920 in 2012, to 4 075 livestock producers by the end of March 2013.

During 2013/14, the ARC increased the number of farmers participating in the scheme by an additional 2 000. This included collaboration with other organisations such as the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and

the Independent Development Trust (IDT). The ARC will also continue providing services such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer to smallholder farmers.

The ARC renders innovative and smart solutions, which help farmers eliminate pests and eradicate diseases such, as foot-and-mouth and rabies. Vaccines are a highly specialised animal health area. Therefore, the ARC conducts clinical trials ensuring the efficacy and effectiveness of such remedies for the livestock sector.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) state-owned company (SOC) Ltd

OBP SOC was corporatised in 2000 under the OBP Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999).

The OBP's mandate is the prevention and control of animal diseases that impact on food security, human health and livelihood. This mandate is delivered through the continued development of innovative products and efficient manufacturing processes that ensure the affordability and accessibility of vaccines through diverse distribution channels

The OBP possesses the capability, skills and scientific expertise to combat animal disease through the large-scale production of specialised animal vaccines. The company produces millions of doses per year to control as many as 50 different diseases and is an acknowledged world leader in the battle against disease.

Experiments at the OBP have seen encouraging progress in the development of new and improved vaccines against African horse sickness, which, despite the development of immunisation programmes, remains a constant threat to farmers, breeders and owners.

Products

The field crop planted over the largest area of farmland is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflower seed. The grain industry is one of the largest industries in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

According to the *Economic Review of South African Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops increased by 24,9% to R44 804 million for 2012.

Grains

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with production averaging about 10,4 million tons (Mt) a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that over 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for most of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are responsible for the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. Some 11,5 Mt of maize were commercially produced in 2012/13 on 2,8 million ha of land.

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2012, 1,9 Mt were produced on 511 200 ha of land.

Malting barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 84 940 ha in 2012, and production totalled 298 000 t.

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West. In 2012/13, an estimated 62 620 ha were planted, with production totalling 154 494 t.

Oilseeds

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape. An area of 46 900 ha was planted in 2012/13, producing 42 300 t.

Sunflower seed is produced in the Free State, North West, the Mpumalanga highveld and in Limpopo. South Africa is the world's 13th largest producer of sunflower seed. An area of 504 700 ha was planted in 2012/13, producing 566 600 t.

Soya beans are produced mainly Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. For the 2013 production season, soya beans were planted on 516 500 ha, with production totalling 787 100 t.

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. Small quantities have been planted in North West and Limpopo. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans. For the 2012 production season, the canola crop was estimated at 79 000 t on an area of 44 100 ha.

Sugar

South Africa produces cost-competitive high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of by-products. The cane-growing sector comprises about 29 130 registered sugar-cane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and the Eastern Cape.

Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.

About 430 000 ha are under sugarcane production, with 68% grown within 30 km of the coast and 16% in the high rainfall areas of KwaZulu-Natal. The remainder is grown in the northern irrigated areas that comprise Pongola and Mpumalanga lowveld. The industry produces an estimated average of 19,9 Mt of sugarcane (2,2 Mt of sugar) per season. About 60% of this sugar is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu).

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion rand industry. It is based on scientific research and development, resulting in optimum harvests and quality, a large variety of cultivars, and finely controlled storage methods. Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley of the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2012, South Africa produced 1 694 452 t of deciduous fruit, 36 774 t more than in 2011.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in the Northern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa. It is grown under irrigation, as well as in dry-land conditions. Some 9 397 ha are dedicated to cotton production, with 77% under irrigation.

It is estimated that about 160 commercial farmers and about 600 small-scale farmers planted cotton in the 2012/13 production year.

DID YOU KNOW?

- In 1992, South Africa exported 21 Mℓ of wine. By 2001, the country had exported 217 Mℓ and by August 2012, 377 Mℓ.
- Local sales are growing by about 4% year-on-year and exports by 7,8%.
- There are about 3 600 wine farmers in the Western Cape and vineyards of more than 100 000 ha.
- South Africa's share in the international wine market is about 5%.
- Almost 22% of South Africa's wine exports are to the United Kingdom.
- Wine tourism generates almost R5 billion a year in the Western Cape and creates thousands of jobs.

A total of 9 397 ha of cotton were planted in 2012/13, of which 77% was under irrigation and 23% under dry land. During the 2012/13 production season, the average production yield for South Africa was 3,5 t seed cotton per ha.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Western Cape and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 79% to total production, with the number of ha cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. The industry produces 12 million kg of flue-cured tobacco and three million kg of air-cured leaf tobacco a year.

There are 170 tobacco growers in South Africa operating on some 5 000 ha of land. Tobacco farmers employ about 8 000 farm-workers and support about 40 000 dependants in total.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Cederberg area of the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

Some 230 ha of honeybush tea are under cultivation. It is harvested from the natural mountainous veld in the Langeberg and Swartberg in the Eastern and Western Cape and processed at farm processing facilities.

The honeybush industry has the potential to grow from an annual average of 150 t of processed tea to 1 500 t by 2021 and to increase turnover from R10 million to R100 million. South Africa produces about 200 t of honeybush tea a year. Local and international demand exceeds supply.

Fewer than 10 farmers cultivate only 30% of honeybush tea, and the rest (70%) is harvested in the wild. In August 2012, the ARC launched a new guide that will help small and emerging farmers to get started with this indigenous crop.

Due to the growing interest in the health properties of natural products and specifically ,herbal teas, many biochemists around the world are investigating rooibos. The rooibos plant grows well in the Cederberg area, where temperatures drop to 0° during the winter months and rise to 48° at the height of summer. On average, South Africa produces about 12 000 t

of rooibos tea a year. South Africans consume 4 500 to 5 000 t and the rest is exported.

Stress, ageing, cancer and obesity are some of the lifestyle challenges that featured prominently in the South African Rooibos Council's R2-million research budget in 2012. In addition to these health-focused projects, researchers also received funding to explore the chemistry, composition and flavour profile of this unique African herbal tea, or to advance organic and environmentally friendly rooibos farming. Prominent, independent researchers at South African universities and science councils lead the research projects.

Wine

South Africa is described as the most exciting New World wine-producing country, thanks to a combination of old vines, new regions and wine-making talent. Record harvests, a weaker rand and poor European crops benefit South African wine-makers.

According to Wines of South Africa, which represents all local wine exporters, there was a 40% increase in exports in the first six months of 2013 ,compared to the same period in 2012.

In July 2013, Wines of South Africa and the Western Cape Department of Agriculture hosted a wine-tasting event in Beijing, showcasing 250 South African wines. Packaged exports – bottled or box wine – to China have increased by 73% in the past four years. The first five months of 2013 yielded a 53% increase in total exports.

According to the *Global Trade Atlas*, South Africa is the seventh largest volume exporter to China.

South Africa is also the only wine-producing country that can track individual bottles of wine from the vineyard to the final product – a unique guarantee of quality and food safety.

The four biggest markets for packaged wine are the United Kingdom (UK), Sweden, Germany and the Netherlands.

South Africa is the eighth largest wine producer in the world. The 2012 wine grape crop size was estimated at 1 414 474 t, according to the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems. This was 8,6% more than the 2011 crop. With the exception of the Orange River, Paarl, Stellenbosch and Malmesbury, crops in all nine cultivation districts increased.

The 2012 crop – including juice and concentrate for non-alcoholic purposes, wine for brandy and distilling wine – amounted to 1 095,1 Mℓ. This was 8,1% more than the 2011 wine crop.

Domestic natural wine sales increased by 2,7% between 2011 and 2012. Exports of natural wine in bulk increased by 43,9% and exports of packaged natural wine decreased by 8,7% for the period 2011 to 2012.

South Africa is looking at a solution to counter the impact of a decision by UK retailers to import South African wine in bulk and bottle it there. In 2011/12, 52% of South Africa's certified wine was exported in bulk. Wine in bulk means that South Africa does not have the brand identity associated with its high quality wine. The decision is also likely to affect the development of other ancillary and downstream industries such as the glass bottle industry.

Cabinet has approved the development of a five-year industry strategy for sustainable growth and to reduce the environmental costs of producing wine.

A consumer awareness programme, as well as a study on the impact of possible bulk imports of whisky from the UK, among other things, has also been approved.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume, after Spain and Turkey.

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and occurs in Limpopo (23 753 ha), Eastern Cape (13 951 ha), Western Cape (8 970 ha), Mpumalanga (9 111 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (3 284 ha), and Northern Cape (1 418 ha).

Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Other sub-tropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced, mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as tin he subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Vegetables

Potatoes are grown in 16 distinct potato production regions throughout the country.

About 30% of South Africa's potato crop is produced in the Free State, 22% in Limpopo and 17% in the Sandveld area of the Western Cape.

South Africa's wine industry saw the biggest grape crop ever produced, after a bumper 2013 harvest season. According to the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems, the 2013 wine grape crop reached about 1,5 Mt – 5,6%.

The 2013 wine harvest – including juice and concentrate for non-alcoholic purposes, wine for brandy and distilling wine – amounted to 1 152 million litres, calculated at an average recovery of 773 litres per ton of grapes.

About 87% of the country's total potato crops is produced under irrigation. Of the total crop, 39% is delivered to fresh produce markets and 17% is processed. Frozen French fries comprise 42% processed potato products.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing about 36% to total income from vegetables. In 2012, the gross value of potatoes was R5 296,8 million. During 2012, some 2 251 000 t of potatoes were produced.

Overall vegetable production, excluding potatoes, in the 2012 season reached 2,733 Mt, up 6,6% from the previous season, when 2,564 Mt were harvested.

Vegetable consumption increased in 2012 to 45,7 kg per capita (+4,2%).

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga lowveld and middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In 2012, 565 000 t of tomatoes were produced, with a gross value of R1 721 million. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba (3 260 ha), Mooketsi and Musina (860 ha). Limpopo's total annual production is about 230 000 t.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State, and in all areas of Limpopo with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year. In 2012, the gross value of onions was R1 369,1 million. In 2012, 633 297 t of onions were produced.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. South African cabbage production decreased in 2012 by 9 246 t or 6,5%, to 136 367 t. During 2012, the gross value of cabbage and red cabbage production totalled R203,1 million.

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape produce small quantities of this crop. Local demand is substantially higher than local production and, therefore, large quantities of dry beans are imported each year. In 2013, some 60 200 t of dry beans were produced on 43 350 ha of land.

In September 2013, government announced a national policy on food and nutrition security for South Africa. The policy includes the Food Production Intervention named Fetsa Tlala (end hunger). Fetsa Tlala ensures that underused agricultural land is brought under production. The department brought 200 000 ha of land under production in seven provinces. The targeted goal is one million ha in the next five years.

Livestock

Agriculture forms a critical part of South Africa's socio-economic and socio-political stability. Animal production contributes approximately 48% to the country's agricultural output in terms of value. The industry employs about 500 000 people.

The ARC, in partnership with all the provinces, will roll out the implementation of the Livestock Development Programme. In this initiative, the ARC will introduce and expand on the dissemination of technologies, such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer.

The National Agriculture Marketing Council (NAMC) is also actively engaged in a programme to introduce farmers to the structure, operation and requirements of the formal red meat market. This is the National Red Meat Development Programme (NRMDP). It works with emerging and communal farmers to increase the income earned from raising cattle through greater and more beneficial participation in formal red meat markets.

The National Livestock Development Strategy aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

Dairy farming

Milk production in South Africa contributes about 0,5% to the world's milk production. South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with, significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its by-products.

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with some 2 700 milk producers employing 60 000 farmworkers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain, such as milk processing.

In November 2012, South Africa hosted the World Dairy Summit. It was attended by 56 member countries of the International Dairy Federation that represent 86% of the world dairy production community, which is the highest participation in recent years. The DAFF is also a member of its committee.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The amount of beef produced depends on

infrastructure such as feedlots and abattoirs, and not necessarily on the number of cattle available in those areas. South Africa has a highly developed transport infrastructure that allows for movement of cattle from one area to another, even to and from neighbouring countries, for example, Namibia. Commercial farmers own 59% of the 14 million cattle available in South Africa. There are 27 popular breeds in South Africa including the Brahman, indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni, Tuli, Boron, Bonsmara, Drakensberger, Simbra, Beefmaster, Angus and Braford.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

South Africa has about 8 000 commercial sheep farms and about 5 800 communal farmers. In 2012, most of the estimated 24,4 million sheep in South Africa were found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce.

Mutton sheep are found mostly in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape, with the most popular mutton breed being the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found. Karakul sheep are found in the more arid areas.

The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (38%), followed by Limpopo (19%). The indigenous meat-producing boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilograms, accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Pig and poultry farming

The South African pork industry is relatively large, in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 2,15% to the primary agricultural sector. The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers received. Some 2,5 million pigs were slaughtered during 2012.

The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, since the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

According to the Bureau of Food and Agricultural Policy, as reported in the *Porcus* magazine, demand for pork meat in South Africa for domestic use has increased by 24% since 2007, which may be attributed to the marketing strategy for pork meat and consumption in the past three to four years.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa with Limpopo and North West being the largest producers, accounting for 44% of total production. There are about 4 000 commercial, 19 stud and about 110 smallholder pig farmers; they own about 125 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 25 000, smallholder farmers); they employ about 10 000 workers, comprising about 4 000 farm-workers and 6 000 workers in the processing and abattoir sectors. The 46 registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a stream lined slaughtering process. The predominant pig breeds are the South African Land Race, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain.

The poultry industry (including meat and eggs) continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa, and is the main supplier of protein in kilogram terms to the South African consumer, as more poultry products are consumed per annum than all other animal protein sources combined.

The poultry industry is an essential component of South Africa's food value chain. It is the single largest component of the agricultural sector in the country by turnover.

In 2012, broiler production, especially broiler meat production, was the largest segment of South African agriculture at 17,6%, while all animal products in South Africa contributed 48,2%. The farm income from broiler meat for 2012 was R29,5 billion.

Poultry has shown an upward trend in consumption over the past five decades, as chicken remains an affordable protein source, relative to other sources of meat protein and has remained comparatively priced in a time of weak economic performance.

Although poultry producers remain the largest segment of South African agriculture, they

In March 2013, the Minister of Trade and Industry handed over fishing boats to the Ocean View community in Cape Town. The Department of Trade and Industry supported the Fishing Cluster Project in the West Coast region with almost R11 million.

The goal of the project is to create a viable and sustainable fisheries industry by putting in place a comprehensive package of support measures to create jobs, as well as income-generating opportunities.

The project is intended to broaden the participation of small-scale fishing communities to higher commercial, value activities. It is expected that the boats will create employment opportunities for locals.

have been faced with challenges regarding input prices, which put profit margins in broiler production under pressure.

The volatility in price and profitability is inherent to the broiler industry, since biological factors, such as poultry diseases and prolonged turnaround times in the production chain, combined with hikes in feed costs, electricity and fuel have a direct impact on production costs.

When such increases in production costs coincide with a downswing in the economy and poor demand for the product, profit margins become severely depressed. The broiler industry had to deal with this situation over the past four years.

According to the South African Poultry Association, consumption of poultry meat amounted to 1,885 Mt in 2012, total poultry production was 1,489 Mt, imports totalled 404 163 t and exports 8 135 t.

Poultry production minus poultry exports totalled 1,481 Mt or 74%; subsistence farming contributed 57 763 t or 2,9%; depleted flock came to 54 754 t or 2,7%; and imports totalled 404 163 t or 20,2% of total consumption.

Chicken imports contributed 91% to total poultry imports, turkey imports amounted to 8% and ducks, geese or guinea fowl totalled 0,1%.

The per capita consumption of poultry meat was 36,81 kg a year, compared to 36,12 kg in 2011.

The gross value of primary agricultural production from poultry meat, inclusive of all types of poultry, for the period 2012 was R29,845 billion, reflecting an annual increase of 16,8%.

Along with being the primary source of protein, the poultry industry remains an important contributor to job creation and employment opportunities. Some 10% of all agricultural sector workers are employed in the poultry sector.

Considering the dominance of the poultry industry in South Africa, it also has the largest influence on the feed industry as its main customer. The South African Poultry Association estimates that a total of 107 857 people (48 118 direct and 59 739 indirect) are employed in the broiler, hatchery, rearing, processing and distribution industries.

At a gross turnover of R7,961 billion at producer level, eggs take their place as the fourth largest animal product sector in agriculture in South Africa.

According to the *South African National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey* released in August 2013, more than half of South Africans do not have regular access to enough food.

The South African Poultry Association reported that the total value of chicken eggs at retail level was R8,2 billion for 2012. About 646 million dozen eggs were sold in 2012 through various channels.

Total imports of eggs, including shell eggs and egg products (liquid and dried), amounted to 267 t in 2012 and egg exports totalled 3 254 t. Shell eggs contributed 43% of total egg exports. Egg products contributed 57% or 1 843 t, with liquid egg products amounting to 1 670 t or 51% of total exports.

Annual per capita egg consumption increased steadily over the past four years, from 135 eggs in 2009 to 156 eggs in 2012. Considerable scope exists for increased per capita consumption, particularly taking into account the price competitiveness of eggs as a protein source, compared to other animal proteins.

The industry remains an important player in the job sector, with an estimated 8 000 workers employed during 2012.

Game ranching

The South African wildlife ranching sector is a unique sector that is widely recognised as one of the world leaders in the use of wildlife for farming/ranching purposes. The sector has shown extraordinary growth over the years, with the number of game farms operating in the country increasing from 3 500 in 1992 to about 10 000 in 2011.

Most game farms are situated in Limpopo, followed by the Northern and Eastern Cape, respectively. The wildlife ranching industry employs consumptive and non-consumptive uses of wildlife.

Consumptive use includes venison production (game meat and biltong), and trophy and recreational hunting; while non-consumptive use includes eco-tourism activities and accommodation.

Therefore, the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries, environmental affairs, and tourism are significant role-players in the wildlife ranching sector. The wildlife ranching industry contributes about R8 billion to the South African economy.

Limpopo is responsible for the highest number of game auctions held, as well as the highest turnover in the wildlife ranching industry.

In terms of meat production, the wildlife ranching sector produces 10% of the red meat in the country, and between 600 and 2 000 t of game meat are exported yearly.

The *ABSA 2012 Agricultural Outlook* projects game meat production, especially the export of meat, to be a potential large-income earner for the game farming industry, in future.

The DAFF has long recognised the potential of this sector for addressing food security, job creation, and rural development; with an investigation into the marketing potential for South African game farming conducted by the NAMC, in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996) in 2006. In 2013, the DAFF finalised a game farming policy, which underwent a lengthy process of public consultation as well as extensive consultation with the relevant departments, such as the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) and industry role-players such as Wildlife Ranching South Africa to facilitate the development of a sustainable wildlife ranching sector with the potential to accommodate new entrants.

Programmes and projects

Regulatory services

The department's regulatory activities include the inspection of plants, animals and their products to ensure that imported animals and their products are free from disease, and imported and exported plants and products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organisation for Animal Health.

Disease reports are received from the Organisation for Animal Health and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products is regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department also conducts inspections at designated ports of entry. Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements among trading partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant health, genetic resources and food and quality-assurance legislation. Various surveys are also conducted throughout the country.

The Pest Risk-Analysis Division conducts scientific analysis of risks posed, based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited.

Early detection of economically important exotic pests is ensured through surveillance, detection and rapid response to prevent them from spreading.

Closely linked to early detection is the implementation of proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the department ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

Despite having maintained the country's lucrative fruit export markets, production and exports are still under threat. Accordingly, imports of host fruit from countries where pests have been established must be appropriately managed. This emphasises the importance of border control and risk management responsibilities.

To further strengthen contingency planning regarding pests and diseases, the Emergency Plant Pest Response Plan was developed for implementation in 2013/14.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and to which South Africa is a signatory, including the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the department collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The DAFF also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The department and the Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB) work closely to assist South Africans – within the ambit of the law – to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

During 2012/13, the PPECB went from a R16 million loss to a financial break-even situation.

The PPECB has revised the PPEC Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983). It is hoped that once the new Act is promulgated, it will enable the PPECB to modernise its business offerings to the public

and put the PPECB's business model on a more sustainable footing.

National analytical services

The DAFF has laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch that conduct analytical services. They support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products. The laboratory has been working on a project to expand the scope of testing for pesticide residues.

Risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as Nafu, AgriSA, TAU SA and ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DAFF, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture such as Nafu, AgriSA, TAU SA and ARC, and relevant directorates within the department. The department frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of the blackfly pest.

Weather and climate

Climate change

The agriculture sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate mainly through the DEA, but the DAFF, as well as other departments such as those of mineral resources, energy, science and technology, and water affairs are also involved.

The Climate Change Programme implemented by the DAFF includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other objectives, aims to enhance collaborative research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research.

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DAFF has, therefore, developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk. The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Floods and droughts

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower-than-average agricultural production yields. The DAFF has completed two policy documents: the Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan and the Agricultural Drought-Management Plan. An amount of more than R990 million has been made available through the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework period until 2014/15 as part of the flood-assistance scheme.

In August 2013, North West was declared a drought-stricken area after below average rainfall since 2012, which has had a very negative impact on livestock in all regions of the province.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DAFF and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The *National Land Type Survey*, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision-making at national level. All available natural-resource spatial infor-mation and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis). Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fires Information System (Afis)

tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradio-meter satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at *afis.meraka.org.za*

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as very low to low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the “maize quadrangle” in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dry land and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent resulting and awareness of it have increased sharply over the last two decades. Switching to overhead and micro-regulation systems, and the, widespread effects on crusting-prone soils have contributed to the problem. Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. Soil-fertility degradation is a concern. In commercial agriculture, there has been nutrient capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way to meet the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The latest approval of GM crops for commercial use was in 2012, for GM maize that is resistant to certain insect species and herbicide-tolerant. In 2012, the area under GM crop production was estimated to be 2,9 million ha. Of the total (2,73 million ha) maize produced, 86% (2,428 million ha) is estimated to be genetically modified. The adoption rate for herbicide-tolerant soybean is 90%, and for cotton, 100%.

LandCare Programme

The National LandCare Programme is a government-supported community-based initiative which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and co-operation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources
- use them in a sustainable way
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces, in terms of the Yearly Division of Revenue.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare Programme.

The fifth Biennial National Landcare Conference was held at the Mmabatho Convention Centre in Mafikeng, North West, from 1 to 4 October 2012. The theme of the conference was *LandCare: Sustaining Natural Resource Management 15 Years and Beyond for Better Livelihoods.* It brought together interested parties within the agricultural resources management sector, to discuss how the programme has addressed degradation, poverty and food security; to reward communities that have taken bold leadership on custodianship of natural agricultural resources, and to seek ways to address challenges facing the sector.

WaterCare

WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. Irrigated agriculture is by far the biggest

single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. It contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production. The DAFF has embarked on a process to rehabilitate irrigation schemes that have the potential to increase food production, eradicate poverty, create jobs and contribute to economic growth.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine are produced under irrigation. The department has identified the revitalisation of irrigation schemes and development as a priority area.

VeldCare

This programme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production.

It develops and maintains agricul-tural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development.

Economic and social development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

This programme encourages rural farmers to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

The Conservation Agriculture (CA) approach has encouraged the proactive and sustainable use of agricultural natural resources. CA aims to ensure the effective and sustainable use and management of natural resources through minimum disturbance of the soil. CA integrates the management of soil, water and biological resources, to maintain and enhance land productivity and reduce the level of risk. It further aims to protect the potential of natural resources, prevent soil and water degradation and ensure economic viability with a reduction in vulnerability to the effects of climate change. The result of these practices will ensure continued household and national food security through crop production, while conserving the environment. CA is characterised by three principles:

- minimum mechanical soil disturbance (minimum tillage)
- permanent organic soil cover, particularly through available crop residues
- diversified crop-rotation practices.

The 2013 Gauteng Female Farmer of the Year and the National Female Entrepreneur of the Year was Sphiwe Machika from Rethabiseng. She won these accolades because of her excellent work at Rethabiseng Sustainable Farm.

Junior LandCare

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes promoting food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Smallholder development

In support of food security, the DAFF has persistently strengthened its support for smallholder producers and continues to do so with the involvement of both internal and external partners.

Support to smallholder producers is being synchronised through the department's co-ordinated Programme Management Unit, which comprises all DAFF technical support units.

The Programme Management Unit has been established to reinforce smallholder support activities of the already existing Smallholder Development Working Group, which is constituted by other national government departments, the ARC and the provincial departments of agriculture. Smallholder access to markets is pursued and engagements with institutions such as the World Food Programme and the Food and Agriculture Organisation for such market opportunities are at an advanced stage.

A web-based platform of the supported smallholder producers is being developed to ensure proper data and updates on all smallholder activities. The implementation of the approved Strategic Plan for Smallholder Support is on track with support funding received from the Department of Trade and Industry's Employment Creation Fund.

Small-scale sugar cane farmers in the Nkomazi area of Mpumalanga are to benefit significantly from government's Jobs Fund and are expected to double their production and create 1 544 new and sustainable jobs.

The farms should, over a five-year period, increase production from 450 000 tons of cane to 850 000 tons per year.

The Jobs Fund was announced by President Jacob Zuma during the State of the Nation Address in 2011. In June 2011, the Minister of

Finance set aside R9 billion for the Jobs Fund, to be allocated over a three-year period.

The fund is targeted at established companies with a good track record and which plan to expand existing programmes or pilot innovative approaches to employment creation, with a special focus on opportunities for young people.

Akwandze Agricultural Finance Ltd, through funding provided by the Jobs Fund, is addressing this need by ensuring these farmers can get adequate, cost-effective and appropriate financing with favourable terms.

Akwandze is also providing a package of associated farmer support initiatives such as on-site service back-up, training and capacity building.

According to the South Africa Sugar Association, the number of small-scale sugar growers has declined by 33% – from 50 000 in 2005 to around 33 700 in 2011. The productivity of small-scale farmers has also been declining. The tonnage in sugar produced by small-scale farmers has dropped from 850 000 at its peak to 450 000 tons per annum.

Akwandze is also supporting a cooperative of 216 small-scale farmers called Siboshwa to expand their growing area of 83 ha by 20 ha, developing their irrigation infrastructure and ensuring everything is in place to maintain it according to manufacturer specifications. This should allow them to produce another 2 000 t of cane.

Akwandze has matched a grant of R50 million from the Jobs Fund with a further R70 million and will recapitalise irrigation infrastructure for 1 281 small-scale growers, which will help to rehabilitate 10 000 ha of sugar cane land.

Akwandze will also extend its lending capacity to the growers for replanting, fertilizer, weeding and irrigation costs. The result should be to double the total annual tonnage of sugar cane produced by small-scale growers in Nkomazi.

It is anticipated that the Akwandze Project will create 1 544 new full-time jobs and increase turnover for these small-scale growers.

Extension and advisory services

Over the past five years the DAFF has implemented an extension and advisory revitalisation programme worth R1,1 billion. To improve the ratio of extension officers to farmers, more than 1 200 extension and advisory officers had been recruited by the end of 2012/13.

To ensure that these officers are visible and accountable on the ground, the Digital Pen technology has been rolled out nationally. This technology is used by extension personnel to record their interaction with clients and allows the taking of pictures on site for evidence purposes.

To ensure access to appropriate information, the Extension Suite Online system has been adopted nationally.

This computerised system enables extension officers to access relevant information during their interaction with the farmers in the field.

For them to render effective service, extension officers have been equipped with working tools. A total of 15 515 information and communications technology equipment items have been allocated and put to use.

These include cellphones, Global Positioning System devices, laptops, printers and vehicles.

Training and research

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

At grassroots level, South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects and specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

Universities (including those with and without designated faculties of agriculture) offer advanced degree courses and Bachelor of Technology degrees. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the DAFF coordinates all agricultural research and development activities.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation. The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of

national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Develop-ment Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development matters within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government and others on the coordination of research and development and technology transfer to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability. Annual meetings are held to discuss research needs, priorities and budgeting.

Animal identification

Under the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002) the Minister declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the South African Police Service through the State Information Technology Agency to help it trace individual animals to their owners.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

Regulation services

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the DAFF.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the department, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme to quarantine fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention.

In September 2013, the Department of Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration invited emerging livestock farmers in Mpumalanga to apply for help under the Masibuyele Esibayeni (back to the kraal) initiative. The programme seeks to improve food security, community upliftment, rural development and agrarian reform as part of the Zero Hunger Strategy.

Breeding stock is loaned to certain farmers for either five years in the case of large stock or three years in the case of small stock.

Successful applicants will receive one performance bull and 25 pregnant heifers, one dairy bull and 50 dairy cows, one male goat and 25 females, one ram and 25 ewes, and one boar and 10 sows.

Food security

Food security was high on the agenda at the fifth Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) Summit in Durban, in March 2013. Food security was an important issue for the BRICS member countries, and South Africa and the continent had a lot to offer in this regard.

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted, and which prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the UN World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

In October 2013, President Zuma launched government's food security programme, Fetsa Tlala, in Kuruman in the Northern Cape. Government has made available R2 billion to support Fetsa Tlala.

The programme is managed by the DAFF. The Government's Integrated Food Security Production Intervention Programme was introduced in 2012 to afford smallholder farmers, communities and households the ability to increase production of basic food. This intervention will be managed over a period of 10 years from 2012 to 2022. The programme is intended to promote self-sufficiency and food security by getting communities to plant their own food.

The revival of Tugela Estate in KwaZulu-Natal forms part of efforts aimed at promoting agriculture and reviving agriculture to become an important regional contributor to the gross domestic product.

Significant work has been done to link subsistence and emerging farmers to the markets in the first economy. KwaZulu-Natal has many underused land-reform farms and irrigation schemes such as Tugela Estates, Texas Valley Farms and others.

Regional and international cooperation and trade

Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in the southern African region through the SADC and Sacu.

The department continues to expand its trade relations with other countries on the African continent and other countries in the world through bilateral cooperation agreements.

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee of the Regional Food Security Training Programme.

The Regional Food Security Training Programme was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the Regional Advisory Committee. Its activities focus on strengthening the supply of food-security training services; strengthening the effective demand for training and development; and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954.

Regional plant protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable regional coordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention. The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation for Africa. The council came into being as the African Union's phytosanitary coordinating body.

The SADC has produced the MoU on the Harmonisation of Seed Regulations in the SADC Region, which is based on three technical documents, namely the Regional Variety Release System Seed Certification and Quality Assurance; and Quarantine and Phytosanitary Measures.

Lower costs and simpler administration will encourage local small-scale seed producers and suppliers to expand their activities.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of Sacu and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. Sacu opened its markets to the countries of the region by implementing the first phase of tariff reduction. The signatories to the SADC Agreement are Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries.

The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DAFF is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

International cooperation

In 2013, the KwaZulu-Natal provincial government received proposals from Healthy Agro and Heritage Dairies in India. These proposals offered to provide operating finances for the proposed initiative, if the landowners and farmers made land available, organise, themselves into a community business entity and government funded infrastructure rehabilitation and repairs.

Healthy Agro and Heritage Dairies are the largest agricultural businesses in southern India. However, India lacks land to meet the food needs of its growing population.

The company wishes to grow pulses (lentils and beans) on 500 ha of Tugela Estates. This crop will be exported to India and 30% of the profits will be paid to the Tugela Farmers' Business Entity. Further more, the company wants community farmers to grow 50 ha of vegetables on the rest of the scheme. It will buy vegetables from the community and all vegetable profits will go to the farmers.

Healthy Agro also wants government to buy 1 000 dairy cows for the community. The company will train the farmers to take care of the cows and will manage the dairy enterprise, facilitating the sale of all milk across to Heritage Dairy and all profits from milk sales will go to the farmers.

International trade

The Directorate: International Trade of the DAFF is responsible for implementing, monitoring and reporting on South Africa's commitments and rights under the WTO Agreement on Agriculture, as well as bilateral and regional trade agreements.

South Africa maintained its status as a net exporter of agriculture, forestry and fisheries (AFF) products during 2012. Total AFF exports amounted to R61,7 billion against imports of R55,1 billion during 2012. Although South Africa is a net exporter of primary agricultural products, the country has become a net importer of processed agricultural products.

Primary agricultural exports during 2012 totalled R24,9 billion against the imports of R6,8 billion.

Secondary or processed agricultural exports during 2012 were R26,2 billion against imports of R42,9 billion.

South Africa was a net exporter of forestry products and a net importer of fisheries products during 2012.

Exports of forestry products amounted to R9,9 billion against imports of R6,9 billion during 2012. Exports of fisheries products came to R1,4 billion against imports of R2 billion.

Exports of fruit and nuts constituted the largest export category by value (R18,9 billion) of South Africa's total AFF exports during 2012.

Imports of cereals to the value of R10,6 billion constituted the largest category, in terms of imports during the same period. Zimbabwe (9%), the UK (8%), and the Netherlands (8%) respectively, ranked as South Africa's top three export destinations for AFF products by value during 2012. With regard to imports, China (10%), Argentina (9%) and the UK (7%) ranked as the top three markets of origin for South Africa's AFF products, respectively, during 2012.

China, Zambia and Angola were the fastest growing export destinations for South Africa's AFF products by value during 2012. Exports of bird skin to China, wheat flour to Zambia and onions to Angola registered the highest growth during 2012. Indonesia, Japan and Germany showed the most negative growth during the same period, with cocoa to Indonesia, maize meal to Japan and wood pulp to Germany declining the most.

On the import markets' side, China, the Netherlands and India ranked the highest, in terms of import growth, during 2012. Imports of rice from China and India, as well as infant food from the Netherlands, registered the highest growth.

The United States of America, Germany and Thailand declined significantly during the same period with imports of wood pulp, rum, tafia and photocopy paper declining the most.

Forestry

The DAFF is the custodian of South Africa's forest resources, which cover over 40 million ha of the country's land surface area. An amount of R1,2 billion from the department's budget has been allocated to forestry and natural resources management.

The forest sector employs around 165 900 workers and provides about 62 700 direct jobs and 30 000 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 652 000 people of the country's rural population. The pulp and paper industry provides about 13 200 direct and 11 000 indirect employment opportunities.

Some 20 000 workers are employed in sawmilling, and 6 000 in the timber board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 11 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the afforested area is about 1,27 million ha or about 1% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha.

The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 1% to the GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 4,4%; in Mpumalanga 3,7%; in the Eastern Cape 0,6%; and in Limpopo about 0,6%.

The DAFF contributes to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme. Firewood, construction poles, medicinal plants and edible fruits are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department develops human resources through forestry-sector skills development initiatives and promotes employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans will assist the Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The department is pursuing a target of 10 000 ha of nett new afforestation a year.

The focus will remain on encouraging cooperatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the DAFF is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process.

In the Eastern Cape, funds have been secured to assist communities with the processes of environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite preceding any afforestation activity.

Afforestation is taking place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity.

The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants, which will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

The forestry programme also includes greening and tree-planting projects.

The programme prioritises work on fire-fighting programmes such as the Working on Fire Programme and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations (FPAs).

About 70% of the citrus consumed in the EU comes from South Africa and the sector contributes about R6 billion to South Africa's gross domestic product.

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), and the Forestry Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005), reflect the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. They emphasise sustainable forest management, and explain how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Acts set out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensure that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree and shrub species. Some are threatened, and 47 species are protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut; damaged, destroyed or possessed; collected; removed; transported; exported; purchased; sold; donated or in any other way acquired or disposed of except under a licence granted by the Minister or in terms of an exemption. In terms of the National Forests Act of 1998, all natural forests are protected.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act (NVFFA), 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), and the National Veld and Forest Fire Laws Amendment, 2001 (Act 12 of 2001), are the primary legislation regulating veldfire management in the country. The National Veld and Forest Fire Amendment Bill was published on 31 May 2013 for public comment.

The purpose of these Acts is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires. The legislation provides a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. The Acts place an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of fire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs, which may be formed by landowners for purposes of veldfire management in a specific area.

Industry and exports

The forestry industry was a nett exporter of over R2,2 billion worth of goods in 2012, of which more than 99% took the form of converted value-added products.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 1,92% to total exports and 1,4% to total imports in 2012. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R45 billion in 2011. The value of forest product exports grew by 23% over the past decade, from R11,2 billion in 2002 to R13,8 billion in 2012. In real terms, however (taking inflation into account) ,this growth was -28% over the period in question. Consequently, the nett trade balance in foreign trade in forest products decreased from 2002 by -62% in nominal terms (-78% in real terms) to R2,2 billion in 2012.

In 2012, pulp products were the most important exports (R5 890 billion or 43% of the total), followed by paper (R4 707 billion or 34%), solid wood products (R2 680 billion or 19%) and other products (R555 million or 4%). Woodchip exports, mainly to Japan, accounted for 52% (R1 407 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the continuing unfavourable economic environment has had a negative impact on demand, particularly in Japan, which is still recovering from the damage caused to some of its pulp and paper mills by the tsunami that occurred in March 2012.

As a result of this, exports of forest products from South Africa decreased in value by R1,2 billion or 7,7% from R15 billion in 2011 to R13,8 billion in 2012.

Role players

National Forest Advisory Council (NFAC)

The NFAC advises the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on all aspects of forestry in the country.

The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management, and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests may be improved.

South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol)

Safcol is government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally. In 2013, the group had 18 plantations covering 187 320 ha with one sawmill and renting capacity at two others.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in the communities. Between 2009 and 2011, 11 social compacts were signed with community clusters in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo.

In July 2013, the South African government reached an agreement to export citrus to China and India, as well as to the African continent, as government has made a commitment to help farmers forge trade links with the two BRICS nations. The citrus industry is the biggest employer of unskilled workers in the rural areas.

The Comprehensive African Agricultural Development Programme, an African Union and New Partnership for Africa's Development initiative, aims to drive agricultural development in Africa. The programme aims to increase public financing in agriculture by 10% and raise agricultural productivity by 6%.

In 2012, Safcol remained committed to socio-economic development. The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives. In the areas where the group signed social compacts, an amount of R8,1 million was spent on socio-economic development projects.

In the same year, at the South African Enterprise Development Awards, Safcol received an award for the Most Innovative Enterprise Development Projects, as per the BBBEE codes. Initiatives towards green-building include implementing timber frame structures within socio-economic and enterprise development projects, which also received huge support from communities.

In support of the drive to develop skills and make forestry a career of choice, the group's bursary committee awarded 22 new internal bursaries for 2012/13. The in-house training centre, outside Sabie, offered training courses to 1 144 people and outsourced training courses to 244 people. Of special note is the launch of the Safcol-sponsored Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which is an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Despite a difficult operating environment, the Safcol group's financial performance for the 2012/13 financial year was better than it had been in the previous two financial years, resulting in an operating profit of R51 million (excluding the effect of the adjustment of plantation valuation). The profit to date has been attributed to the group's efforts to implement its turnaround strategy.

The group's share in the lumber market has increased from 4% to 12%, following the introduction of its new marketing and sales approach.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The forest research function within the department has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources. These include:

- the monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques used for two indigenous tree species in the Letaba State Forest
- sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes
- the sustainable use of Monkey rope (*Secamone gerradii*) by local subsistence farmers
- *ex situ* and *in situ* conservation of the critically endangered *protea roupelliae sbsp. hamiltonii*
- conservation of the co-occurring endangered *Leucospermum gerrardii* within the Dr Hamilton Nature Reserve.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role ,in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry offers a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta), is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FPM Seta, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

Programmes and initiatives

Participative forestry

The department supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground. Current projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries, in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping, in partnership with the ARC.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and

produces some 2 000 t a year. Government investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

National Arbor Week

National Arbor Week is celebrated annually around the first week in September, to promote the planting and maintenance of indigenous trees. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry.

The Tree of the Year is a government initiative to raise awareness about the need to value and protect indigenous trees and to educate the public about South African trees.

The Trees of the Year for 2013 were *Virgilia oroboides*, also known as the blossom tree; the *Grewia occidentalis*, also known as the cross-berry; and *Barringtonia racemosa*, also known as the powder-puff tree.

In September 2013, seven trees were planted in honour of women leaders, during National Arbor Week, in the Botanical Gardens in Hammarsdale, KwaZulu-Natal.

At the same time, the Priority Zone Rooftop Gardens, a social project to address greening and issues of food security in areas where there is no space to establish gardens in city centres,was established, using recycled products, including old tyres, drums and pallets. Produce from the gardens is donated to the needy.

Also in September 2013, as part of the legacy projects for eThekwini, about 150 households received vegetable seedlings and seed packs as the first phase of the household food security project in Minitown.

Champion Tree Project

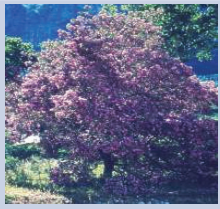
The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, or aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value. Similar projects have been established in several other countries, but this is the first of its kind in Africa.

Nomination forms with guidelines for the nomination process are available from the DAFF.

Every nomination cycle starts on 1 August year, and ends on 31 July the following year.

The first individual tree to be declared as protected under the National Forests Act of 1998, in 2003, was a historic English oak tree, the only remnant of the old Sophiatown that was razed by the previous government when it resettled that community in the 1950s.

This intervention was an attempt by a property owner to stop the imminent destruction of the tree. Protection was afforded only after the tree was severely pruned.



Virgilia oroboides, also known as the blossom tree

This was the starting point of the Champion Tree Project, aimed at preventing similar destruction of other important trees.

More than 70 trees and groups of trees have been declared by the department as champion trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's Gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck.

Grewia occidentalis, also known as the cross-berry

Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founder member of the South African Communist Party.

Barringtonia racemosa, also known as the powder-puff tree.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more

trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector. Since its inception, more than four million trees have been planted, 40% of which were fruit trees planted mostly in poorer rural areas of the country.

In an effort to ensure the programme is implemented widely, government is calling on the corporate sector to make a contribution, and for citizens and organisations to become involved.

A million trees had been planted across the country by the end of 2013. This will bring to 13 million the number of trees planted nationwide since the project began in 2000.

The million-a-year tree plantation programme is in partnership with petroleum giant, Total South Africa.

Resources

Sustainable forest management

Broadly speaking, there are three categories of ,forest, namely indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include its development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products.

Plantation forestry practices include, among others, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries, sawn timber, furniture, shelving and flooring. By the end of June 2012, 1 539 752 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa were certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC), the second largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are conducted.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This may be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably. The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

As part of its commitment to the practice of sustainable forest management, the forestry industry is also involved in the National Forest Advisory Council Committee for Sustainable Forest Management, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. This represents a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0,5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides

the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 m^3 of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species).

The seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savanna woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals. These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where some woodland occurred on State-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry. The New Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savanna woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest, for example, is worth some R1,1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savanna woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many under-protected savanna types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1,2% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification.

Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research (ICFR) completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the DAFF, a project funded by the FAO of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the MoU, formalising FSA's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute (FABI), which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria (UP).

FABI's state-of-the-art biological control and quarantine facility at the UP was officially opened in May 2011.

The FAO and DAFF approved the National Forest Protection Strategy, which includes forest fire-related matters, in 2011. Once fully implemented, the strategy is expected to provide the industry with additional resources and enhance the coordination of responses to combat forest fires.

Plantation yields

Sappi has 290 million commercial trees on its land. The company harvests 35 million trees and plants 37 million trees every year. Sappi manages about 140 000 ha under natural vegetation, which includes grasslands, indigenous forests, wetlands and riverine areas.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped, so that the wood fibre may be used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world – not only climatic and soil conditions but also advanced management techniques. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1,27 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 16 and 18 Mt of timber a year.

Production from the country's plantation forests amounted to 16 Mt (18,5 mm^3) in 2011, some 800 000 tons or 5,3% more than the 15,2 Mt (17,5 mm^3) recorded in 2010.

In terms of production by product, pulpwood production at 10,3 Mt was by far the highest, representing 65% of total production. Sawlog production was 4,5 Mt (28% of total).

Mining-timber production of 573 000 tons and the production of other products such as poles and charcoal of 657 000 tons made up the balance.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Forestry strategies to achieve this vision include forestry, enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

BBBEE Charter

The BBBEE Charter process is one of many government strategies aimed at transforming the economy. The formulation and implementation of BEE programmes at different levels and in different sectors of the economy include partnerships between government and the private sector, including trade unions and community-based organisations.

The BBBEE Charter for the forestry sector will be instrumental in achieving objectives such as increasing the number of black people, particularly women, who own, manage and control enterprises and productive assets; and facilitating ownership and management of enterprise and productive assets by communities, workers, co-operatives and other collective enterprises.

Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha of water-use licence applications a year for the next 10 years to obtain a nett increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DAFF is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Ninety-six community-stream flow-reduction activity applications, totalling about 13 000 ha,

were supported by the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries and trade and industry through assistance provided in the undertaking of environmental impact assessments in the Eastern Cape.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible, with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management manage the Urban Greening Fund.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Fisheries

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources; maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector; and protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa.

These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry; protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the department recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter.

Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The department will gradually establish offices of the fisheries branch in coastal, as well as inland provinces.

These are economic decisions, which contribute to employment creation and poverty alleviation.

Industry and products

South Africa is among the global fishing nations which have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22 commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components.

Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.

The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, due to declining wild stocks.

Legislation and policies

- The Small-Scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights will be allocated on a group, rather than an individual basis. The policy further aims to

The World Forestry Congress will be hosted in KwaZulu-Natal at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre (ICC) in Durban, in 2015.

More than 7 000 delegates, including scientists, policymakers, community-based organisations, non-governmental organisations, civil society organisations and government officials from around the globe are expected to attend this event to discuss issues affecting forests.

The key discussion points of the 2015 conference will be the role of forests in food security, climate change, agro-forestry and the economic value of trees.

support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

- The department has entered into a service -level agreement with the South African Navy to manage its fleet of four patrol vessels and three research vessels for a year, while the department considers its various options regarding the long-term management of these vessels.

Resource management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the Working for Fisheries Programme.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the "eyes and ears" of government.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators and small-scale and recreational fishermen and women.

The 2012 Status of the South African Marine Resources Report confirms that the continued general decline in local wild fish resources shows no exception to global deteriorating trends.

According to a recent UN report, more than two thirds of the world's fisheries have been overfished or are fully harvested, and more than one third is in a state of decline, due to the loss of fish habitats, soaring pollution levels in oceans and rivers and climate change.

According to the report, abalone stocks remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state as the resources continue to decline, due to increasing levels of poaching and ecological factors.

Meanwhile, line fish resources range from heavily depleted to optimal states, depending on species.

There are, however, signs of a positive response by some species to the emergency management measures implemented in 2000.

Given the low population sizes of many line fish species, however, present management measures are expected to assist in allowing stock to increase.

Under the operational management procedure, the West Coast rock lobster is showing signs of recovery.

Deep-sea fishing patrols by the fisheries branch resumed in April 2013, in accordance of with an agreement between the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' fisheries branch and Damen Shipyards, following the expiry of the year-long operating Memorandum of Understanding between the fisheries branch and the South African Navy.

Deep-water hake remains depleted, but its status is improving, whereas shallow-water hake is considered optimal to abundant.

The implementation of precautionary management approaches to hake fisheries in recent years has resulted in a faster than anticipated recovery of deep-water hake.

Harders, which are the main target of the beach-seine and gillnet fisheries, remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state.

Environmental anomalies and illegal netting have affected the recruitment of the species in recent years.

The abundance of Agulhas sole has remained relatively constant over the past 15 years, while Cape horse mackerel has increased in abundance in recent years, due to good recruitment, and the stock is considered to be in an optimal state.

The status of Patagonian tooth fish remains unknown, although some data suggest that this resource is depleted and may be declining.

The anchovy stock is at the lowest level observed in the past 15 years, but sardine and round herring stocks continue to increase.

In South Africa, the fisheries sector is worth around R6 billion per annum and directly employs some 27 000 people in the commercial sector. Thousands more and their families depend on these resources for food and the basic needs of life.

The total allowable catch for the West Coast Rock Lobster 2013/14 fishing season has been set at 2 167,06 tons. The total allowable catch apportioned to the commercial offshore sub sector is set at 1 356,56 tons and for the commercial near-shore subsector, it is set at 451 tons.

The total allowable catch apportioned for the subsistence (small-scale/interim relief) subsector, is set at 276 tons (138 kg per fisher).

The apportionment for the recreational fishing subsector remains unchanged at four west coast rock lobsters per person per day for the duration of the fishing season.

The number of fishing days for the 2013/14 recreational fishing season has been determined at 26 days.

The 2013/14 west coast rock lobster recreational fishing season opened on 15 November 2013 and closed on 21 April 2014.

The size restriction remains at 80 mm carapace length and recreational fishing permits will only be issued to persons above the age of 12 years. Any west coast rock lobster caught, collected or transported shall be kept in a whole state.

West coast rock lobster caught with a recreational permit may not be sold by any person.

Recreational west coast rock lobster permits are obtainable at the Post Office, at a cost of R92 per permit and are valid for the entire recreational fishing season.

The department's decision to pursue the recovery target has been welcomed by WWF and carries the unanimous support of all the WCRL user sectors.

In November 2013, over 500 delegates from over 50 countries convened in Cape Town for the 23rd regular meeting of the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT).

ICCAT is a Regional Fisheries Management Organisation (RFMO) that is responsible for the management of tuna and tuna-like species in the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea.

The meeting added weight to South Africa's negotiating position on the adequate allocations of key species, as tuna fisheries in the Atlantic offer opportunities for development and job creation in the country, which have not been fully exploited.

South Africa's strategic intent with participating in and hosting the annual ICCAT meeting was to ensure long-term fishing access in the Atlantic Ocean for South African fishing companies in the tuna pole fisheries and the developing large pelagic fisheries.

Access to the Atlantic Ocean is essential for encouraging future investment in the tuna/swordfish fisheries, to create the enabling environment for these fisheries to develop.

ICCAT will benefit South Africa with management activities, including collating fisheries data, guiding research, conducting stock assessments, establishing management and conservation measures and issuing country quotas.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes.

Fisheries and aquaculture support the livelihoods of an estimated 540 million people. Aquaculture, is the farming of aquatic organisms and is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others. According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and government wants to create a climate in which it can grow.

Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

Government will also push investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture.

In March 2013, government launched the R800-million Agriculture Development Enhancement Programme, which offers cost-sharing grants of R40-million per company.

The aim is to create more jobs in the sector. The grants will be made available for machinery, equipment, infrastructure, commercial vehicles and work boats, in pursuit of boosting competition in the industry.

Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, but poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

A big cause for the decline in abalone numbers is rampant poaching over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

In May 2013, Cabinet approved the National Aquaculture Policy Framework (NAPF). The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment.

The NAPF was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

South Africa hosted the Third Global Conference on Agriculture, Food Security and Climate Change in the fourth quarter of 2013, led by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

Subsistence fisheries

Participation in subsistence fisheries is broad – coastal communities have traditionally made use of intertidal and shallow-water resources as a source of food. Only surplus not consumed by fishers is sold locally.

Some 147 fishing communities, 28 338 fisher households and about 29 233 people are considered true subsistence fishers.

A draft policy for the recognition, allocation and management of small-scale fishing rights is being developed for small-scale fishing.

Recreational fishing

With South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, South Africa is a recreational

fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit, and recreational fishing is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing, and to, protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

The department's fisheries division has published a recreational fishing pamphlet to guide recreational fishers regarding the number and species of fish they may catch and where they may catch fish. Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

MASSEY FERGUSON
699

Arts and Culture

The Department of Arts and Culture (DAC) continues to make significant strides in positioning the cultural and creative industries as one of the main drivers of economic growth and job creation in South Africa.

The success of the arts and culture sector is also reliant on effective governance, infrastructure and skills development, partnerships, research, sharing of information and enterprise development.

In this context, the department is committed to supporting a number of emergent shifts in the arts, culture and heritage sector over the next five years. These shifts have the potential to increase the growth and development of the sector significantly.

They include addressing a number of inadequacies in the policy and regulatory environment to strengthen governance in the sector, increase investment and improve information and statistics for more effective planning and decision - making.

The DAC is strengthening co - operation with a range of public and private sector institutions and stakeholders. The development and implementation of the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy is an example of how to mobilise the resources of all stakeholders in the sector.

Measures to promote the arts include:

- providing financial, as well as information and communication technology support to artists to enable the creation of works expressing national creativity, while opening space for vibrant debate
- strengthening the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa's mandate for nation - building and value inculcation
- incentivising commercial distribution networks to distribute and/or host art
- developing and implementing plans for a more effective arts and culture curriculum in schools with appropriate educator support
- supporting income-smoothing for artists in a special unemployment insurance scheme and evaluating funding models for such initiatives
- developing sectoral determination legislation frameworks to protect arts-sector employees.

Legislation and policies

The mandate and operations of the DAC are guided by various policies and legislation. These include the:

- National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF) Act, 1997 (Act 73 of 1997)
- National Heritage Council (NHC) Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999)
- National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999)

- National Library of South Africa (NLSA) Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998)
- Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB) Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995)
- South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998)
- South African Library for the Blind Act, 1998 (Act 91 of 1998)
- Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998)
- Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983)
- Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962)
- Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997)
- National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996)
- National Arts Council (NAC) Act, 1997 (Act 56 of 1997)
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000)
- National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS) Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001)
- White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage
- Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012).

Funding

As part of Cabinet-approved budget reductions, the department reduced spending by R186 000 in 2013/14.

Over the medium term, R4 million was reprioritised from the National Archive Services and the National Library Services subprogrammes to the Administration programme to centralise information technology (IT) services.

The programme received additional funding of R32 million over the medium term for improved conditions of service. In addition, R1,1 billion was reprioritised from the Department of Basic Education's (DBE) schools infrastructure backlog grant to the community library service's conditional grant to accelerate the provision of community library services and provide for the function shift of library services from municipalities to provinces.

Of this revised grant allocation, R35,3 million was allocated to the programme to manage, monitor and exercise oversight over the community library services grant.

Transfer allocations for 2013/14:

- heritage institutions: R322,6 million
- libraries: R88,5 million
- NAC: R87,6 million
- the NFVF: R105,2 million
- NHC: R52,7 million
- PanSALB: R78,2 million.

The following performing arts institutions receive annual transfers from the DAC: the State Theatre, The Playhouse Company, Artscape Theatre, The Market Theatre, the Performing Arts Council of the Free State and the Windybrow Theatre. Total transfers in 2013/14 amounted to R342 million, including capital works.

The Robben Island Museum's budget for 2013/14 was R132,8 million. The South African Heritage Resources Agency's (SAHRA) budget for 2013/14 was R43,7 million.

National symbols

Animal: Springbok *(Antidorcas marsupialis)*

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

Bird: Blue crane *(Anthropoides paradisia)*

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.

Fish: Galjoen *(Coracinus capensis)*

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water, is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

Flower: King protea *(Protea cynaroides)*

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name *cynaroides*, which means "like cynara" (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.

Tree: Real yellowwood *(Podocarpus latifolius)*

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a

single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika).*

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by a Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of *The Call of South Africa* were written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918 and the music was composed by Reverend ML de Villiers in 1921.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it.

The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre, stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land. The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the coat of arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together."

National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

They are presented annually on 27 April, Freedom Day:

- The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.
- The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.
- The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.
- The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.
- The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

In April 2013, 38 South Africans and foreign nationals who have contributed towards the advancement of democracy, were awarded National Orders by President Jacob Zuma.

The 2013 ceremony was held under the theme "Mobilising society towards consolidating our democracy and freedom."

The recipients of the 2013 National Orders were:

- The Order of Mendi: Alfred Duma, Riot Makhomanisi Mkhwanazi and Cletus Mzimela.
- The Order of Ikhamanga: Chad le Clos, Ilse Hayes, Vusi Mahlasela, Zolani Mkva, Kaizer Motaung and Pretty Yende.
- The Order of the Baobab: Suraya 'Bibi' Khan, Nontsikelelo Qelane, Yusuf Abramjee, David Jacobus Bosch (Posthumous), Colin Wells Eglin, Herbert William Garnet de la Hunt and Sayed Mohamed Ridwan Mia.
- The Order of Luthuli: Nomazizi Mtsotshisa (Posthumous), Neville Edward Alexander (Posthumous), Amina Desai (Posthumous), Michael Alan Harmel (Posthumous), Essop Essak Jassat, Arthur Letele (Posthumous), Mosibudi Mangena, Moosa Mooila, Richard Mothupi, David Fani Mncube, Elias Phakane Moretsele (Posthumous) and Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma.
- The Order of Mapungubwe: Professor Quarraisha Abdool Karim, Dr Bennie Fanaroff, Professor George Ekama, Dr Glenda Gray and Professor Malegapuru William Makgopa
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo: Dina Forti, Reverend Jesse Louis Jackson, Enuga Screenivasulu Reddy, Giuseppe Soncini (Posthumous) and Linden Forbes Sampson Burnham (Posthumous).

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

Role players

National Heritage Council

The NHC is responsible for the preservation of the country's heritage as a priority for nation-building and national identity.

The NHC focuses on policy development for the sector to meet its transformation goals, enhance public awareness and education, and increase knowledge production in heritage subjects that were previously neglected.

It also makes funding available to projects that present heritage as a socio-economic resource.

South African Heritage Resources Agency

SAHRA provides for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations. It established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to approved bodies or individuals, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- underwater cultural heritage, including historical shipwrecks.

Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value.

More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

South African Geographical Names Council

The SAGNC advises the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African government has sovereignty.

The renaming of geographical features is regarded as a form of symbolic reparation to address South Africa's past.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names would generally be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries and names of countries
  - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
  - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
  - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
  - names of living people.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

National Orders and Symbols

The Order of the Baobab

The Order of Luthuli

The Order of Mendi

The Order of Mapungubwe

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order of Ikhamanga

The Coat of Arms

National flower: King protea

National fish: Galjoen

National tree: Real yellowwood

National bird: Blue crane

National animal: Springbok

National Arts Council of South Africa

The NAC was established in 1997 as a funding institution for the arts, to provide, and encourage the provision; of opportunities for people to practise the arts and to promote the appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts.

It awards grants to individuals and organisations in the arts.

Funding is also available for individual bursaries for postgraduate studies in the arts.

Individuals and registered organisations active in theatre, dance, crafts, literature, music, multidiscipline and visual arts may apply for project funding.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the DAC, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa promotes mutually beneficial and sustainable business-arts partnerships that will benefit society as a whole. It has peer agencies in the United Kingdom (UK) and Australia, and has over 160 corporate members.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest funding agency in South Africa. It was established to develop and promote arts, culture and heritage, in general, by securing financial and other resources; and to promote the needs and the role of the sector in the public domain.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

Community art centres and other cultural organisations

More than 160 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres.

The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

These centres are located in, for example, craft centres, community halls and theatres.

Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development.

The DAC endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry is responsible for registering:

- coats of arms
- badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order
- names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities
- promoting national symbols.

National Language Service (NLS)

The NLS is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

The DAC launched the Multilingualism Campaign in February 2010, recognising the national wealth in linguistic diversity and the importance of multilingualism in heritage, culture, education, science and technology. Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities, as well as training in language practice.

Pan South African Language Board

Parliament established PanSALB to develop South Africa's 11 official languages, as well as the Khoi and the San languages and South African Sign Language, and to promote multilingualism by:

- creating the conditions for the development of and the equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic discrimination, domination and division and to enable them to exercise appropriate, linguistic choices for their own wellbeing, as well as for national development.

To achieve this, the board has three structures:
- provincial language committees
- national language bodies
- national lexicographic units.

Programmes, projects and initiatives

Public Art Programme

The Public Art Programme, which will focus on beautification and story telling through art in communities and showcasing artistic talent, is one of three projects aimed at stimulating demand in the sector.

The programme is projected to create 5 000 work opportunities by 2014/15.

The heritage legacy projects include the liberation heritage route and a marine heritage project.

The latter is a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, which will interpret aspects of the history of slavery, indentured labour and the South African Native Labour Corps.

It has the potential to create 1 517 work opportunities, with annual growth of between 200 and 968 work opportunities during 2013/14 and 2014/15.

Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

As part of the national target of creating five million jobs within the next 10 years, the DAC launched the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy in 2011, which was expected to create more than 150 000 work opportunities between 2012 and 2017.

The strategy involves a number of arts and culture job-creation programmes. These include the Public Art Programme, where youth will receive art classes, after which the department will employ them in their respective communities to beautify the environment through art.

About 3 000 full-time art facilitators will be deployed in schools throughout the country to facilitate the initiative. Along with the establishment of an Art Bank, this is expected to create 10 000 new work opportunities over the next three years.

More than R1,5 million was set aside for the Bokgabo Dikolong visual arts and photography competition, which targeted learners from all provinces and was implemented jointly with the DBE. A further R600 000 was set aside for the South African School Choral Eisteddfod, involving all provinces.

Heritage Day is celebrated on 24 September. The 2013 national Heritage Day was celebrated in Mdantsane in the Eastern Cape. The theme was "Reclaiming, Restoring and Celebrating our Living Heritage."

Other cultural events that received support include the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, the North West Cultural Calabash in Taung, the Diamonds and Dorings in Kimberley, the Joy of Jazz in Johannesburg, the Cape Town International Jazz Festival and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The DAC committed to support at least one major signature event per province, targeting a baseline of 2 000 work opportunities per event.

Other programmes include:
- five cultural precincts and information centres, which are being piloted in five major cities and are expected to create more than 2 000 new work opportunities
- supporting 26 major cultural events annually to generate a baseline target of more than 2 000 work opportunities per event and include big events such as the Joy of Jazz
- setting up a National Skills Academy for the arts to train youth, particularly those in rural areas
- the Indoni, "My Heritage My Pride" Programme, aimed at providing youth with life-skills training, education and appreciation for their heritage
- the Trendsetter Initiative, which will encourage youth to participate in the arts and contribute to the development of their communities
- developing a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay, which is expected to boost adventure and cultural tourism on the East Coast
- working with the United Nations (UN) Conference on Trade and Development towards establishing a cultural observancy to collect and analyse data within the sector.

Investing in Culture Programme

The programme promotes job creation, skills development and economic empowerment, supporting business start-ups and poverty-alleviation projects.

Funds are transferred to participants in the programme's projects and are disbursed on the basis of annual business plans and service-level agreements between the department and the individual or group contractors.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals abound in South Africa, offering something for every taste – from prickly pears, peaches, "witblits", asparagus and cherries, to various music forms, dance, arts, science, books and whales.

Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers.
- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but uni-

versal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.

- Arts Alive International Festival is held in the Johannesburg inner city, with over 600 artists performing during the four-day festival at various venues in Newtown.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival is a two-day festival featuring some 40 international and African acts, performing on five stages and attracting more than 15 000 people. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The FNB Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Ficksburg Cherry Festival in the eastern Free State attracts about 20 000 visitors.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent and attracts up to 140 000 people.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Easter Festival and Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offer live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with more than 200 local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; North West's Cultural Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the annual Witness Hilton Arts Festival.

Theatre

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top class.

Reflecting South Africa's kaleidoscope of cultures and customs, the theatre scene offers everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

Apart from early productions, notably the groundbreaking musical, *King Kong,* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only started making an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was here that Johannesburg theatre-goers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes, Master Harold ... and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market Theatre, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinnatti – Scenes from City Life*, *Call Me Woman*, *Black Dog Inj'emnyana*, *Outers*, *Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa most effectively to overseas audiences during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions enjoy in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

In nurseries such as the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square, Saturday Children's Theatre Workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the National Children's Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events such as the Market's Community and Young Writers' festivals. Many new names are being added to the list of South African playwrights such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Xoli Norman, Mondi Mayepu, Heinrich Reisenhofer, Oscar Petersen, Mark Lottering, Nazli George, Craig Freimond and Rajesh Gopie.

Music

The Breathe Sunshine African Music Conference was launched in April 2013. Debates there raised a question that is important for any industry: work better within old paradigms — or work differently? According to the *Fourth South African Edition of PwC's South African Entertainment and Media Outlook: 2013 – 2017*, published in September, digital music sales will account for just 14% of South African recorded music retail sales by 2017.

Local artists dominated digital sales in 2012, while international artists accounted for the majority of physical music sales.

According to PwC, South Africa's music market was worth R2,2 billion in 2012.

South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people.

Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the DBE, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

In September 2013, construction workers in Cape Town uncovered a cannon dating back to the 18th century, just a few metres from one of the city's busiest streets. The cannon was found lying below 15 on Orange, one of Cape Town's popular hotels near the Company Gardens. Initial assessment dates the cannon at almost 300 years old.

The South African Heritage Resources Agency will be in charge of assessing and cleaning the cannon. The cannon will most likely be put on display in a Cape Town museum.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DAC hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 19th annual MTN Samas ceremony was held at Sun City, North West, in May 2013. The winners were:

- Lifetime Achievement Awards: Johannes Kerkorrel; Sizwe Zako; Dr Thomas Chauke.
- Album of the Year: Khuli Chana – *Lost in Time.*
- MTN Record of the Year: Sfiso Ncwane – *Kulungile Baba.*
- Duo or Group of the Year: Freshlyground – *Take Me to the Dance.*
- Female Artist of the Year: Kelly Khumalo – *The Past, The Present, The Future.*
- Male Artist of the Year: Khuli Chana – *Lost in Time.*
- Newcomer of the Year: Toya Delazy – *Due Drop Deluxe.*
- Best Rock Album: Zebra & Giraffe – *The Wisest Ones.*
- Best Pop Album: Toya Delazy – *Due Drop Deluxe.*
- Best Adult Contemporary Album: Elvis Blue – *Journey.*
- Best Contemporary Music Album: Theuns Jordaan – *Roeper.*
- Best African Adult Album: Maleh – *Step Child*
- Best Alternative Album: iScream & The Chocolate Stix – *The Paradox.*
- Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album: Khaya – *For You.*
- Best Rap Album: Khuli Chana – *Lost in Time*
- Best Kwaito Album: Professor – *The Orientation.*
- Best Dance Album: Black Coffee – *Africa Rising.*
- Best Traditional Faith Music Album: Various – *Spirit of Praise Vol. 4.*
- Best Contemporary Faith Music Album: Ntokozo Mbambo – *Filled.*
- Best Traditional Album: Soul Brothers – *Isiphithiphithi.*
- Best Maskandi Album: Ichwane Lebhaca – *Inkunzi Yomthakathi.*

- Best Jazz Album: Herbie Tsoaeli – *African Time.*
- Best Classic & Instrumental Album CH2 – *CH2 Guitar Duo Live with the University of Pretoria Symphony Orchestra.*
- Best Live DVD: *The Captured Tour Concert Film* – Lira.
- Best Collaboration: Riot featuring Zahara – *Thetha Nami.*
- Best Music Video of the Year: Claudio Pavan – *Honey Spiders* by The Parlotones.
- Best Producer: Jax Panik – *Due Drop Deluxe* by Toya Delazy.
- Best Engineer: Mark Beling – *Strong* by Black-Byrd.
- Remix of the Year: DJ Kent – *Thinking about You feat.* Zonke DJ Kent Remix (Theo Kgosinkwe).
- Best Selling DVD: Vol. 16 Live at Carnival City – *Joyous Celebration.*
- Best Selling Album: *Roeper* – Theuns Jordaan.
- Best Selling Tru-Tone: Follow Me – DJ Cleo feat. Teddy Bears.
- Best Selling Ring-Back-Tone: *Loliwe* – Zahara.
- Best Selling Full-Track Download: *You're The Voice Shout/J23* – Artists for a safer South Africa.
- Sampra Award: *Heavenly Sent* – Mi Casa.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Dance Umbrella

The FNB Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform encompassing performances by youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professionals. The FNB Dance Umbrella 2013, in partnership with Dance Forum and the Johannesburg Arts Alive International Festival, ran from 31 August to 4 September.

Dance Umbrella 2013 included five international companies, and 15 new works from South African choreographers along with the Stepping Stones programme, which featured 30 choreographers.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country. South African Mzansi Ballet's (SAMB) Celebration 5 showcased a major cultural collaboration between South Africa and Colombia, when the Cartagena-based dance company, El Colegio del Cuerpo, combined forces with SAMB for three performances at the Joburg Theatre and two in Cape Town.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from pre-historic, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privatel owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest. Substantial collections are housed at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits and at the University of South Africa. Collections at the University of Pretoria include the Mapungubwe, Van Tilburg and Edoardo Villa collections. The University of Stellenbosch art collection dates back to 1919. A collection of contemporary Indian art is housed at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

The DAC commissioned a team of researchers to do an assessment of the visual arts sector in South Africa, to assess the current position of visual arts in South Africa, and to identify opportunities for growing the artistic, social and economic contribution of the visual arts in the society and the economy. The report noted that:

- the sector contributes over R1 billion to the economy
- the sector provides employment to almost 18 000 people
- over 50% of these are women and 53,4% are under 35.

In October 2013, Irma Stern's painting, "The Malay Bride" was sold in London for almost R20 million.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases.

These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

In December 2013, in celebration of the centenary of the most iconic building in Pretoria, a bronze statue of former President Nelson Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings as a token of appreciation for his valuable contribution to a free, democratic and non-racial South Africa.

Designed by Sir Herbert Baker in 1908, construction of the 275-metre long Union Buildings, situated at the northern end of Arcadia, Pretoria, began in 1909 and was completed in 1913.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, David Goldblatt, Bob Gosani, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens and Jodi Bieber.

Many universities of technology in South Africa offer diploma and degree-courses in photography, including the universities of technology of Tshwane, Cape Peninsula, and Durban, the Central University of Technology, Free State and the Vaal University of Technology in Vanderbijlpark.

There are also several private educational institutions that offer photography courses, including the Stellenbosch Academy of Design and Photography, the Open Window School of Visual Arts in Pretoria and the Cape Town School of Photography.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

A prime example of local excellence and innovation is the Mapungubwe Interpretation Centre in the Mapungubwe National Park, Limpopo. Designed by Peter Rich Architects of Johannesburg, the building was awarded the World Building of the Year Award 2009 at the World Architecture Festival in Barcelona, as well as the David Alsop Sustainability Award.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known, as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable

range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There is a lot of new work in traditional media, with artists constantly developing the African crafts repertoire.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of the Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities, including beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art." The work of ceramicist Bonnie Ntshalintshali, has gone well beyond the confines of traditional African pottery – yet her works could still be used at your table.

Sculptor Phutuma Seoka is another artist who has taken a traditional form and given it a personal twist.

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes, burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints.

It also gave rise to artists such as Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything from cars to aeroplanes.

Design

The Design Indaba Conference 2013 took place from 27 February to 1 March 2013 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. A live simulcast was hosted at the same time at various venues around southern Africa.

Since 1995, the Design Indaba Conference has invited the world's top creative minds to address professionals from the creative, corporate and education sectors alike.

Design Indaba recognises graphic design, advertising, film, music, fashion design, industrial design, architecture, craft, visual art, new media, publishing, broadcasting and performing arts shoulder-to-shoulder.

In 2013, there were over 30 local and international speakers; all masters of their respective industries and disciplines. Everything at Design Indaba Conference has cross-disciplinary application possibilities.

The Design Indaba Conference attracts businesspeople, designers, creatives and educators, making it the ideal event at which to network and meet like-minded individuals.

About 20% of the delegates came from abroad. It is a one-of-a-kind conference in South Africa and renowned globally for the value it adds to the design industry.

Literature

The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, Andre P Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include Keorapetse William Kgositsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, NP van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jes-

sica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa (PASA) is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading. According to their 2012 survey, the publishing industry recorded a turnover of R3 336 million, of which R2 540 million was locally produced and R796 million imported.

The education subsector recorded R1 703 million in turnover (51% of total survey turnover), of which R1 569 million (92%) was for locally published printed books. Schoolbooks contributed R1 585 million, of which R166 million (10%) was for imported books. Further Education and Training textbooks accounted for R93 million (6%) of total sub-sector turnover.

The academic subsector recorded R560 million in turnover (17% of total survey turnover) ,of which R490 million (87%) was generated by locally published books. Academic textbooks contributed R294 million, of which R32 million (11%) was contributed by imported books. Professional books accounted for R243 million, of which 91% were published locally.

Scholarly publications contributed R4 million to the total industry subsector turnover.

English texts contributed R183 million to local publication turnover (54%), of which 23% was fiction and 83% adult books. Afrikaans contributed R151 million (45%), with 48% contributed by fiction and 62% by adult books.

Children's fiction contributed more than 90% to the recorded R2 million turnover in African language books. isiZulu contributed 47% to this total and isiXhosa 35%.

On average, 15% of net income was paid as royalties.

The DAC, in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), is reprinting some out-of-print books that are considered classics in indigenous African languages.

The department is continuing with the Indigenous Languages Publishing Programme, a partnership with the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), to produce new material in the nine previously marginalised indigenous languages.

The programme offers publishing opportunities to emerging writers and support to independent small publishers.

National Book Week was celebrated from 2 to 7 September 2013. The initiative promotes literacy, celebrates reading and is the result of a partnership between the South African Book Development Council, the DAC and the Department of Correctional Services. The theme for this 2013 was "The Book of Our Lives."

The main events were held at the Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, with regional events held in the other provinces.

The DAC supports the *Baobab Literary Journal* with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature.

The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards

The 2013 South African Literary Awards were awarded as follows:

- The 2013 *Sunday Times* Fiction Prize and the K Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award: *For the Mercy of Wate*r by Karen Jayes.
- Lifetime Achievement Award for his entire oeuvre: Afrikaans writer PG du Plessis
- First-time Published Author Award: *Khalil's Journey* by Ashraf Kagee.
- Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award: *Haai Karoo* by Etienne van Heerden.
- Literary Translators Award: *Mangolo a nnake* (Letter to My Sister) by Nhlanhla Maake.
- Poetry Award: *Om die gedagte van geel* by Petra Muller.
- Creative Non-Fiction Award: *Transformations* by Imraan Coovadia.

Film

The first - ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916, when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3,5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while providing employment for more than 25 000 people.

The South African government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry.

The incentives comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand.

At the Cannes Film Festival in May, the Minister of Arts and Culture signed a new co-production treaty with his Irish counterpart, bringing the tally to eight.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

In October 2013, the locally produced film, *Felix*, won a cash prize of € 7 500 (R100 000) for Best Children's film at the 36th Lucas International Children's Film Festival in Germany.

Felix also won the Audience Award at the Durban International Film Festival and was screened at the Hamburg Film Festival, British Film Industry's London Film Festival and the Vancouver International Film Festival.

Florence Masebe won the Best Actress in a Lead Role Award for the film *Elelwani,* during the 2013 African Movie Academy Awards. The film also won the Best Production Design Award, while a number of other South African productions were nominated and received awards at the event.

The film *Layla Fourie* received a Jury Special Mention Award at the Berlinale International Film Festival, while local comedy *Fanie Fourie's Lobola* won the Audience Choice Award for best comedy at the 19th Sedona International Film Festival in Arizona, USA, in March 2013. The film won the audience award at the Seattle International Film Festival in June 2013.

In the same month, South African film *Otelo Burning* added to a long list of accolades, picking up a hat-trick of awards – for best film, best dramatic feature and best surf film – at Australia's Byron Bay International Film Festival.

The locally produced film, *Mandela: Long Walk To Freedom* emerged as the highest grossing film in South Africa in its opening weekend in December 2013, earning over R4 million. The film also opened in the USA in November 2013, with exclusive engagements in New York and Los Angeles. It earned the highest in its opening weekend there, with an average of US$25,076 per screening.

National Film and Video Foundation

In 2013, government was in the process of converting the NFVF into a full-fledged National Film Commission and establishing a National Film Fund.

The foundation awards grants for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as bursaries for students from other countries. This ensures a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions.

At the NFVF Film Indaba, held in November 2013, the NFVF pledged to put R1,5 million towards a nine-province documentary proposal by filmmakers with disabilities.

The NFVF will appoint temporary sign language interpreters to assist with hearing-impaired applicants during NFVF training programmes. It will also reserve two bursaries for people living with disabilities, who want to follow film - related programme at any tertiary institution in South Africa.

The NFVF Film Indaba is held every four years and seeks industry input on the state and direction of the film industry. It also brings together film industry stakeholders to help draft the industry's response to the National Development Plan and the *Revised White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage*.

The South African Film and Television Awards (Saftas) honour individuals and productions in the following categories: TV Non-Fiction, TV Fiction, Feature Films, Short Films, Student Films and Animation.

The awards also honour lifetime achievers with the Special Lifetime Achievement Awards given to esteemed individuals who have long served the industry in various categories.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The Film and Publications Act of 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

More than 300 of the approximate 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DAC.

They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria
- Freedom Park, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Language Museum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the DAC declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998.

The *//hapo* museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in April 2013.

The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, will also serve as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa's first democratically elected President Nelson Mandela.

Visitors to *//hapo* will learn more about the struggle for freedom from, among others, the Pan African Archives, which are archives of research material in audio, visual and text formats.

//hapo will also host an interactive exhibition space, presenting the history of southern Africa over the past 3,6 billion years in the age-old custom of narrative and visual form. The Vhuawela garden and walkway create space for quiet and peaceful meditation and reflection.

//hapo is a Khoi word which means "a dream." The museum will help the country define the history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch war in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today. The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women's groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life and is in every shape and form a community's dream.

Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3,6 billion years of history.

Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

- Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria)
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria)
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban
- museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the DAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings.

It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans.

It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel.

It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

The new Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory, a priceless historical collection of resources chronicling the life of South Africa's greatest statesman, was launched in November 2013. The date of the launch marked the 20th anniversary of the adoption of South Africa's Interim Constitution on 18 November 1993, when the groundwork for a non-racial and fully democratic South Africa was laid for the first time. Housed at this centre are some of the most important heritage resources that chronicle the life and times of the founding father of our democratic nation and our icon, Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela.

Since the 1990s, the Msunduzi Museum in Pietermaritzburg, an agency of the National Department of Arts and Culture, has been transformed from a historically single-themed museum to one that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal. The museum was created in 1912 as a tribute to the Voortrekkers. Voortrekker history is the main focus in the Voortrekker Complex, i.e. the Church of the Vow, the Andries Pretorius House, the EG Jansen extension, the Voortrekker Memorial Church and the Church Hall. The museum also has a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a herb garden.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years.

Exhibitions in the museum include audiovisual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum.

Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31 May 1902, in Pretoria.

Simpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 house in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular.

The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA).

Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria.

The nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at *www.national.archives.gov.za*.

It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material.

The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance.

In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the

spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme.

The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) Memory of the World International Register.

This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

Library and information services

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes the NLSA, a statutory body; the South African Library for the Blind (SALB); Blind South Africa (Blind SA); public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town.

The new building of the Pretoria Campus, funded by the DAC, was inaugurated in August 2008. It covers 33 000 m² and has seating for 1 300 library users.

The NLSA offers free internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

Library and Information Association of South Africa (Liasa)

Libraries have always played a role in education,whether school, academic, public or special libraries.

Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap.

The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young or old, rich or poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

National Library Week was celebrated in March 2013 under the theme "Educate Yourself @ your library."

In May 2013, a record 150 South African filmmakers attended the 66th Cannes International Film Festival, 12 of them sponsored by the National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), which also hosted the market screening of three South African films at the prestigious event.

The NFVF ran a South Africa pavilion and hosted an array of networking and presentation events over the 11 days of the festival as it pushed to open up new markets for local filmmakers and attract new investments in South Africa's industry.

South Africa signed a memorandum of understanding with Kenya during the festival, aimed at opening opportunities for local filmmakers to explore working partnerships with their counterparts in Kenya.

The three South African films that received market screenings at Cannes are: Diprente Productions' comedy *Blitz Patrollie*; Triggerfish Animation's feature *Khumba*; and Ten10Films' *Black South Easter*.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is an advisory council that advises the ministers of arts and culture, of basic education and of higher education and training on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years.

Some important policy matters include the development of the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DAC.

The committee members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The mandate of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- making recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

In May 2013, the Minister of Arts and Culture handed over a R13-million cheque for the development of the Ray Alexander Simons Memory Centre in Gugulethu. The centre will offer jazz development programmes and create tourism awareness among workers. Young workers will be urged to continue with their education. The vision also includes plans for a hotel that will encourage tourists to stay overnight in Gugulethu, and to turn flats used by migrants into permanent homes. The memory centre will make visitors aware of the role that the residents of Gugulethu played in the struggle for democracy in South Africa.

The places of legal deposit are: the NLSA; the Library of Parliament in Cape Town; the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein; the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg; and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Legal Deposit Act of 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs), namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg; Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State; the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service; and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities use to read. The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the state to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg.

It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people)
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage.

The department ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation.

Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

The DAC continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

A priority in 2014 is the finalisation of the policy on cultural diplomacy, in partnership with the Department of International Relations and Cooperation. Among others, the policy will result in the deployment of cultural attachés in South Africa's diplomatic missions.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music (ILAM), attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, ILAM is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of Unesco ,with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the Unesco World Heritage Convention.

The AWHF strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. AWHF is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 Unesco World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.

Communications

The vision of the Department of Communications (DoC) of building a South Africa in which all South Africans have access to information and communications technology (ICT) skills is essential to the goal of building a prosperous nation.

In May 2013, a combined new institution, bringing together the Institute for Satellite and Software applications, the former eSkills Institute and the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa) as one body was launched.

Over the short to medium term, the Single Integrated Entity for e-Skills will focus on the development of the National e-Skills Plan and will implement a range of e-skills initiatives aimed at increasing the e-skills capacity across government, business, education, civil society and organised labour.

The department is fully focused on consolidating the transformation of the ICT sector, while extending ICT services to all South Africans.

The National ICT Forum will be launched in early 2014.

It is estimated that the ICT industry in South Africa contributes close to 7% to the national gross domestic product (GDP).

The department's mandate is to create a favourable ICT environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support development in Africa.

This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans.

South Africa's ICT industry is ranked 20th in the world, accounting for 0,5% of worldwide ICT revenue.

The department has prioritised three flagship programmes that are at the core of building a digital information and knowledge society.

These include accelerating the building of a modern digital infrastructure, as well as policy reforms that will position the country for an advanced knowledge economy in 2030.

These programmes entail:

- developing a national integrated ICT policy
- rolling out a national broadband network
- implementing the digital broadcasting migration policy.

The DoC held a workshop during the last week of October 2013 and presented the draft Spectrum Policy for more input from industry.

The department also held its first National Preparatory Working Group meeting in September 2013, in anticipation of the World Radio Conference (WRC) to be held in November 2015.

The working group's main task is to advise government on how it should approach the agenda items, which could have far-reaching implications for the future of telecommunications.

Legislation

The legislative framework for the work of the DoC is contained mainly in the:

- Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999)
- Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002)
- Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005)
- Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa) Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000)
- Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996)
- Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998)
- South African Post Office (Sapo) Ltd. Act, 2011 (Act 22 of 2011)
- South African Postbank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010).

The department is also guided by the:

- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended
- Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended.

In the course of 2013, the department introduced four legislative amendments, namely the Icasa Amendment Bill, which deals with the definition of broadband, empowers Icasa to enforce compliance, and monitor radio frequency spectrum resources, and postal regulation; the Electronic Communications Amendment Bill, which seeks to enhance competition and private investment in the sector and ensure that there is effective regulation where market failure is apparent; the Sapo Amendment Bill; and the The Postbank Bill, to align it to the Banks Act.

The Protection of Personal Information Act, 2013 (Act 4 of 2013) (Popi) was signed into law in November 2013. It comes at a time when marketing has just started with customer profiling, behavioural advertising, big data and multiple marketing channels.

Funding and expenditure

In 2013, the department transferred 76% of its budget to state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio.

Additional funding of R283 million was made available to Sentech in 2013/14, R171 million of which was for the roll-out of digital terrestrial television (DTT) infrastructure in time for the commercial launch of digital terrestrial television, R106 million.

For dual illumination and R6 million for ICT infrastructure for the 2014 Orange African Nations Championship.

The SABC's spending focus over the medium term was on rebuilding the corporation's financial position, adopting good governance and realigning the organisation's operating model with the requirements of digital broadcasting.

The latter explains why operational expenditure related to digital terrestrial television is projected to increase to R2,4 billion by 2015/16.

Other public entities' and agencies' budget allocations for 2013/14 were:

- Icasa – R390,7 million
- Nemisa – R 35,8 million
- The Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) – R60,1 million
- The Universal Service and Access Fund (Usaf) – R285 million.

Policy and strategies

The department's Strategic Plan prioritises the ICT Policy Review, broadband and digital migration.

In line with the National Development Plan (NDP), the department will overhaul existing policies. It planned to deliver the *White Paper on ICT Policy* in 2014. In April 2013, the department launched the ICT Policy Framing Paper.

In 2013, the department made progress with the Broadband Policy, Strategy and Plan, which were submitted to Cabinet by December 2013.

The policy and its associated strategy and plan have been collectively dubbed, "South Africa Connect".

They outline a number of activities to improve broadband in South Africa such as:

- giving every South African access to a broadband connection at a cost of 2,5% or less of the average monthly income
- revising how it defines the speed of broadband, opting to use targets that are reviewed annually rather than a fixed speed
- supplementing these targets by specifying quality of service standards, download and upload speeds, latency, waiting time for installation and fault clearance.

The initial target is to offer 90% of South Africans a minimum speed of five megabits per second (Mbps) by 2020. However, 50% of the population should also have access to 100Mbps broadband by 2020, according to these targets.

In October 2013, government joined the country's media industry in commemorating Media Freedom Day, which resulted in legislative guarantees of press freedom and editorial independence. The media industry has played a crucial role in transforming South Africa into a democratic State, and is currently at the forefront in shaping the public discourse.

Role players

The South African Post Office

Sapo was established as a government business enterprise to provide postal and related services to the public.

It was granted an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the country by the Postal Services Act of 1998.

This Act provides for the regulation of postal services and the operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations and the financial services activities of Postbank.

In the 12 months to March 2013, the Sapo opened 50 new post offices.

Most of these are in rural areas such as Kayedwa in Bushbuckridge in Mpumalanga, Nywarha in Idutywa in the Eastern Cape, Emoyeni in Dannhauser in KwaZulu-Natal, Spoegsrivier in Kammiesberg in the Northern Cape, Vahlavi in the Greater Giyani region in Limpopo and Ruitersbos in Mossel Bay in the Western Cape.

These new postal branches have been complemented by rolling out mobile branches to ensure that many more South Africans have access to these essential services.

Post offices have become important service-delivery centres, offering South Africans a convenient place to accept and deliver cash-on-delivery items, which is a very important service in rural communities where some people shop from catalogues.

In addition, more than a million South Africans walk through the doors of post offices near where they live to access their social grants.

Post offices also offer services that include enabling South Africans to renew their vehicle registration, and pay their municipal accounts and television licences.

In 2012/13 the Sapo allocated 1,2 million addresses, mainly to those in rural areas.

The Sapo licensed a digital mail offering, RiposteTrEx, from Escher Group in December 2013.

Through the platform, the Sapo will be able to provide e-registered mail services to the country's more than 51 million citizens, delivered directly to digital devices.

The platform's services allow for e-registered mail to be sent parallel to physical registered mail ("hybrid" mail), as well as for digital transactions and payments to take place.

RiposteTrEx will allow South African users including, citizens, government, business and SMEs to send e-registered and confidential mail to secure digital mailboxes, or as registered hybrid letters.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is listed as a schedule 2 public entity ,in terms of the PFMA of 1999. Its mandate is set out in its charter and in the Broadcasting Act of 1999, which requires it to provide radio and television broadcasting services to South Africa.

The corporation's strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- ensure access of its services to all citizens throughout the country
- inform, educate, entertain and provide services in all official languages
- reflect both the unity and diverse cultural and multilingual nature of South Africa, and all of its cultures and regions, to audiences
- provide programming for children, women, youth and people with disabilities, and broadcast national, developmental and minority sports
- develop talent and showcase South African content
- provide independent news of a high standard
- ensure the financial sustainability of the corporation through the cost-effective use of budgets and resources
- implement the digital content strategy
- conclude the government guarantee deliverable
- complete the digital migration and multichannel offering.

Revenue is generated mainly from television licences, advertising and sponsorships, and allocations from the department.

Revenue was expected to increase to R7,2 billion over the medium term, due to an increase in advertising revenue, in line with the new multichannel environment created by the expected roll-out of DTT.

Over the past four years, the SABC has installed 104 low-power transmitters, reaching 1,5 million more people.

Of these transmitters, 18 were rolled out in the 2012/13 financial year. By May 2013, the SABC reached 94% of South Africans.

Sentech

Sentech Limited is a state-owned enterprise, established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996 and is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. Its mandate is to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees.

The entity's strategic goals over the medium term were to:

- align its strategic roadmap with shareholder programmes to enable the development of open access government participation in the

communications industry through infrastructure-based investment
- continue working to support and realise government's ICT vision and goals, including innovation in broadcasting and media services, and content management and distribution
- create solutions that enhance the customer experience and are in line with government's mandate of access to communication services for all citizens
- repackage social responsibility interventions and create community social investment ICT programmes that improve lives, create value and are sustainable.

Sentech derives commercial revenue from terrestrial television services, terrestrial FM and AM radio services, satellite linking, facility rentals and the sale of satellite decoders.

The entity also receives transfers from the department for DTT and to provide for the dual illumination period.

The spending focus over the medium term was on investing in capital assets to expand the network to new sites in areas that were previously not covered and preparing for the launch of the commercial DTT.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

Nemisa is a non-profit institute of education formed as part of a government initiative in 1998, in response to the *White Paper on Broadcasting Policy*. The institute's main purpose is to train previously disadvantaged individuals, particularly women, to equip them with the necessary skills to play significant roles in the constantly; changing broadcasting environment.

The institute offers hands-on training in electronic media, namely national certificates in Radio Production L5; 2D and 3D Animation L5 and Further Education and Training (FET) Level 4 in Film and Television Production and Design Foundation.

The Media Information and Communication Technologies Sector and Training Authority Seta accredit all courses.

By October 2013, Nemisa produced 13 documentaries, each 48 minutes long, as part of the National Digital Repository Project in partnership with the then DoC.

Nemisa alumni constituted 60% of the crew, thereby contributing to industry development and job creation.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

Usaasa's sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services.

The agency is responsible for managing the Usaf.

The Usaf receives contributions from licensed telecommunications providers and broadcasters, which are used to fulfil universal access obligations in underserviced areas.

The agency plays a key role in facilitating the achievement of 100% ICT penetration by 2020.

Over the medium term, Usaf expects to deploy 600 cyberlabs to under serviced areas by 2014/15.

.za Domain Name Authority (ZADNA)

The ZADNA celebrated 10 years since its establishment in 2003. A legal framework to support the establishment of the ZA Central Registry – which is intended to uplift the operational standards in .ZA – is being finalised.

The ZA Central Registry, through ZADNA's guidance and the African Union (AU) Commission, has made significant progress in its application for the right to establish and operate an Africa Internet namespace for the benefit of Africa.

ZADNA has also ensured that Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg are not left behind in the Internet revolution, which will bring about new website addresses such as *hotels.capetown, tourism.durban and business.johannesburg*.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Icasa is the regulator for the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sector. Its mandate is spelt out in the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, for the licensing and regulation of electronic communications and broadcasting services, and in the Postal Services Act of 1998, for the regulation of the postal sector.

Enabling legislation also empowers Icasa to monitor licensees' compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers of these services.

Icasa's functions include:
- licensing broadcasters, signal distributors and providers of telecommunications and postal services
- making regulations
- imposing licence conditions
- planning, assigning, controlling, enforcing and managing the frequency spectrum
- ensuring international and regional cooperation

- ensuring the efficient allocation of numbers
- ensuring interoperability of networks
- receiving and resolving complaints.

In June 2013, Icasa released details of its Cost to Communicate Programme, which seeks to review regulations that affect the cost of communications in South Africa, such as the call termination regulations and the local loop unbundling framework.

The goals of the programme are to:

- stimulate public debate about the cost to communicate in South Africa
- establish regulatory needs to address concerns regarding the cost to communicate in South Africa
- stimulate and enhance competition in the telecommunications sector.

The programme started on 14 June 2013 with a request for information, and was followed by a series of consultations, which led to the release of draft regulations for public comment in December 2013.

Icasa was expected to publish the final regulations by April 2014.

South African Accreditation Authority

The South African Accreditation Authority is responsible for the accreditation of authentication and certification products and services used in support of electronic signatures. It is also concerned with monitoring the activities of authentication and certification service providers whose products or services have been accredited.

Presidential National Commission (PNC) on Information Society and Development (ISAD)

The PNC on ISAD advises the President on matters related to the development of an inclusive information society; and facilitates the coordinated development of an inclusive information society, and the achievement of the country's information society vision.

The commission comprises leaders in government, industry and civil society. A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

A study commissioned by Informa Telecoms & Media in July 2013, found that smartphone users in South Africa spend on average US$31 (R321) per month on their mobile phone bills. According to the *Sub-Saharan Africa Mobile Economy 2013 Report* by the Groupe Speciale Mobile Association, South Africa's average revenue per subscriber is recorded at US$25,4 (R264) – above the global average of US$25 (R260) and a Sub-Saharan Africa average of US$13,6 (R141).

Programmes and initiatives

Broadband infrastructure development

Broadband is an essential digital resource for accessing basic services, products, commerce and job creation. It has the potential to create job opportunities and open new markets that will allow businesses, particularly small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), to grow.

Given the strategic importance of broadband, the department, together with the ICT industry, has committed to delivering 100% broadband penetration and creating a million jobs by 2020.

The department is aware of the inter-connectedness of broadband and the licensing of radio frequency spectrum, which is a scarce natural resource.

The Broadband Strategy and Implementation Plan, outlining fibre connectivity across the country to district level, was finalised by late 2013.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, internet service providers and other value-added network service providers. It has a 13 600-km network of long-distance fibre and five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas – with an additional seven open-access points of presence expected over the next few years.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Broadband Infraco has co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System (WACS).

The WACS is the fifth submarine cable system linking South Africa to the world. Broadband Infraco's investment in the WACS entitled it to 11,4% of the system's total capacity, which would help South Africa meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all who need it by 2020.

The cable system has 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

Sentech and Broadband Infraco have also commenced with the broadband plan for the KwaZulu-Natal province pilot project. Site surveys in three districts are complete.

Broadcasting digital migration

The digital broadcasting network reaches more than 80% of the population.

The DoC finalised the subsidy plan for poor households complying with the qualifying criteria and is ready to implement the Set-Top Box (STB) Manufacturing Strategy, which requires

30% local content as part of the plan to develop the electronic industry.

Icasa has finalised the broadcasting regulations. In June 2013, the department launched the STB compliance lab, in partnership with the Department of Trade and Industry and the South African Bureau of Standards. The department decided to review the policy on the STB control system as one way of fast-tracking the roll-out of DTT to make this system non-mandatory.

In addition to the DTT transmission network roll-out target of 84% population coverage via terrestrial transmitters by December 2013, Sentech was expected to launch a Direct-to-Home satellite broadcasting service. This service will provide TV and radio coverage to the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) and all other areas where there is no DTT signal.

Rural Development Strategy

ICTs play a significant role in speeding up the integration of services for the development of rural areas and ensuring that rural communities, including those in remote areas, are not left out of the knowledge economy.

The main goal of the department's Rural Development Strategy is, therefore, to address the vacuum in rural ICT and empower rural communities by promoting sustainable job creation and eradicating poverty in rural areas. The strategy includes programmes that will encourage civil society to promote the use of ICT services and provide the necessary infrastructure.

Job creation

In line with government's New Growth Path (NGP), the department, together with the ICT sector, aims to facilitate the creation of over 150 000 direct and indirect jobs by 2020.

An industry-wide committee will be established to identify opportunities, using a collective database to ensure effective monitoring and evaluation.

Jobs will be created across various subsectors of the industry through:

- providing broadband infrastructure
- establishing content hubs for radio and television
- animation
- e-co-operatives
- using ICTs in FET colleges
- tailor-made solutions for SMMEs
- digital broadcasting and distributing STBs
- rolling out PostBank.

In June 2013, Microsoft launched a campaign aimed at helping 3 000 graduates find information technology (IT) jobs in South Africa, where one in four workers is officially unemployed.

The software giant will partner with the South African Government's job creation fund to train the youths and place them in permanent employment. The company will act as a link between universities and IT companies that it will approach to determine needed skills. For the 3 000 jobs it is targeting, Microsoft is investing R146 million as part of its US$75 million pan-African initiative.

Internet

In June 2013, Akamai Technologies released its *Fourth Quarter, 2012 State of the Internet Report*, showing that South Africa has achieved good improvements in terms of average Internet access speeds. Based on data gathered from the Akamai Intelligent Platform, the report provides insight into key global statistics, including connection speeds, attack traffic, and network connectivity and availability.

South Africa's average Internet connection speed in the fourth quarter of 2012 was 2 132 kbps – up from 1 515 kbps the previous year.

South Africa's average peak Internet connection speed in the fourth quarter of 2012 was 7 143 kbps – up from 5 250 kbps the previous year.

According to a new report by global management consulting firm McKinsey & Company entitled: *Lions go digital: The Internet's transformative potential in Africa*, South Africa's iGDP – which measures the Internet's contribution to overall GDP – is at 1,4%, putting it fourth in Africa.

McKinsey said it developed the concept of iGDP to measure the Internet's contribution to the overall economy as a share of total GDP by adding up all the activities linked to the creation and use of Internet networks and services in four major categories: private consumption, public expenditure, private investment and trade balance. For Africa, the group assessed 14 countries that together account for 90% of Africa's GDP and found significant variation among them.

This suggests that there are major untapped opportunities to harness the power of the Internet to drive growth and development. In dollar terms, the consulting firm estimates that Africa's iGDP currently totals some US$18 billion.

According to McKinsey, private consumption of Internet-related services and equipment, including smartphones, accounts for two-thirds of this total. Public expenditure on the Internet, including digitisation of education and health services, contributes only $2 billion.

e-Commerce will open up a new shopping experience for Africa's growing middle class.

By 2025, it could account for 10% of retail sales in the continent's largest economies,

which will translate into some US$75 billion in annual revenue. South Africa ranks highly on Internet affordability in Africa, according to the first annual *Affordability Report*, compiled by the Alliance for Affordable Internet (A4AI).

In the report, A4AI indexes 46 emerging and developing countries across the world in terms of communication infrastructure and Internet access and affordability (equally weighted). Out of the 46 countries, South Africa is ranked as the 12th most affordable country for Internet access – third in Africa.

Broadband access

The DoC developed the National Broadband Policy as part of its move to transform the country's ICT policies to fast-track South Africa's broadband backbone and access infrastructure, particularly within rural and underserved areas, and meet the country's vision of broadband for all by 2020.

In November 2013, the Minister of Communications introduced the revised broadband policy, which deals with the complete value chain of broadband roll-out, including attracting related investment in broadband infrastructure; enterprise development; local end-user equipment manufacturing; research and development; and reducing the cost of broadband roll-out by creating a single point of entry for regulatory approvals.

The department was expected to finalise, by March 2014, the long-awaited spectrum policy, which would enable Icasa to license the much sought-after 2.6 GHz and 800 MHz band spectrum, which would, in turn, increase network capacity, improve coverage and promote competition.

Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years, has been dramatic.

In South Africa, a country where first and third-world conditions are often separated by just a few kilometres, social media has levelled the playing field and created a platform that is affordable for everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

The top social media sites in South Africa (by number of users) in 2013 include:

- Facebook: 9,6 million users – ranked third
- Mxit: 7,4 million users – mobi-site not ranked
- Twitter: 5,5 million users – ranked 13th
- YouTube: 4,7 million users – ranked fourth
- LinkedIn: 2,7 million users – ranked fifth
- Pinterest: 930 000 users-ranked 14th
- Google Plus: 460 000 users.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

The National Cybersecurity Policy Framework focuses on building the institutional framework and capacity necessary for mitigating any threats to the ICT environment. South Africa is one of the few countries in Africa with such a policy document.

Cybercrime has become an inevitable reality that confronts all online communities across the world. Identity fraud, stalking, online child pornography and terrorism have become daily occurrences that threaten communities' ability to enjoy the benefits of new technologies.

Expanding access to the Internet must be accompanied by strong measures to ensure basic trust and security to the public as the users.

This requires collaboration between departments, civil society and business to build institutional mechanisms to investigate cybercrimes and anticipate threats.

The Cybersecurity Hub, pooling public and private sector threat information is responsible for processing and disseminating information to relevant stakeholders in the industry and civil society.

All computer users have a role in securing cyberspace and ensuring that the digital environment is secure and used reasonably to profit the socio-economic well-being of the nation.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent: it has five mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and virtual network operator Virgin Mobile.

Mobile phones are the dominant technology for voice and data communication among base of pyramid (BoP) users and for informal businesses. People in this group access the Internet mostly via their mobile phones and smartphones have taken over functions that used to be performed by computers.

Users are also finding innovative ways to bypass expensive cellphone SMS rates by using Facebook Zero or other instant message services such as WhatsApp.

Although half of the 50 million people in South Africa live below the poverty line, more than 75% among those in low-income groups who are 15 years or older own a mobile phone.

Mobile ownership at the BoP – households with an income of less than R432 per month, per household member – is relatively high, compared to other African countries. This is according to research commissioned by infoDev, a global partnership programme within the World Bank Group, about the use of mobile phones among BoP users.

Some of 98,5% low-income groups who own mobile phones in South Africa, have a prepaid SIM card, but there is a small percentage (1,5%) of BoP mobile owners who have post-paid contracts.

The Research, however, that even though three-quarters of people in the BoP group own mobile phones, the usage of data applications is fairly low. The one exception here is the MXit social networking platform and there is growing use of other social media, notably Facebook Zero. The lowering of the Mobile Termination Rates from R1,25 a minute in 2010 to R0,40 from March 2013 represents a significant milestone in reducing the cost of communicating.

Telkom

Telkom is Africa's largest integrated communications company, providing integrated communications solutions to a range of customers. The company operates in nine countries across Africa; however, its core market is South Africa, contributing 98,9% in revenue.

It is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd and majority-owned by the DoC. Telkom was the country's only fixed-line operator until 2006, when the country's second fixed-line operator, Neotel, began its operations.

The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

Postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation has been placed on Sapo.

To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

Mail Business has 26 mail-sorting centres for domestic mail and parcels, and three international sorting centres for international mail and parcels. Between these centres, some six million mail items are handled daily and 50 tons of parcels are processed a year.

Mail is transported to and from these sorting centres domestically to 7 188 delivery offices (delivery depot centres, lobby boxes and 2 443 post office branches).

In 2013/14, Sapo committed to building 20 new branches and 25 retail postal agencies and deploying five mobile post offices to serve rural and remote locations.

Specialised Sapo products include:

- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

Philatelic Services

Sapo's Philatelic Services is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products.

Sapo prints more than 380 million postage stamps a year. They not only reach every corner of South Africa, but also the rest of the world. Although stamps are produced mainly to serve as prepayment for postage, their beauty and historical significance have inspired people to collect them since the first postage stamps were produced in England in 1840.

Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items. For example, the first triangular postage stamp was issued on 1 September 1853 in the Cape of Good Hope, which was a British colony at the time. The triangular-shaped stamp, which became known as the Cape Triangular, was the first stamp to be issued in Africa and has become a sought-after collector's item worldwide.

Stamp issues are divided into two main categories:

- Definitive stamps are issued every five to seven years and comprise a set of designs in a full range of face values to provide for the country's postal needs. They usually reflect a particular theme.
- Commemorative stamps are issued according to an annual commemorative stamp-issuing programme. Between 12 and 15 commemorative issues are produced per year. They often commemorate significant historical events or people, or coincide with important days.

Postbank

The Postbank Limited allows Sapo to prioritise the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream. The Postbank Limited Act of 2010 established the Postbank division of Sapo as a separate legal entity, with the principal aim of expanding the existing range of banking services to, among others:

- improve access to affordable services, including loans, especially in rural and lower-income communities
- promote a culture of saving.

In doing so, the Postbank will use the existing Sapo infrastructure, but it is not bound by the Act to do so exclusively.

PostNet

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 250 owner-managed retail stores.

It serves in excess of 55 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide.

There are five product types within PostNet, namely courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

The media

South Africa is fortunate to have vibrant and independent media.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA)

The MDDA is a statutory development agency for promoting and ensuring media development and diversity, established as a partnership between the South African government and major print and broadcasting companies to assist in, among others, developing community and small commercial media in South Africa. It was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002).

The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners.

As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC Radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser.

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Radio KFM
- Power 98.7.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the DoC. In the midst of redefining the country's broadcasting landscape, 2013 marked the 20th anniversary of community broadcasting.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in Sign Language.

Community television

In 2007, Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from Icasa.

Since then, five more seven-year licences have been issued to five stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air television

e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, launched in 1998. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the second largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries.

The independent broadcaster announced in September 2013 that it would launch four new channels on Platco Digital's OpenView HD Platform, in October 2013. Platco is e-tv's sister company, which was set to launch as a free-to-air satellite TV broadcaster, in October 2013.

It aims to be the first multi channel platform in South Africa to offer high definition (HD) channels without charging a subscription fee.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent. MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium.

Top-TV offers five bouquet options, arranged in seven package options.

e.sat tv supplies television, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa, across the African continent and in the United Kingdom (UK), under the brand name eNews Channel Africa (eNCA). Growing out of the success of eNews Prime Time, eNCA is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour television news channel on the DStv Platform (Channel 403).

In October 2013, e.tv launched its multichannel offering on the direct-to-home satellite platform, OpenView HD.

The new channels include a pan-African channel (eAfrica+), a movie channel (eMovies+), a local content channel (eKasi+) and a children's channel (eToonz+).

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

In November 2013, RamsayMedia, one of South Africa's top publishers of such titles as *Getaway*, *Car* and *Popular Mechanics* was reported to have confirmed it would be selling its remaining 70% stake to Caxton for an undisclosed amount.

Newspapers

According to the Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) 2013 *Second Quarter Report*, total newspapers declined slightly, compared to the previous quarter. The weekday daily newspapers declined by 0,7% in 2013; Sunday circulation was down by 1,4%.

Motorsport World and *Auto Week* showed the largest growth in weekly newspapers. Of the weekend newspapers, *Isolezwe ngoMgqibelo* showed the largest growth.

Local newspapers, *Stellalander*, *Klerksdorp Rekord*, *Polokwane Observer* and the *Hermanus Times* showed the largest growth of all local newspapers.

Of the free newspapers, *Alex Pioneer*, *Threewaterkloof Gazette*, *Zululand Eyethu* and the *Precinct Community News* were the titles that showed the largest growth.

Magazines

The *ABC 2013 Second Quarter Report* showed that overall consumer-magazine circulation declined by 13%. *Kuier Combo* (Annual), *The Expatriate SA* (Annual), *SA Career Focus* (six-monthly) and *HQ Pony*, showed the largest growth.

Business-to-business magazines that showed the largest growth were *To Build* (Annual), *Business Brief* (six-monthly), *Vee-plaas*, *African Mines Handbook* (Annual) and the *South African Business Annual*.

TAXtalk, *Foschini Balanced Life*, *on Route* and *Foschini Soccer Club* were the custom magazines that showed the largest growth.

Online media

The August 2013 Digital Media and Marketing Association (DMMA)/Effective Measure website statistics revealed that South Africa produced 23 183 796 unique browsers registering 633 589 222 page views.

Unique browsers from mobile devices accessed 11 559 199 sites registering 250 566 538 page views.

Media organisations and role players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), established in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation in South Africa, established in 1882), the Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman. Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust protects freedom of speech. It is backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations. The trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993).

It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

The mission of the DMMA is to provide a forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and

For 167 years, *The Witness* has served the interests of the inland KwaZulu-Natal community. Now what is one of the oldest newspapers in South Africa, which started life as *The Natal Witness* in 1846, is printing a Durban and coastal edition and has a new editor to guide it in its latest incarnation.

which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF) lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

The Professional Journalists' Association's mission is to give a voice to working journalists and represent their interests in newsrooms across the country.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the:

- Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa
- Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union
- Specialist Press Association
- South African Guild of Motoring Journalists
- Professional Photographers of South Africa
- Media Institute of Southern Africa
- Publishers' Association of South Africa
- press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The national news agency, the South African Press Association, is a cooperative, non-profit organisation.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Journalism awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Sappi Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa Pica Awards
- Sanlam Community Press Awards
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums
- South African Breweries Journalism Awards
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Sanef's Nat Nakasa Award for media integrity.

South Africans, Msindisi Fengu and Yandisa Monakali from *The Daily Dispatch*, were named overall winners of the CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards 2013 in October 2013 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre.

Media awards

In October 2013, the MDDA and Sanlam, co-sponsors and organisers of the MDDA-Sanlam Local Media Awards, announced that they would invest more in the awards by introducing new categories for the competition.

The 2013 awards, which were presented in May 2014, covered the period from 1 January 2013 to 31 December 2013.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA co-operates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing-communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and of South African society.

In May 2013, the ASA applied to be recognised as an ombud for the industry.

This would make it a recognised statutory body, in terms of the Consumer Protection Act 2008, (Act 68 of 2008).

City Press scooped the South African Editor of the Year, Story of the Year, Journalist of the Year, Investigative Journalism, Feature Writing and Joel Mervis Awards at the Standard Bank Sikuvile Journalism Awards. The newspaper also took home top honours in the Digital Category Award at the African CNN Journalist Awards raked for "Faces of Marikana." The Sunday title was voted into second place in the weekly newspaper category at the *Sunday Times* Top Brands Awards.

Advertising awards

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South African awards recognising distinction in advertising. In September 2013, a total of 238 Loeries were awarded, four of which were Grands Prix – to Draftfcb Cape Town, Ogilvy & Mather Cape Town, and FoxP2, respectively.

In the Tactical Use of Newspaper category, a Loeries Bronze was awarded to King James for Santam's Halloween advertisement. In the Newspaper Advertising category, Ogilvy & Mather (Jhb), FoxP2, Volcano and Ireland Davenport claimed Bronze awards. Silver Loeries went to Ogilvy & Mather (CT) for Volkswagen, TBWA Hunt Lascaris (Jhb) for Twinsaver, and NetworkBBDO for Mercedes-Benz.

Gold Loeries were awarded to DDBSA for McDonalds, TBWA Hunt Lascaris (Jhb) for Flight Centre, and Lowe & Partners (CT) for *The Cape Times*.

The Grand Prix winner was FoxP2 for a radio advertisement, entitled "Death Doesn't Have To Try Very Hard" on behalf of Frank.net Life Insurance.

A special Loeries Hall of Fame award was bestowed on Graham Warsop, CEO and founder of The Jupiter Drawing Room.

Other important annual media awards are the Eagles, the Pendoring and the AdReview Awards.

International relations

The international branch of the DoC continues to be the primary vehicle through which the department pursues government's priority of contributing to a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa in a better world.

In 2013, South Africa was elected to the Council of Administration of the Universal Postal Union (UPU) for the first time.

South Africa chairs its Future Strategy Committee.

The department was also re-elected to the Postal Operations Council that deals with the operational, economic and commercial aspects of the postal business.

South Africa also made an important contribution to addressing the world ministerial debate.

This led to ministers adopting the White Paper in support of the UPU's global declaration to prioritise the development of infrastructure for allocating addresses.

South Africa has contributed significantly to the UPU's work in developing National Address Systems. The country's use of Global Positioning Systems to allocate addresses to people in rural and undeveloped areas has proved critical.

Economy

In its 2013/14 *Global Competitiveness Report*, the World Economic Forum ranked South Africa second in the world for the accountability of its private institutions, and third for its financial market development.

Its securities exchange is ranked among the top 20 in the world in terms of size.

In its February 2013 report, *Emerging Markets Opportunity Index: High Growth Economies*, independent consulting and accounting firm Grant Thornton said South Africa is the leading emerging economy on the African continent in terms of potential investment destination.

According to the results for 2012, South Africa was also the only African country to be ranked in the top 15 emerging economies worldwide.

In March 2013, the third *Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development* (OECD) *Economic Survey on South Africa* was released.

The economic survey is published every two years for each of the 34 OECD countries as well as for major non-member economies.

It identifies the main economic challenges faced by the country and analyses possible policy options to meet them.

It found that while South Africa was advancing, it was failing to fully achieve its considerable potential.

The report found that per capita incomes were growing and public services expanding, while crime rates were falling.

Government's National Development Plan (NDP) and the New Growth Path (NGP) were lauded for their focus on creating jobs.

However, the OECD said the country had a long way to go in eradicating unemployment. Among the recommendations made to help reduce unemployment among the youth was support for the training of young entrepreneurs.

The objectives of the NDP are to eradicate poverty and sharply reduce inequality by 2030 while the NGP is an economic framework for 2010-2020 with the overriding objective of creating employment.

The report credited South Africa's public finances as being in better shape than that of many OECD countries.

In October 2013, the then Minister of Finance, Pravin Gordhan, was named the Finance Minister of the Year (2013) in the sub-Saharan Africa category by Emerging Markets.

Emerging Markets is a website that provides news, analysis and commentary on economic policy, international economics and global financial markets, with a special focus on emerging markets.

While the financial system was healthy, the report made reference to the country's high unemployment rate, as well as income inequality.

Economic indicators

Domestic output

According to the South African Reserve Bank's (SARB) *Quarterly Bulletin*, released in September 2013, real economic activity in South Africa picked up notably in the second quarter of 2013.

Following an annualised growth rate of 0,9% in the first quarter of 2013, the pace of expansion in real gross domestic product (GDP) accelerated to 3% in the second quarter, boosted primarily by the improved performance of the secondary sector.

This enhanced performance could in part be attributed to base effects and to a lesser extent a turn for the better in the manufacturing sector.

Real output in the primary sector contracted, while growth in the tertiary sector slowed marginally.

Despite this firm uptick in economic activity, aggregate real GDP in the second quarter of 2013 was only 2% higher than in the corresponding period of 2012.

The real value added by the primary sector contracted at an annualised rate of 5% in the second quarter of 2013 as output declined in both the mining and agricultural sectors.

In the agricultural sector real output contracted at a lower rate of 3,7% in the second quarter of 2013, following a decline of 4,9% in the preceding quarter.

A decrease in field crop production due to dry weather conditions in most maize-producing areas in South Africa in the opening months of the year was only partly offset by a sustained increase in livestock and horticultural production over the period.

Mining production continued to be fairly erratic on a quarter-to-quarter basis.

Having increased at an annualised rate of 14,6% in the first quarter of 2013, the real value added by the mining sector declined by 5,6% in the second quarter.

Pronounced declines were registered in the production of platinum and diamonds. By contrast, the production of coal and other mining products held up well during the period under review.

Platinum production was hampered by escalating cost pressures, increased safety stoppages and sporadic labour disruptions that emerged during the second quarter of 2013.

Diamond production levels at one of South Africa's largest opencast diamond mines had not normalised by September 2013, after severe flooding at the beginning of 2013.

Coal production, however, benefited from continual improvements in operational efficiency at mines.

Subsequent to a decline of 6,2% in the first quarter of 2013, the real value added by the secondary sector expanded at an annualised rate of 9,3% in the second quarter of 2013, on account of increased production in the manufacturing, and electricity, gas and water sectors.

Growth in the real value added by the construction sector inched marginally higher over the period.

The real output of the manufacturing sector rose firmly at an annualised rate of 11,5% in the second quarter of 2013.

In part, this reflected the normalisation of output, following setbacks in the first quarter of 2013, when a fire at a steel mill, refinery maintenance and industrial action temporarily weighed on production.

The expansion in manufacturing output in the second quarter was also in keeping with an increase in real gross domestic final demand and more stable global economic conditions.

Moreover, domestic producers also benefited from the greater competitiveness provided by the lower exchange value of the rand.

Pronounced increases were recorded in the production of basic iron and steel, non-ferrous metal products and machinery; motor vehicles, parts and accessories and other transport equipment; and textiles, clothing, leather and footwear.

At the other extreme, the production of petroleum, chemical products, and rubber and plastic products continued to decline over the period.

Consistent with the higher level of manufacturing production, the usage of production

In February and March 2013, the Department of Trade and Industry embarked on a nationwide consultative process to review the national export strategy.

The review would focus on the whole of South Africa, comprising both the private and public sectors, including state-owned entities. It would include all the work done by the various national and provincial government departments and their agencies.

The need to review and develop a streamlined approach to export development and promotion is in line with global best practice.

The country's latest economic policy developments such as the Industrial Policy Action Plan, New Growth Path, National Development Plan and national export strategy, developed in 2005, also need to be reviewed and updated, in line with these recent policy developments.

capacity in the manufacturing sector increased from 80,9 index points in the first quarter of 2013 to 81,3 index points in the second quarter.

After declining for two consecutive quarters, the real value added by the sector supplying electricity, gas and water rose at an annualised rate of 5,3% in the second quarter of 2013.

Smelters consumed substantially more electricity in June 2013, following the termination of buy-back agreements between Eskom and large industrial users of electricity, in May 2013.

The domestic supply of electricity was further augmented by higher electricity imports as the flood-damaged transmission line at Cahora Bassa in Mozambique returned to service during the second quarter.

The real value added by the construction sector increased at an annualised rate of 1,2% in the second quarter of 2013.

The annualised pace of increase in real value added by the tertiary sector moderated somewhat from 2,4% in the first quarter of 2013 to 2,3% in the second quarter.

Consistent with the uptick in consumer demand and improved consumer confidence levels in the second quarter of 2013, annualised growth in the real value added by the trade sector accelerated from 1,9% in the first quarter of 2013 to 3,2% in the second quarter.

Activity in the retail, wholesale and motor-trade subsectors remained buoyant and increased further in the second quarter of 2013.

Growth in the real value added by the transport, storage and communication sector lost some momentum in the second quarter of 2013, moderating from an annualised rate of 2,2% in the first quarter of 2013 to 1,6% in the second quarter.

Activity in the finance, insurance, real-estate and business services sector increased at an annualised rate of 3,5% in the second quarter of 2013, following an increase of 3,3% in the preceding quarter.

A marginal decrease in employment levels in the second quarter of 2013 mainly accounted for the moderation in the pace of growth in real value added by general government, from 1,9% in the first quarter of 2013 to 0,3% in the second quarter.

The best South African businesses in various sectors of the economy were showcased at the inaugural SA Premier Business Awards, hosted by the Department of Trade and Industry in March 2013.

The awards recognise South African companies that invest in both human and technical resources in various projects, and stimulate local job creation and broader participation in the economy.

The awards comprise 13 categories, namely: Exporter; Media; Quality; Technology; Green; Most Empowered Enterprise; Rural Development; Women-owned Enterprise; Manufacturer; Proudly South African Enterprise; Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises; Young Entrepreneur; and Investor Award.

The Lifetime Achievement Award was presented to business mogul Richard Maponya, known for building a business empire, despite the restrictions of apartheid.

Real gross domestic expenditure

In contrast to the acceleration observed in the growth rate of domestic production in the second quarter of 2013, growth in real gross domestic expenditure tapered off from an annualised rate of 3,5% in the first quarter of 2013 to 2,7% in the second quarter.

Compared to the corresponding quarter in the preceding year, total expenditure also lost some momentum in the second quarter of 2013, consistent with a moderation in the final consumption expenditure by households and capital investment over the period.

Consistent with the improvement in consumer confidence levels, growth in real final consumption expenditure by households accelerated from an annualised rate of 2,3% in the first quarter of 2013 to 2,5% in the second quarter.

The ratio of final consumption expenditure by households to GDP consequently increased to 61% in the second quarter of 2013.

Even though expenditure by households edged higher in the second quarter of 2013, the pace of increase was still lower than the average rate of growth recorded during the past three years.

Subsequent to an annualised increase of 5,4% in the first quarter of 2013, growth in real outlays on durable goods accelerated to 11,8% in the second quarter.

Growth in spending on semi-durable goods accelerated in the first and second quarters of 2013, recording firm rates of 6,2% and 8,2%, respectively.

Real spending on non-durable goods increased at a rate of 3% in the second quarter of 2013, higher than the rate of 1,4% recorded in the previous quarter.

Real spending on services declined at an annualised rate of 1,9% in the second quarter of 2013, following an increase of 1,1% in the preceding quarter.

Having amounted to 2,2% in the first quarter of 2013, annualised growth in households' real disposable income edged higher to 2,4% in the second quarter.

Concurrently, the nominal level of household debt rose further over the period; the ratio of unsecured lending to total household debt,

however, remained around 13% in both the first and the second quarters of 2013.

Relative to annualised disposable income, household debt increased from 75,4% in the first quarter of 2013 to 75,8% in the second quarter.

Consistent with the relatively low interest rate environment, the debt-service cost ratio remained at 7,7% in the second quarter of 2013.

Growth in the net wealth of households tapered off in the second quarter of 2013, mainly reflecting the subdued performance of household financial assets over the period.

The ratio of net household wealth to annualised disposable income, however, still increased from 320% in the first quarter of 2013 to 326% in the second quarter.

Growth in real final consumption expenditure by general government slowed to 2,1% in the second quarter of 2013 from 3% in the first quarter.

This reflected government's ongoing efforts to curb current expenditure and contain the growing public-sector wage bill.

Nominal compensation of public employees increased somewhat in the second quarter of 2013, mainly due to annual wage increases of around 5% during the period.

The ratio of final consumption expenditure by general government to GDP increased from 22,1% in the first quarter to 22,5% in the second quarter of 2013.

Having increased at an annualised rate of 2,5% in the first quarter of 2013, growth in real gross fixed capital formation accelerated to 2,7% in the second quarter.

Comprising more than two thirds of total gross fixed capital formation, real fixed capital outlays by private business enterprises gathered momentum, from an annualised growth rate of 2,8% in the first quarter of 2013 to 4,4% in the second quarter.

Capital investment in the agricultural sector was supported by strong increases in sales of agricultural machinery, as a result of pre-emptive buying ahead of possible price increases, in response to the recent depreciation in the exchange value of the rand.

The mining sector continued investing in ongoing projects, with the bulk of capital spending shifting from construction works to machinery and equipment.

Spending on capital assets was particularly noticeable in the coal, gold and iron ore mining industries.

Expenditure, particularly by the food, paper products, fuel and motor vehicle subsectors, contributed towards the faster pace of increase in capital spending by the manufacturing sector.

The uptick in market sentiment in the construction sector was underpinned by the sustained increase in capital spending by the private sector in both residential and non-residential buildings.

Capital investment in the trade sector was largely evidenced by the development and upgrading of non-residential buildings.

Real fixed capital expenditure by public corporations contracted at an annualised rate of 2% in the second quarter of 2013.

The level of spending was mainly curtailed by restrained growth in the transport sector, as most of the leading public entities, including Transnet, Sanral and the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority, lowered their capital spending.

Although Eskom's expenditure picked up from the first quarter of 2013, it was not enough to increase the overall capital spending by this institutional sector.

The pace of capital spending by general government was roughly maintained in the second quarter of 2013.

Improved capital spending by local government departments and sustained spending by provincial government departments supported the sideways movement in capital outlays by the sector.

Capital spending was particularly focused on roads and transport, utilities, human settlements, education and health.

The investment in both economic and social services contributed to fulfilling service delivery mandates.

Real inventory investment decelerated from R4 billion in the first quarter of 2013 to R2,7 billion in the second quarter, mainly on account of developments in the mining sector.

The slower pace of inventory accumulation in the mining sector mainly reflected lower inventory holdings in the platinum-mining sector in the second quarter of 2013.

Stock levels in the commerce sector rose, owing to an increase in agricultural stocks-in-trade, as the bulk of the latest maize crop was harvested and stored in silos during the quarter under review.

Consequently, the level of industrial and commercial inventories as a percentage of non-agricultural GDP increased from 12,5% in the first quarter of 2013 to 12,7% in the second quarter.

This ratio is significantly lower than in the period preceding the financial crisis.

Possible reasons for the declining trend in the inventory ratio include the deterioration in economic growth and an increasingly competitive business environment, which necessitated the implementation of steps to curtail the cost of holding inventories. Advanced technology also

made provision for more effective inventory management techniques.

Employment

Releasing the *Quarterly Labour Force Survey* (QLFS) for the second quarter in July 2013, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) indicated that the unemployment rate increased to 25,6%.

There were 13,7 million people employed in the second quarter of 2013.

In the formal sector, 123 000 more people were employed in the second quarter of 2013 than in the corresponding period on 2012.

Formal-sector job gains were driven by finance and other business services, construction, transport and utilities.

There was an increase in the number of unemployed persons in the second quarter of 2013, with 4,7 million people being unemployed, of which 3,1 million have been looking for work for over a year or longer.

Since most employment creation occurs outside of the government, accelerating it requires the consistent use of core state functions to create an environment that encourages private enterprise and other non-State organisations to expand jobs.

To this end, the NGP and the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 (IPAP2) provide a framework for undertaking these tasks.

They require coordination across all departments, many of which are not primarily concerned with the economy, as well as state-owned enterprises (SOEs), municipalities and provinces.

A youth employment creation committee under the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) examined measures to address unemployment among young people.

Government explored work-seeker and work-creation subsidies with key partners and looked into establishing specific programmes to help young people start their own businesses or cooperatives.

In the area of education, government accelerated work on its second-chance matric initiative and on expanding the intake of Further Education and Training colleges tenfold to four million by 2030.

In September 2013, German company Oiltanking GmbH entered into a joint venture with a number of local companies to build a commercial crude oil storage and blending terminal at the port of Saldanha on South Africa's west coast.

The terminal will cost R2 billion to build, and will comprise 12 giant concrete tanks, each capable of holding 1,1 million barrels of crude, which translates to a total capacity of 13,2 million barrels. The new terminal will be built as a state-of-the-art facility, in accordance with the highest technical, operational and environmental standards, with a jetty designed to handle vessels up to very large crude-carrier size. The port of Saldanha is an excellent location for a crude oil hub, as it is close to strategic tanker routes between key oil-producing regions to major oil-consuming markets.

Price inflation

Against the backdrop of a relatively benign international inflation environment and subdued global and domestic output growth, domestic headline consumer price inflation remained within the inflation target range for 14 consecutive months up to June 2013, before breaching the upper limit of the target range in July, when it amounted to 6,3%.

From February 2013, Stats SA applied a new methodology to calculate the producer price index (PPI). Producer price inflation for final manufactured goods: the new headline PPI decelerated from a high of 8,8% in February 2012 to 4,9% in May 2013, whereafter it accelerated to 6,7% in August.

Inflation expectations for 2013, as measured by the *Survey of Inflation Expectations* conducted by the Bureau for Economic Research at Stellenbosch University, in the third quarter of 2013 remained unchanged at 6% from the previous quarter.

Annual average consumer price inflation was expected to accelerate to 6,2% in 2014, before moderating somewhat to 6,1% in 2015.

Exchange rates

The South African rand was among the emerging-market currencies that were negatively affected by the "tapering" remarks of the United States of America's (USA) Federal Reserve in May 2013.

This weighed down the performance of the domestic currency during the second quarter of 2013, in conjunction with the decline in international prices of key South African export commodities, sizeable fiscal and current-account deficits, weak economic growth, high unemployment levels and ongoing labour union rivalry.

The nominal effective exchange rate of the rand consequently declined by 6,8% from the end of March 2013 to the end of June.

The exchange rate of the rand stabilised in July 2013.

However, during August 2013 emerging-market currencies depreciated sharply as concerns about capital outflows from these countries intensified.

The real effective exchange rate of the rand declined by 11,9% from June 2012 to June 2013, further improving the external price competi-

tiveness of South African exporters in international markets.

In the first half of 2013, the real effective exchange rate was 8,8% lower than in the corresponding period of 2012.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange increased by 12,2% from US$19,5 billion in the first quarter of 2013 to US$21,9 billion in the second quarter.

While both spot and forward transactions increased over this period, the increase can largely be explained by non-residents' participation in the swap market, which increased from an average of US$6,8 billion per day to US$7,6 billion per day over the period.

Economic Development Department

The Economic Development Department is responsible for coordinating the development of the country's NGP and overseeing the work of key State entities engaged in economic development.

The department promotes economic development through participatory, coherent and coordinated economic policy and planning for the benefit of all South Africans.

The department has assumed responsibility for key outputs relating to inclusive economic growth, including:

- developing the NGP
- analysing data on income distribution
- concluding social pacts to create decent work
- strengthening the implementation of the framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis
- developing spatial programmes
- developing the green economy
- implementing a multipronged strategy to reduce unemployment among the youth
- improving cost structures in the economy
- better integrating Second-Economy activities and the mainstream economy.

The Economic Development Department is working with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research to develop spatial frameworks for the poorest 23 districts in the country.

The spatial plans identify how impoverished rural areas can take advantage of economic opportunities in the core economy.

That, in turn, requires a spatial framework to identify major viable opportunities and the key actions required for people in relevant regions to take advantage of them.

Legislation and policies

The Competition Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 1 of 2009), actively mandates the competition authorities to consider public interest criteria, including impact on employment and linked industries, when evaluating proposed mergers and acquisitions.

The Act provides for:

- concurrent jurisdiction between the Competition Commission and other regulatory authorities
- provisions to address other practices that tend to prevent or distort competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- more guidance, in relation to conducting market enquiries as a tool to identify and make recommendations, with respect to conditions that tend to prevent, distort or restrict competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- provisions to hold personally accountable those individuals who cause firms to engage in cartel conduct
- authority to the Competition Commission to excuse a respondent to a complaint, if the respondent has assisted the competition authorities in the detection and investigation of cartel conduct.

The Act also makes it compulsory for firms to notify the commission and/or the tribunal about mergers and acquisitions above a certain monetary threshold.

The commission is the investigation and enforcement agency. The tribunal is the adjudicative body.

The Competitions Appeals Court considers appeals against decisions of the tribunal.

The competition policy focuses on addressing the scandal of price fixing and collusion between construction companies in past infrastructure projects.

Budget and funding

The Economic Development Department's budget is a window across programmes in many different departments.

The budget allocation for 2013/14 amounted to R772 million, of which R231 million was for small business funding, R193,8 million for the competition authorities, R79,8 million for trade administration and R108 million to the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) for the agro-processing fund.

The department's budget for operations and capital spending is R159 million.

Programmes and projects

In 2012/13, the Economic Development Department focused on creating conditions for greater job creation, stronger long-term growth and countercyclical economic interventions to address the less favourable global environment.

Cabinet adopted the NDP as the overall vision for the country.

The NDP integrates the various elements of policy with improving the capacity of the State; and the NGP as government's economic strategy, with the IPAP as the manufacturing driver and the Infrastructure Plan as the infrastructure driver.

The department made significant progress with the roll-out of the National Infrastructure Plan, with construction activities taking place in all nine provinces.

The department improved the level of industrial funding by the IDC to support local factories, farms and mines.

The Small Business Finance Agency (Sefa) was launched and has implemented its systems, with a large increase in the level of funding it approved in 2012/13.

In May 2013, StatsSA released its QLFS, which showed on aggregate that 44 000 new jobs were created in South Africa in the first three months of 2013, and 199 000 over the 12 months ending in March 2013.

In May 2013, the Economic Development Ministry issued a trade policy directive, in terms of section 5 of the International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act 71 of 2002) to limit the export of scrap metal, so that this resource maybe used in South African foundries and steel factories, saving energy, creating local jobs and promoting infrastructure development.

Manufactured exports to the rest of Africa rose by about R20 billion or 21% in 2012/13, accounting for more than 90 000 jobs in South Africa, thereby strengthening regional integration.

New Growth Path

The IDC set up a localisation unit and increased its five-year plan for available industrial funding to R102 billion.

The first locally assembled bus for Johannesburg came off the production line at a factory in Germiston, in June 2013.

A sophisticated industrial strategy, as outlined in the IPAP, requires the injection of foreign and local capital, know-how and innovation.

A few examples of success:

- Asia's largest commodities trading company, Noble Resources, is the main investor in one of two advanced soya-crushing plants under construction. In the past 12 months, the company invested about R2,2 billion in the local economy.
- By August 2013, South Africa had attracted Turkish investment in the manufacturing of stoves in East London, and in restarting the Cape Town-based CISCO steel mill, with a R250 million investment, which points to a growing interest among investors to manufacture goods in South Africa.

The NGP calls for greater economic inclusion, through small business development and youth employment.

In April 2013, the Economic Development Ministry signed a Youth Employment Accord.

It provides for a comprehensive approach, which includes incentives, commitments and action to address youth unemployment.

It provides for work experience through internships and, most importantly, new jobs for young people.

To support the accord, the IDC announced a R1-billion Youth Fund to provide concessional lending to youth-owned enterprises that create jobs.

Over the next five years, Sefa plans to provide R2,3 billion for women-owned enterprises, with R295 million in 2013/14, so that women are more actively represented in the economy and may give it the benefit of their energy and enterprise.

The department financed a training programme for 100 young people, in partnership with the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (Saica).

A further 170 young people were enrolled in the programme in 2013, to which the department committed R9 million.

During 2013, the department took the small business programmes to the public through 18 large community roadshows, with a special focus on youth and women.

Green economy

The South African Green Economy Modelling Study, published in August 2013, showed that investing in a low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy was fundamental for South Africa's sustained economic growth and well-being.

The study assessed the impact of green investments in four of the country's key economic sectors: agriculture, energy, transport and natural resource management.

The report found that a green economy approach – such as investing in low-carbon technologies, green buildings, and renewable

energy – could create more jobs while supporting the same level of economic growth, yet with lower emissions of greenhouse gases and less environmental damage.

However, based on a green economy, and target-specific scenario, it also confirmed that additional investment might be needed to meet the country's growth target of a 4% to 7% rise in GDP per year, between 2013 and 2020, as stipulated in the NDP.

South Africa is committed to pursuing and exploring opportunities in its transition to an inclusive, low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy.

The report's findings will guide the country's future policies and investments as it works towards achieving its sustainable development and poverty eradication goals.

Some key findings in the report included:

- Investment in a green economy could contribute to 46% more restored land by 2030, and greater water availability, without reducing land required for the agriculture sector. In addition, it could create jobs for 737 000 people, compared to 568 000 under a business-as-usual scenario.
- In the agriculture sector, investment in ecological practices could increase crop yields by as much as 23,9% by 2030, while avoiding further CO^2 emissions. However, the report says additional land for agriculture would still be required to meet the needs of a population that is projected to grow.
- Green investment in the transport sector was insufficient to meet the country's 2005 energy efficiency goal of 9% by 2015. However, in a green economy scenario, improvements in efficiency could reach 5,5% by 2030, partially offsetting the projected growth of the population and GDP.
- Applying the green economy model in the energy sector could result in a reduced energy demand, while increasing the country's electricity diversification mix, but it still falls short of the NDP's goal to have 33% of the country's electricity demand by 2030. Therefore, a more aggressive investment strategy is needed to meet this target.

International cooperation

In September 2013, the 17th annual China International Fair for Investment and Trade got underway at the Xiamen International Exhibition Centre, with 62 South African exhibitors showcasing products that could enter the Chinese market.

In March 2013, Chinese President Xi Jinping paid a State visit to South Africa, further deepening China's cooperation with South Africa.

China is South Africa's biggest trading partner and a significant investor in the South African economy, with exports from South Africa to China in 2012 totalling R89 billion. Imports from China to South Africa totalled R112 billion. Total trade stood at R201 billion.

Department of Trade and Industry (the dti)

The department continues to contribute towards the Government's priorities and outcomes through the implementation of the IPAP 2.

Its successful implementation in various sectors in South Africa over the past few years has started to bear fruit, with a number of key foreign investors in various sectors starting to choose South Africa as their preferred investment destination.

This is a demonstration of massive confidence in South Africa's policies and an indication that the country is on the right track; all that needs to be done is to intensify and sustain industrialisation efforts.

Central to South Africa's industrial policy is the localisation programme leveraging the huge purchasing power the Government has in the form of public procurement.

Large public procurements are used to promote industrial development, through the designation of products/sectors.

Products/sectors that have already been designated for local procurement include: set-top boxes; the bus sector; steel power pylons; the canned vegetables sector; textiles, clothing, leather and footwear; rail rolling stock.

Due to thinner export markets and other adverse conditions arising from the economic slowdown, the Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme (MCEP) may take the form of:

- production support mechanisms
- loans
- equity injection
- working capital support
- restructuring assistance

Over 200 high-level representatives of government, business, labour, civil society and academia gathered in Midrand on 5 November 2013, for the inaugural Competitiveness Forum, hosted by Brand South Africa. A part of the discussion was how the nation's competitiveness could contribute to the implementation of the National Development Plan (NDP). A policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030, the NDP – also referred to as Vision 2030 – identifies the key constraints to faster growth and presents a roadmap to a more inclusive economy that will address the country's socio-economic imbalances.

- support for the acquisition of fixed assets
- investment initiatives to enable firms to accomplish improved sales, job preservation and expansion
- provide income support to employees and lay-offs support.

To strengthen industrialisation, as well as the geographic spread of economic opportunities, the department will implement the special economic zones (SEZs) programme.

The department has undertaken a comprehensive review of the zones, to improve infrastructure, attract foreign and domestic investors, and develop structured financing products and incentive measures to achieve the outcomes of the IPAP 2 and NGP.

South Africa's membership of the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) grouping presents many opportunities for trade and investment.

The department will promote the export of value-added products and encourage complementary trade rather than compete with other BRICS countries.

Already China and South Africa have agreed on the Top 10 exports and investment projects to be promoted in the Chinese market.

Strategic negotiations are unfolding in several areas, including the BRICS Telecom Submarine Cable project and the BRICS trade and risk development pool.

The department's specialised, regulatory and financial development agencies and institutions include the:

- Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)
- Companies and Intellectual Property Commission
- National Empowerment Fund (NEF)
- Estate Agency Affairs Board
- Export Credit Insurance Corporation
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- National Credit Regulator
- National Lotteries Board
- National Gambling Board
- South African National Accreditation System
- National Consumer Tribunal
- National Consumer Commission
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa
- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The dti develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation.

It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the department in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

The department's work is governed by a broad legislative framework. These include the:

- BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003)
- Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008)
- Co-operatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013) which amended the Co-operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005)
- Copyright Act, 1978 (Act 98 of 1978)
- Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 107 of 1996)
- Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003)
- Patents Act, 1978 (Act 57 of 1978)
- Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981)
- Trade Marks Act, 1993 (Act 194 of 1993).
- Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000) as amended.

In February 2013, the dti embarked on a nationwide consultative process concerning the review of the national export strategy.

The review of the national export strategy focused on the whole of South Africa, taking both the private and public sectors including SOEs into consideration.

It included all the work done by the various national and provincial government departments and their agencies.

The country's latest economic policy developments such as IPAP, NGP, the NDP and the national export strategy, developed in 2005, also needed to be reviewed and updated, in line with these recent policy developments.

Role players

National Small Business Advisory Council

The National Small Business Advisory Council advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses.

The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

There are three primary working groups in each of the following primary areas:

- access to finance
- demand and markets
- regulatory review.

International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (Itac)

Itac was established through the International Trade Administration Act of 2002.

The commission is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and

employment, in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area.

This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement.

The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control.

Itac has processed numerous applications for increases, rebates and reduced duties, in line with IPAP priorities.

The SABS has developed an early warning system to identify technical barriers to trade for exporters.

Outcomes are distributed to exporters monthly.

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC)

The PICC has five geographically defined, strategic integrated projects (SIPs) to:

- develop and integrate rail, road and water infrastructure
- improve the movement of goods and economic integration through a Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor
- develop a major new south-eastern node that will improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape region and expand the province's economic and logistics linkages with the Northern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal
- expand the roll-out of water, roads, rail and electricity infrastructure in North West, where 10 priority roads will be upgraded
- expand the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in the Northern Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape, which will create large numbers of jobs in both provinces.

All the SIPs had been launched by the end of January 2013.

Construction was well underway on many of the projects included in the Infrastructure Plan.

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Seda provides non-financial business-development and support services for small enterprises.

This is in partnership with other role players ensuring their growth, sustainability and enhancing their competitiveness and capabilities through coordinated services, programmes and projects.

In May 2013, South Africa hosted the World Economic Forum on Africa.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialist risk-finance company for formal small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs), in South Africa and selected African countries.

Business Partners Ltd is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Remgro Ltd, Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd, major South African banks, insurance companies, mining houses and others.

Business Partners Ltd has 22 offices throughout South Africa.

National Empowerment Fund

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation.

It provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors.

It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE, in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (Sawen)

Sawen is a women's networking forum, which focuses on the advancement of women-owned and managed businesses.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the dti has been using vehicles such as Sawen, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business (TWIB).

In October 2013, Amina Bardien, the owner of construction and training business Funda Mentals in Cape Town received R50 000, as the winner in the Small Business category at the Ligugu Lami Awards, after joining the Sawen.

The Ligugu Lami Awards acknowledge women entrepreneurs and encourages them to take pride in their achievements.

Isivande Women's Fund

The IWF accelerates women's economic empowerment by providing affordable, usable and responsive finance.

It renders financial support for deals requiring start-up funding, involving business expansion, rehabilitation, turnaround and franchising.

The IWF targets formally registered, 60% women-owned and/or managed enterprises that have been in existence and operating for two or more years, with a loan range of R30 000 to R2 million.

The Bavumile Programme provides training to women in the clothing sector, while TWIB with its awards programme, recognises women enterprises which use technology to grow and develop their businesses.

Industrial Development Corporation

The IDC is an important national asset, and has a unique mandate to industrialise South Africa.

In 2013, the IDC created about 19 000 new jobs and saved about 4 000.

Under difficult market conditions, the corporation remained profitable and maintained an approval rate of R13 billion.

Since 2010, the IDC has invested R45 billion in projects in the form of equity or loans. In doing so the corporation injected funds into the economy and job creation.

The IDC invested in manufacturing the services sector, infrastructure development and the green economy.

To focus on youth entrepreneurs, the IDC has R2,7 billion available for the next five years for special youth funding.

Resources

Technology support

The dti implements skills development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans.

Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (Thrip), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for transfer payments and subsidies to:

- Seda's Technology Programme, which is managed by Seda, to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- Thrip, which is managed by the National Research Foundation, to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance
- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

In his Medium-term Budget Policy Statement in October 2013, the Minister of Finance projected the country's economy to grow by 1,4% to 3,5% over the next three years. The Gross Domestic Product had been revised down by the Reserve Bank to 2,1% in 2013.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The BBBEE Amendment Bill was debated in Parliament in June 2013.

BEE is not only a political and social necessity for redressing the wrongs of the past, but will also help broaden economic participation, which will contribute to economic growth.

The intention with the Bill is to ensure that black people become not only owners but also active participants in the companies.

The new BEE codes of good practice are expected to boost support for black-owned small firms.

The Bill, which amends the BBBEE Act of 2003, provides a clear statutory definition of fronting and also provides for the establishment of a commission that will address issues of fronting and have the power to levy penalties specified under the Bill.

The Bill also provides for a regulatory framework for BEE-rating agencies, and gives all government departments and businesses one year to bring any other empowerment legislation they may be using in line with that of the Bill.

The mining charter is one of the tools that will have to be realigned with the BEE Bill.

The penalties under the Bill allow for those convicted of fronting to be given a fine, or a prison sentence of no more than 10 years.

The department is also amending the BEE codes of good practice and inviting comment on them.

The amended codes will provide for greater emphasis on the development of black suppliers.

The first BBBEE Summit was held in October 2013, with government taking stock of the positives and challenges since the implementation of BEE 10 years previously.

Programmes and projects

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability, to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to

improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- draw existing SMMEs exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

Industrial development

Industrialisation is central to long-term growth and development.

The Automotive Investment Scheme saw the approval of 92 projects (seven final car producers and 85 component manufacturers).

The projected investment resulting from these approvals was close to R9 billion based on incentives of R2,5 billion, creating over 7 000 jobs as a direct result.

Localisation is fundamental to reversing de-industrialisation pressures and strengthening the country's capacity to design and make things.

Steps taken to implement this included the following initiatives:

- The department signed a Local Procurement Accord with the business sector, including the 85 largest companies, labour and community partners. The accord set a target of 75% local content with concrete commitments and is the first agreement of its kind in South Africa.
- Cabinet approved procurement regulations that require all public entities to procure designated goods only from South African manufacturers.
- The Infrastructure Plan has a strong localisation component in the purchase of trains, boilers, earth-moving equipment, turbines and other key inputs.
- In 2013, the updated version of the IPAP – the manufacturing driver of the NGP, to increase competitiveness of local companies – was released.
- The department commissioned Proudly South African to drive more focused marketing and buy-local campaigns and compile a database of local suppliers. To this end, the department made available R8 million in funding.

Industrial Policy Action Plan II (IPAP 2)

The dti has responded to a directive made by President Jacob Zuma during his 2013 State of the Nation Address to leverage the massive public investment in infrastructure to industrialise the country, generate skills and boost much-needed job creation.

In this regard, the department will continue working with other relevant government departments in the implementation of IPAP II.

The IPAP II has prioritised the designation of sectors to enhance manufacturing as one of the key driving levers of economic growth and job creation.

IPAP 2013/14–2015/16 is the fifth iteration.

In January 2013, the dti announced that local producers of electrical and telecommunication cables, as well as components of solar water heaters, were set for a major boost.

The department announced the further designation of electric valves, manual and pneumatic actuators, electric and telecommunication cables as well as components of solar water heaters, for local production and content in the public sector procurement system.

Public procurement forms part of the department's industrial levers in the IPAP.

Automotives

The automotive industry remained the largest and leading manufacturing sector in the domestic economy.

Government interaction with the industry contributed to the opening of the Toyota Ses'fikile Taxi Assembly Line.

The plant enables the semi-knockdown production of a 16-seater Quantum Ses'fikile – which has one seat more than the previously imported 15-seater minibus – to be manufactured in South Africa.

The assembly line created 90 new jobs in the start-up phase and a further 210 new positions in upstream and downstream suppliers and service providers.

Locally manufactured Toyota models are exported to 57 countries' and the Ses'fikile and Hino ranges are exported to Botswana' Lesotho' Namibia and Swaziland.

Clothing and textiles

The Clothing Textile Competitive Programme and Production Incentive were implemented, benefiting 106 and 94 companies, respectively.

Business process services

Investments of up to R40 million resulted in the creation of 950 jobs within nine months.

Approval of R42 million for new investment commitments was linked to 806 jobs.

A total of 3 400 recruits were trained under the Monyetla 2 Programme – 70% constitute guaranteed employment by a business process outsourcing consortium.

Green industries

The revision of building standards that require higher levels of energy efficiency and mandatory installation of solar water heaters in new buildings was completed.

The SABS finalised enabling standards for solar water heaters; energy-efficient lighting; wind-energy turbines; appliances and products; electric batteries and alternative fuel vehicles; and co-generation of electricity and biofuels.

Significant progress in developing the renewable energy feed-in tariff rules was achieved.

The intra-departmental South African Renewables Initiative will leverage international climate finance to supplement domestic funding sources for renewable energy production linked to domestic manufacturing.

Special Economic Zones

In September 2013, the Mahikeng Airport City Project was launched.

The project is expected to pave the way for job creation and economic growth.

The Mahikeng International Airport will be repositioned as an Airport City, while the erstwhile Mahikeng Industrial Development Zone (MIDZ) will be designated as a special economic zone.

Projects to be implemented to boost the local economy and job creation include concrete tile and roof sheet manufacturing, a fuel farm, solar manufacturing, maize processing and business process outsourcing services.

Additionally, work on the development of the freight hub at the airport started with the development of an Air, Road and Rail Transport Strategy and upgrading of the airport.

In April 2013, the dti identified 10 potential SEZs across the country, which, if viable, will promote the creation of decent work.

Industrial Development Zones (IDZs) will continue to be elements of the SEZs.

In September 2013, the Minister of Trade and Industry launched *Small Business Connect* newspaper, which will help close the information gap and provide small businesses with the information necessary to make their ventures successful. The newspaper can also be accessed on *www.SmallBusinessConnect.co.za* and has a Facebook page on *www.facebook.com/SASBconnect*. People can also contact the publication on 087 150 4710 and connect with it on *www.twitter.com/SASBconnect*.

The purposes of the SEZs include facilitating the creation of an industrial complex with strategic economic advantage for targeted investment and industries in the manufacturing sector and tradable services.

This will also focus on establishing infrastructure to support the development of targeted industrial activities and to attract foreign and domestic direct investment.

The main objectives of the SEZ Bill include providing for the designation, development, promotion, operation and management of SEZs, as well as the establishment of the SEZ Board.

The country could make use of different categories of SEZ, namely a free port, a free trade zone and an industrial development zone as well as a sector development zone.

The East London IDZ held private sector investment of R4 billion in 2012/13.

Broadening participation

One of the key industrial policy goals is the promotion of a broader-based industrial path, where there is more participation by historically disadvantaged economic citizens and marginalised regions in the mainstream of the industrial economy.

To this end, the Economic Development Department promotes enterprise development, economic empowerment, the development of skills, the facilitation of economic infrastructure, and enhanced technology and innovation.

This is done by:

- improving productivity
- reducing the regulatory burden and cost of doing business
- improving access to finance for SMMEs and cooperatives
- improving innovation in the domestic economy
- promoting the development and sustainability of SMMEs and co-operatives
- encouraging entrepreneurship and self-employment.

Business-development support programmes will be strengthened and regulatory impact assessments will be addressed to create an environment that is conducive to enterprise growth.

The department works to increase and diversify economic opportunities for black people and for black and women-owned enterprises, especially in priority industrial sectors.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

Sefa planned to disburse over R737 million to more than 15 000 small firms by the end of the 2013/14 financial year.

The targeted funding was expected to help create over 18 000 jobs.

In five years, the agency aims to have more than doubled lending and the number of business owners financed – with disbursements amounting to almost R1,6 billion to over 34 000 small firms.

Sefa lends between R500 and R5 million to SMMEs in three ways: directly to business owners; via retail finance intermediaries; and via banks through its credit guarantee scheme.

Sefa completed the development of its direct lending product by the end of November 2013.

Among other things, the agency aims to:

- investigate the possibility of partnering with retail chain stores, as well as government feeding schemes, as a way to expand its reach into rural areas
- improve a pre-loan support programme, in partnership with the Seda
- partner with more provincial development finance agencies
- expand the pilot project it has with the Saica to train young graduates to assist small businesses, from Gauteng to KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga
- annually roll out a further nine branches or satellite offices co-located within Seda or IDC branch offices, to add to the 11 regional offices the agency already has.

The cost of Sefa lending finance to business owners was also expected to fall – from 44c for every rand disbursed in 2013/14 to 25c in 2017/18.

Sefa ran awareness road shows with financial intermediaries from April 2013 to February 2014.

The IDC committed over R987 million as a shareholder's loan to the agency until the end of the 2014/15 year, with the option of a further R400 million capital injection in two years' time.

Over the next five years, youth entrepreneurs will have R2,7 billion in funding made available to them by Sefa.

International cooperation: trade, investment and exports

In February 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry concluded an outward trade and investment mission to Equatorial Guinea, with a business delegation, comprising representatives from 13 South African companies.

The aim of the mission was to forge relations which would lead to an increase in trade and investment between the two countries.

In February 2013, the dti led a 14-member business delegation on an outward selling mission to Riyadh, Saudi Arabia.

The purpose of the mission was to strengthen trade relations between the two countries and position South Africa as a supplier of choice in Saudi Arabia.

The mission followed the Joint Economic Commission (JEC) held in Saudi Arabia in 2012, which provided a platform to expose South African companies to the Saudi Arabian market, and deepen bilateral trade and investment relations.

The importance of the trade mission was underscored by the fact that Saudi Arabia is South Africa's largest trading partner and second largest export destination in the Gulf region.

Efforts to increase trade are showing results, with South Africa's exports growing by 5% over the last four years.

In October 2013, the Deputy Minister led a business delegation to Brazil.

The two countries share a strategic relationship, reflected in the cooperation within the BRICS and India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) blocs.

The sectors affected by the countries' trade and investment relations include agro-processing, as well as mining equipment and services.

The investment sectors covered will be automotive components, transport equipment and alternative energy sources.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring

Business process outsourcing and offshoring is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries with the required skills, cost advantages and infrastructure.

Under the Monyetla 2 Programme, 3 400 recruits were trained, of which 70% have been guaranteed employment by the business process outsourcing consortium.

Africa Growth and Opportunity Act (Agoa)

In September 2013, a high-level government and business delegation visited the USA to present South Africa's case for the extension of the Agoa beyond its 30 September 2015 expiry date, as well as the continued inclusion of Africa's largest economy as a beneficiary of the scheme.

Department of Public Enterprises

The Department of Public Enterprises provides effective shareholder management of SOEs/state-owned companies (SOCs) that report to the department, and support and promote economic efficiency and competitiveness.

Budget and funding

In May 2013, the Department of Public Enterprises was considering putting in place set-asides from the growing procurement spend of SOEs for small businesses and black industrialists, to help transform the economy.

The department wanted to look at pension funds, such as that run by the Public Investment Corporation (PIC), and put pressure on companies investing with these funds to invest in the productive economy.

SOEs were expected to invest about R113 billion in the next financial year, more than double the R53 billion it spent three years ago.

The department invested over R2,8 billion in training during 2013/14.

Role players

State-owned enterprises

SOEs have a crucial role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity for South Africa.

The SOEs that fall under the jurisdiction of the Department of Public Enterprises are active in the following sectors:

- energy and mining: Alexkor and Eskom
- manufacturing: Denel, Safcol and Broadband Infraco
- transport: South African Airways (SAA), Transnet and South African Express (SAX).

In May 2013, the report by the Presidential Review Committee (PRC) on SOEs recommended that all commercial SOCs be consolidated under a central executive authority, or department, over the coming five years.

Likewise, those enterprises deemed to be development finance institutions (DFIs) should fall under a similar, but separate, executive authority.

The report did not prescribe which department should eventually oversee the commercial entities or the DFIs, recommending only that central authorities should be established, in line with an overarching, long-term strategy, as well as a new law governing all SOEs.

The Department of Public Enterprises has shareholder responsibilities for several large SOEs, including Eskom, Transnet and South African Airways.

However, a number of other commercial entities still fall under line departments, such as Sentech, the South African Post Office and the Central Energy Fund.

Commercial SOEs and DFIs were defined in the 219-page report as those organisations that command market-related revenues, and have bankable balance sheets, the ability to post profits and the capability to maintain and replenish market capitalisation autonomously from the State.

The existing commercial portfolio included the large SOEs falling under the department, as well as statutory corporations, such as the water boards, and companies in which the State had a shareholding, such as Telkom.

The DFIs, such as the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the IDC, were the finance-related commercial SOEs.

Also recommended was the development of a consolidated funding model for the commercial SOEs and DFIs, embracing a greater mix of debt and equity finance, and private sector participation.

According to the report, the mining sector, which is a significant user of economic infrastructure, should contribute fairly to the development of that infrastructure.

In addition to tariffs based on the user-pay principle, consideration should be given to the use of various policy tools, including mandatory local beneficiation and/or ring-fencing a portion of the proposed resources tax to develop infrastructure.

Attention was also paid to the issues of corporate governance and executive remuneration, with the PRC recommending the creation of a Central Remuneration Authority (CRA).

The CRA, the PRC argues, should be given a strong degree of independence, as well as the necessary authority to develop an overarching framework for remuneration, including the parameters within which a board might apply its discretion to remuneration.

In August 2013, the Minister of Finance introduced new-look customs systems aimed at reducing the cost of doing business and promoting the country's competitiveness and exports, and inter-regional trade. It will also help Sars to automatically detect false declarations and increase revenue – a move that will boost the economy.

Alexkor

Alexkor Limited's core business is the mining of diamonds on land, along rivers, on beaches and in the sea along the north-west coast of South Africa.

These activities are complemented by geology, exploration, ore-reserve planning, rehabilitation and environmental management.

The non-core business activities comprise residential services, community services, outside engineering services, external transport services, guest houses, fuel stations and an airport.

The management of considerable investment funds, as well as traditional supporting services, such as information systems and human resources, constitute additional non-core business activities.

South African Forestry Company (Safcol)

Safcol is government's forestry company conducting timber harvesting, timber processing

and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

It provides almost 2 200 permanent jobs and 2 000 contractual jobs in rural areas in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

As almost 61% of land under Safcol's operation is subject to land claims, the department plays a proactive role in facilitating the resolution of these claims through effective interdepartmental cooperation.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is an SOC that operates within specific focus areas of the country's telecommunications sector.

It is intended to improve market efficiency in the long-distance connectivity segment by increasing available long-distance network infrastructure.

Broadband Infraco provides long-distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and previously underserviced areas.

Broadband Infraco also provides strategic international connectivity to operators in the SADC region and on the west coast of Africa.

The Broadband Infraco network has established 13 600 km of long-distance fibre, as well as five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas.

A further seven open-access points to roll out broadband access in remote rural areas and to facilities such as hospitals, clinics and schools have also been established.

Wholesale long-distance connectivity prices have come down by more than 75% over the past two years, partly as a consequence of the establishment of Broadband Infraco, thereby further unlocking economic value by reducing the cost of connectivity.

The Department of Science and Technology took up 70% of the capacity associated with Broadband Infraco's investment in the West Africa Cable System, in support of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) project.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment.

It is an important defence contractor and a key supplier to the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), both as a manufacturer of original equipment and service provider for the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of equipment in the SANDF's arsenal.

Denel supplies systems and consumables to end-users, as well as sub-systems and components to its industrial client base.

It also has a number of equity partnerships, joint ventures and cooperation agreements with international players in the defence industry.

In 2013, Denel, which signed R3,7 billion in new, predominantly export, orders, returned an unaudited profit of R60 million for the 2012/13 financial year, breaking a long stretch of losses.

In future, Denel will be focusing on ensuring the success of the Hoefyster infantry combat vehicle production programme and further positioning the business for collaborative product development opportunities, especially in Latin America, Africa, Asia and the Middle East.

Eskom

Over five years, Eskom is projected to spend over R200 billion for the supply of coal.

The aim is for the utility to procure more than 50% of its coal from emerging black coal miners by 2018.

In May 2013, the Minister of Public Enterprises launched the Black Emerging Miners Strategy to increase black participation and ownership in the coal-mining sector.

A key element of the strategy is to establish a mine development fund to provide finance for the development of mines, mainly at the early exploration stage. The fund started operating at the end of 2013/14.

The utility finalised its build programme and that about 82% of funding had been secured.

In 2013, Eskom spent about R65 billion and will spend another R337 billion over the next five years, to complete the Medupi, Ingula and Kusile power stations. Eskom aimed to have the first unit of Medupi start operation by the end of 2013.

Evidence from a survey commissioned by Eskom suggests that the public campaign to save energy is bearing fruit. Eskom also facilitated the training of 5 248 young learners through their key suppliers.

South African Airways (SAA)

SAA is South Africa's national airline and operates from OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Gauteng. Its principal activities include providing scheduled air services for the transportation of passengers, freight and mail to international, regional and domestic destinations. In fulfilling its mission to be an African airline with global reach, it operates to 25 destinations across the continent and provides a competitive, quality air transport service within South Africa and to major cities worldwide.

In May 2013, SAA started implementing its turnaround strategy and achieved its cost compression target of R1,3 billion for the year ending March 2013.

The department, in collaboration with the SAA Board, designed a special governance arrangement to ensure rigorous monitoring of progress on the implementation of the strategy.

In 2013, SAA started taking delivery of a fleet of 20 Airbus A320 aircraft, valued at about R10 billion which form part of a broader fleet replacement plan that aims to address the fuel inefficiency of SAA's current long-haul fleet.

South African Express (SAX)

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier. It has a route network covering six African countries and acts as a strategic feeder, connecting secondary airports with each other , as well as with large hub airports.

In 2013, the Department of Public Enterprises worked with the SAX board to address internal control challenges in the airline.

The department and the SAX board developed a comprehensive turnaround strategy for the company and cut R129 million in costs in 2012/13.

Transnet

In August 2013, Transnet launched its new enterprise development hub that will expand business opportunities for smaller enterprises and new business entrants. The hub will be a "one-stop shop" for entrepreneurs and new players – with assistance ranging from registering their businesses to financial support.

State-owned firm Transnet will invest over R2 billion in the hub, with the aim of developing enterprises and assisting them in participating in the economy. The plan is to rollout the concept across the country. Some R60 million has been set aside for this purpose.

The launch of the hub comes more than a year after Transnet announced its intention to spend R300 billion on capital projects, over a seven-year period, which would create 588 000 jobs.

As at February 2013, BBBEE spending at Transnet stood at R58 billion or 87% of total procurement spending. Through Transnet's Market Demand Strategy, rail volumes increased by 5% and capital invested in the build programme increased by 30% to just below R30 billion, in 2013.

Small businesses are the lifeblood of the economy, with 12 million South Africans relying on such businesses to survive.

In 2013, Transnet secured R175 million from the Department of Higher Education and Training to train an additional 1 000 learners, who were recruited countrywide. This will increase artisan learners at Transnet training facilities to 3 000.

Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF)

The GEPF is Africa's largest pension fund, with 1,2 million active members, in excess of 300 000 pensioners and beneficiaries, and assets worth more than R1 trillion.

State workers and retirees, including departmental bureaucrats, teachers, nurses and members of the police force are among its members.

Department of Public Works

The department's mandate is to be the custodian and manager of all government's fixed assets for which other departments or institutions are not responsible, according to legislation.

This includes the determination of accommodation requirements, rendering expert built environment services to client departments, and the acquisition, maintenance and disposal of such assets.

Legislation and policies

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996), the President allocated a functional mandate to the Department of Public Works.

The mandate of the department is also confirmed through the annual Appropriation Act.

The State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961), furthermore mandates the Minister of Public Works to carry out certain functions.

In terms of the Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), the Department of Public Works is responsible for preparing health and safety specifications for any intended construction project and contractors making a bid, or appointed to perform construction work with the specifications.

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act of 1993, and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations, and providing advocacy and statutory services.

In April 2013, South Africa scooped the Best Stand Award for the second year running at the Zimbabwe International Trade Fair. The 2013 fair was held under the theme, "Building Value, Enhancing Growth".

The fair is widely recognised as the largest intra-regional trade fair south of the Sahara. The Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry led a group of 47 companies – an increase from the 34 companies that participated in the multisectoral, multinational fair in 2012.

Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments:

- The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation, in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS, in terms of the OHS Act of 1993.
- The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996).
- The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers, in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Role players

Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB reports to the Minister of Public Works and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector. The CIDB:

- provides leadership to stakeholders
- stimulates sustainable growth
- reforms and encourages improvements in the construction sector
- improves its role in the economy.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transform them and advise government on built environment-related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the professions maintain, and apply, standards for built-environment professionals' conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public.

Programmes and projects

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is one of government's key programmes aimed at providing poverty and income relief through temporary work for the unemployed.

The EPWP is a nationwide programme covering all spheres of government and SOEs.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households, in the short to medium-term.

It is also a deliberate attempt by the public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create work opportunities for the unemployed. EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis with government, contractors, or other non-governmental organisations under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The EPWP creates work opportunities in four sectors, namely infrastructure, non-State, environment and culture and social, through:

- increasing the labour intensity of government-funded infrastructure projects
- creating work opportunities through the Non-Profit Organisation programme (NPO) and Community Work Programme (CWP)
- creating work opportunities in public environment and culture programmes
- creating work opportunities in public social programmes.

The EPWP also provides training and enterprise development support, at a sub-programme level.

Green Buildings Framework

The deliberations of the Conference of Parties (better known as COP17) in December 2011 added emphasis to the department's Green Buildings Framework and responsiveness to South Africa's newly unveiled *White Paper on Climate Change.*

Efforts to step up the greening of government buildings are underway as part of South Africa's strategies to mitigate the effects of global warming.

In these efforts, the department will realise the green jobs outlined in government's NGP through concerted collaboration with a range of stakeholders such as organised business, the public entities of the department and local communities, using the principles of the EPWP.

Department of Labour

The mandate of the Department of Labour is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improving economic efficiency and productivity
- creating decent employment
- promoting labour standards and fundamental rights at work
- providing adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers
- sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace

In July 2013, Public Enterprises Minister said at the Infrastructure Africa Conference that African countries should work towards cutting the regulatory red tape that makes it difficult for the continent's states to trade with each other. Business leaders from several African countries attended the conference.

- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- giving value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for competitiveness of enterprises that is balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

In August 2013, the Minister of Labour and the Chinese Minister of Human Resources and Social Security, Yin Weimin, pledged to strengthen cooperation between the two countries in labour market and social security development.

The pledge also extends to addressing youth unemployment measures to help re - integrate the unemployed into the labour market, public employment services; and the improvement of social security benefits.

Legislation and policy

The department administers the following legislation:

- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), applies to all workers and employers, and aims to advance economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democracy of the workplace.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), applies to all employers and workers and protects workers and job seekers from unfair discrimination, and also provides a framework for implementing affirmative action.
- The Unemployment Insurance Act, 1996 (Act 30 of 1996), provides security to workers, when they become unemployed.
- The OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), provides and regulates health and safety at the workplace for all workers.
- Nedlac Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994).
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998 as amended), develops and improves the skills of the South African workforce.

Labour Policy and Industrial Relations

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations Branch supervises policy research, labour market information and statistical services.

In November 2013, the Department of Labour and its social partners signed the Chemical Sector Health and Safety Accord to improve the status of occupational health and safety in the chemical sector in South Africa.

The aim is to prioritise matters of occupational health and safety, eliminate fatalities, injuries and diseases in the chemical sector, and, identify and implement best practices.

The accord also aims to raise awareness and promote industry initiatives focused on continual improvement of occupational health and safety in the chemical sector. It will be implemented through development of a joint action plan.

This includes regulation of labour and employer organisations and bargaining councils, dealing with all the department's responsibilities and obligations in relation to the International Labour Organisation and other international and regional bodies with which the South African Government has formal relations, as well as the effective functioning of the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) and Nedlac.

The CCMA is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996, in terms of the Labour Relations Act, 1995.

It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

The CCMA was established to provide South Africans with an accessible, user-friendly and affordable labour dispute resolution system.

Workers who have allegedly been unfairly dismissed, or are the victims of various unfair labour practices, are able to approach the CCMA alone or with certain categories of recognised representatives to seek redress for workplace wrongs.

Child labour

The global march towards the elimination of child labour by 2016 took another step as the world descended on Brazil for the third Global Conference on Child Labour, which was part of the International Labour Organisation (ILO) conference, in October 2013.

The conference promoted consistent policies and integrated strategies to address child labour across the world. It evaluated the actions taken in the fight against child labour and encouraged the exchange of experiences.

The conference was used to measure progress in implementing The Hague Roadmap towards the 2016 goal.

The Hague Roadmap has four pillars: education and training, national legislation and enforcement, labour market policies and social protection. Education is viewed as one of the crucial components in any efficient effort to eliminate child labour.

The ILO Global Estimates and Trends 2000–2012 revealed that the number of child labourers has declined by one third since 2000, from 246 million to 168 million.

However, even the latest improved figure is not enough to achieve the goal of eliminating the worst forms of child labour by 2016.

Government and its partners have strengthened legislation, raised awareness, trained professionals and developed educational materials.

Some of the legislation includes the proposed amendments to the Basic Conditions of Employ-

ment Bill, which will strengthen the prohibition of child labour in the informal trading sector.

The global action Plan points out that special effort needs to be made in sub-Saharan Africa, considering that it is the only region in the world where child labour has grown in both absolute and relative terms in the last decade.

Role players

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF is a public entity of the Department of Labour that contributes to alleviating poverty in South Africa by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003) deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits.

It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries.

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

The UIF announced in October 2013 that it was expanding the period of benefit payment from eight to 12 months.

The move was aimed at easing the burden on the unemployed.

In 2013, the fund paid out R6 billion and in the same period, 731 131 beneficiaries were paid.

In 2013, the UIF had 1 465 218 employers (commercial, domestic and taxi) registered on the system. The fund had 8 330 760 employees (commercial and domestic) registered on the system, in March 2013.

In 2013, the UIF's total assets were valued at R81 billion, while net surplus in the same period was R16 billion.

The UIF had grown the number of active U-Filing employers to 42 487, in 2013.

By October 2013, 21 234 new jobs had been created and 20 161 jobs saved by companies that accessed funding from the UIF/IDC initiative.

In another initiative, the UIF partners with Productivity South Africa, funding the organisation's turnaround solutions to help companies that are in distress, so as to save jobs.

In terms of the funding agreement, the UIF allocated R55 million for the 2013/14 financial year. In 2013/14, 130 companies were targeted for intervention, with the potential to save 10 200 jobs through the turnaround solution intervention.

Through the funding for the Training Lay-Off scheme, the UIF has budgeted R105 million for 2013/14 and a further R400 million over the next three years.

In July 2013, the Department of Labour released the Unemployment Insurance Amendment Bill, which aims to address the issue of workers who are presently excluded by the Unemployment Insurance Act, for public comment.

In August 2013, the UIF put in place a new toll-free number to assist and save its beneficiaries costs when calling the UIF call centre.

The numbers to call are 0800 843 843 or 0800 UIF.

Compensation Fund (CF)

The department administers the CF, which compensates workers who are victims of occupational disability, occupational disease and fatal work incidents.

The services of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993) were extended and are rendered at provincial level.

Another element in the decentralisation process has been the move away from manual processing to the introduction of an electronic system.

The construction sector contributes 16% to South Africa's GDP, employing just under 1,8 million workers.

By 2013, R850 million had been collected from 33 000 registered employers.

The CF allocated 5% of its total investment, amounting to R1,6 billion, to alleviate unemployment through socially responsible investments in the healthcare industry.

National Economic Development and Labour Council

Nedlac's mandate is to make economic decision-making more inclusive, thereby promoting the goals of economic growth and social equity.

Nedlac's purpose is to facilitate more inclusive economic decision-making, and to promote the goals of economic growth and social equity through discussions with organised business, organised labour and organised community groupings at national level.

The Department of Labour is the main government department from which Nedlac is funded,

In June 2013, Eskom was the overall winner of the 2013 Nkonki State-owned companies (SOC) Integrated Reporting Awards for the second year running. The awards recognise SOCs that excelled in integrated reporting in the country.

but the departments of trade and industry, finance and public works are also centrally involved in the council. Other departments attend when there are issues relating to their portfolios.

Organised business is represented by Business Unity South Africa, which brings together the Black Business Council and Business South Africa.

Organised labour is represented by the three main labour federations in South Africa: the Congress of South African Trade Unions, the Federation of Unions of South Africa and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Programmes and projects

The Department of Labour has an infrastructure network of 421 service points across the country.

These include 126 labour centres, 31 satellite offices, 19 mobile offices and 153 visiting points, as well as services provided at Thusong service centres.

Job fairs

The job fairs initiative is part of the department's Public Employment Services' contribution to government service-delivery outcomes.

It is a first step towards building a working relationship with social partners and providing a link between work seekers and potential job opportunities.

Job fairs provide free services to create an opportunity for work seekers to meet with prospective employers and other organisations or departments that can assist with their placement in different forms of employment or learning opportunities.

Various organisations present career and other placement opportunities to work seekers, as well as employment counselling, job search tools and assessments.

The fairs are targeted at unemployed youth who dropped out of school, unemployed youth with school exit certificates, unemployed graduates, and under-employed and retrenched workers.

The fairs are held in conjunction with national and provincial sister departments, including the departments of economic development, transport and rural development; as well as a number of state-owned and private companies, including Transnet, Eskom, the South African Safety and Maritime Authority of South Africa, the DBSA and multilateral organisations such as the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank and the International Labour Organisation.

Education

The national curriculum is the culmination of 17 years of effort to achieve transformation.

The Preamble to the Constitution states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

No-fee schools introduced by government are starting to show effect.

The percentage of learners who reported that they paid no tuition fees increased from 0,8% in 2002 to 56,8% in 2012.

The provinces with the highest proportion of non-payers were Limpopo at 88,8% and the Eastern Cape at 73,5%.

The responsibility for education is shared by the departments of basic education (DBE) and of higher education and training (DHET).

The DBE deals with all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, and adult literacy programmes, while the DHET deals with universities, and other post-school education and training, as well as coordinating the Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa (HRDSSA).

The DBE develops, maintains and supports a South African school education system for the 21st century in which all citizens have access to lifelong learning, as well as education and training, which will, in turn, contribute towards improving quality of life and building a peaceful, prosperous and democratic South Africa.

Despite challenges, there has been steady progress in education, with government systematically addressing the shortcomings that have hampered progress in the past. In the less than three years to go before the 2015 target, the DBE is set to fulfil the millennium development goals for expanding access to education.

Education and the curriculum have an important role to play in realising these aims. From 2012, the two national curriculum statements (NCSs) for grades R to nine and

In May 2013, the Department of Basic Education announced that all schools will offer an African language to all learners from grades R to 9 from 2014. It is perceived that African languages do not enjoy the same development and utility as English and Afrikaans. The department will, therefore, ensure that all African languages are equally developed and used by learners in the best interest of their learning and performance in their 12 years of schooling.

grades 10 to 12, respectively are combined in a single document and will simply be known as the NCS grades R to 12.

The NCS for grades R to 12 builds on the previous curriculum, but also updates it and aims to provide clearer specification of what is to be taught and learnt on a term-by-term basis.

To respond to the call made by the National Development Plan (NDP) for intersectoral co - operation to improve educational outcomes, working with various partners, the DBE put in place an Education Collaboration Framework (ECF). Annually, companies spend just under R3 billion on education.

The ECF will implement targeted programmes, including district and systemic change interventions and innovation projects. A special education trust was set up. Since signing the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) Accord on Basic Education, the department has entered into partnerships with over 100 private businesses.

Basic education

In 2013, there were about 11,9 million learners in more than 25 000 public schools, with 391 708 educators. Independent schools have 513 694 000 learners, taught by 33 187 educators in 1 583 schools.

Grade R enrolment has more than doubled, from 300 000 in 2003 to 705 000, which means it is well on track to meet government's target of having 100% coverage for Grade R by 2014. It is also encouraging that more learners are completing grades 9 and 12, and that the percentage of Grade 12 learners who qualify for Bachelor's degree studies has increased.

During the 2013 examinations, the overall matric pass rate improved to 78,2%, with 439 779 learners out of 562 112 passing, while the Physical Science pass rate improved to 67,4%.

On a similar note, 142 666 learners passed Mathematics in 2013, taking the pass rate to 59,1%, compared with 54% in 2012.

While the Free State was named as the best overall performer with a pass rate of 87,4%, the Eastern Cape – which has had problems ranging from the appointment of educators to infrastructure challenges – achieved a 64,9% average.

Legislation and policies

Education in South Africa is governed by the following key policies and legislation:

- The fundamental policy framework of the Ministry of Basic Education is stated in the Ministry's first *White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa: First Steps to Develop a New System*, published in February 1995.
- The National Education Policy Act (Nepa), 1996 (Act 27 of 1996) brought into law the policies, and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education, as well as the formal relations between national and provincial authorities. It laid the foundation for the establishment of the Council of Education Ministers (CEM), as well as the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom), as intergovernmental forums that would collaborate in the development of a new education system. Nepa of 1996, therefore, provided for the formulation of national policy in general, and Further Education and Training (FET) policies for curriculum, assessment, language and quality assurance.
- The South African Schools Act (Sasa), 1996 (Act 84 of 1996) is aimed at ensuring that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15.

  It provides for two types of schools namely independent and public schools. The provision in the Act for democratic school governance, through school-governing bodies (SGBs), has been implemented in public schools countrywide. The school-funding norms, outlined in Sasa of 1996, prioritise redress and target poverty regarding the allocation of funds for the public-schooling system.
- The Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000) regulates Abet; provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public adult learning centres; provides for the registration of private adult learning centres; and provides for quality assurance and quality promotion in Abet. Sasa of 1996 was amended by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), which authorises the declaration of schools

In March 2013, the Deputy Minister of Basic Education officially launched an e-learning project at the Sunward Park High School in Boksburg which became the first public school to transform learning into a fully digital platform. More than 1 200 learners from grades eight to 12 use this digital educational platform to log into the school portal and download the textbooks specific to that grade and subject. At the start of the school year in 2013, the entire school, began using the e-learning tools.

In June 2013, the North West Provincial Government announced that it would write off over R42 million in youth bursary debt, for the benefit of young people from poor and disadvantaged backgrounds who had studied through the Office of the Premier Bursary Scheme. As from April 2013, provincial departments have been budgeting and administering their bursary programmes.

In November 2013, the Minister of Higher Education and Training hosted the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) meeting in Paris, France, on the margins of the 37th session of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) General Conference. The aim was to strengthen collaboration between BRICS universities, partnerships and knowledge exchanges and investigate how information and communications technology could be used effectively to improve the quality of learning.

in poverty-stricken areas as "no-fee schools", and by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007), which provides for the functions and responsibilities of school principals.

- The Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998) regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as teachers' competency requirements. The Act and the South African Council for Educators (SACE) regulate the teaching corps.
- The design of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) was refined with the publication of the Higher Education Qualifications Framework in the *Government Gazette* in October 2007, to provide 10 NQF levels.
- The NCS grades R to 12 replaced the policy document, *A Résumé of Industrial Programmes in Schools, Report 550 (89/03)*.
- The *Education White Paper on ECD (2000)* provides for the expansion and full participation of five-year-olds in pre-school Grade R education by 2010, and an improvement in the quality of programmes, curricula and teacher development for birth to four-year-olds and six- to nine-year-olds.
- The *Education White Paper 6 on Inclusive Education (2001)* describes the DBE's intention to implement inclusive education at all levels in the system by 2020. The system will facilitate the inclusion of vulnerable learners and reduce the barriers to learning through targeted support structures and mechanisms that will improve the retention of learners in the education system, particularly learners who are prone to dropping out.
- The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002) set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade 1 was changed to age five, if children turned six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year.
- The Umalusi Council sets and monitors standards for general and FET in South Africa, in accordance with the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), and the General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).

Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025

This action plan explains the 27 national goals that lie at the heart of the plan.

The future of basic education is informed by Action Plan to 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

Medium- to long-term interventions focus on:

- improving the quality of teaching and learning, with an emphasis on strengthening numeracy and literacy
- undertaking regular assessments to track progress
- improving ECD
- ensuring a credible outcomes-focused planning and accountability system.

Annual National Assessment (ANA)

ANA is used to monitor levels and quality of learning outcomes.

Among the closely monitored performance areas are learners' Mathematics and Physical Science pass rates and the number of Grade 12 learners qualifying for university entry.

Government aims to increase the number of Grade 12 learners who qualify to enrol for a Bachelor's degree to 175 000 by 2014. One way of achieving this is through the ANA tests that have been standardised and internationally benchmarked. Analysis of the results of such assessments will inform the department's plans to improve the quality of learning and teaching.

The tests measure learners' improvement in specific grades and subjects. Through ANA, all public schools and independent schools subsidised by government, conduct the same grade-specific language and Mathematics tests. The language tests cover learners' home language and their first additional language, and educators mark the ANA tests using the departmental guidelines. The tests are moderated by officials of the various provincial education departments to ensure that similar standards are upheld across all schools. An allocation of R75 million to strengthen the existing programme and expand assessments to include Grade 9 was secured for 2013/14.

The programme was to be integrated and aligned with the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS).

The results showed that while learner performance in literacy varied from "satisfactory" to "good", the same could not be said about performance in numeracy, particularly in Grade 9.

The particularly low learner performance in Mathematics at the intermediate and senior phases justifies the steps the department has taken to focus on educators' professional development and the provision of learning and

teaching support materials at the higher school grades.

The 2013 assessments were conducted in grades 1 to 6 and 9 and took place from 10 to 13 September in all public and state-funded independent schools. Over seven million learners sat for the tests.

In Grade 1, the national average performance in literacy was 60%. In Grade 2, the national average performance in literacy was 57%.

In Grade 3, the national average performance in literacy stood at 51%. In numeracy, learners performed at an average of 53%.

In Grade 4, the national average performance in language was 49% for Home Language and 39% for First Additional Language; the average for numeracy was 37%.

In Grade 5, the national average performance in language was 46% for Home Language and 37% for First Additional Language. In numeracy, the national average performance was 33%.

In Grade 6, the national average performance in language was 59% in Home Language and 46% in First Additional Language. For Mathematics, the average performance was 39%.

In Grade 9, the national average performance in language stood at 43% (Home Language) and 33% (First Additional Language); and in Mathematics, the national average was 14%.

National Curriculum Statement

The NCS grades R to 12, implemented between 2012 and 2014, represents a policy statement for learning and teaching in South African schools. It is the curriculum that underpins the various programmes followed in each Grade from grades R to 12.

It enables a learner to obtain a National Senior Certificate (NSC) after completing the full programme of the NCS grades R to 12.

The NCS grades R to 12 consists of three documents, namely:

- curriculum and assessment policy statements for each approved school subject as listed in the National Policy Document pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12
- national policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12, which describes the number of subjects to be offered to learners in each grade and the promotion requirements
- National Protocol for Assessment of grades R to 12, which standardises the recording and reporting processes for grades R to 12 within the framework.

The CAPS for grades R to three and 10 were implemented in January 2012; grades four to six and Grade 11 in January 2013; and grades seven to nine and Grade 12 are expected to be implemented in January 2014.

Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement

CAPS is a single, comprehensive and concise policy document, which replaces the Subject and Learning Area Statements, Learning Programme Guidelines and Subject Assessment Guidelines for all the subjects listed in the NCS grades R to 12.

It comprises the following:

- CAPS for all approved subjects
- National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12
- National Protocol for Assessment grades R to 12.

The department's continued focus is on the phased-in implementation of the revised CAPS. In 2013, the department moved to grades four to six and 11.

Intermediate and Senior Phase CAPS were distributed in 2012 to prepare for implementation in 2013 and 2014, respectively. The Senior Phase CAPS orientation programme for provinces started in March 2013, and ran until May 2013. The Grade 12 CAPS orientation was conducted in all provinces between February and April 2013.

The department expects to complete the process with a roll-out to grades seven to nine and 12 in the 2014 academic year.

In 2013/14, the department increased its focus on technical secondary schools. To improve facilities and equipment, R220,9 million was allocated for the recapitalisation of these schools. This will assist in addressing skills shortages and joblessness.

Budget and funding

The overall budget for 2013/14 for the DBE was R17,592 billion. The budget allocation to provincial education departments was R173,454 billion. It will reach R199,624 billion in 2015/16.

In August 2013, the Minister of Basic Education, the Free State Education MEC and the Kagiso Trust launched the Beyers Naudé School Development Programme in QwaQwa, in the Free State. The programme recognises the outstanding performance of secondary schools in their National Senior Certificate (Grade 12) examination, and excellent performance of primary schools in the Annual National Assessment. By September 2013, the programme had supported 167 schools in the Thabo Mofutsanyana District.

In 2013, nine secondary schools and one primary school, which had met the Beyers Naudé Programme's benchmark pass average, were honoured with brand new infrastructure worth R13 million including libraries, science laboratories and computer centres.

Umalusi was allocated R97,6 million in 2013/14 and will get R112,7 million in 2015/16 to cover its expanded mandate.

Kha Ri Gude received R549,7 million. This mass literacy campaign has reached over 2,9 million adults. To this, the department added R59,2 million allocated for the Extended Public Works Programme: Kha Ri Gude, as a contribution to job creation by recruiting and training volunteers.

Kha Ri Gude volunteers comprise 44 monitors, 203 coordinators, 3 703 supervisors and 38 407 volunteer educators, including 250 helpers for blind volunteers. In this way, the department contributes to the national effort to create jobs, end poverty and roll-back the frontiers of inequality.

An amount of R25 million was allocated in 2013/14 for the National Initiative to improve learning outcomes, which will reach R40 million in 2015/16.

The conditional grant for the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) increased by R266,6 million in 2013/14, to R5,173 billion. It will reach R5,704 billion in 2015/16.

The HIV and AIDS Life Skill Education conditional grant allocation was R213,5 million in 2013/14. Monitoring results from 2011 show South Africa has improved access from 39,3% in 2002 to 84,8% of Grade 1 learners.

In 2012/13 there were 12 433 949 learners in over 25 000 schools. In line with the drive to build an equitable system, in 2013/14 the department prioritised inclusive education.

The infrastructure allocation for 2013/14, transferred to provincial education departments through the Education Infrastructure Grant, was R6,630 billion. Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, it will increase to well over R10 billion. Preliminary expenditure for 2012/13 for the Education Infrastructure Grant is at 96%.

An amount of R1,956 billion in 2013/14 went to the Schools Backlog Grant, also called Accelerated School Infrastructure Delivery Initiative (Asidi). A further R3,170 billion for 2014/15 and R2,912 billion for 2015/16 were allocated.

The allocation for 2013/14 for workbooks was R859,3 million.

An allocation of R75 million to strengthen the existing ANA programme was secured for 2013/14 and will reach R160 million in 2014/15 and R167 million in 2015/16.

According to the *General Household Survey 2012*, which was published in August 2013, nationally, 74,1% of people aged seven to 24 were found to be attending educational institutions.

In 2012/13, the department extended the National Workbook Programme to cover grades seven to nine. The allocation for 2012/13 amounted to R811 million for expanding the distribution of workbooks to Grade nine learners.

For 2013, the Integrated Quality Management System was allocated R39,7 million.

Role players/statutory bodies

Provincial departments of education

The role of the DBE is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

Therefore, the department works closely with the departments of education of each province to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, but they also perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel; dealing with funding; resourcing bottlenecks; and solving labour-relations disputes. District offices are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to the provincial department and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the SGB are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

Council of Education Ministers

The council – consisting of the Minister of Basic Education, the Minister of Higher Education and Training and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education – meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy; share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa;

and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

At a CEM meeting in August 2013, it was decided that all provinces should strive to have a chair and a desk for every child.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom comprise the Director-General (DG) of the DBE, the deputy DGs of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

Umalusi

Umalusi is responsible for the development and management of a sub-framework of qualifications for general and FET and for the attendant quality assurance. Umalusi means "herder" or "shepherd" which in Nguni culture, is the person who is the guardian of the family's wealth.

The council is tasked with the certification of the following qualifications:

- In schools: the Senior Certificate, to be phased out by 2014; and the NSC, which replaced the Senior Certificate in 2008.
- In FET colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3); the NSC (Vocational), which is being phased out; and the National Certificate Vocational (NCV), which commenced in 2007.
- In adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate: Adults.

To issue learners with certificates that are credible, Umalusi:

- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
- moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
- accredits providers of education and training, and assessment
- conducts research to ensure educational quality
- verifies the authenticity of certificates.

From October 2013, visually impaired matrics were able to read their results themselves after Umalusi introduced Braille certificates. This is not only for the class of 2012.

Even those who matriculated before 2012 can get their Braille certificates.

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (Needu)

Needu ensures effective evaluation of all educators based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools.
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system.
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system.
- identifying on a systemwide basis the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement.
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners.
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity within schools in ways that reliably inform and complement external evaluation.
- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent to which there is considered action on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or disciplined action.
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly, to ensure clarity and coherence in the way schools and teachers are assessed and supported.
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context.
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

In May 2013, the department received the unit's first national report for 2012 on the state of literacy teaching and learning in the Foundation Phase.

This independent evaluation provided evidence to support proposals on the need to remedy shortcomings in educational practice, eliminate barriers to quality education and develop the knowledge and professional capacity of educators. The department will engage Needu's recommendations. For 2013/14, Needu was allocated R13,4 million.

In October 2013, the Medical University of South Africa's former rector, Professor Ramaranka Mogotlane, was appointed as one of the four academics who would lead the long-awaited University of Mpumalanga (UMP). Mogotlane was appointed chairperson of the University's Strategic Management Team and will be working with Tshwane University of Technology's leader in Mpumalanga and Professor John Shongwe.

Planning and Delivery Oversight Unit

This unit was instrumental in the implementation of education policies and strategic interventions. Like Needu, it has enriched the diagnosis of bottlenecks in the value-chain inhibiting the attainment of high learning outcomes.

In 2012, through visits to over 2 000 schools, the unit monitored and recommended remedial measures for school readiness in 2013. Though the 2013 school year started with minor glitches, as part of the 94+ Projects for Madiba morale among educators and learners was good.

Under the stewardship of the Delivery Unit, the department attracted more than R40 million from its partners and society. This benefitted 98 earmarked schools, with a further 415 schools adopted through the Nedlac Accord's Adopt-A-School programme.

The Delivery Unit worked with a select cluster of districts to enhance the management and support extended to under-performing schools, in compliance with Section 58 B of the Sasa of 1996. The unit has identified and promoted sharing of good practice among all 86 education districts, through quarterly ministerial meetings with district directors.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include constructive collective bargaining between the educator unions and the DBE as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

South African Council for Educators

The SACE is a professional council aimed at enhancing the status of the teaching profession and promoting the development of educators and their professional conduct. It was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

To guide learners to make the right subject and career choices, Nedbank's annual national career guidance programme, an initiative aimed at helping high school learners choose suitable careers, was held in Johannesburg in March 2013. In 2013, more than 25 000 learners were exposed to over 115 career choices from across 16 industries.

The council's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Before their employment, educators are required to register with the SACE, which has a register of about 500 000 educators.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:

- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development
- teacher education and development research activities
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development System
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators
- the ethics function; which ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics
- the Continuing Professional Teacher-Development System, which recognises professional development undertaken by educators on their own initiative.

Educator unions

Educators are organised into six educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union, the Professional Educators' Union, Cape Professional Teachers' Association and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the former Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an occupation-specific dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths, where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts for teaching and learning specialists and senior

learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

Programmes and projects

Learning and teaching support material

The department increased learner access to workbooks and coverage to improve literacy, numeracy and reading.

It provided workbooks to all learners in grades one to nine. Through savings from developing content in-house, the scope was expanded to cover Braille workbooks as well.

Close to 24 million copies of Workbook 1 were delivered to 23 115 schools by November 2012, for use in 2013.

By 2013, around 114 million full-colour national workbooks, which the Australian Council for Educational Research had confirmed were of a high standard, had been distributed to schools.

In terms of national policy, it's a key priority for every learner to have access to a minimum set of textbooks and workbooks.

The *Southern and Eastern Africa Consortium for Monitoring Education Quality 2011 Survey* put South Africa at 78% for literacy and 83% for Mathematics.

Prudence in the deployment of resources is key to the national endeavour for equality and inclusive development and growth. Addressing inequalities in education forms part of the rationale for centralising the procurement of books.

The development of the national catalogue of textbooks for grades seven to nine and 12 commenced in November 2012 and was completed in March 2013.

Satellite broadcasting programme

The satellite broadcasting service will broadcast Mathematics for grades eight and nine directly to priority high schools during lesson time so that teachers can integrate the broadcasts with their teaching time.

Broadcasts are automatically recorded for revision or afternoon lessons.

From May 2013, they were rolled out to 385 schools that are part of the Secondary School Improvement Programme.

The system provides for learners and educators to use landline and mobile phones, and social media platforms such as Facebook, Mxit and Twitter to communicate with the central broadcast studio to ask questions or make comments.

The satellite platform also provides on-the-job training for class educators who also attend further lessons in the afternoons.

In January 2013, the National Youth Development Agency gave R450 000 towards the *My Future, My Career* Project, which provides secondary school learners with career education screenings in cinema complexes. The initiative is run through a partnership between the Department of Basic Education, Primestars Marketing and Nedbank.

Eco-school programme

The Eco-Schools programme was established by the international non-governmental organisation (NGO), Foundation for Environmental Education in 1994, in response to a need to involve young people in environmental projects at local level.

Eco-Schools are required to involve students in different themes, including healthy living, nature and biodiversity, local and global environmental issues, resource use and heritage and culture.

Each school follows a seven-step change process and empowers its young people to lead processes and actions wherever they can.

Through commitment to the Eco-Schools seven-step process, improvements will be seen in the learning outcomes, attitude and behaviour of students; ultimately, the local community; and the local environment. Evidence of success in these areas will eventually lead to a school being awarded "The Green Flag".

By July 2013, the Eco-Schools programme was in action in more than 1 100 schools in South Africa.

Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.doe.gov.za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning "a place of learning" in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the DBE and various role–players in the field.

The department also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has over 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs, where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay or who can only afford a smaller amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The threshold target allocation for no-fee schools for operational expenditure has increased

to R880 per learner. The national per learner target amount for Quintile 1 schools is R960.

Total expenditure for school allocation on no-fee schools at the national target level is projected to be in excess of R7,7 billion.

Early Childhood Development

Over the next three years, R1,4 billion will be spent to support ECD programmes and implement the community-based Child Care and Protection Programme. This will increase access to ECD from the current 500 000 to 580 000 children, with a focus on rural areas. It is expected that more than 10 000 youths will be employed as a result of the programme.

Government is committed to ensuring that ECD is linked to other development-based programmes, particularly within the context of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP), and integrates other services that flow from different departments and relevant stakeholders.

This is done through an education campaign focused on women in rural areas, and selected peri-urban and urban areas such as informal settlements, which are generally regarded as focal points for government's poverty and malnutrition eradication programmes.

ECD centres play an integral part in providing children with tools to cope socially, especially where there is a lack of parental supervision at home. More than 20 000 ECD practitioners have, therefore, been equipped with the necessary skills to nurture, instil discipline and care for children in ECD centres.

The Department of Social Development (DSD) coordinates the activities of the three partner departments, namely social development, health and basic education.

The integrated plan includes the development of national early learning standards, the training of ECD practitioners – which is part of government's employment creating Expanded Public Works Programme – and the development of national norms and standards for funding.

The DSD leads government departments regarding services to children under the age of four years. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), it is the department's responsibility to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for those children where a need exists.

Education of learners with special needs

In July 2001, the then Department of Education gazetted *White Paper 6, Special Needs Education: Building an Inclusive Education and Training System*. This White Paper provided strategies for developing an inclusive system and increasing access to quality education for children experiencing barriers to learning.

The department's approach to inclusive education is geared toward promoting the democratic values enshrined in the Constitution. Provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual and hearing impairments
- tuberculosis
- conflict with the law
- physical disabilities
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- intellectual disabilities
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

Educator development

Through the Teacher Union Collaboration initiative, in 2012/13, teacher unions and their institutes implemented professional development programmes covering areas in which educators needed support. It was reported that over 58 000 teachers benefited from these programmes.

In 2012/13, the department completed an audit of the 114 district-based educator resource centres, and developed norms and standards for such. The department plans to make teacher centres vibrant hubs for teacher development activities at district level.

The department developed a National Education Human Resource Planning Framework to effectively manage the demand, supply and utilisation of educators.

With support from the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation, the department commissioned a project to develop an instrument for evaluating the implementation of the post-provisioning norms. The department and has a responsibility to monitor compliance regarding teacher attendance, punctuality and proper use of school resources.

In May 2013, the department worked with the State Information Technology Agency and National Treasury to finalise implementation systems and processes, including modalities of using a centralised mechanism for procuring laptops for teachers. Funza Lushaka bursaries help attract new teachers for Mathematics, Science and languages. The department aimed to increase the number of bursars to 14 400 in 2013/14, at a cost of R893,9 million.

The implementation of the Integrated Strategic Planning Framework for Teacher Education and Development is making progress.

The CAPS has seen over 200 0000 educators being familiarised with the new curriculum imperatives.

The DBE distributed 400 000 copies of educator guides to the workbooks and ensured the training of 200 Foundation Phase and Intermediate Phase advisors and specialist trainers.

Through its teacher support programmes with teacher unions, the programme contributed to the training of 55 922 union members in 2012/13.

In addition, the department concluded strategic partnerships with Vodacom, CISCO, Mindset, University of South Africa (Unisa), MTN and other partners to strengthen the capacity of teacher centres by improving Information and Communications Technology (ICT) and content for teacher development.

School infrastructure

One-school-a-week

The Minister of Basic Education launched the One-School-a-Week campaign in July 2013, at the handover ceremony of Mandela Park Primary School in Mthatha, which coincided with the celebration of former President Nelson Mandela's 95th birthday.

The occasion was used to demonstrate Madiba's passion for education, especially his rallying call for business to invest in education by building schools in needy communities.

The department handed over a new school every week in the Eastern Cape, until November 2013.

The programme is a clear commitment to government's initiative to improve the quality of education. The programme aims to replace inappropriate school structures, and address the backlog of basic services and the provision of water and electricity.

The programme is part of the government's National Infrastructure Plan – Strategic Infrastructure Project (SIP 13) which involves the rebuilding of schools.

The department prioritised the Eastern Cape, in an attempt to eradicate mud schools. A project to rebuild 49 schools was initiated.

In October 2013, President Jacob Zuma opened and handed over one of the completed schools, Ethridge Junior Secondary, to the community.

In October 2013, the newly built Tshantshala Senior Primary School in Gugwini village, just outside Lusikisiki in the Eastern Cape, was handed over and stands as a beacon of hope for the local community as they now know that their children have a decent place to learn. The new school has, among others, 14 classrooms and two water tanks. It was built at a cost of R9 million. Prior to the school being built, learners in Gugwini used to travel more than 10 km to attend school in neighbouring villages. The school has 134 learners and four educators.

Tshantshala joins the list of new schools that have been opened as part of the One-School-a-Week Campaign, which has seen the opening of Notsolo Senior Primary School, Mqokolweni Senior Primary School and Ndlovayiphathwa Senior Primary School as part of the programme.

In total, 16 schools have been built and handed over in the Eastern Cape.

On 5 October 2013, the Deputy Minister of Basic Education wished all teachers a Happy World Teachers' Day, praising the vital role of educators in education and development. The theme for 2013 was "A Call for Teachers".

Accelerated Schools Infrastructure Development Initiative (Asidi)

The Asidi project has become part of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission, which is aimed at rolling out infrastructure delivery in the country.

Government's contribution to replacing inappropriate school structures through Asidi has become a significant milestone for the expansion of access to basic education for all South African children.

The new schools complement the DBE's efforts to fight inequality in education.

The R8,2 billion public-private programme aims to eradicate the 496 mud schools in the country, provide water and sanitation to 1 257 schools and electricity to 878 schools by March 2016.

The department plans to replace 200 inappropriate schools, of which 132 are in the Eastern Cape, 30 in the Free State, three in KwaZulu-Natal, three in Limpopo, five in Mpumalanga, one in the Northern Cape, one in North West and 25 in the Western Cape. These are long - term school projects. The department aimed for 25% completion by the end of 2013/14, which meant providing sanitation to 873, water to 448 and electricity to 369 schools.

In October 2013, government handed over six fully furnished timber-frame classrooms to Bhekimfundvo Primary School in Swallows Nest, near Dundonald in Mpumalanga. The environmentally friendly classrooms were donated by the state-owned company (SOC) South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol). Kwezilethu Senior Primary School in Mthatha, built under the Asidi programme, was handed over in August 2013. In total, about 50 schools are to be built through the Asidi programme to accommodate more than 10 000 learners in the Eastern Cape.

The R8,2 billion public-private programme aims to eradicate the 496 mud schools in the country, provide water and sanitation to 1 257 schools and electricity to 878 schools by March 2016.

National School Nutrition Programme

The NSNP is changing the face of the education system across the country. Over eight million learners in 21 467 public schools are benefiting from the programme. Over 54 000 volunteers prepare and serve the meals.

The NSNP has been transformed from a simple cold meal to a daily hot, cooked meal.

The grant for the programme has increased from R2 666 million in 2013/14, to R5 173 billion and the department estimates that it will reach R5 704 billion in the 2015/16 financial year.

School enrichment programmes

Sport is set to become an integral part of the school curriculum, with different sporting codes to be offered at every school in South Africa. This will culminate in the annual National Olympics Championship, with stakeholders such as trade unions, universities and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee supporting the programme.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department coordinates, in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture, include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival, and the National Language Festival and Concert.

To boost the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the department trained 359 adjudicators, 509 conductors, 82 data capturers and 15 programme directors, most of whom were educators.

School safety

The Partnership Protocol Agreement was renewed by the ministers of basic education and police in August 2013. The main objective of the agreement is to establish safe school committees across the country. The implementation of the protocol agreement began in 2013, with 18 309 schools linked to police stations. School safety committees were also established.

The protocol is headed by the police's Visible Policing Division and the DBE's School Safety and Enrichment Programme, in acknowledgement that the issue of crime and violence in schools is a shared responsibility.

In March 2013, the DBE and LeadSA launched the Stop-Rape Campaign.

In 2013, the Department of Higher Education and Training established the National Institute of Humanities and Social Sciences. This initiative was to ensure that the humanities and social sciences were not neglected while focus was on developing the economy and providing scientific, industrial and commercial skills.

Learner health

Integrated School Health Programme

Key among the department's successes is the Integrated School Health Programme that will offer, over time, a comprehensive and integrated package of health services to all learners.

The target for 2012/13 was to provide health screening to 500 000 learners. However, over 650 000 learners benefited from health services.

In 2013/14, the department aimed to provide health services to 750 000 learners in grades 1, 4, 8 and 10, as well as learners repeating grades in Quintile 1 and 2 primary and secondary schools. Services would also be extended to special schools.

In 2013, the department developed the National Strategy for the Prevention and Management of Alcohol and Drug Use among Learners in Schools and will promote learner-based interventions together with community activities to raise awareness of the impact of alcohol and drug abuse on schools.

Higher education and training

The DHET is responsible for post-school education and training in universities, colleges and adult education centres. The department has been building a single, coherent, differentiated and articulated post-school education and training system.

This will contribute to overcoming the structural challenges facing society, by expanding access to education and training opportunities and increasing equity, as well as achieving high levels of excellence and innovation. Entry into institutions of higher learning is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Legislation and policies

Some key policies and legislation relating to higher education and training in South Africa include the:

- Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), in accordance with which private institutions offering higher education must register with the DHET
- Council on Higher Education, which was established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997. The Higher Education Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 39 of 2008), and the NQF Act of 2008, implied a significant change for the council

- National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999) which is responsible for administering and allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students; developing criteria and conditions for granting loans and bursaries in consultation with the Minister; raising funds; recovering loans; maintaining and analysing a database; and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources. The scheme also advises the Minister on student financial aid, in general, and performs other functions assigned to it by the Minister
- FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), regulates FET to provide for which:
  - establishment, governance and funding of public FET institutions
  - registration of private FET institutions
  - quality assurance and quality promotion in FET
  - transitional arrangements and the repeal of laws
  - matters related
- General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001), which provides for the establishment, composition and functioning of the General and FET Quality Assurance, Council. It also provides for quality assurance in general and FET. This includes providing for control over norms and standards of curriculum and assessment; the issue of certificates at the exit points; and the conduct of assessment and repealing the South African Certification Council Act of 1986
- South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), which provides for the establishment of the NQF forms the foundation for a national learning system integrating education and training at all levels

National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS)

The DHET is responsible for ensuring the development of a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.

The key driving force of the NSDS 3 is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It represents an explicit commitment to encouraging the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on those who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions (FET colleges, universities of technology and universities), private training providers and sector education and training authorities (Setas), to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs are addressed.

The NSDS 3 is guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability and HIV and AIDS.

NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the Setas. The Setas are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of NSDS 3, address employer demand and deliver results. They must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors.

NSDS 3 provides a stronger base for the Setas and the DHET, through service-level agreements, to set targets that align with sector skills needs and ensure an improved focus on the core Setas' mandate.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors
- increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications
- promoting the growth of a public FET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development
- encouraging and supporting co-operatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated NGOs and community-training initiatives
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state
- building career and vocational guidance.

The department has been increasing access to higher education programmes by expanding spaces and options available at FET colleges and universities.

The move is part of the department's plan to shift learner focus from traditional institutions such as universities and universities of technology, to FET colleges, where training is vocationally based.

Resources

Universities

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- North-West University
- Rhodes University
- Sol Plaatje University, Northern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo
- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- Unisa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology.
- Walter Sisulu University.

University enrolments have increased by 12% from 837 779 in 2009 to 938 200 in 2011, which is in line with the aim to increase enrolments to 1,62 million by 2030, as envisaged by the NDP. Overall, the number of university graduates for this period increased by 11%.

The rate at which the number of postgraduates increased was higher than that of overall graduations. Research master's graduates increased by 26%, and doctoral graduates increased by 15%, from 1 373 in 2009, to 1 576 in 2011.

Linked to the expansion of the university system is the establishment of Sol Plaatje University in the Northern Cape and the University of Mpumalanga. An amount of R2,1 billion was earmarked for the development of the universities over the next three years.

In April 2013, the Minister of Higher Education and Training launched a R10-million construction skills development and job creation project, in partnership with the Construction Sector Education and Training Authority and the Cape Agulhas Municipality. The project contributes to reducing high unemployment and poverty rates, and uplifts the lives of local communities in and around Bredasdorp.

Both universities were expected to open their doors in 2014 in selected academic programmes, using existing buildings.

In 2013, progress was made in separating the Medunsa campus from the University of Limpopo and establishing a new university incorporating that campus.

This will be a comprehensive university of health and allied sciences, including veterinarian science and dentistry.

The Siyabuswa Teacher Education campus was launched in 2013. It is managed as part of the University of Johannesburg, but will later be transferred to the new university in Mpumalanga.

Processes to establish new teacher education campuses in KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape and Limpopo continued in 2013. The department expected to exceed 14 000 new teacher graduates by 2015.

A policy on the professional qualifications for lecturers in technical and vocational education and training was finalised and gazetted in 2013. This policy established, for the first time, a coherent set of qualifications for college lecturers, such as:

- In Mpumalanga, the former Ndebele College of Education, Siyabuswa campus, was re-opened through a formal agreement between the DHET, the Mpumalanga Department of Education and the University of Johan-nesburg.
- In KwaZulu-Natal, a project have been initiated regarding the establishment of a new teacher education programme at the former uMzimkhulu College of Education site.
- In Limpopo, discussions have been initiated with senior staff at the University of Limpopo and provincial education department regarding the establishment of a new teacher education campus.
- In the Eastern Cape, two potential sites for new teacher education campuses had been identified, the first being the former Cape College of Education, and the second being a school in a township in Grahamstown, which is facing closure, due to dwindling student numbers.
- Additional developments include the decision by Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University to locate foundation-phase teacher education at the Missionvale campus and the possible location of a foundation-phase programme at the Whittlesea campus of Walter Sisulu University.

Further Education and Training

The department's top priority is to expand and improve the quality of FET colleges, soon to be

renamed Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges.

For the 2012 academic year, the set target was 550 000 student enrolments. However, 657 690 students enrolled, representing an increase of 54% over 2011. Over the 2013 MTEF period, R17,4 billion was allocated to ensure that FET college enrolments continued on this trajectory. This includes investment in FET college infrastructure to turn college campuses into learning, ICT, sports, entertainment and business incubation centres.

In 2012, the department provided financial assistance through the NSFAS to 187 497 FET college students, exceeding the projected 180 826 students for that year.

To cater for the expansion in student enrolments in FET colleges, the department set aside R6,3 billion over the 2013 MTEF period, beginning with R1,988 billion in 2013 and culminating in R2,2 billion in 2015.

This will enable the department to ensure greater access to education and training opportunities for 702 430 poor and academically capable young people over the MTEF period.

Post-school education and training institutions are unevenly distributed across the country, with rural areas being particularly poorly served.

To correct this unequal spatial distribution, the President announced the availability of R2,5 billion for infrastructure expansion and refurbishment, in 2012. The department also committed to establishing 12 new campuses, in 2012.

Construction of these campuses started in 2013, with the first student intake expected in 2014. In addition, two existing campuses are being upgraded.

This represents the first phase of the expansion of FET college infrastructure and should cater for up to 28 000 additional students in 2014.

The R2,5 billion for capacity-building and programme expansion allocated to FET colleges was to focus on expanding enrolments (R2 billion), building institutional capacity (R365,5 million), and upgrading equipment (R192 million).

Building the institutional capacity of the colleges is essential. The DHET is drawing on the expertise of professional councils for assistance.

During 2012, the department developed the FET College Turnaround Strategy, which focused on building college capacity in management, governance and leadership, financial management, human resource management, teaching and learning, as well as student support services.

With the assistance of the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA), the department appointed 50 chartered accountants as chief financial officers at FET colleges.

In partnership with SAICA, the department also appointed 20 human resources specialists to help clusters of colleges to set up human resource systems, procedures and policies to ensure smooth and effective human resource management and development in each college.

The department agreed to a partnership with the Engineering Council of South Africa to improve the FET curriculum, make it more relevant to the world of work and facilitate articulation into higher education.

The DHET developed FET college-based mathematics and science foundation programmes that would enable young people to take up university studies in the engineering, science and technology fields. This programme is expected to be piloted from 2014 onwards.

During 2013/14, the department ensured that each college had structures that enabled a learning institution to function optimally. This included filling all vacant senior management posts, appointing college councils and electing student leadership. These measures aimed to create management, governance and leadership stability in FET colleges.

An analysis of the funding framework for FET colleges and public adult learning centres concluded that the framework was inconsistent with the vision of an integrated, yet differentiated post - school education and training system. To remedy this anomaly, a ministerial committee to advise the Minister was set up on how best to fund the TVET System (FET colleges) and envisaged community colleges, both from the fiscus and levy funds.

At the beginning of 2013, the Minister published a notice in the *Government Gazette*, which effectively transferred authority over FET

In September 2013, learners at the Sindekile Intermediary School in Parys, Free State, received a brand new art-media classroom equipped with 21 computers and an interactive board which would be utilised for school projects.

This was as a result of Kenny Theoane, who represented the Free State at the National Baswa Le Meetse competition in 2011, coming first in the Poster Category.

Baswa Le Meetse is one of the projects of the Department of Water and Environmental Affairs' 2020 Vision Programme aimed at educating learners about water resource management and promoting water sector careers, to address the scarce skills challenge.

Through this programme, learners are able to transfer knowledge and skills to their families and communities. Ultimately, efficient use and protection of this natural resource will be instilled and, hopefully, learners will choose water sector careers.

college management staff from the provincial departments of education to the DHET, with effect from 1 April 2013.

To finalise the migration during the course of 2013/14, parties in the ELRC, General Public Service Sector Bargaining Council, and FET Colleges Bargaining Unit negotiated to finalise the collective agreements that would guide and manage the transfer of lecturers and support staff from the employ of the colleges to the DHET.

In October 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry launched the Centre for Entrepreneurship (CEF) at the King Hintsa FET College for Agriculture in Butterworth, Eastern Cape.

The centre forms part of the Department of Trade and Industry's programme to establish platforms with FET colleges to develop local entrepreneurs who will go on to establish and sustain viable and competitive businesses.

Seed funding of R3 million was allocated towards setting up the first phase of the centre.

Adult education and training

The FET Colleges Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 1 of 2013) provides for the creation of a new institutional type, to be known as the Community Education and Training (CET) college. With time, the Public Adult Learning centres will be absorbed into the CET colleges, additional facilities and staff will be provided and the offerings will be extended to provide vocational or community-oriented programmes.

In 2013, the report of a task team which made recommendations for the community colleges, was published for public comment. During the course of 2013, the department identified selected centres to pilot the first community colleges in 2015.

Budget and funding

The department's budget was R34,3 billion for 2013/14, excluding funds from the skills levy.

The skills levy, which is channelled through the Setas and the National Skills Fund (NSF), is expected to increase at an annual average rate of 9,1% over the three years from R11,4 billion in 2012/13 to R14,8 billion in 2015/16.

About one million young people leave school every year and should be absorbed into post-school education or directly into the workforce, if they are not to be unemployed.

Some 3,5 million school leavers between the ages of 15 and 24 in the first quarter of 2013, were not absorbed into employment, education or training, and many adults also found themselves in a similar predicament.

One of the highest priorities of the department is to ensure that the large numbers of young people are given post-school education and training opportunities that will improve their employability.

Policies to achieve the objectives are set out in a *White Paper on Post-School Education and Training*.

Teaching and learning are at the heart of the university system. An amount of R575 million was allocated to all universities for teaching development grants, to assist in improving graduate outputs, and R205 million for foundation programmes to improve the success rates of students from disadvantaged educational backgrounds.

In 2013, a teaching development policy frame-work was implemented; programmes were initiated to support the academic and professional development of lecturers in universities; and R177 million for researchdevelopment was allocated to all 23 universities to develop the research capabilities of university staff, especially those institutions with low numbers of staff with postgraduate degrees.

The department extended the infrastructure grant to universities from two to three years, increasing the R3,8 billion to R6 billion over the period 2012/13 to 2014/15, including amounts aimed at overcoming backlogs at historically disadvantaged institutions.

Through co-funding, institutions will contribute a further R2 billion over this period, to bring the total investment in university infrastructure to R8 billion.

From 2012/13 to 2014/15, some R1,652 billion was allocated for universities to build and refurbish student residences, with 86% of this funding allocated to historically disadvantaged institutions and campuses. The department engaged with the Public Investment Corporation and Development Bank of Southern Africa to make available additional funding for student accommodation.

In 2013, government increased funds allocated to FET college students to R2 billion. This programme gives effect to the introduction of free education, whereby all qualifying National Certificate Vocational and N4 to N6 (Nated) students are exempt from paying at all public FET colleges.

A solid plan of effective Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST) teaching in schools was developed in June 2013, when experts in these fields met with the Minister of Basic Education. The objective of the roundtable discussion was to strengthen the National MST Strategy to improve learner performance.

Programmes and projects

- The Minister of Higher Education and Training emphasised the country's need for more artisans by declaring 2013 as the "Year of the Artisan", in February 2013.
- About R1 trillion has been allocated for SIPs – which include building of roads, schools, universities, harbours, power stations and other social and economic infrastructure.
- The National Institute of Humanities and Social Sciences was up and running by the end of 2013.
- The work of the Minister's Advisory Panel on African languages was at an advanced stage. The panel would report on strengthening the study of African languages and developing them as languages of scholarship in line with the constitutional requirement that their status be elevated and their use promoted.
- The higher education HIV and AIDS programme, "First Things First," is a dedicated national programme to develop and support the HIV mitigation programmes at South Africa's public higher education institutions. To this end, the "First Things First" programme was launched in February 2013, in the FET sector at the Mnambithi FET college in Ladysmith, KwaZulu-Natal.
- For 2013, the department updated the *Apply Now!* booklet and in June 2013 distributed it to all high schools in the country. As the final phase of the "Apply Now!" campaign, the department raised awareness about the Central Applications Clearing House facility.
- This facility was successfully implemented at the beginning of 2013 as a precursor to the Central Application System. The service advised prospective students of the various educational opportunities within the post-school system and helped direct them to available spaces in the system.
- The department developed and tested the IT system for the Central Applications Service during 2013/14, and will pilot the system for phased implementation from 2015.

Role players

South African Qualifications Authority

Saqa, which is well recognised nationally and internationally, focuses on upholding the principles of the NQF, including ensuring access, quality, redress and development for all learners through an integrated national framework of learning achievements.

The authority's main responsibilities include:

- registering qualifications and part-qualifications on the NQF
- maintaining and developing the National Learners' Records Database as the key national source of information for human resources and skills development in policy, infrastructure and planning
- maintaining and developing the authority's role as the national source of advice on foreign and domestic learning and qualifications
- conducting research
- monitoring and undertaking evaluation studies that contribute to the development of the NQF and a culture of lifelong learning
- registering professional bodies and professional designations on the NQF.

In March 2013, the National Teaching Awards – to recognise the nation's hardworking and dedicated teachers – were held in Midrand. President Jacob Zuma pledged government's commitment to restoring pride in what is universally acknowledged as the mother of all professions.

In terms of the NQF Act of 2008, the executive functions for setting standards and quality assurance will move to the three quality councils.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The QCTO addresses the quality of training in and for the workplace, and ensures that such training and knowledge is accredited and certified, including proper recognition of prior learning.

The National Artisan Moderation Body is responsible for coordinating artisan development in South Africa. Plans are in place to establish offices in the engineering campuses of public FET colleges.

Higher Education South Africa (HESA)

HESA is the voice of South Africa's university leadership as it represents the vice-chancellors of public universities. Its mandate is to facilitate the development of public policy on higher education and encourage cooperation among universities, government, industry and other sectors in South Africa.

HESA provides services to member universities in five main areas, namely:

- strategic research
- policy advocacy and stakeholder engagement

According to the annual *Times Higher Education* BRICS and Emerging Markets Rankings for 2014, which ranks universities in emerging markets according to 13 performance indicators, including teaching, research volumes and research influence, five South African universities feature in the list of top 100 universities: The University of Cape Town was ranked the top university in Africa, the University of the Witswatersrand ranked 15th on the list, Stellenbosch University was ranked 21st, with the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the University of Pretoria rounding off South Africa's showing in the rankings in 45th and 78th position, respectively.

- sector support, including providing university leaders and their institutions with a supportive network and opportunities for collective action
- special programmes to strengthen institutions' capacity
- value-adding services, including scholarships and international programmes.

To obtain admission to university study for Bachelor's degrees, with the old Senior Certificate, a candidate had to pass four subjects with 40% and two with 33,3%.

In the case of the NSC, admission to Bachelor studies requires a pass in four subjects with 50% and in the remaining subjects with 30%, provided that the home language is passed with 40% and the language of learning and teaching with 30%. The NSC required a candidate to complete seven subjects, while the old Senior Certificate requires six subjects.

The department benchmarks its question papers as a credible mechanism for ensuring that national question papers are internationally comparable and are of the highest standard and quality.

Human Resource Development Council of South Africa (HRDCSA)

The HRDCSA is a national, multi-tiered and multi-stakeholder advisory body.

One of its key responsibilities is to build the human resource development base required to ensure a prosperous and inclusive South African society and economy.

In essence, it must ensure that all relevant policies, programmes, projects, interventions and strategies are streamlined and optimised to support overall government objectives, rather than merely sectoral imperatives.

The HRDCSA is supported by a technical working group co-chaired by business and labour. It follows the council structure, but is supported by a team of experts comprising technical task teams appointed on an issues basis to provide expert input, in respect of all matters pertaining to human resources.

In September 2013, the Portfolio Committee on Higher Education and Training conducted oversight visits to Wits University and Further Education and Training (FET) institutions in Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal.

The visits were part of the committee's ongoing countrywide oversight programme, aimed at assessing student enrolment and challenges faced by the institutions; allocation of the National Student Financial Aid Scheme of South Africa bursaries/loans to students; transformation plans and admission policies at the identified institutions.

Since the beginning of 2013, the committee has conducted oversight visits at several institutions of higher learning, including North-West University, the University of Venda, University of Limpopo – Turfloop Campus, and all FETs in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

HRDCSA held its first meeting of its second term in Pretoria, in September 2013. New council members were also introduced at the meeting.

The Minister of Higher Education and Training used the meeting to present recommendations from the Economic Development Department, and the HRDCSA Technical Task Team on the Alignment of the Human Resource Development Strategy, to the NGP, as well as skills planning.

The council signed off the work that had been by the Technical Task Team on the alignment of the HRDS to the NGP and accepted the recommendations as presented.

The Skills System Review Technical Task Team presented its work on the review of the Skills System in South Africa.

The meeting approved the formalisation of the Public Sector Skills Committee as a coordinating structure to ensure that the public sector has the capacity to meet priorities of a developmental state.

The Department of Public Service and Administration introduced the National School of Government, which will be responsible for education, training and development programmes in a uniform public service, as well as to develop a professional, responsive and capable public service driven by the imperative of a developmental state.

Sector education and training authorities

Setas were re-established by the Ministry of Labour in March 2005, to help implement the NSDS and to increase the skills of people in particular sectors. Setas replaced and extend the work of the old industry training boards and are accredited by Saqa.

The new Seta grant regulations came into operation on 1 April 2013, and require Setas to focus funding on structured workplace learning and experience, and promoting partnerships between education and training institutions and employers.

This will help institutionalise this work within the post-school education and training system.

Work Integrated Learning Partnerships and Innovation

Linking the education and training institutions and the labour market is a priority. This is because workplace training is generally more effective if on-the-job training is combined with theoretical study and also because practical experience gained during training or immediately afterwards increases a student's chances of finding employment.

In 2013, the department established a dedicated unit for this purpose. The unit engages

with employers in both the private and public sectors as well as with Setas to promote and institutionalise work-integrated learning.

Government departments and agencies at national, provincial and local level as well as SOCs started to increase their intake of young people for apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998, to advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on, among others:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSF allocations
- liaising with Setas about policy, strategy and sector skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of the NSF annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Skills Fund

In 2013, for the first time in its history, the NSF reached a stage where its annual disbursements were on par with annual income. In addition, all of the fund's R7 billion historic reserves were earmarked for specific skills development projects of national priority.

Most of the expenditure was for improving infrastructure and programmes for expanding capacity, and improving quality in the production of skills in engineering, medical and veterinary sciences, renewable energy, various trades and rural development.

National Student Financial AID Scheme

NSFAS is the department's primary tool for ensuring, poor students have access to post-school education. Since 1991, NSFAS has assisted 1,4 million students and many NSFAS alumni play important roles in the country's economy and society.

The board and staff of NSFAS continue to implement the recommendations of the Ministerial Review Committee Report of 2010 and have made significant progress in the turnaround process to enable the entity to deliver on its mandate.

The department's allocation to NSFAS for 2013/14 amounted to R5 769 billion. This included R3 693 billion for loans and bursaries to universities and R1 988 billion for bursaries for FET colleges.

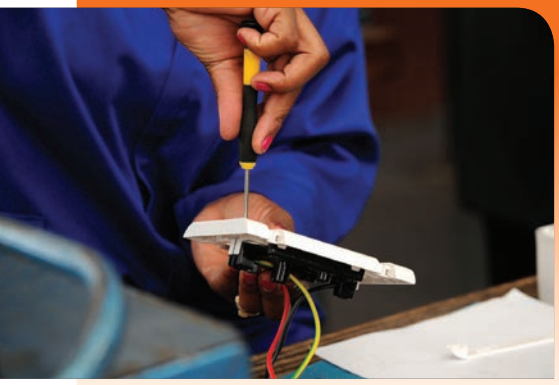
Equality Scholarships, worth about R100 000 each, will be awarded to the top 10 matriculants from Quintile 1 and 2 schools who choose to attend Wits University. The programme would supplement the Vice-Chancellor's Scholarships, awarded to the 10 best learners from all schools, and will enhance Wits' current suite of equity programmes, which includes the Targeting Talent programme, the Bale Scholarship programme for young women, the Go to University to Succeed outreach campaign and the Leadership, Education and Development Programme.

Libraries in the higher education sector

The higher education libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all interlibrary loan requests. Pressure on higher education libraries includes redistribution of educational resources and rising prices.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

Energy



The Department of Energy (DoE) places emphasis on broadening electricity supply technologies to include gas and imports, as well as nuclear, biomass and renewable energy resources (wind, solar and hydro), to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon-dioxide (CO_2) emissions.

In 2013, Cabinet approved the new Household Electrification Strategy, which will ensure that electricity is supplied to all households. New installations will take the form of renewables, with 220 000 grid connections and 215 000 non-grid connections planned for 2013.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydro-electricity.

About 11 000 MW of Eskom's older coal-powered stations will be decommissioned, but close to 6 000 MW of new coal capacity will be contracted – part of it from other southern African countries.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in CO_2 emissions by 2025. The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

Legislation and policies

The DoE derives its mandate from the *White Paper on Energy Policy, 1998*, the *White Paper on Renewable Energy, 2003*, and the National Energy Efficiency Strategy.

The following legislation regulates the energy sector:

- The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008) ensures that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. In addition, the Act provides for the increased use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.
- The Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006) establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa). The Minister of Energy is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of independent power producers (IPPs) to increase the supply of electricity.
- The Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), as amended, provides for measures to save petroleum products and the economy in distribution costs, the maintenance and control of price, the furnishing of certain information

regarding petroleum products and the rendering of service. It further provides for the licensing of people involved in the manufacturing, wholesale and retailing of prescribed petroleum products.
- The Central Energy Fund (CEF) Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977), as amended, provides for the determination of state levies.
- The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) provides for the establishment of the National Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountability, governance and management. It also regulates the acquisition and possession of nuclear fuel, nuclear and related material and equipment, and the import and export thereof.

Other relevant legislation includes the:
- National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999)
- National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008)
- Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003)
- Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004)
- Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001)
- Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002)
- National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004)
- Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended
- National Environmental Management Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999)
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002)
- Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007).

National Energy Efficiency Strategy

The National Development Plan envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to ensure that economic activity and welfare are not disrupted, and that at least 95% of the population will have access to grid or off-grid electricity.

The plan proposes that gas and other renewable resources such as wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the plan include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors.

The department will continue to address these proposals through a combination of new and existing programmes.

Funds will continue to be allocated to the South African National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi) for research and development into a carbon capture and storage project, and for a hydraulic fracturing pilot to assess the potential for shale gas.

The department aims to bring IPPs into the market when the Independent System and Market Operator Bill of 2012 is signed into law.

The department will also continue implementing the pilot approach to the distribution asset management programme, by providing capital subsidies to nine municipalities to address maintenance, refurbishment and backlog concerns to improve the quality of electricity supply.

The objectives of the revised energy efficiency strategy are to:
- promote and develop energy efficiency practices, norms and standards in different energy sectors, including industries, commercial buildings, households, transport and agriculture
- develop energy efficiency policies and guidelines
- facilitate information awareness, and capacity-building campaigns concerning energy efficiency and environmental issues
- promote energy for sustainable development
- mitigate negative impacts of energy use on the environment
- promote energy efficiency technologies and clean energy technologies, including environmentally sound energy technologies
- promote and facilitate international collaboration and cooperation
- ensure the DoE's participation at international forums on energy efficiency and the environment, including the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development, the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

The strategy includes Eskom's demand-side management (DSM). When a utility or local authority that supplies electricity influences the way it is used by customers, this activity is known as DSM. Municipalities are also implementing their own energy efficiency strategies.

In addition, 32 large companies have joined forces with the DoE and Eskom by signing an energy efficiency accord, committing themselves to targets contained in the strategy.

To assist households in becoming more energy efficient, the DoE initiated an appliance-labelling campaign. Labels on household appliances

inform consumers of the energy efficiency of the appliances.

The DoE, in collaboration with the Department of Public Works and Eskom, is retrofitting government buildings to make them more energy efficient. This contributes a saving of about R600 000 in electricity bills a year.

Eskom concluded 11 power buy-back deals with ferrochrome and alloys producers for the period 1 December 2012 to 31 March 2013 to create a demand-side cushion for its summer maintenance programme.

The utility secured buy-backs of up to 950 MW. The buy-backs were funded through an existing allocation for demand-management programmes and were expected to have no impact on the tariff.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with the South African national standards.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuel identified a number of capacity constraints and challenges faced by the petroleum sector in meeting the energy demand. In response to these, the National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy was finalised and published for comments in 2013.

It sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity. Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

LPG is commonly used in mines to power smelting furnaces that are processing materials, such as platinum and vanadium, as well as domestically for cooking.

The strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications.

The domestic LPG price is regulated through the DoE by the Minister of Energy.

Budget and funding

Over the medium term, infrastructure spending is expected to increase to R5,7 billion in 2015/16. In 2013/14, some 200 000 households were electrified; 18 new bulk substations were built; and 30 substations were upgraded. Eskom was allocated R3,5 billion over the medium term to fund the installation of high and low-pressure solar water geysers. Municipalities received an allocation of R538 million over the medium term to install energy - efficient lighting and technologies.

Necsa derives its revenue from the sale of nuclear technology products, chemical products, nuclear engineering services and transfer payments received from government to fund the operation of specific activities, namely the decommissioning of strategic plants, the production and conversion of low-enriched uranium fuel and security.

The increase in expenditure in 2013/14 is due to an additional once-off allocation of R33,5 million to assist with the research outputs and development facilities attached to the Safari-1 reactor.

The corporation's spending focus over the medium term will be on six items: radioisotope production, radiation applications, research and development, specialised nuclear manufacturing, the nuclear fuel cycle and nuclear power generation support.

The first three are priority focus areas and aimed at expanding research and development programmes in support of the corporation's core activities and contributing to the national system of innovation strengthening the NTP Radioisotopes' position in the global market for medical radioisotopes. NTP Radioisotopes SOC Ltd, a subsidiary of the Necsa, conducts its sophis-

ticated operations from the Pelindaba nuclear facility near Pretoria. NTP exports its products to nearly 60 countries on five continents and maintains world-class quality (ISO 9001:2008), safety and regulatory compliance systems and performance. NTP is a world leader in the production and supply of radiochemicals, in particular I-131 and Mo-99, the latter being the most important isotope for devices used in the practice of diagnostic nuclear medicine. The last three are aligned with the integrated resource plan for electricity 2010 to 2030, and requirements for the building of new nuclear power reactors. These requirements include the manufacturing of specialised components and the commercial exploitation of the corporation's strategic fluorine technology platform.

- Nersa's budget for 2013/14 was R252,8 million
- NNR's budget was R168,7 million
- Sanedi's budget was R206,1 million.

Role players

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

Nersa is the regulatory authority for electricity, gas and petroleum. In March 2013, Nersa granted Eskom an 8% tariff increase annually over a period of five years while also welcoming the differentiated increase that will cushion the poor.

National Nuclear Regulator

The NNR is responsible for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa

Necsa is a wholly state-owned company. Its functions are to:

- undertake and promote research into nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology
- process source, special nuclear and restricted material including uranium enrichment
- collaborate with other entities.

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to Necsa, including the implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations. The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to research and development and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

Necsa's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy research and development, and innovation in South Africa. The research focuses mainly on nuclear technology applications such as:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, including waste.

The corporation is also responsible for:

- operating the Safari-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science research and development and to provide irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes
- decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities
- implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA); the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty.

In the medium term, Necsa will focus on:

- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel research and development in relation to low-enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

South African National Energy Development Institute

Sanedi is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF's spending focus over the medium term is on accelerating spending on infrastructure, as well as the development of renewable and alternative energy sources. Projects incorporated over the medium term include Ikhwezi, with a total approved budget of R11,2 billion; Sabre Oil and Gas in the Jubilee Production Field, with a total budget of R4 billion; and Irene and other downstream acquisitions, with a total estimated cost of R14 billion.

South Africa's Koeberg nuclear plant is the only nuclear power-generating facility on the African continent. The government plans to build new plants in the country with a total capacity of 9 gigawatts (GW) and it is expected to be 9,6 GW by 2035.

Other projects to be undertaken are Project Mthombo, and projects in Venezuela and Equatorial Guinea. Project Mthombo is a PetroSA initiative to build a world-class crude refinery in the Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) in the Eastern Cape.

The initiative in Equatorial Guinea is a drilling project, while the project in Venezuela relates to the acquisition of a mature field opportunity.

This accounts for the strong growth in acquisition of assets over the medium term.

The CEF researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs.

It is also mandated to manage the Equalisation Fund, which collects levies from the retail sales of petroleum products to eliminate unnecessary fluctuations in the retail price of liquid fuel and to give tariff protection to the synthetic fuel industry.

The objectives of the CEF are to:

- manage the energy business for the benefit of all South Africans
- play an active role in the governance and planning of all its subsidiaries and coordinating the long-term future of the group
- improve security of energy supply by diversifying sources, and building and managing strategic energy stocks and energy infrastructure
- develop and invest in renewable and alternative energy sources and in energy efficiency
- develop human capacity and invest in relevant research and development
- manage and optimally exploit local strategic energy and related resources
- mitigate against environmental impacts and maximise sustainable development.

In August 2013, Russia's State Nuclear Power Corporation, Rosatom, which is planning to bid for the construction of nuclear power plants in South Africa, decided to start training nuclear industry specialists for South Africa.

Rosatom signed a memorandum of cooperation with the North-West University, the only school of higher learning that offers training in nuclear technologies. The intention is to explore the potential for future collaboration, ranging from education to specific technical projects in nuclear engineering, hydrogen technologies and energy.

The memorandum promotes the development of technical education in South Africa and the possibility to find out more about modern Russian technologies. Joint research and scientific developments will provide a solid foundation for the development of Rosatom's business relations in South Africa. At the end of December 2013, Rosatom signed a memorandum of understanding with South Africa to provide end-to-end nuclear plant delivery and operation.

Integrated energy centres (IECs)

Government has identified access to energy for people in areas of greatest need as an urgent requirement to facilitate socio-economic development. One of the many approaches that the DoE has developed to address energy poverty through deliberate interventions in the second economy is the IECs programme.

The department is partnering with relevant stakeholders, the private sector, municipalities and communities in establishing the IECs. As a result, this is a public-private partnership venture.

An IEC is a one-stop energy supplier, owned and operated by the community cooperative and organised as a community project. It provides energy solutions to communities; access to affordable, safe and sustainable energy services; information and awareness on how to handle and use energy services such as paraffin and LPG and small, medium and micro enterprise development through partnerships with key stakeholders, such as the National Development Agency and the Department of Trade and Industry.

The six IECs are: Kgalagadi and Moshaweng in Kuruman, Northern Cape; Eshane in Greytown, KwaZulu-Natal; Caba Mdeni in Matatiele and Mbizana, Eastern Cape; Mutale in Thohoyandou, Limpopo; and Ratlou in Makgobistad, North West.

Sasol

Sasol is an international integrated energy and chemical company that leverages the talent and expertise of more than 34 000 people working in 37 countries. The company develops and commercialises technologies, and builds and operates world-scale facilities to produce a range of product streams, including liquid fuels, high-value chemicals and low-carbon electricity.

Sasol is expanding internationally based on a unique value proposition. The company is listed on the JSE Limited in South Africa and on the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America (USA).

The company is one of the world's largest producers of synthetic fuels. It mines coal in South Africa and produces natural gas and condensate in Mozambique, oil in Gabon and shale gas in Canada.

Sasol continues to advance its upstream oil and gas activities in West and southern Africa, the Asia Pacific region and Canada. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and sells retail liquid fuels through its network of some 400 service stations and supplies gas to industrial customers. It also supplies fuels to other licensed wholesalers in the region.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquids (GTL) and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology.

Sasol's energy cluster focuses on the manufacturing, refining and marketing of automotive and industrial fuels, oils and gas.

With partners in China, the company launched a feasibility study into a CTL plant with a potential capacity of around 80 000 barrels per day.

End products include petrol; diesel; jet fuel; fuel oil; illuminating paraffin; liquefied petroleum gas; pipeline gas; lubricants and greases; bitumen and naphtha.

Sasol's local energy cluster comprises the following:

- Sasol Oil, which handles crude oil refining activities as well as the blending and marketing of liquid fuels and lubricants.
- Sasol Gas, which supplies pipeline gas to industrial and commercial customers.
- Sasol Mining, which produces about 40 million tons (Mt) of saleable coal a year.
- Sasol Synfuels, which operates the coal-based synfuels manufacturing facility at Secunda, in Mpumalanga.

Eskom

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors.

Additional power stations and major power lines are being built to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa.

Eskom will continue to focus on improving and strengthening its core business of electricity generation, transmission, trading and distribution.

Eskom buys electricity from and sells it to the countries of the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Future involvement in African markets outside South Africa – the SADC countries connected to the South African grid and the rest of Africa – is limited to those projects that have a direct impact on ensuring security of supply for South Africa.

In September 2013, President Jacob Zuma officially re-opened Eskom's Grootvlei power station, which will contribute towards meeting the country's energy demand requirements by providing maintenance space for other power stations.

National Nuclear Energy Executive Coordination Committee (NNEECC)

The DoE undertook study tours to a number of key nuclear-energy jurisdictions ahead of a final nuclear decision, which government was intent on making before the end of 2013/14.

South Africa has opted for a phased decision-making approach under the direction of the NNEECC, which is chaired by President Zuma. It was previously overseen by the Deputy President.

The Minister of Energy said China, France, Korea and the USA would be visited to assist in determining South Africa's approach to the introduction of new nuclear energy capacity, over and above that which already exists at Koeberg, in the Western Cape.

The NNEECC includes the ministers of energy, public enterprises, economic development, trade and industry, water affairs and environment, finance and mineral resources, with the DoE serving as a secretariat.

A nuclear energy technical committee, led by the relevant directors-general, reports to the ministers. Senior officials lead a nuclear energy working group incorporating various working subgroups.

They have the task of examining everything from finance and funding to security and safety.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between SADC member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls).

The SAPP has made it possible for members to delay capital expenditure on new plants due to the existence of interconnections and a power pool in the region.

SAPP member countries are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Other role players

- iGas is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- PetroSA is a government-owned oil and gas company mandated by Cabinet to lead developments in gas infrastructure in the Western Cape.
- The Petroleum Agency of South Africa promotes the exploration and exploitation of natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore, in South Africa and undertakes the necessary marketing, promotion and monitoring of operations.

- Petronet owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines on behalf of government.

Energy resources

South Africa produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world. The country has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. The DoE's Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

The *White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development (2002)* commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

Liquid fuels

The recommendations made in the Energy, Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

South Africa faces a number of specific challenges in the liquid fuels sector:

Gas stocks for the existing gas-to-liquids plant from offshore fields are declining. South Africa should source sufficient feedstocks to support and increase production.

The best option to secure feedstocks would be to invest in gas fields close or adjacent to existing fields in the southern Cape, as marginal costs are lower and it will allow for further exploitation of existing fields, maximising use of existing capital.

PetroSA is best placed to lead this petroleum refinery investment, given its existing capital and management experience.

In the longer term, the Mossel Bay Refinery could use either liquefied natural gas imports or Karoo shale gas, if it becomes available. Refining capacity has run out and South Africa now has to import a share of its refined fuel needs. There are five options to deal with this, namely:

- building a new oil-to-liquid refinery (such as the proposed Mthombo Project in Coega)
- building a new CTL refinery
- upgrading the existing refineries; allowing significant expansion of one or more of the existing refineries
- importing refined products
- building a refinery in Angola or Nigeria and buying a share of the product of that refinery.

The least risky and most cost-effective option is to continue importing a share of refined products until the country reaches a stage where it can absorb the output of either a new refinery or a major upgrade of an existing refinery. South Africa will, therefore, continue to import, taking a decision on the next step by 2016/17. Timing is important, given lead-time requirements to develop a new refinery (estimated at about eight to 10 years) that would be expected to produce output by 2025 to 2028 (if no other options are implemented).

Other issues related to liquid fuels include:

- clean fuel standards
- vehicle carbon tax
- electric vehicles
- use of public transport.

The South African liquid-fuels sector presents several opportunities for investors throughout the petroleum value chain.

A key feature of the South African liquid-fuels sector is that most transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, about 68% of which is consumed in Gauteng. This requires investments in storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

The construction of the new multi-product pipeline, which was funded under the department through Transnet, was completed. The new 555-km pipeline, which has a 70-year design life, runs from Durban to Gauteng. It can transport jet fuel, 93-grade and 95-grade unleaded petrol, low-sulphur diesel and ultra-low-sulphur diesel.

The trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km inland pipeline network, came into operation at the end of 2013, increasing capacity from the existing 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres.

These mega infrastructural projects and related support infrastructure require a close and ongoing partnership between state-owned enterprises and private companies.

Oil and natural gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

South Africans achieved an average of 629 MW reduction in their electricity usage during Earth Hour in March 2013. The campaign encourages individuals and businesses to lead energy-smart lifestyles, to save power, save the planet and save their pockets.

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls. Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The department views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

To this end, the Integrated Resources Plan (IRP) was developed, which incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation. The IRP presents a 20-year view on South Africa's energy mix that seeks to balance growth in demand with South Africa's commitments to reduce its dependence on coal and to lower climate-changing emissions.

The IRP aims to:

- improve the country's global competitiveness
- support job creation
- improve the management of natural resources
- reduce and mitigate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in line with reduction targets.

Global energy company GDF Suez announced in June 2013 that it would be proceeding with two open-cycle gas-turbines in South Africa.

GDF Suez holds a 43% equity interest in the project, Investec, 34,5%, and Kagiso Tiso Holdings, 20%, with the remaining 2,5% to be allocated to a community trust. In addition to investing equity in the project, Investec, jointly with Nedbank, has underwritten about R1,5 billion in debt required for the development of the wind farm.

In August 2013, South Africa's state-owned oil and gas company PetroSA launched a R15-million geoscience collaboration, visualisation and technology centre, which will prove a boost to gas exploration and drilling. Geoscientists, engineers and technical officials will be able to collaborate in the Ulwazi (Knowledge) Collaboration and Visualisation Centre, which is equipped with various screens and computers that can display 3D imaging of subsurface formations. This will make it possible to take better informed and faster decisions when drilling for gas.

The centre can also be used daily to monitor and guide drilling operations for PetroSA's gas drilling project Ikhwezi located off the East Coast to sustain its GTL refinery in Mossel Bay.

Using data fed back from drilling bits on such things as sand or rock type or the resistivity of the substance being drilled, officials will also be able to adjust where exactly to drill, compare data from old drilling sites and make changes to the angle or direction of its active drill bits.

This is particularly useful to the Ikhwezi project where horizontal drilling is taking place 1,5 km along the basin at a depth of four kilometres from the surface.

Alternative gas resources

Experiments are underway to assess the potential for mining coal-bed methane gas, although the overall potential of this resource for producing electricity in South Africa is probably less than previously thought.

Underground coal gassification technology is also being developed.

According to the USA Energy Information Administration, technically recoverable shale-gas resources in South Africa form the fifth largest reserve globally. Drilling more wells is necessary to confirm recoverable reserves.

Even if economically recoverable resources are much lower than currently estimated, shale gas as a transitional fuel has the potential to contribute a very large proportion of South Africa's electricity needs.

In investigating the potential for accessing shale gas in the Karoo Basin in the Northern Cape, Cabinet decided that only normal exploration would take place until a proper and relevant regulatory framework had been put in place, and until government was satisfied that it could deal adequately with the consequences of the technique known as hydraulic fracturing.

Cabinet established a task team to evaluate the use of a hydraulic fracturing technique in the extraction of shale gas. This task team comprised representatives from the departments of environmental affairs, water affairs, science and technology, energy, mineral resources, the Petroleum Agency of South Africa, the Council for Geoscience, Square Kilometre Array South Africa, the Water Research Commission and Eskom.

The task team appointed a working group of experts that brought on board technical advisers and academics from the universities of the Free State and of the Western Cape, who served as a reference group.

This team was tasked with evaluating the potential environmental risks posed by the use of hydraulic fracturing as a method of extracting

shale gas, and the negative and positive social and economic impacts of shale gas exploitation as identified in the Karoo Basin.

Cabinet approved the task team's report and lifted the moratorium on processing applications for exploration in the Karoo Basin on condition of the appropriate regulations, controls and coordination systems being established, which were in place by the end of 2013.

There will be ongoing research, facilitated by relevant institutions, to develop and enhance scientific knowledge, including but not limited to the geo-hydrology of the prospective areas, methodologies for hydraulic fracturing in South Africa and environmental impact.

Electricity

By 2013, nearly 88% of the population had access to electricity.

However, electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action, including the Infrastructure Development Programme, to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

To this end, more than R340 billion will be spent on Eskom's New Build Programme. This will bring on line a further 11 641 MW of new capacity in the short term, adding to Eskom's existing 40 000 MW of capacity.

Government's goal is to ensure that 92% of all South African households have electricity by 2014.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy-resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, making them easier and cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, it is estimated that there more than 50 years of coal supply left.

Coal provides for about 65% of South Africa's primary energy needs. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades, owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source. Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground, while the rest is produced by open-cast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% of saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output. South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer in the world.

Renewable and alternative fuels

The DoE has the sole mandate to promote the use of renewable energy, initiate projects to advance the use of renewable energy and annually monitor the precise quantity of energy produced from renewable energy.

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy (2003)* has set a target of 10 000 GWh of energy to be produced from renewable energy sources (mainly from biomass, wind, solar and small-scale hydro) by 2013.

Following Cabinet approval of the White Paper, the DoE proceeded with the development of its renewable energy strategy.

The White Paper's target of 10 000 GWh renewable energy contribution to final energy consumption by 2013 was confirmed to be economically viable with subsidies and carbon financing.

Achieving the target will:

- add about 1 667 MW of new renewable energy capacity, with a nett impact on gross domestic product as high as R1,071 billion a year

- create additional government revenue of R299 million
- stimulate additional income that will flow to low-income households by as much as R128 million, creating just over 20 000 new jobs
- contribute to water savings of 16,5 million kilolitres, which translates into a R26,6 million saving.

Renewable energy sources, other than biomass (the energy from plants and plant-derived materials) have not yet been exploited optimally in South Africa.

The vision of the DoE is to make adequate and affordable energy available to developing communities through a mix of providing alternative energy resources at a reasonable cost. The aim is to satisfy the basic needs of the developing sector and at the same time promote the effective use of South Africa's vast alternative energy sources.

To monitor progress towards the White Paper's target of producing 10 000 GWh of energy from renewable energy sources by 2013, a monitoring and evaluation project has been set up.

Every year, the department collects data on renewable energy contributions from relevant stakeholders to assess or evaluate progress towards this goal.

The target can be achieved mainly from the production of renewable energy by grid, off-grid (a source of energy not connected to a grid) and biofuel facilities. This renewable energy will be used for power generation to the grid and for water heating purposes.

The 10 000 GWh 2013 target is equivalent to about 5% of all electricity produced in South Africa at present. This is equivalent to replacing two 660-MW units of Eskom's combined coal-fired power stations.

Biofuel

The biofuel sector has grown rapidly internationally. However, South Africa has remained only a peripheral participant in the sector's growth. There are several reasons for this:

- Being a relatively new sector, there are various complex regulatory barriers to be finalised.
- The global economic crisis and the resultant reduction in oil prices reduced the commercial viability of some investments and negatively affected investor sentiment.
- National debates focus on food-versus-fuel arguments and the potential to create biofuels using crop surpluses.

South Africa has significant potential to develop a commercially viable biofuels sector, notwithstanding the country's water-poor status. The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the CEF are the main investors in the sector, in South Africa. The IDC, in particular, is involved in all four of South Africa's current biofuel projects.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular. In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Government has committed to a 2% blend target for biofuels inclusion in the national fuel supply. If South Africa increased its blending target to 10%, some 125 000 direct jobs could be created, many of which would be based in rural areas, where poverty is widespread.

South Africa set the beginning of October 2015 as the date from which fuel producers would have to blend diesel and petrol with biofuels.

Fuel producers would be required to blend a minimum of 5% biodiesel in diesel and between 2% and 10% of bioethanol in petrol.

Biofuels are expected to reduce the country's reliance on imported fuel.

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

The Government said maize, South Africa's staple food, could not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Pumping uses some electricity, but this is done in off-peak periods. During peak hours, when extra electricity is needed, the water is released through a turbine that drives an electric generator. Peak hours are usually from 06:00 to 08:00 and 18:00 to 20:00.

South Africa used to import electricity from the Cahora Bassa hydropower station in Mozambique and will do so again once the transmission line is repaired. There is also the potential to import more hydropower from countries such as Zambia, Zimbabwe and DRC. If this happens, South Africa could become less dependent on coal-fired power stations.

However, the generation of hydro-electricity is not without environmental effects; for example, large areas of land may be flooded when dams are built, which will disrupt wildlife habitats and residential and farming areas.

Irrespective of the size of its installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act 1998, (Act 36 of 1998).

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for the development of small, i.e. less than 1 MW, hydropower plants. These plants can either be stand-alones or in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources. Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water – such as water supply, irrigation and flood control – which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not being harnessed is that there is no existing reliable technology for generating electricity from the sea.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

The Bramhoek and Bedford dams have both been completed and the R23-billion Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme was implemented during 2013/14. By the end of 2013, some 2 400 MW of capacity had been awarded to renewable projects.

According to the IRP's 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 6% of electricity generated in the country will be required to come from hydro resources.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m^2 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day. The southern African region and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m^2 for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m^2 for Europe.

This makes the local resource one of the largest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The launch of the solar energy farm, the first renewable energy project in North West took place in May 2013. Located at Buffelspoort, RustMo1 Solar Farm is a 7 MW solar photovoltaic (PV) power-generation facility, which will supply power to the Eskom grid.

The project includes the installation of 11 inverters and 29 808 PV solar modules, with a step-up transformer to connect to the 88kV substation. The farm will produce 244 643 MWh of energy over the 20-year contract period. Commercial operations at the farm started in November 2013.

The development of the farm was awarded to Momentous Energy, a South African black-owned development company.

Fifteen projects are being developed under the IPPPP programme with the RustMo1 solar PV plant being the first to be approved.

By the start of 2014, other solar PV projects ranging from five to 340 MW earmarked for Brits; Christiana; Taung; Rustenburg; Vryburg; Mahikeng; Tswaing and Orkney were at various stages of the bidding and planning process for implementation.

In August 2013, Spanish renewable energy group Abengoa completed construction of the tower section of South Africa's first concentrating solar power (CSP) plant, one of three such plants under development in the semi-desert Northern Cape that will add 200 MW of renewable energy to the country's national grid.

Abengoa is one of 28 IPPs that signed contracts with the South African Government late in 2012. The first round of a programme will see an initial 1 400 MW of renewable energy being added to South Africa's energy mix, while bringing an estimated R47 billion in new investment into the country.

The DoE aims to bring 17 800 MW from renewable sources online by 2030.

Abengoa, in partnership with the IDC and community trusts in Upington and Pofadder, is building Khi Solar One, a 50-MW solar tower plant near Upington, and KaXu Solar One, a 100-MW parabolic trough solar plant near Pofadder. According to the Southern Africa Solar Thermal and Electricity Association, the two power stations will leverage investment of over

R10 billion and together will generate almost 500 GWh clean solar electricity a year.

According to Abengoa, the two plants will reduce South Africa's CO_2 emissions by about 498 000 t a year, while creating between 1 400 and 2 000 construction jobs and about 70 permanent operation jobs, as well as numerous indirect jobs to fulfil the needs required by the plant and its construction.

Gauteng plans to spend R11 billion installing solar panels on all its state-owned buildings in the near future.

In September 2013, Norway-based Scatec Solar announced that it had completed its 75-MW solar PV power plant in Kalkbult in the Northern Cape three months ahead of schedule, making it the first project under South Africa's renewable energy programme for IPPs to be connected to the grid and operational.

Scatec Solar was also one of 28 IPPs that signed contracts with government in the first round of a programme that would see an initial 1 400 MW of renewable energy being added to South Africa's energy mix, while bringing an estimated R47 billion in new investment into the country.

The DoE aims to bring 17 800 MW from renewable sources online by 2030.

Scatec Solar has been awarded three projects with a total capacity of 190 MW. Construction of its next two projects, located in the Northern and Eastern Cape, was to be finished by mid-2014.

The completed Kalkbult plant consists of more than 312 000 solar panels mounted on 156 km of substructure, inverters, transformers and a substation.

Kalkbult's electricity will be sold to Eskom through a 20-year purchase agreement. According to Scatec Solar, the annual production of 135-million kWh will cover the electricity demand of 33 000 households, while reducing the country's CO_2 emissions by almost 115 000 tons per year.

South Africa has some of the best conditions for solar power in the world, and the Kalkbult plant's output of 135-million kWh a year will benefit both the region and the local community, in which it operates.

The De Aar Solar Power Project installed the last of around 160 000 solar panels in September 2013. The project employed some 500 people, mostly from the De Aar community and the staff installed around 3 000 panels per day during the peak construction phase. The De Aar plant, which will produce 45,6 MW of energy, is meant to begin operations by April 2014, but it is ahead of schedule and was expected to come online before the target date.

Wind power

The Darling Wind Farm in the Western Cape has four wind turbines, which can supply 5,2 MW. All the electricity produced will be sold to Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine can produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

In November 2013, construction of the wind turbine manufacturing facility was well on its way to being completed at the Coega IDZ.

The Wind Tower Factory Project, which was more than 60% complete by the start of 2014, is a joint initiative between the DCD Group, the IDC and the Coega Development Corporation.

Construction of the facility, located in Zone 3 of the Coega IDZ, started in March 2013, and was expected to be completed before the end of February 2014. It would be a first of its kind for the Eastern Cape.

Once completed, the DCD wind tower manufacturing facility will produce complete tubular steel towers, which will entail manufacturing the round steel tower sections from flat steel, welding flanges and assembling the inner parts of the towers. The wind turbine towers will vary in size, ranging between 80 and 120 metres, with individual sections weighing 40 to 60 t. According to Coega the project has created 250 temporary jobs, with more than 90% of the workers coming from the Nelson Mandela Bay region.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

There are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka Nature Reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

The Hluleka hybrid mini-grid system consists of two proven 2,5-kW wind generators and three Shell solar PV module arrays fitted with 56 100-watt PV modules wired in series (total 10,6 kW). An integrated design approach, which resulted in a joint energy, water purification and telecommunication system, was followed. The energy system uses renewable energy, solar water heaters and LPG. One diesel generator is retained for back-up supply. The Hluleka system has been in operation since June 2002.

The Lucingweni hybrid system consists of 50-kW solar PV panels and 36-kW wind

generators serving 220 dwellings (four lights per dwelling, radio, television, mobile phone charger, street lighting, telecommunications and water pumping).

Tradable renewables

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy Policy* proposed that tradable renewable energy certificates be investigated to find out whether these could be one of the funding streams to support the implementation of the renewable energy programme in South Africa. This would be in addition to other funding options, i.e. sale of physical electrical power through a power purchase agreement into the electrical grid at prevailing electricity market prices and certified emission reductions trading through the clean development mechanism (CDM), a UN framework mechanism that encourages developing countries to implement emission-reduction projects to earn certified emission reductions.

A tradable renewable energy certificate is an electronic record that verifies the origin of energy by a registered renewable energy entity. It is also referred to as a green certificate or green tag. Tradable renewable energy certificates are based on separating the various attributes of renewable resource-based energy provision from the physical energy carrier, electric or otherwise. It is another revenue stream for renewable energy IPPs and its major advantage is that, apart from potential extra income, certificates can be traded worldwide and separately from the electricity grid infrastructure.

Nuclear

Nuclear energy is set to play a vital role in South Africa's IRP implementation process. The success and deployment of nuclear power requires public acceptance, and public education is the most important topic surrounding nuclear energy.

Proper safety measures were put in place and overseen by the appropriate expert authorities. As a member of the IAEA, South Africa is obliged to comply with the relevant guidelines and safeguards on nuclear plants.

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) and the NNR Act of 1999. The DoE administers these Acts.

The Department of Health administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to Group 3 and Group 4 hazardous substances.

Skills development strategies and acquisition and retention of the relevant skills to support the nuclear programme will be addressed in the following categories:

- construction
- plant-operation
- skills for the relevant government departments
- regulatory skills
- supporting industry skills
- decommissioning and rehabilitation
- radioactive waste management.

The Nuclear Fuel Cycle Strategy for the beneficiation of uranium resources is a key factor with special focus on:

- securing uranium mineral resources
- developing a uranium conversion plant
- developing a uranium enrichment plant
- developing a fuel fabrication plant.

Eskom is investigating the possibility of generating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This will entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The main organisations directly involved in the nuclear sector fulfil the following functions:

- The Department of Health's Directorate: Radiation Control issues licences for Group 3 hazardous substances (electronic product-generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group 4 hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation and is owned by Eskom.
- The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences brings together scientists working in the physical, medical and biological sciences. The facilities provide opportunities for modern research, advanced education, the treatment of cancers and the production of unique radioisotopes.
- The Nuclear Fuels Corporation of South Africa is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export.

Programmes and projects

The department participates in the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Wind Resource Map

The DoE launched the country's first Large Scale High Resolution (250 m) Wind Resource Map in July 2013. It is expected that the map is going to be a useful instrument in government's planning for the efficient use of the country's wind resources.

The data is based on the Verified Numerical Wind Atlas for South Africa (WASA), which was launched in March 2012. It includes important information such as ground surface terrain effects that determine the local wind climate and, in turn, can be used to identify high-yielding wind development zones; and the estimation of available wind energy and capacity which can be used by prospective wind farm developers of all sizes in their planning process.

The Wind Resource Map offers important benefits for planners, policy makers and industry. These benefits include cost and timing savings as the viability, in terms of wind speed, of a potential site can be predicted with known and traceable accuracy, while it also levels the playing field between small or large industry players to identify and develop project sites for wind farms.

It will also assist government in calculating the potential yield of wind energy resources, among other things.

The Large Scale High Resolution Wind Resource Map is available to the public from the WASA's online portal *http://wasadata.csir.co.za/wasa1/WASAData*.

The purpose of the WASA is to improve knowledge and the quality of resource assessment methods and tools, to make available this knowledge and tools free of charge for planning and development of wind farms and off-grid electrification, and to build capacity of local institutions to do wind resource measurements.

Integrated Resources Plan

At the Africa Energy Indaba in February 2013, the Minister of Energy said South Africa intended to introduce nuclear power to help lower carbon emissions.

The IRP 2010 to 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Following the Fukushima nuclear accident, South Africa, through the NNR, needed to find assurance in terms of the safety of existing installations. The safety of the Safari-1 research reactor and Koeberg nuclear power station were reassessed. In June 2013, the NNR announced that the country's nuclear installations could withstand natural events.

South Africa is a member of the IAEA and had signed up for stress tests to ascertain whether its reactors were vulnerable to natural causes like tsunamis. As a member of the agency, the country had to meet several milestones.

In February 2013, the agency ended the peer review mission to South Africa. The agency had never before visited a country with an existing nuclear programme.

In September 2013, the DoE launched the public-consultation phase for the formulation of an Integrated Energy Plan (IEP) for South Africa, which it says should be published during the course of 2014.

In July 2013, Cabinet endorsed a draft Integrated Energy Planning Report, which provides the basis for the current set of consultations.

The publication of an IEP is a requirement of the National Energy Act of 2008, but South Africa has hitherto not had a fully consulted IEP as envisaged in the legislation, despite having published an Integrated Resource Plan for electricity early in 2011.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement (REIPPP) Bidding Programme

This programme is an indication that government wants to create space for IPPs to also generate electricity in the country. By 2014, under the REIPPP the department is expected to enter Window 3 having already selected bidders for a total of 2 614 MW to be added to the country's power grid by 2016.

South Africa wants to procure 3 625 MW of renewable energy through this process.

According to the IRP 2010, about 42% of electricity generated in South Africa has to come from renewable resources.

By March 2013, the department had installed 335 000 solar water systems out of a target of one million by the end of 2014.

By May 2013, South Africa had signed agreements with preferred bidders in Window 2 of the REIPPP that would contribute to the country's energy mix and job creation.

The department signed implementation agreements and direct agreements with each bidder, while power parastatal Eskom signed power purchase agreements with the bidders. Eskom is committed to the diversification of the country's energy resources.

Of the 19 bidders, nine were selected for the solar PV technology taking up 417,1 MW, seven for wind, two for small hydro and one for concentrated solar thermal (CSP). For solar PV, 417 MW was taken up by bidders with the maximum MW allocated for round two at 450; for wind, 562,5 MW was taken up with the maximum allocation at 650 MW. For small hydro, 13,3 MW was taken up from a maximum

allocated for round two at 75 MW, while for CSP the allocated maximum 50 MW was taken up. In the second window, bidders took up 1 0439 MW. The preferred bidders in this window are located in the Eastern Cape, Free State, Northern Cape and Western Cape.

The IRP 2010 lays specific emphasis on broadening electricity supply technologies to include gas, imports, nuclear, biomass, and renewables (wind, solar and hydro) in response to the country's future electricity needs as well as the necessity to reduce its CO_2 emissions.

South Africa wants to procure 3 725 MW of renewable energy through this process. According to the IRP 2010, projection on electricity supply and demand, about 42% of electricity generated in South Africa has to come from renewable resources.

Job opportunities, local content and community development are the essential ingredients of the programme.

Localisation needs constant emphasis because in its design and implementation, the REIPPP is biased toward the economic development of the country with bidders being subjected to local content assessment.

Progress is being made with the construction of 28 Window 1 projects announced in 2011. The total financial injection in all these projects amounts to R28 billion for a net generation capacity of 1 043 MW.

Lessons learnt from Window 1 and 2 will be taken into account. The IRP envisages 17 800 MW. The first three determinations amount to 2 755 MW. Because of the size of renewable energy there will be other windows not necessarily related to this determination.

In May 2013, the department issued a request for proposals (RFP) for the third bid window of the programme. The improvements to the RFP for Window 3 were made available on the IPP website.

The REIPPP won the Green Infrastructure Project of the Year Award at the 6th Global Infrastructure Leadership Forum held in New York.

In November 2013, the DoE informed another 17 renewable-energy developers that they had been appointed as preferred bidders, following the conclusion of the third bid-submission round under the REIPPP.

In July 2013, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation attended the International Conference on Nuclear Security in Vienna, Austria. Organised by the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA), the summit adopted a declaration emphasising that while the responsibility for nuclear security rests entirely with individual member states, the IAEA plays a central role in strengthening the nuclear security framework globally and in leading coordination of international activities in nuclear security.

Integrated National Electrification Programme (Inep)

Between 1994 and 2013/14, just under 5,7 million households had been electrified under the programme, while in the period from 2002 to 2013/14, some 68 115 households in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo had been supplied with non-grid technology (solar panels and renewable energy). A total of 181 004 connections had been made during 2013/14, which was just ahead of Inep's target of 180 000. This could be attributed to improved efficiencies as a result of being more involved in the operational activities of implementers and good cooperation from Eskom and municipalities.

There were still 3,3 million households without electricity, with 75% of these in the Eskom supply area, and 25% in municipal supply areas.

The total number of planned connections for 2013/14 was 276 703. The department received an increase of R400 million in its funding allocation, which accounted for the higher number of connections projected. The total allocation for 2013/14 was R3 547 billion.

The socio-economic impact of the electrification programme was significant in the area of job creation, where one permanent job was created for every R800 000 to R1 million spent. There had also been training, with 700 interns having been trained at Inep and at local government level. There had been community upliftment, poverty alleviation and access to basic services.

New Build Programme

Eskom's New Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. As part of the programme, Eskom has spent R20,5 billion on recommissioning three power stations that have been out of service for over 20 years: Camden, Komati and Grootvlei, all in Mpumalanga. Together, the stations can produce an estimated 3 800 MW, which equals that of a new power station.

The cost of recommissioning the retired stations is estimated at almost R100 billion less than the cost of constructing a new station, with the electricity available sooner. Camden was reopened in 2010, with work progressing on Komati and Grootvlei. All three were operational by 2013.

Two new coal power stations are under construction – the 4 800-MW Medupi Power Station near Lephalale in Limpopo and Kusile in

Mpumalanga, which is also expected to have an output of 4 800 MW.

Medupi is scheduled for full commercial operation by 2015 and Kusile by 2018, although individual units will be brought online earlier as they are completed.

Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy.

To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The five phases of the roadmap and their status are as follows:

- A preliminary investigation was undertaken by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research for the then Department of Minerals and Energy to ascertain whether South Africa had potential capturable CO_2 sources and storage sites. The results of that investigation, released in 2004, showed that South Africa had capturable emissions and potential storage sites. Preliminary investigation identified that the synfuel industry in South Africa produced 30 Mt per year of 95% concentration CO_2.
- The Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas, launched in August 2010, will locate and characterise potential storage sites at a theoretical level and on a geological basin extent. The atlas will then be taken into the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage's programme of work and developed to locate a storage site suitable for a test injection. Pre-atlas knowledge had identified four possible CO_2 geological storage basins:
  - Orange Basin (offshore of the west coast)
  - Outeniqua Basin (offshore of the southern coastline and site of the only producing gas/petroleum wells in South Africa)
  - Durban/Zululand Basin (east coast)
  - Karoo On-Shore Basin (near the main coal fields and most coal-based electricity generation and synfuel production).

The first three are conventional types of storage that is depleted oil/gas wells and deep saline formations.

The fourth, the Karoo Basin, has sandstone formations that are subject to low permeability and also to dolerite intrusions.

Consequently, further investigation is required as to how CO_2 could be stored in these less favourable formations.

The Karoo Basin is the closest to the current major sources of CO_2 emissions.

- The CO_2 Test Injection Experiment of safely injecting CO_2 into South African reservoirs is essential to understanding the suitability of the local geology as a storage medium. It is also necessary to ascertain the dispersion and transformation reactions of CO_2 in the storage medium and its effects on the surroundings of the storage medium. This experiment will be informed by similar injection activities underway internationally.
- A demonstration plant will test an integrated operating system under local conditions and form an essential link between feasibility trials and a full-scale commercial plant. This phase will demonstrate the safe injection of CO_2 into South African geological formations. The magnitude of the demonstration plant is in the order of hundreds of thousands of tons of CO_2 per year.
- If positive outcomes of the demonstration plant ensue, a full-scale commercial plant is envisaged. This phase will depend on the outputs of the previous phases.

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low-income houses. In this manner it facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youth, women and people with disabilities. It thereby creating sustainable livelihoods. It is an integral part of the Expanded Public Works Programme.

The programme was conceived in 2008/09 and transferred by the DoE to Saneri.

The major focus area is the provision of sustainable energy solutions (supply side) with special emphasis on the youth, women and people with disabilities in rural areas and low-income urban communities in terms of:

- labour-intensive options, targeting short-term employment opportunities
- sustainable employment opportunities, and enhancing stimulated local economic activity
- community development initiatives and cross-cutting human capital development.

Designated National Authority (DNA) for Clean Development Mechanism

The DoE is mandated to regulate and promote the implementation of a CDM in South Africa.

This is done to make sure that South Africa complies with its obligations under the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

As custodian of the CDM, the DNA is responsible for ensuring that CDM investments are in line with sustainable development objectives and that South Africa benefits from the CDM.

By November 2013, 347 CDM projects had been submitted to the DNA – 209 Project Idea Notes (PINs) and 138 Project Design Documents (PDDs). Out of 138 PDDs, 80 were registered (27 PoAs) by the CDM Executive Board as CDM projects (12 issued with CERs), and 58 were at different stages of the project cycle – DNA approval, validation stage and/or request for review. The projects submitted to the DNA for initial review and approval cover the following types: biofuels; energy efficiency; waste management; cogeneration; fuel switching and hydropower, and cover sectors like manufacturing, mining, agriculture, energy, waste management, housing, transport and residential.

At its 73rd meeting in May 2013, the CDM Executive Board adopted the SAPP Grid Emission Factor as a standardised baseline for the SAPP. This implies that all the member countries listed in the report will from now on use only one value as the emission factor as outlined in the report.

As part of addressing some of the identified challenges to CDM Development in South Africa, the DNA hosted a waste-to-energy workshop in July 2013. The aim of the workshop was to discuss and provide capacity-building to municipalities with respect to the interpretation of the Municipal Finance Management Act and any other related legislature that ought to be taken into account when implementing waste-to-energy projects from inception to implementation including monitoring and evaluation.

Liquid Fuels Roadmap

As a result of identified constraints throughout the liquid-fuels supply chain, the DoE embarked on a process to develop a liquid-fuels infrastructure roadmap. A key objective of this roadmap is to ensure that South Africa has access to reliable, affordable, clean, sufficient and sustainable sources of energy to meet the country's liquid fuel demand.

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan will form the basis for the implementation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission Strategic Implementation Project regarding refinery upgrades and development, and will make recommendations on the future of the refinery infrastructure in the country.

As a further response to the global situation and domestic development imperatives, the department decided to strengthen the Strategic Fuels Fund (SFF), a subsidiary of the CEF. The DoE will position the SFF to improve the country's strategic petroleum reserves and enable the country to better respond to catastrophic global events that impact on the petroleum trade.

Renewable energy programmes from Eskom

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term strategic energy plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Sere Wind Farm

Eskom has awarded technology group Siemens the contract to supply 46 wind turbines to its 100 MW Sere wind farm project being developed on a 3 700-ha site near Vredendal in the Western Cape. The R2,4-billion renewable-energy project was scheduled to begin feeding electricity into the grid by the first half of 2014.

The turbine contract comprises about 65% of the project's total capital expenditure, with the other main contract being for the supply, installation and commissioning of a 132-kV transmission line and a substation close to the project site.

Sere is receiving some of its funding from the World Bank's US$3,75-billion Eskom Investment Support Project, approved in 2010 primarily to support the Medupi coal-fired power station. Additional funding was secured from the African Development Bank (AfDB), the French development agency, Agence Française de Développement (AFD), and the Clean Technology Fund.

In total, the World Bank component comprises 32,4% of the overall funding plan for Sere, situated about 300 km north of Cape Town. The AFD component, meanwhile, is 36,7%, while the

AfDB component comprises 26,8%. Eskom is carrying the development costs.

Each turbine has a height of 115 m, a rotor diameter of 108 m and a power output of 2,3 MW.

The turbine order was the second for Siemens in South Africa, with the first having been awarded by the developers of the 138-MW Jeffreys Bay wind farm.

The Eastern Cape wind project secured a power purchase agreement following the first bidding round under South Africa's Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme.

Mainstream Renewable Power, Globeleq, Thebe Investments, Enzani and Usizo constructed the project.

Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme near Van Reenen in KwaZulu-Natal, consists of an upper and a lower dam; both with the capacity to hold about 22 million cubic metres of water capacity.

The dams, 4,6 km apart, are connected by underground waterways, through an underground powerhouse accommodating 4 x 333-MW pump turbines.

During times of peak energy consumption, water will be released from the upper dam through the pump turbines to the lower dam to generate electricity.

During times of low-energy demand the pump turbines are used to pump the water from the lower dam back up to the upper dam. The project came on line during 2013/14.

Underground coal gassification

Eskom also has an underground coal gassification project in the pilot stage, with a test plant next to Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The gas produced is co-fired with coal in Majuba's Unit Four, and contributes 3 MW to the station's output.

The process entails using coal seams that cannot be mined for various reasons – they may be too deep, fractured, or of poor quality – and turns the coal into clean gas on site. With the region's substantial coal reserves, there is potential in this source of power. Eskom has developed a 10-year transmission development plan which includes renewable energy integration.

Concentrated solar power

A solar park is a concentrated zone of solar plants that are built in clusters, sharing common transmission and infrastructure. Together, these clusters generate thousands of megawatts of electricity. The types of technology used are solar PV and concentrated PV, which operate with semiconductors and solar panels, as well as concentrated solar power, which uses mirrors to reflect the sun's rays.

PV systems make a direct conversion into electricity, and are ideal to use at peak load times. However, there is no cost-effective way to store this power.

Concentrated solar power, on the other hand, captures the sun as heat and turns it into steam to power turbines, which in turn generate electricity – much like coal-fired plants. Its advantage is that it is cheap and efficient to store heat, so power can be supplied around the clock.

International cooperation

In March 2013, Denmark committed to help South Africa meet its future goals of having a low-carbon economy and reducing the growth of GHGs by deploying low-carbon technologies.

An agreement signed between the two governments will see Denmark providing financial support to South Africa to invest in wind-based electricity generations while the Danish will also give technical support to Eskom to integrate renewable energy into the electricity supply.

Danish International Development Assistance will make available an interim grant of DKK40 million to South Africa. Some of the money will be used to further develop the WASA for the country to pursue and invest in wind-based electricity as opposed to power obtained from fossil fuels.

In October 2012, the government of Denmark launched a new strategy for South Africa aimed at improving relations between the two countries.

In October 2013, Eskom and Agence Française de Développement (AFD) signed a R1,3 billion loan agreement.

The loan will go towards funding the 50-MW CSP plant near Upington, Northern Cape.

The CSP project is expected to deliver an annual energy production of 525 GWh and will be sufficient to power 200 000 homes.

CSP comprises technologies that concentrate the sun's energy through large mirrors and utilise that concentrated thermal energy to produce steam to drive a conventional steam turbine for electricity generation. The technologies are similar to conventional power plants in that steam is used to power a turbine and generator, but the fossil fuel combustion is replaced with free, non-polluting solar energy.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga

rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of CO_2 per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The Minister of Energy addressed the sixth Annual Bloomberg New Energy Finance (BNEF) 2013 Summit held in New York City as part of a working visit to the United States, in April 2013. The summit is a leading discussion forum for decision-makers in the clean energy sector. The BNEF is an invitation-only forum providing a platform for engagement at the intersection of energy markets, industry, finance and policy.

The DoE is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is therefore, a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DoE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The Grand I MoU signed with the DRC is an important milestone in working towards sustainable African partnerships aimed at developing strategies for low-carbon economies and interconnected energy systems.

The Tete-Maputo Power Transmission Line, also known as the Centre-South Project (Cesul), in Mozambique, will improve the ability to evacuate power from the projects in the northern Mozambique complex, particularly releasing the hydropower potential relating to Mpanda Nkuwa and Cahora Bassa.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy; and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DoE has signed a Declaration of Intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. This agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the department participates in structures such as the:

- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia.

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to State control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland.

At bilateral level, the DoE signed seven agreements/declarations of intent with Denmark, the DRC, Ghana, the International Energy Agency, Korea, Lesotho and the Swiss Confederation. These agreements cover access to capacity-building, funding, technology, exchange of information and the development of energy infrastructure on the continent, with the objective of increasing generation capacity.

Environment

The South African Government remains committed to find solutions to the problem of global warming, as its effects will be felt particularly by the developing countries.

South Africa participated in the World-Wide Fund Living Plan Conference, which took place in Johannesburg in November 2013.

Government's focus on the green economy was the basis for a lot of policy positioning in the country's economic cluster.

Although it has a land surface area of only 1,2 million km^2 representing just 2% of the Earth's total land surface, South Africa contains almost 10% of the world's total known bird, fish and plant species, and more than 6% of the world's mammal and reptile species.

Government is committed to protecting the country's rich biodiversity heritage for the benefit of all, and creating a prosperous and equitable society that lives in harmony with its natural resources.

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is mandated to formulate, coordinate and monitor the implementation of national environmental policies, programmes and legislation. Strategies are, therefore, in place to:

- protect, conserve and enhance the environment, and natural and heritage assets and resources
- plan, manage and prevent pollution and environmental degradation to ensure a sustainable and healthy environment
- provide leadership on climate-change adaptation and mitigation
- contribute to sustainable development, livelihood, and green and inclusive economic growth by facilitating skills development and job creation
- contribute to a better Africa and a better world by advancing national environmental interests through a global sustainable development agenda.

Budget and funding

For the 2013/14 to 2015/16 period, R75 million was allocated to South African National Parks (SANParks) for the purpose of combating rhino poaching.

During 2013/14, the environmental protection and infrastructure programmes received R817 million.

The department accessed R2,39 billion from the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) for its environmental programmes in 2013, which boosted government's job-creation objective and secure vital environmental benefits from the work to be done.

During 2013/14, the department spent over R1,13 billion on the Working for Water and

associated programmes, while Working on Fire received R406 million, and the Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programmes received R817 million.

The biggest budget allocations went towards the Eastern Cape and SANParks projects and the SANParks budget included funding for the Eco-Furniture Factories.

Legislation and policies

The framework within which the department fulfils its mandate is guided by a number of policies and legislation.

- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 46 of 2003); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004); the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 44 of 2008); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008), and the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 14 of 2009) establish the concepts of participatory, cooperative and developmental governance in environmental management, as well as principles for environmental management and provides for structures to facilitate these.
- The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), reformed South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity. It sets out the mechanisms for managing and conserving South Africa's biodiversity and its components; protecting species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting, including indigenous biological resources; and the establishment of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003) provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas, the establishment of a national register of protected areas, as well as the proclamation and management of these areas.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009) provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to SANParks.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004) provides for a national system of protected areas in South Africa as part of a strategy to manage and conserve the country's biodiversity.
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004) reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development.
- The National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008) establishes a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the country, ensuring socially and environmentally responsible development and use.
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment.
- The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999) provides for the cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of, and related activities in a world heritage site.
- South African Weather Service (SAWS) Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).
- Sea Shores Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935).
- Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act, 1973 (Act 46 of 1973).
- Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980).
- Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988).
- Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996).
- Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
- Prince Edward Islands Act, 1948 (Act 48 of 1948).

Other policy frameworks include:

- The *White Paper on National Climate Change Response, 2011.*
- The *White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000.*
- The *White Paper on Environmental Management, 1998.*
- The *White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity, 1997.*
- The *White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa, 2000.*

During 2013, the following legislation was amended or pending promulgation:

- Draft regulations on the format of the atmospheric impact report.
- Draft notice on the amendment of the national list of activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions or cultural heritage published for public comment.
- Draft notice on the declaration of small boilers as controlled emitters published for public comment.

- Draft national dust control regulations published for public comment.
- Under section 62 of the NEMBA of 2004, the summary of the non-detriment findings made by the Scientific Authority published for public comment.
- The Biodiversity Management Plan for *Pelargonium sidoides*.
- Under section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the Regulations related to listed Threatened or Protected Species were published for public comment.
- The National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 14 of 2013).
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 20 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 21 of 2014).
- In terms of section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the Draft Regulations for the Registration of Professional Hunters, Hunting Outfitters and Trainers were published for public participation.
- The Waste Classification and Management Regulations and the Norms and Standards for the Assessment of Waste for Landfill and the Norms and Standards for the Disposal of Waste to Landfill were published.

National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

In 2008, Cabinet approved the NFSD, which signalled a new line of thinking to promote the effective stewardship of South Africa's natural, social and economic resources. Cabinet approved the National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan (NSSD 1, 2011 – 2014) in November 2011, with an implementation time frame of 2011 to 2014.

The NSSD 1 builds on the 2008 NFSD, as well as several initiatives that address issues of sustainability in South Africa, and marks the continuation of a national partnership for sustainable development. The 1992 Rio Earth Summit, followed by the 2002 Johannesburg World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD), provided a platform to learn and begin to implement sustainability practices.

The WeedBuster campaign is linked to the invasive plant control initiatives and is part of the Department of Environmental Affairs' Working for Water Programme, which is the largest public-funded initiative aimed at managing invasive alien plants in the world. The programme seeks to control the problem of invasive alien species, and create work opportunities for previously unemployed people.

Rhino Issue Management Report (RIM)

In July 2013, the DEA released the RIM Report, which emanated from the national consultation process to facilitate a common understanding of the key issues related to the protection and conservation of South Africa's rhino population.

The final report submitted to the Minister and DEA in January 2013 assisted the department in reviewing and updating its rhino response strategy outlined in the National Strategy for the Safety and Security of the Rhinoceros Population of South Africa.

The RIM report incorporates opinions on sustainable rhino conservation by acknowledged rhino specialists, ecologists and a range of other experts. It encapsulates viewpoints from non-government organisations both specialised and community-based, civil society, traders, professional hunters, resource economists and ordinary citizens with a deep concern for the ethical and humane treatment of animals. The report focuses on three areas:

- conservation of the rhino
- safety and security of rhino
- commerce and trade.

Mining and Biodiversity Guideline

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector, launched in May 2013, is a product of the collaboration between the South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum, the DEA and the Department of Mineral Resources. The guideline seeks to find a balance between economic growth and environmental sustainability and is a key outcome of the Outcome 10 Delivery Agreement.

The *Life: State of Biodiversity Report* is symbolic of the culmination of 100 years of science in assessing biological resources and highlighting the status of water resources in the country.

The launch of the report in May 2013, in Kirstenbosch, Cape Town, coincided with the United Nations' (UN) International Day for Biological Diversity (IDB) aimed at creating awareness of the importance of biodiversity. The theme for the 2013 celebration of IDB was "Water and Biodiversity – Water is essential for life." The key points in the report are:

- Dynamite in a small package: wetlands, which make up only a little over 2% of the country's footprint, perform irreplaceable functions, such as purifying water and slowing down flood waters. Many wetlands have already been lost; of those which remain, nearly half are endangered.
- Protect water factories: areas with high natural runoff, such as the Drakensberg, the

Soutpansberg and the Wolkberg in Limpopo gather and channel the water, which the semi-arid country depends on. Only about a fifth of these areas are formally protected.

- Treasure the small tributaries: all those smaller rivers, which feed into the country's main, arteries such as the Orange and the Vaal rivers, are needed to keep water supplies in good health.
- Paving over the coast: nearly a fifth of the coastline has some form of development within 100 m of the shoreline, which means nature's buffers against storm surges and rising seas may have been stripped away and paved over in parts. This puts people and property at risk in the face of climate change. Coastal and inshore ecosystems are more threatened than offshore marine ecosystems.
- Lost at sea: further out to sea, offshore ecosystems are the most poorly protected of all South Africa's ecosystems. Yet, these are the lifeblood for healthy and productive fisheries. Marine protected areas (MPAs) are essential for keeping both the ecosystems and the fisheries safe.
- Hand-in-hand – State meets the private sector: biodiversity stewardship programmes, where private landowners enter into an agreement with State conservation bodies to protect a section of their land and biodiversity, are making headway, in terms of national protected area targets. This is more affordable than when the State buys land for conservation purposes. With modest increases in resources, this scheme could make an even larger contribution.
- Warning signs: some parts of the country have lost more natural habitat than others. If Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and North West keep losing natural landscapes to cultivation, mining and urban expansion at the current rate, these provinces will have almost no natural habitat left outside protected areas by 2050. Where natural vegetation is being converted to other land uses at a high rate, it's important to use maps of biodiversity-priority areas to guide decisions about where best to locate development.
- Planning for an uncertain climate: with an uncertain and extreme climate in the future natural habitats should be kept healthy so they can support functional, stable landscapes in the long term, which can then better support human activities. Scientists have drawn up a new national map, which identifies areas that are important for climate change resilience and need to be kept intact.
- Protecting natural medicines: South Africa has over 2 000 plant species that are used for medicinal purposes, about a third of which are traded commercially; some are threatened.
- A bridgehead against invasion: invasive alien plants increased their footprint in South Africa in about a decade. The country loses about R6,5 billion worth of ecosystem services to them each year.
- Having the right tools for the job: scientists have made great strides in mapping and classifying South Africa's ecosystems. This has provided the foundation for meaningful assessment, planning and monitoring of ecosystems. For example, the first maps by which to identify marine and coastal habitat types and wetland ecosystem types have been completed.

Projects, programmes and initiatives

South Africa's Green Economy Modelling Report

Focusing on four of the nine focus areas of a green economy (natural resource management, agriculture, transport and energy), the report explores the question of whether equal or higher growth could be attained with a more sustainable, equitable and resilient economy.

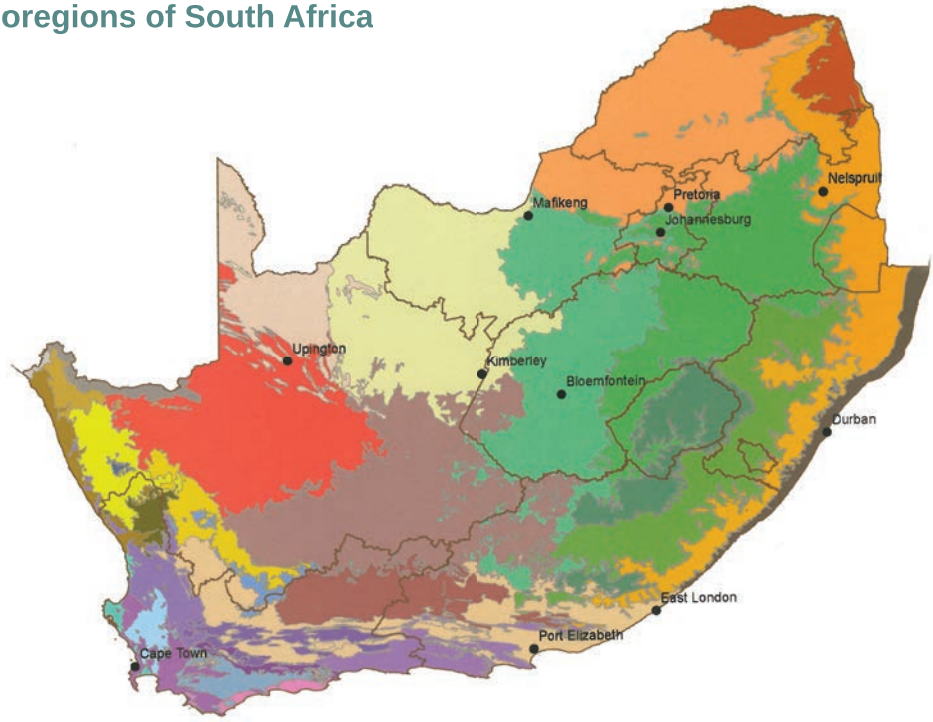
As a developing country, South Africa is an emerging market with an abundant supply of natural resources, ranking as the third most mega-diverse country in the world. As such, there is a need to balance economic and other development goals with those of environmental preservation.

This was the aim of the first national green economy summit that was held in May 2010, which necessitated the development of the *Green Economy Modelling Report* launched in 2013. In partnership with the UN Environment Programme (Unep) and with support from the UN Development Programme (UNDP), the Department of Environmental Affairs embarked on developing a green economy model for South Africa. The report process was initiated at the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) COP17 in December 2011, and is based on the same model underpinning the *2011 Unep Green Economy Report*.

South African Carbon Disclosure Project (CDP)

According to the *CDP Report* of November 2013, leading South African corporates performed well ahead of the global norm in reporting their carbon emissions, with 83 of the companies making up the JSE 100 participating in the seventh edition of the CDP – the second-highest response rate after Europe, where 90% of companies responded.

Bioregions of South Africa



- Northwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southern Fynbos Bioregion
- South Coast Fynbos Bioregion
- Western Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- Eastern Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- West Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- East Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- Karoo Renosterveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Cape Shrublands Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- West Strandveld Bioregion
- Richtersveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Hardeveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Sandveld Bioregion
- Knersvlakte Bioregion
- Trans-Escarpment Succulent Karoo Bioregion
- Rainshadow Valley Karoo Bioregion
- Southern Namib Desert Bioregion
- Gariep Desert Bioregion
- Bushmanland Bioregion
- Upper Karoo Bioregion
- Lower Karoo Bioregion
- Drakensberg Grassland Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- Mesic Highveld Grassveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Grassland Bioregion
- Central Bushveld Bioregion
- Mopane Bioregion
- Lowveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Savanna Bioregion
- Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Bioregion
- Kalahari Dunneveld Bioregion
- Albany Thicket
- Indian Ocean Coastal Belt

Source: *Vision Endangered Wildlife Trust Seventeenth Annual*

Fears are increasing over future climate change impacts with more extreme weather events.

There is also growing corporate awareness of the need to assess physical risks posed by climate change and to build resilience.

For investors, the risk of stranded assets has been brought to the fore by the work of Carbon Tracker. They calculate around 80% of coal, oil and gas reserves are unburnable, if governments are to meet global commitments to keep the temperature rise below 2°C. This has serious implications for institutional investors' portfolios and valuations of companies with fossil fuel reserves. The performance is higher than the 81% of the Global 500 sample and well ahead of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa (BRICS)-bloc counterparts, with 56% of the Brazil 80, 19% of the China 100, 27% of the India 200 and 18% of the Russia 50 responding.

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute

In support of the National Development Plan (NDP), government was working through Sanbi to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This body of knowledge will empower the department to make informed development-related decisions.

Important dates on the world's environmental calendar

2 February	World Wetlands Day
20 March	Earth Day
22 March	World Water Day
23 March	World Meteorological Day
27 March	Earth Hour
22 April	Earth Day
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity
5 June	World Environment Day
8 June	World Oceans Day
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification
5 – 11 September	World Water Week
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day
22 September	World Car-Free Day
5 October	World Habitat Day
11 December	International Mountain Day

In June 2013, South Africa launched a R300-million training, mentoring and workplace-based learning project aimed at building a pool of young, capable professionals for the country's biodiversity and natural resource management sector.

The Groen Sebenza Project aims to develop skills while bridging the gap between education and job opportunities in South Africa's green economy. Spearheaded by Sanbi, the innovative project will see 800 unemployed graduates and matriculants being placed in skilled biodiversity jobs in both the public and private sector for a period of two-and-a-half years.

The practical workplace experience and training will, it is hoped, kick-start their careers in a fast-growing industry. The project is sponsored by the Government's Jobs Fund, which is administered by the Development Bank of Southern Africa.

Sanbi is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of southern Africa and beyond. Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. Sanbi is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions, such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo, are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

Sanbi is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Sanbi is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UNFCCC to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority

The Lake St Lucia System is the most important estuary and a key nursery for fish on the

southeast African coast. For six decades St Lucia received too little fresh water, due to human interventions and drought, leaving this flagship estuary in poor condition and closed to the sea for much of the past 10 years. Work has begun on restoring St Lucia back to health, a top priority for the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, but it is challenging and will take time. Significantly, in July 2012 the lake received enough fresh water to open to the sea again.

As an area of exceptional and outstanding universal heritage significance, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park was named South Africa's first World Heritage site in December 1999.

The park has received recognition under three of four natural criteria recognised by the World Heritage Convention: it has outstanding examples of ecological processes, superlative natural phenomena and scenic beauty, and exceptional biodiversity and threatened species.

iSimangaliso is located in one of South Africa's poorest rural areas and has been largely under claim. All but three of the land claims settlements have been concluded and a series of co-management agreements have been signed with land claimants. The management of such a diverse asset in an area of extreme poverty and high expectations requires an adaptive and inclusive approach.

South African Weather Service (SAWS)

The SAWS provides useful and innovative weather, climate and related products and services by:

- enhancing observational data and communications networks
- developing and managing talent within the sector
- enhancing collaborative partnerships and disseminating weather services products to their users
- using cutting edge technology to convert data into meaningful products and services for risk mitigation
- advancing the science of meteorology, research and relevant applications
- enhancing fiscal discipline and resource mobilisation to ensure sustainability.

Important dates on South Africa's environmental calendar

19 – 25 March	National Water Week
3 – 9 May	National Bird Week
1 – 7 September	National Arbor Week
4 – 8 October	WeedBuster Week
11 – 15 October	National Marine Week

In its continued efforts to carry out its legal mandate, the work of SAWS is guided by four key strategic goals:

- ensuring the continued relevance of the organisation in delivering meteorological - related products and services in compliance with all applicable regulatory frameworks
- ensuring effective management of stakeholder, partner and key client relations
- addressing the short-term viability and long-term sustainability of the entity's revenue and ensuring continued fiscal discipline
- ensuring the availability of strategy-driven human capital capacity for the performance of the SAWS.

Environmental resources

National botanical gardens

Sanbi manages the nine national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in five of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation. The gardens, which collectively attract over a million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosh, Cape Town
- Pretoria
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity, to which South Africa is a signatory, required that 10% of terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010.

There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

By mid-2013, South Africa had 528 protected areas, of which 20 were marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the country's land area.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The department works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources.

Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

South African National Parks

SANParks' primary mandate is to oversee the conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage assets through a system of national parks. Its mandate is based on the following core values:

- conservation management through the national parks system
- constituency building and people-focused eco-tourism management
- corporate governance and sound business and operational management.

SANParks manages a system of parks, which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country. The work of SANParks focuses on building strategic partnerships at international, national and local levels, in support of the conservation of the natural and cultural heritage of South Africa. It has to ensure that South Africans participate and get involved in biodiversity initiatives, and that all its operations have a synergistic existence with neighbouring communities for their educational and socio-economic benefit.

In 2013, the Mokala National Park in the Northern Cape extended its borders as part of its expansion plan, which makes the park more economically and socially sustainable. According to SANParks, the park is now 2 7571 ha in size after the fence-cutting ceremony incorporating the neighbouring Kameeldoorns property to realise the expansion.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for 3 751 113 ha of protected land in 20 national parks. SANParks, supported by the Government through the departments of environmental affairs and of tourism, has increased the area of land under its protection by 360 000 ha over the past 20 years. Since 2000, SANParks has added 558 897 ha to its national parks.

One week during September every year, all South Africans with a valid identity document are able to spend a day at a national park of their choice throughout the country free of charge. National Parks Week recognises the success of the country's parks and the critical role they play as catalysts for local economic development and job creation. The week was also aimed at cultivating a culture of pride in all South Africans in their relationship with the country's natural, cultural and historical heritage.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

The seven TFCAs are the:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

In September 2013, SANParks handed over a science laboratory to the learners and community in Galeshewe in the Northern Cape as part of SANParks' corporate social investment programme initiated to support community development educational infrastructure and enterprise development, among other things.

SANParks is committed to a five-year partnership with the Northern Cape Education Department to provide mobile library services to schools in the province. The first mobile bus and learning materials were expected to be handed over in February 2014.

SANParks has similar initiatives in Mbaula village in Limpopo and in Mpumalanga and is planning initiatives in the Eastern Cape and in other parts of the country.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management (IEM) are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by Unesco in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

By December 2013, more than 850 young environmental monitors have been appointed to work in protected areas across the country.

World heritage sites

A Unesco World Heritage Site such as a forest, mountain, lake, desert, monument, building, complex or city is listed by Unesco as being of special cultural or physical significance. It catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity. While each World Heritage Site remains part of the legal territory of the State wherein the site is located, Unesco considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco:

- Robben Island: situated 11 km offshore from Cape Town, the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed as South Africa's first World Heritage Site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means miracle and wonder. The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- The Cradle of Humankind consisting of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, *Australopithecus sediba*, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.
- The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 km²). The park spans parts of both South Africa, in KwaZulu-Natal, and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: in September 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Nema, 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region, the smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year.
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape: The site covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or *Iharu oms*.
- Vredefort Dome, about 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure, or astrobleme. Dating back 2,023 million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to an the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private

On 15 November 2011, Hong Kong customs officials seized a container of 33 rhino horns, 758 ivory chopsticks and 127 ivory bracelets, which were shipped from Cape Town harbour. An investigation was launched by the Endangered Species Section of the Hawks and the docket presented to the National Prosecuting Authority.

Since South Africa and China are parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species, the Director of Public Prosecutions applied to the Hong Kong Special Administration Region of the People's Republic of China for mutual legal assistance. The entire consignment was returned to South Africa in November 2013.

reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

By 2013, about 115 000 wetlands, covering over four million hectares, comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area, had been mapped in South Africa. They are part of the natural infrastructure for gathering, managing and delivering water for human use.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

The DEA is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in the rehabilitation of wetlands. The damage done to wetlands can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

Government has pledged more than R75 million to rehabilitating wetlands. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention to poverty-stricken areas being of major concern.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach,

In August 2013, the South African Weather Service in collaboration with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the World Meteorological Organisation (WMO) held a four-day workshop on the national implementation of the WMO's Global Framework for Climate Change Services (GFCS). The workshop explored the maturity of activities within the GFCS' five components, namely the user interface; the climate services information system; observations and monitoring; research, modelling and applications; and capacity development. More than 150 climate scientists, sectorial experts and decision makers in climate change-related fields analysed the implications of the GFCS for South Africa.

Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

In April 2013, World Wildlife Fund (WWF) South Africa presented the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs with a Gift to the Earth Award. The Minister received this accolade on behalf of the South African Government, following the recent formal gazetting of the declaration of the Prince Edward Islands MPA – South Africa's first offshore MPA.

The Prince Edward Islands form an important global biodiversity hotspot, which was subject to rampant poaching during the late 1990s. Protection of this island group significantly contributes to the conservation of global biodiversity and the fragile southern oceans, in particular.

The islands are home to albatrosses, penguins, killer whales and Patagonian toothfish stocks. Unfortunately, this wildlife has been threatened by illegal and unsustainable fishing practices in the past, resulting in significant economic and ecological losses.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa, and has over 8 000 individual animal specimens representing over 500 species.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into the provinces of Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The 85-ha zoo in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:
- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) is a major partner.

Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second oldest zoo after the Pretoria NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, which are extinct in the wild, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhino, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

World Oceans Day is observed internationally on 8 June. The 2013 theme was Oceans and People. This special day is an opportunity to celebrate the world's shared oceans and to raise awareness about the crucial role the ocean plays in people's lives. The observance of World Oceans Day in South Africa provides the department with an opportunity to highlight the considerable challenges of dealing with marine pollution, maintaining the oceans' capacity to regulate the global climate, supply essential ecosystem services and provide sustainable livelihoods and safe recreation. The annual SA Agulhas II Open Day offers the public a unique opportunity to learn more about the SA Agulhas II ship, its operations and the department's research in the oceans and coastal environment.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria, is best known for its captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures.

The centre is also known for its wild-dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

In September 2013, South Africa celebrated World Maritime Day under the theme Sustainable Development: International Maritime Organisation's contribution beyond Rio+20. South Africa declared 2013 as Maritime Year.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London aquarium was 82 years old in 2013, making it South Africa's oldest aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in

Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources

Private sector involvement

In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- EWT
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Conservation Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

Rhino poaching

South Africa protects about 93% of the remaining white rhino population in Africa and nearly 83% of the continent's combined population of black and white rhinos.

In an effort to fight the escalation in rhino poaching, the National Biodiversity Investigators' Forum was established to improve multi- departmental cooperation and information sharing with law enforcement institutions.

The department is also reviewing the National Strategy for the Safety and Security of Rhinoceros Populations in South Africa - adopted in 2010, to ensure it meets the requirements of those working in the field to ensure their efforts to curb the scourge of rhino poaching are coordinated, effective and efficient.

The establishment of a National Rhino Fund will result in the consolidation of all funding requirements and ensure that all monies raised are distributed successfully to State and privately-owned rhino anti-poaching initiatives. These include those involved in conservation, safety and security, skills development and research.

Government increased its funding to the Save the Rhino Fund. In addition, the interim National Wildlife Reaction Unit was established as a permanent unit. The South African National Defence Force is monitoring the 350-km national border in the Kruger National Park, as well as other borders with neighbouring countries. During 2013, an additional 150 rangers joined the 500 already deployed to the Kruger National Park to address this crime.

Over the past two years more than 60% of the rhino killings have occurred in the Kruger National Park.

The department also deployed conservation specialists at key designated ports of entry and exit through which the international trade in endangered species is exported and imported.

The department embarked on an in-depth amended and further review of several pieces of legislation to incorporate various aspects to tighten issues of control and coordination, and to enhance enforcement efforts.

At the 16th COP of the Convention on the International Trade of Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Cites) in Thailand in March 2013, South Africa successfully offered to host the 17th Cites COP in 2016. In the same light, the department intensified the collaborative law enforcement effort to combat the increasing scourge of rhino poaching as well as international cooperation with recipient and transit countries such as Vietnam, Thailand and China. Government signed MoUs with Vietnam and China and aimed to sign similar agreements other Asian countries and Mozambique. These MoUs allow government to collaborate on joint policing/security measures, strengthening laws, joint technology innovation and use, awareness campaigns and prosecutions to justice programmes.

Government elevated the rhino-poaching challenge to the National Joint Security Committee where a National Joint Operational Instruction Strategy has been forwarded to all security structures for immediate implementation. Furthermore, R75 million was allocated to SANParks for the purpose of combating ongoing poaching from 2013/14 to 2015/16.

In March 2013, South Africa was part of 178 countries gathering in Bangkok to decide how to improve the world's wildlife trade regime, and ensure the survival of threatened species. More than 2 000 delegates attended the 16th Conference of Parties of the Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora in Thailand's capital. The tabled proposals at the conference included up-listing the rhino due to poaching, from which several countries have suffered, including South Africa.

According to the Professional Hunters Association of South Africa, the value of rhinos lost to poaching in South Africa has now been set at over a R1 billion over the past five years. The association says that as a result of rhino poaching, 400 ha of game ranching land have been lost to wildlife conservation. A total of 1 004 rhino were poached in South Africa in 2013. In 2012, a total 668 rhino were poached, while 448 were killed in 2011. Since 2008, there have been 2 778 rhino poached in South Africa.

The Kruger National Park bore the brunt of rhino poaching in 2013 with the park losing a total 606 of the iconic animals to poachers.

A total of 114 rhino were poached in Limpopo, 92 in Mpumalanga, 87 in North West and 85 in KwaZulu-Natal.

The number of rhino poachers arrested during 2013 increased considerably with 343 being arrested, 133 of them in the Kruger National Park. In 2012, 267 alleged poachers were arrested. Since the beginning of 2014, six alleged poachers have been arrested.

In November 2013, a Gazelle helicopter was donated to the Kruger National Park to boost the battle against poaching. It would be based in Phalaborwa and be used in SANParks' anti-poaching operations in the north of the park.

Nearly 1 500 rhinos have been killed for their horns in the Kruger National Park in the past five years.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the Department of Environmental Affairs will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

In 2013, a sanctuary to rehabilitate orphaned rhino calves was opened at the Thula Thula private game reserve in KwaZulu-Natal.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental-protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) coastal states.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that their movements can be monitored.

Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa and Tanzania have signed a MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade
- Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants
- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer
- Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes

- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in the ongoing negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to Prepare a Globally Legally Binding Instrument on Mercury, including research into coal-dependent power/electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the department established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

The National Waste Management Strategy has eight key goals namely:

- promoting waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting and financial management for waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the Waste Act.

Youth Jobs in Waste Programme

In June 2013, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs launched the Youth Jobs in Waste Programme. About 1 000 young people are expected to benefit from the programme, which aims to address the backlog in solid waste service delivery in all municipalities in the country.

The waste sector has been identified as one of the sectors with the potential to contribute substantially to the generation of jobs within the green economy.

An estimated 1 000 job opportunities will be created by placing young people in municipalities as Landfill Site Assistants, Waste Collection Administrators and Environmental Awareness Educators.

Further work opportunities will be created by the construction activities associated with the building or erection of landfill site offices, ablution facilities, as well as weigh-pad platforms at landfill sites across the country.

The Free State will see 330 young people recruited for the project, while there will be 326 in the North West and 140 each in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo.

It is also expected that some of the young people recruited into the programme will move on to further their environmental careers, either in other employment sectors or by becoming involved in business ventures.

In February 2013, the Deputy Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, accompanied by representatives from the SAWS, led a campaign to inform communities in the Vhembe district municipality about severe weather conditions. The climate records of the SAWS show a growing trend in extreme weather events.

Since government has elevated and prioritised warnings around weather-related hazards, the SAWS has reviewed its early warning system in collaboration with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs.

Several steps have been taken to put infrastructure in place to ensure better disaster preparedness.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum (NRF) is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa. Members of the NRF include representatives of:

- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments
- regional recycling forums
- local government-based organisations
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the NRF:

- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin-plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

In September 2013, the 16th International Union of Air Pollution Prevention and Environmental Protection Association was hosted in association with the National Association for Clean Air in Cape Town. Held under the theme “Many Nations – One Atmosphere: Plotting the Path to Sustainability,” the focus of the congress was to seek holistic sustainable solutions for air quality in the developing world.

Collect-a-can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in South Africa. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of school children to the idea of caring for the environment through its schools competition.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

The UNFCCC's COP 18 Conference was held in Doha, Qatar, in late 2012. This secured the Durban legacy with an outcome that concluded the necessary provisions to give effect to a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol, including legal, operational, ambition and environmental integrity considerations.

The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of Desired Emission Reduction Outcomes or what is called DEROs, and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those DEROs, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

The Department of Energy processes all applications for renewable energy. By April 2013, up to 25 000 MW of wind and solar projects had been authorised for the various parts of the country.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa.

Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management including the:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management
- air quality model by-laws
- *Air-Quality Management Planning Manual*
- *National Ambient Air-Quality Standards and Listed Activities* and the *Minimum Emission Standards*.

Several of these tools were under review accelerate the ongoing implementation of the AQA of 2004.

The South African Air-Quality Information System (Saaqis) contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: *www.saaqis.org.za*.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to Saaqis.

The benefits derived from biodiversity or ecosystem services are estimated at R73 billion, contributing to 7% of South Africa's annual gross domestic product. The biodiversity economy, which is part of the national Green Economy, is therefore South Africa's competitive edge in growing the economy and addressing climate change adaptation. Biodiversity is a basis for human and socio-economic development.

Environmental impact management

South Africa's environmental impact assessment (EIA) regulations are:

- streamlining the EIA process
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs in South Africa
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The Department of Environmental Affairs has a new and improved EIA and management approach. In addition, the department is using alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

The department is already fully integrating waste and EIA, permitting processes with some provinces having followed suit.

Aquaculture

In February 2013, the DWA and DEA published the *EIA Guideline for Aquaculture in South Africa* for public comment. The guideline seeks to, among other things, align the EIA process and environmental authorisations with the specific nature of aquaculture.

The guideline emphasises and provides particulars of the authorisation requirements in aquaculture underpinned by various

environmental legal frameworks, including the Biodiversity Act of 2004, the Protected Areas Act of 2003 and the Waste Act of 2008.

Aquaculture has the potential to affect water, biodiversity, ecosystems and wild fish stocks. As such, the need for integrated planning that is flexible and detailed in the sustainable operation of an aquaculture venture is stressed.

The newfound support from government, the growing need for the integrated use of resources and the socio-economic needs behind the diversification of food production have led to rapid growth of the aquaculture sector.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated EIAs are used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs, developers, and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the long-term sustainability of the off-road industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection.

The department recognises the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department will focus its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritise developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which will provide information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System.

The Department of Environmental Affairs has also reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters. The ultimate intention is to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries with 24 million tons (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land

The Greenest Municipality Competition is premised on reducing, recycling and reusing waste materials. Although these principles are still relevant, other elements related to sustainable development and various greening interventions have been added. In June 2013, the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality was the overall winner in the Greenest Municipalities competition; eThekwini was the first runner-up; while the City of Cape Town was the second runner-up. At local municipality level, Greater Tzaneen topped the category, followed by Newcastle and Drakenstein.

degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD). Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The purpose of the convention is to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group is consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the NEMBA of 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

As part of the UN international campaign to address global environmental deterioration and in particular, combat dry land degradation, which affects up to one-quarter of the world's land surface, the UN has designated 17 June as the World Day to Combat Desertification. This date marks the anniversary of the adoption of the UNCCD. The theme for 2013 was "Drought and water scarcity" and the slogan "Don't let our future dry up."

Biodiversity

In January 2013, South Africa became the first country in 2013 and the 12th country overall to ratify the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on ABS. The Nagoya Protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The EWT, in collaboration with the DEA, Nedbank Limited, Hatch Goba, De Beers, Transnet, Pam Golding Properties and Pick n Pay, launched the National Biodiversity and Business Network.

The aim of the network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations. It is designed to be an open and inclusive association of like-minded organisations that have recognised the need to raise awareness of, and stimulate conversation about biodiversity issues among members of the business community.

Government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The South African NDP: Vision 2030 confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Cites
- UNCCD
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

A scientific, systematic biodiversity assessment for the country was carried out in 2004 to spatially support the NBSAP, titled the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA).

Finding solutions to global warming and climate change requires the reduction of carbon emissions. However, this reduction should not undermine the prospects of industrialisation and development in the developing world, as people still need to seize opportunities that arise from the new technological developments and job-creation. The green economy was identified as one of the six job drivers in the New Growth Path. Many low-income houses have solar water heaters, which is something that has emerged from green technologies.

The NSBA was updated in 2012, forming the National Biodiversity Assessment, 2011, with many significant findings requiring conservation action.

The Deputy Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs and the Deputy Minister of Agriculture and Rural Development of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam signed an action plan in May 2013 to implement the MoU on Biodiversity Conservation and Protection.

The implementation plan, effective until 2017, gives further impetus to the fight against wildlife crimes, particularly rhino poaching.

The objective of the MoU is to promote cooperation in the field of biodiversity management, conservation and protection. It is also expected to assist in curbing the scourge of rhino poaching because the MoU seeks to promote cooperation in law enforcement, compliance with the Cites and other relevant legislation and conventions on the basis of equality and mutual benefit

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF), published in 2009, provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the NEMBA of 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome)
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia)
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Swaziland, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*acacia galpinii*), mopani (*colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, *euphorbias* and spekboom trees (*portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km^2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the secondlargest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km^2 and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1,9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee *(rhus lancea)*, wild currant *(rhus pyroides)*, white stinkwood *(celtis africana)* and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea-fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winterrainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld.

In March 2014, the University of the Witwatersrand conferred an honorary doctorate on ecologist, environmentalist, bird specialist and artist, Mr Duncan Butchart, for sharing his specialist knowledge and skills with many local communities that have been enriched in their knowledge and understanding of the African environment.

Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes.

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the *Erica* family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates diverse plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, of which more than 6 000 are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey-badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity.

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found

there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (*geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*chersina angulata*), tent tortoise (*psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*homopus areolatus*).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many *tenebrionid* beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

International cooperation

In March 2013, government ministers from Angola, Namibia and South Africa signed the Benguela Current Convention, an environmental treaty promoting a coordinated regional approach to the long-term conservation and protection of the Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME).

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US$54,3 billion per year. Offshore oil and gas production, marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement that also seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity (ratified in 1995)
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003)
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003)
- UNCCD
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997)
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997, which is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the Green Climate Fund
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The Conference of the Parties (COP) to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in dealing with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place

at the UNFCCC in Bonn in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

One of the central outcomes of the meeting in South Africa was to pave the way for a legal agreement under the UNFCCC applicable to all parties, to be completed by 2015 and to come into effect from 2020.

The 19th session of the Conference of the Parties (COP 19), held during November 2013, in Warsaw, Poland, ensured that progress was made with the implementation of decisions already taken under the UNFCCC and the Kyoto Protocol.

Under South Africa's COP Presidency, COP 17 achieved a historic agreement, initiating negotiations on a new global legal instrument, applicable to all countries, to be adopted by 2015 and to be fully operational in 2020.

United Nations Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook, by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

At the UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20), member states agreed to establish a high-level political forum that would subsequently replace the Commission on Sustainable Development.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Cites)

South Africa was a founding member of the Cites Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, Cites is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

Cites was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. Cites accords varying degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

South Africa used the 16th Cites held in February 2013, in Thailand, to shine the spotlight on rhino conservation.

South Africa hosted and participated in side events during the 16th COP, and three of these events focused on rhino matters including conservation, safety and security and rhino economics or trade matters. This was reflective of the key areas addressed during the Rhino Issue Manager (RIM) process in 2012.

South Africa appointed a Rhino Issue Manager in May 2012, with the responsibility of conducting research and convening a series of stakeholder dialogues with all interested parties to facilitate wide-ranging and expert input into policy thinking.

In the course of the work of the RIM, 12 stakeholder meetings were held in Gauteng, Durban and Cape Town, with presentations being conducted in Bloemfontein and Cape Town.

The Cites parties meet every three years to consider amendments to the appendices of the convention; to make recommendations to improve the effectiveness; and to assess the implementation thereof.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

The theme for the 2013 celebration of World Ozone Day was "A healthy atmosphere, the future we want" emphasised the collaboration and environmental benefits achieved by the international community through the operation of the Montreal Protocol. The international treaty is designed to protect the ozone layer by phasing out the production and consumption of numerous substances responsible for ozone depletion. The protocol has been recognised as a global success, demonstrated by the massive elimination of production and consumption of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, carbon tetrachloride, methyl chloroform, and chlorobromomethane worldwide since it came into force in 1987.

South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out CFCs, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

This makes it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

The Greenest Municipality Competition is hosted annually by the Department of Water and Environmental Affairs. In August 2013, Newcastle in KwaZulu-Natal won the competition.

World Summit on Sustainable Development

South Africa hosted the WSSD in September 2002 in Johannesburg. The agreements reached then are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

The most notable success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact such as:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water has to be halved by 2015
- collapsed fish stocks must be restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact are to be phased out by 2020
- energy services have to be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

United Nations Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development which took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 heads of state agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At Rio+20 world leaders, along with thousands of participants from the private sector, NGOs and other groups, came together to shape how countries could work together to reduce poverty, advance social equity and ensure environmental protection on an increasingly crowded planet.

The official discussions focused on two main themes: how to build a green economy to achieve sustainable development and lift people out of poverty; and how to improve international coordination for sustainable development.

At the Rio+20 talks 50 of the 193 member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

Sustainable Development and the Green Economy

The department began introducing the Green Economy with the use of the Green Fund announced in 2012. The Implementing Agent, the DBSA, allocated funds through the first window to projects that proved to be sustainable, mainly in the alternative energy sector.

The Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs launched a R22-million Green Fund project in the uPhongolo Local Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal, in August 2013.

Known as "Farming the Wild," the initiative is a community-based project supported by the Green Fund. It aims to green the rural community of Somkhanda through the establishment of the Somkhanda Community Game Reserve.

Early in 2013, the department launched the zero emission pure electric green cars as a national pilot programme to demonstrate government's commitment to the reduction of carbon emissions that are chiefly responsible for climate change.

In the same vein, the bioprospecting and hunting industries will remain integral to the department's contribution to sustainable development and green jobs in South Africa.

Job creation

Demonstrating its commitment to improving socio-economic benefits within the environmental sector, the department has created 65 494 work opportunities, yielding 34 019 full-time equivalent jobs. The targeted designated groups were women, youth and people living with disabilities.

The department accessed R2,39 billion from the EPWP for environmental programmes in 2013/14, which boosted the job-creation objective of government, and secured vital environmental benefits from the work that was done.

The jobs created were coupled with skills development with 184 263 accredited training person days achieved.

Some 2 700 young people are expected to benefit from the Youth Environmental Services Programme over the next three years. Upon exiting the programme participants will be placed in either permanent employment or further training institutions.

The department launched the Youth Jobs in Waste Programme. This project was expected to create 330 job opportunities in the Free State and 326 in North West, and once rolled out nationally, it was expected to provide 3 577 young people with job opportunities in waste management and related entrepreneurship.

In addition to these youth employment initiatives, environmental monitors were introduced to deal with environmental threats in protected areas, including the scourge of rhino poaching nationally. This programme employs 1 000 young people to strengthen the fight against rhino poaching and other environmental challenges.

Urban environmental management

The Urban Environmental Management Programme is a partnership between 11 government institutions from the national, provincial and municipal spheres of government. The programme alleviates poverty through improved service delivery within the environmental management of urban areas.

Started in April 2006, the programme is a continuation of more than 10 years of environmental collaboration between South Africa and Denmark.

Finance

National Treasury is the custodian of the nation's financial resources, accountable to the nation to discharge its responsibilities professionally, with the aim of promoting growth and prosperity for all.

The department strives to raise fiscal resources equitably and efficiently and to manage government's financial assets and liabilities soundly by promoting transparency and effective financial management.

The Ministry of Finance is the political head of specialised public sector organisations in the areas of finance, economics and accounting.

South Africa continues to have the most transparent budget process when measured against 94 countries, including developed economies. Notwithstanding this achievement, National Treasury continues to improve the quality of information presented in the budget. This is meant to help those entities responsible for oversight, to ensure better accountability by those who have been entrusted with the responsibility of managing and spending public funds.

The ministry provides analysis and advice on fiscal policy and public finances, intergovernmental financial relations, and expenditure planning and priorities. It manages the annual budget process and provides public finance management support.

The measurable objective is to promote growth, social development and poverty reduction through sound fiscal and financial policies and the effective, efficient and appropriate allocation of public funds. Specific aims are to:

- prepare a national budget that gives effect to the government's economic, fiscal, social and developmental goals under the umbrella of the outcomes approach
- produce and publish the *National Budget*; the *Budget Review*, the *Estimates of National Expenditure*; the *Medium-Term Budget Policy Statement* (MTBPS); and appropriation legislation containing relevant, accurate and clear financial information and associated indicators of service delivery and performance
- contribute to public policy and programme development through support for planning, policy and programme analysis, budgeting and project management, including support for public finance reform in provinces and municipalities
- promote public and private investment in infrastructure and public services by providing technical support for capital expenditure

In November 2013, the South African Reserve Bank introduced a new security feature in the form of little dots on the front and back of all Mandela banknotes to coincide with the November 2012 anniversary of the banknote series.

planning and project analysis, advice on financing alternatives, support for municipal development and financial assistance for neighbourhood development projects
- monitor and analyse public expenditure and service delivery, and support improved monitoring and analysis of public expenditure and service delivery and the appropriate use of public and private financial resources for social and economic development and infrastructure investment.

Fiscal policy framework

The Fiscal Policy unit manages and develops the fiscal framework, which is used to advise the Minister of Finance on policy options available in setting the budget framework. In 2012/13, the unit completed the first iteration of the country's long-term fiscal report. A follow-up report focuses on South Africa's long-term public infrastructure requirements.

Budget framework

The Budget Office provides fiscal advice, oversees expenditure planning and the national budget process, leads the budget reform programme, manages official development assistance and compiles public finance statistics.

Expenditure planning and statistics

Total spending reached R1,1 trillion in 2013, representing some 32% of gross domestic product (GDP).

The Expenditure Planning unit designs and manages the South African national budget process and plays a central role in preparing and publishing the various budget documents. The budget decision-making process is a matrix that requires coordination across the three spheres of government and involves engagements with various committees, including Cabinet, to ensure that appropriate budgeting choices are made.

Extensive internal and external budget-related engagements by various National Treasury units require planning, coordination and support, by managing different forums and types of data analysis. To assist with budget preparation and the publication of documents, the unit prepares budget process and requirement guidelines, which are issued to all government institutions.

In September 2013, Cabinet approved the South African Mint Company's designs for the 2013 R2 (1/4 oz) commemorative 24-ct gold coin series and the 2013 R1 (1/10 oz) commemorative 24-ct gold coin series.

The design of the 2013 R2 gold coin features the San language and the design of the 2013 R1 gold coin features the third pollinator – the Fruit Bat.

The unit also manages the in-year budget adjustment process in respect of the current financial year, set out in the *Adjusted Estimates of National Expenditure* and the *Adjustments Appropriation Bill*, published in October every year.

The unit represents South Africa internationally regarding budget reform matters, and works collaboratively with other institutions at the centre of government, particularly with the Department of Performance Monitoring and Evaluation.

The Public Finance Statistics unit produces fiscal data and public finance statistics within a consistent accounting framework, which complies with national and international reporting requirements.

These statistics support the budget and its auxiliary processes. The aim is to improve the transparency and accountability of government finance data used for budget publications and for submission to international organisations, such as the International Monetary Fund (IMF).

The unit published a consolidated government account in the 2013 Budget, which provided information on the operating and capital accounts, and a consolidated financing position to ensure closer alignment with the IMF Government Finance Statistics (GFS) presentation format. Coverage and quality of data were further improved through inclusion of all newly listed entities and the extension of the number of inter-entity transactions identified and netted out during production of the account.

To improve budgeting by government function, the function groups were revised and a review of the GFS functional classification of national and provincial departments and public entities was carried out to ensure consistency and compliance with the GFS.

The unit manages the Standard Chart of Accounts (Scoa) committee and, in collaboration with the office of the Accountant-General, published a number of classification circulars on amendments to the Scoa.

Further reforms to the Scoa were made for re-implementation on 1 April 2013. The purpose was to improve the quality of data and reporting capabilities.

Training continued and a tool to identify inconsistencies in classification was implemented.

Growing the economy

Growing the economy means expanding business activity. Government recognises the key role that private companies play in the economy. During his budget vote, the Minister

of Finance outlined several possible solutions to the investment and development challenges presented by business leaders. This signalled growing confidence in the business outlook, despite difficult conditions. The proposals included:

- construction and refurbishment by a company in the hospitality sector worth R2,5 billion in the next 18 months and expansion of R3 billion in the pipeline
- two telecommunications investments amounting to R14 billion in 2013
- capital expenditure of R3,4 billion over the next three years by a rail and logistics operator
- a R2,5-billion expansion and longer-term plans of R15 billion in mining projects
- investment of R1,4 billion by a leading retailer, and plans to open 100 new stores by another
- an expansion of R2 billion by a food and beverage sector firm
- plans for R28,5 billion in long-term infrastructure investment by a leading industrial company to create 10 000 temporary and 4 000 permanent jobs.

Government encouraged businesses to keep investing in the economy, and seize available opportunities by reinforcing several initiatives that support business development, namely:

- The Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme (MCEP), announced in 2012, received 215 applications with requests for grants totalling R2,3 billion, mainly from the chemicals, metals and agro-processing sectors. Applications will increase over the period ahead and funding of R1,5 billion per year was provided in the budget of the Department of Trade and Industry.
- The Special Economic Zone (SEZ) Programme received funding to build world-class industrial parks.
- The Jobs Fund received 3 614 applications and 65 projects were approved. Grant funding of R3,3 billion was approved, matched by a further R3,1 billion in funding raised by the private sector.
- Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises (SMMEs) play a key role in developing the economy and are a significant generator of employment.
- Financing SMMEs was simplified with the creation of the Small Enterprise Finance Agency in 2012.

During his Medium-Term Budget Policy Statement in October 2013, the Minister of Finance announced that he had appointed a Tax Review Committee to look at how the country's tax system might play a role in: promoting development and inclusive economic growth; job creation; and contributing to fiscal sustainability.

International Development and Cooperation

The International Development Cooperation (IDC) unit is responsible for coordinating, mobilising and managing official development assistance (ODA). The IDC enhanced ODA coordination through continuous engagements with development partners on various platforms, including annual consultations, high-level bilateral meetings and official visits.

Within government departments, the IDC has enhanced coordination by organising national and provincial ODA coordinators' forums, and has facilitated greater accountability and transparency by reporting on ODA programmes to the budget-allocation decision-making process.

Through a series of community practice sessions and manuals, the unit has also developed capacity within line departments to report on and manage ODA programmes.

Within 2012/13, the unit successfully programmed the €100 million Infrastructure Investment Programme for South Africa (IIPSA) between the European Union (EU) and South Africa.

In an unprecedented agreement with the European Commission, the Development Bank of South Africa (DBSA) has been appointed as the implementing agency for this programme.

In the past year, the South African government received R1,9 billion in the form of grants from bilateral international development partners. These grants support development efforts across many sectors of government.

Overview of the 2013/14 Budget

The 2013/14 national budget was presented in challenging times, but against the background of a new strategic framework for growth and development. Though there was limited room for expansion, there were significant opportunities for change.

South Africa's economy continued to grow, but at a slower rate than projected at the time of the 2012 budget. The 2013 budget took the National Development Plan as its point of departure.

The strategic plans of government and the medium-term expenditure plans were aligned to realise government's objectives.

Government took measures to control growth in spending. Spending plans were reduced by R10,4 billion through reprioritisation, savings and a draw-down on the contingency reserve.

Government remains committed to a large-scale infrastructure investment programme. The path of spending and recovery in revenue will stabilise debt at just higher than 40% of GDP.

The budget deficit will fall from 5,2% of GDP in 2012/13 to 3,1% in 2015/16.

In 2013/14, a review of the tax policy framework and its role in supporting the objectives of inclusive growth, employment, development and fiscal sustainability was initiated.

In the 2013/14 fiscal year, personal income tax relief of R7 billion was granted.

A new local government equitable share formula was proposed, providing a subsidy for free basic services designed to reach 59% of households.

Further education and training continued to be expanded and enhanced.

A revised youth employment incentive was tabled in the House, together with a proposed employment incentive for SEZs.

In the 2013 budget, government continued to invest in education, health, housing, public transport and social development – components of the social wage, which add up to about 60% of public expenditure.

During the October 2013 MTBPS, the Minister of Finance said that South Africa's debt-to-GDP ratio remained sustainable, despite having risen from 23% of GDP in 2007/8 to 39,3% of GDP in 2013/14.

Net debt is expected to reach 43,9% of GDP in 2016/17. The budget deficit came in at 4,2% for 2013/14, declining slightly to 4,1% in 2014/15, before falling to 3% in 2016/17.

While a 4,6% budget deficit was forecast in the 2013 Budget, the 4,2% deficit was based on a new formula for government accounts – which is in line with IMF provisions and includes extraordinary receipts and extraordinary payments in the calculation of the deficit.

The borrowing requirement for the main budget increased from R168,5 billion in 2013/14.

Interest payments are the fastest growing expenditure item over the next three years, growing to R140 billion in 2016/17 – higher than 2013 spending on healthcare.

Compensation of public servants accounted for 39,4% of the budget of non-interest spending, continuing to outpace inflation, but growing at a slower rate than over the past three years. Over the next three years, the government's debt management strategy will focus on minimising refinancing risk to accommodate redemptions.

Government will also continue to build cash reserves and continue to switch from short-term to longer-term debt as market conditions allow. The contingency reserve is projected to grow from R3 billion in 2014/15 to R6 billion in 2015/16, climbing to R18 billion in 2016/17.

The contingency reserve has been reduced from R7,5 billion over the next two years to respond to spending pressures. As part of measures to restrict spending, state-owned companies (SOCs) are expected to borrow on the strength of their balance sheets, rather than be funded from the fiscus.

If capitalisation of the State's core assets were required, state-owned entities would have to consider upfront disposal of non-core assets, while those SOCs that faced persistent difficulties had to undergo operational restructuring.

Debt management

Government is committed to remaining within the expenditure ceiling set out in the budget. New policy initiatives over the next three years will be financed from savings, efficiency gains and reprioritisation.

Structural increases in spending require corresponding revenue increases, if they are to be financed sustainably. If government succeeds in driving growth towards 5% a year and government revenue doubles in the next 20 years, major infrastructure projects and new policy initiatives, such as the National Health Insurance (NHI) and expanded vocational education will be affordable with limited adjustments to tax policy. But if growth continues along the present trajectory, substantial spending commitments would require significant adjustments in revenue and reductions in other areas of spending.

Debt-service costs peaked at 2,8% of GDP in 2013/14.

Financial systems

National Treasury is responsible for the development, maintenance and support of financial management systems (Basic Accounting System or Bas, Persal, Logis and Vulindlela) that support:

- payment of government employees' salaries and service providers
- financial reporting and management for government departments.

The Public Entities Governance unit implements the recommendations of the public entities governance framework review, and rolls out the budgeting framework for all public entities.

The unit helped prepare consolidated financial accounts and maintain budget databases and the administrative records of the general government sector, including public entities.

The unit continued its efforts to enhance the regulatory environment for the governance and management of public entities from a range of perspectives, including the development of applicable remuneration frameworks. The unit provided support to the Presidential Review

Commission on State-owned entities; and consulted with departments on budgets and policy matters related to public entities.

It provides institutional support to these entities, at national and provincial level.

Legislation and policies

- The Public Finance Management Act,1999 (Act 1 of 1999) ensures that public funds are managed by a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.
- The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.
- The Co-Operative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007) provides for the establishment of the Co-Operative Banks Development Agency as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance.
- Division of Revenue Act, 2012 (Act 5 of 2012)
- Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 7 of 2012)
- Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Revenue Laws Act, 2012 (Act 13 of 2012)
- Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 17 of 2012)
- Division of Revenue Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 18 of 2012)
- Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012)
- Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 21 of 2012)
- Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 22 of 2012)
- Credit Rating Services Act, 2012 (Act 24 of 2012).

Financial institutions

Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)

The FIC is South Africa's national agency tasked with developing and providing financial intelligence for law enforcement authorities, the intelligence services and the South African Revenue Service (Sars). The FIC was established by the FIC Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), and reports to the Minister of Finance and to Parliament.

The FIC's mandate is to:

- monitor the compliance of designated businesses (accountable institutions) and supervisory bodies regarding their anti-money laundering and anti-terror financing obligations
- receive and analyse transactional data to identify the proceeds of crime and money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide financial intelligence reports to law enforcement authorities, intelligence agencies and Sars
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide policy advice to the Minister of Finance
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required by the country, in respect of anti-money laundering and combating financing of terrorism (AML/CFT).

The FIC Act of 2001 introduces a regulatory framework of measures which requires certain categories of business to take steps regarding client identification, record-keeping, reporting of information and internal compliance structures.

All businesses have to report various suspicious transactions to the FIC. The FIC also receives additional financial data from accountable and reporting institutions.

South Africa is a member of the Financial Action Task Force, a body which sets international standards and policy on AML/CFT. It is also a member of the Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, which supports countries to implement the global AML/ CFT standards.

The FIC is a member of the Egmont Group, comprising the financial intelligence units of 139 countries, which facilitates cooperation and shares financial intelligence among its members.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is an independent, objective, impartial and unbiased constitutional advisory institution. It is a permanent expert commission with a constitutionally defined structure, a set of generic responsibilities and institutional processes.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government

revenue sources, and provincial and municipal loans.

Consultation about the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another is also required.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC's clients are public-sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.

The PIC's role is to invest funds on behalf of these clients, based on investment mandates set by each client and approved by the Financial Services Board (FSB), with which it is registered as a financial services provider (FSP).

The PIC is wholly owned by the South African Government, with the Minister of Finance as the shareholder representative.

The PIC was established as a corporation on in accordance with the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

Corporatisation has enabled the PIC to structure its investment activities and operations in a manner comparable to that of private-sector investment managers.

Apart from pursuing FSB-compliant mandates, the PIC benchmarks its investment performance against market-driven indices, enabling clients and the shareholder to compare PIC's returns with those achieved in the marketplace.

South African Revenue Service

In July 2013, the Minister of Finance appointed a tax review committee. Central to the review of the country's tax regime would be to ensure that the system was able to boost revenue collection to help government fund its key policy objectives.

These would include funding government's priority programmes such as NHI and the government's infrastructure development plan aimed at creating jobs.

The terms of reference according to which the committee operates included evaluating the current tax system against internationally accepted standards, principles and practices improving tax compliance and doing away with base erosion.

The G20 meeting of finance ministers in Moscow in Russia, in July 2013, also discussed ways of ensuring coordination between member countries, so that a regulatory framework was in place to stop companies from evading paying tax by shifting investments to offshore accounts.

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), Sars is an organ of State outside the Public Service.

It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and taxpayer-centred service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies imposed under national legislation
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- advising the Minister of Finance on revenue
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal import and export of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement, storage or use of certain goods.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy.

Sars has an electronic platform to help taxpayers, traders and employers engage with the organisation quickly and efficiently. The eFiling service allows Sars clients to request information, submit returns, make declarations and pay taxes and duties electronically. It supports major tax products, such as Company Income Tax (CIT), Personal Income Tax (PIT), pay-as-you-earn (PAYE) and Value-added Tax (VAT) as well as several customs and excise products. Sars clients can access the eFiling service via the internet or by visiting a Sars branch office. A mobile facility, which enables clients to access the eFiling service from a mobile device, was introduced in 2013.

The electronic platform enabled Sars to improve processing efficiency and productivity while serving an increasing number of taxpayers and traders.

In 2012/13, 99,86% of tax returns were submitted electronically. In 2012/13, 93% of all returns submitted were assessed within three seconds. Average turnaround times for PIT and CIT returns were 0,26 and 0,87 days. Sars paid 94,5% of all refunds within 72 hours.

The modernisation programme has also enabled Sars to use advanced technology to improve compliance, manage risk and combat fraud and corruption. Sars is deploying an increasing proportion of its personnel in service and compliance activities. Greater access to third-party data has helped Sars

tailor its electronic platform to better suit client requirements as well as improve the verification of information submitted by taxpayers and traders.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of the various tax Acts administered by Sars was established through the promulgation of the Tax Administration Act, 2011 (Act 28 of 2011) in July 2012, which commenced on 1 October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in the different Tax Acts administered by Sars.

The Act provides for common procedures across the tax products, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of Sars and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Tax Ombud

In terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, the Minister of Finance appointed South Africa's first Tax Ombud on 1 October 2013. The office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with a low-cost mechanism to address administrative difficulties that cannot be resolved by Sars.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. The liability of taxpayers is determined subject to the provisions of International Agreements for the Avoidance of Double Tax.

Tax is levied on taxable income, which is calculated as gross income excluding certain income of a capital nature, less exemptions and permissible deductions.

The main tax products are CIT, VAT, PIT and customs and excise duties.

Company income tax

Companies are subject to a flat tax rate, which is 28% of taxable income. An exception to the rule is the reduced tax rates that apply to small and micro- businesses.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied at 14% on the supply of all goods and services by VAT vendors (certain supplies are zero-rated) and contributes about 26% of total tax revenue.

The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive. A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT ,if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Personal income tax

PIT mainly focuses on the taxation of non-corporate income. The main contributor to PIT is employment income from salary earners, and income generated from sole-proprietor activities. The tax rate applicable to PIT-related taxable income is progressive, ranging from marginal rates of 18% to 40%.

PAYE is withheld by employers from salary and wage income on a monthly basis, and reconciled biannually.

Other tax products administered by Sars

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents, such as tobacco and liquor products, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported, for example, specific farming and forestry equipment, and certain manufacturing activities.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property. With effect from 23 February 2011, property costing less than R600 000 attracts no duty. A 3% rate applies to properties costing between R600 000 and R1 million.

In respect of property with a value between R1 million and R1,5 million, the duty is R12 000 plus 5% of the value above R1 million.

In respect of property above R1,5 million, the duty is R37 000 plus a rate of 8% of the value exceeding R1,5 million.

Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 20% on residents' property and non-residents' South African property.

A basic deduction of R3,5 million is allowed in the determination of an estate's liability for estate duty, as well as deductions for liabilities, bequests to public benefit organisations and property accruing to a surviving spouse.

Dividend-withholding tax

With effect from 1 April 2012, a dividend-withholding tax is levied on shareholders on payment of a dividend at 15%.

The tax is withheld by either the institution paying the dividend or by a regulated intermediary distributing the dividend. The dividend-withholding tax replaces the secondary tax on companies.

Securities transfer tax

Securities transfer tax is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Skills-development levy

The Skills Development Fund is intended to be used for employee training and skills development.

The levy, which is an amount paid by all employers to Sars, goes into a government body responsible for organising education and training programmes within a specific sector. Each sector has its own Sector Education and Training Authority. The rate is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings, due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid to Sars, together with the employer share of 1%, monthly.

Tax on international travel

This tax is levied as follows: R190 per passenger departing on an international flight, excluding flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland, in which case the tax is R100.

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage.

Customs duty

The policy on tariffs applicable to the importation of goods into South Africa is set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the Department of Trade and Industry.

The duties levied on imported goods can be separated mainly into customs duties, which include customs duties (ad valorem) on certain luxury or non-essential items, and anti-dumping and countervailing measures. In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption and certain other levies are imposed on specific, products.

Southern African Customs Union (Sacu)

Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, and Swaziland are signatories to the Sacu agreement. They apply similar customs and excise legislation and the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods. Applying uniform tariffs and harmonising procedures simplifies trade within the Sacu area by enabling the free movement of goods for customs purposes. However, all other national restrictive measures such as import and export control, sanitary and phytosanitary requirements and domestic taxes apply to goods moved between member states.

The 2002 Sacu Agreement is in force and provides a new dispensation for calculating and effecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component of the Revenue -Sharing Formula.

The Sacu heads of state and government endorsed an ambitious Sacu regional trade facilitation programme that is focused on creating common information technology platforms to allow:

- interconnectivity
- enforcement strategies to be harmonised to curb illicit trade
- improved border efficiencies to facilitate seamless trade
- the development of partnerships with traders through the establishment of a formalised Customs-Trader Forum
- the development of similar customs legislation
- one-stop border posts to be established.

South Africa and all Sacu countries are working towards implementing the programme.

Border posts

South Africa is automating most of its border processes to bring the country in line with the international standards of the World Customs Organisation and world-class immigration processes.

The latest technology is now being used to clear cargo electronically, while allowing customs and immigration officials to scan passports and release notifications at ports of entry. The intention is to have a seamless process for

In July 2013, the Minister of Finance appointed Judge Dennis Davis to chair an eight-member tax review committee to investigate how revenue generated by the South African Revenue Service might be used to improve the economy.

compliant travellers and traders while, making it difficult for illegitimate travellers and traders.

Visitors to South Africa need to ensure that they are familiar with the list of goods (and quantities) that may be imported without payment of customs duty and VAT as well as those for which customs duty and VAT are payable. This information is available on the Sars website.

International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, as they provide certainty about the tax framework.

By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between international investors' residence and source countries, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with over 70 countries.

African Tax Administration Forum (ATAF)

Formed in Uganda in November 2009, ATAF is a platform for African revenue authorities to articulate African tax priorities, develop and share best practices, and build capacity in African tax policy and administration.

ATAF has 36 African tax administrations as members and a governing council comprising 10 member countries from the five regions of Africa. Sars currently chairs the ATAF Council.

The organisation offers technical training events on tax and also has working groups on: Exchange of Information; Indirect Taxes; and Transfer Pricing. ATAF has delivered various tax reform publications, as well as conducting research into these and other tax matters.

Members of ATAF at the most senior level gather biannually for a General Assembly and every year in between a General Assembly, they meet for the ATAF International Conference on Tax in Africa.

Sars performance

For the financial year ending on 31 March 2013, Sars collected R813,8 billion in revenue, which is 9,6% more than in 2012.

eFiling

Sars introduced its internet service, eFiling (www.sarsefiling.co.za), as an electronic gateway for taxpayers to interact electronically with Sars.

The eFiling gateway is a secure and free service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online at any time. It removes the risks and inconvenience of submitting paper tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

The eFiling service is equal to international standards, and comparable with services offered in the United States of America, Australia, Singapore, Ireland, Chile and France.

Tax calendar

Sars has instituted three filing seasons in the tax year that runs from March to February. The first one is Tax Season for Employers, when employers file their annual PAYE reconciliations. This runs from April to May.

This is followed by Tax Season for Individuals, when individual taxpayers file their income tax returns. This runs from July to the end of November for non-provisional taxpayers who submit via eFiling.

Provisional taxpayers who submit via eFiling have until 31 January the following year to submit their returns. Provisional tax is a system that allows qualifying taxpayers to pay at least two amounts in the course of the year of assessment.

Employers have an interim filing season when they file reconciliations for the first six months of the tax year, during September and October.

All three filing seasons are accompanied by innovative communication and marketing campaigns.

There has been a steady increase in taxpayer compliance, due to the predictable filing seasons, combined with Sars' improved service offering and taxpayer education.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers complete their tax returns correctly, honestly and on time.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB was established in terms of the National Gambling Act (NGA), 1996 (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the NGA, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004).

The vision of the board is to position South Africa as the pre-eminent jurisdiction with an effectively regulated industry. The NGB is committed to effective regulation and supervision of the South African gambling industry,

The Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act 26 of 2013) provides for the granting of a rebate for employing young people between the ages of 18 and 29. The Act is expected to support about 200 000 jobs over the next three years.

which is a significant economic sector, by upholding internationally recognised standards of compliance.

The emergence of illegal internet gambling raises challenges to the regulatory regime concerning when, how and what the framework of interactive gambling will be, and what the challenges are.

Statistics

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on national gambling statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue (GGR), gambling taxes and levies, as well as returns to players and punters.

Provincial licensing authorities are required to submit statistics to the NGB quarterly for consolidation and reporting on the national status.

Responsible gambling

The NGB has a legislated responsibility to educate the public about gambling and the negative socio-economic impact of the gambling industry on society.

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) is a resource that integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling.

The NRGP is managed by the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation. The main thrust of the NRGP's prevention programme is to educate gamblers, potential gamblers and society as a whole about responsible gambling.

The NRGP has various operational components, such as public awareness and prevention, the toll-free counselling line, a countrywide treatment network for outpatient counselling and therapy, research and monitoring initiatives, training for regulators and industry employees, a crisis line service available to gambling industry employees and management, as well as the Taking Risks Wisely life-skills programme – a teaching resource for grades 7 to 12.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998, in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997). The board's main activities include:

- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensuring that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensuring that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensuring that the nett proceeds of the National Lottery are as high as possible
- administering the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and holding it in trust
- advising the Minister on percentages of money to be allocated, in terms of the Lotteries Act of 1997
- advising the Minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administering and investing the money paid to the board in, accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery operator is Gidani, an 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA)

The AGSA strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter-9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is, therefore, respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial state departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also has an international auditing complement.

The 21st International Congress of Supreme Audit Institutions took place in Beijing, China, in October 2013.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921, in terms of a special Act of Parliament and the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and immediately after World War I.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989). In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the SARB has always had private shareholders who have limited rights.

It has more than 600 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the over-the-counter share-trading facility managed by the SARB. Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The SARB has branch offices in Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria North. The bank must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance, from time to time.

The SARB has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB publishes monetary-policy reviews, and regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions on monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy. Through its refinancing system, the SARB provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements. "Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank, which are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repo transactions. The repo rate is the price at which the SARB lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. It represents the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and standing facilities to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the SARB to square off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

In terms of its monetary-policy implementation framework, the SARB has to compel banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the SARB.

The SARB, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), comprising the bank's governors and other senior officials. After each meeting, the MPC issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy changes, if necessary.

The SARB's repo rate influences the interest rates charged by banks, the general level of interest rates in the economy and, therefore, other economic aggregates such as money supply, bank-credit extension and, ultimately, the rate of inflation. The repo rate influences market rates in two ways: it directly influences the bank's marginal cost of funding and it reflects the bank's stance on monetary policy.

The SARB has to intervene regularly in the money market to create a shortage that would drain excess liquidity. In addition to the liquidity-management operations, the SARB uses other open-market operations to achieve its monetary-policy objectives. The open-market operations refer to the selling of SARB debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, the Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks.

Functions

The essence of the bank's monetary-policy implementation framework and the transmission of monetary policy is its influence on the level of interest rates through its refinancing system.

Open-market operations: Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market. These operations are conducted to:

- neutralise or smooth the influence of exogenous factors on the liquidity position in the money market
- maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the bank.

Service to government:

- **Gold and foreign-exchange reserves:**

The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves have been growing.

- **Banker and adviser to government:**

The main services provided are administering

the auctions of government bonds and National Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the bank and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer account and tax and loan accounts.

- **Administration of exchange control:**

The bank is responsible, on behalf of the Minister of Finance, for the day-to-day administration of exchange controls in South Africa.

- **Provision of economic and statistical services:**

The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.

- **Bank supervision:**

The mission of the department is to promote the soundness of the banking system and contribute to financial stability.

- **The national payment system:**

The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk, with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.

- **Banker to other banks:**

The bank acts as the custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily, with the bank.

- **Banknotes and coins:**

The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the bank, mints all coins on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the bank, prints all banknotes on behalf of the SARB. Currency is distributed to commercial banks through the bank's seven branches. It is the responsibility of the branches to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new notes available to meet demand, and to replace unfit notes. The branches are responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation in their respective regions.

- **Lender of last resort:**

In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort" activities, the bank may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems.

- Monitoring financial stability: In view of the interrelationship between price and financial system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.
- Provision of internal corporate support services and systems: To ensure smooth operations and administration, the bank provides its own internal services, supported by information, communication and technology, and human resources.

Tax revenue performance by tax type for 2012/13 vs. 2011/12, R million

Tax type	2012/13 collections	2011/12 collections	Variance	Variance
	R million	R million	R million	%
Personal income tax	267 679	251 339	25 339	10,1%
Company income tax	160 896	153 272	7 624	5%
Secondary tax on companies/Dividends tax	19 739	21 965	-2 227	-10,1%
Value-added tax (VAT)	215 023	191 020	24 003	12,6%
Domestic VAT	242 416	220 215	22 201	10,1%
Import VAT	111 427	101 813	9 614	9,4%
VAT refunds	-138 820	-131 008	-7 813	6%
Fuel levy	40 410	36 602	3 808	10,4%
Customs duties	38 998	34 198	4 800	14%
Specific excise duties	28 378	25 411	2 967	11,7%
Taxes on property	8 645	7 817	828	10,6%
Skills development levy	11 378	10 173	1 205	11,8%
Other taxes and duties	13 680	10 851	2 829	26,1%
Total tax revenue	**813 826**	**742 650**	**71 176**	**9,6%**

Source: South African Revenue Service, 2013.

Monetary policy

Monetary policy in South Africa was significantly influenced by global developments as they shaped domestic growth and inflation outcomes alongside a range of domestic factors.

The domestic monetary policy stance remained accommodative throughout this period, with the real policy rate slightly negative, notwithstanding an expected temporary breach of the inflation target. This stance was consistent with keeping inflation under control and inflation expectations well anchored within a flexible inflation-targeting framework.

The MPC sought to provide stability through a period of extraordinary uncertainty, varying inflationary pressures and a hesitant global recovery.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2012, 34 banking institutions – 10 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 14 registered branches, three mutual banks and one cooperative bank were reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department of the SARB.

There were also 41 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa. The banking industry is characterised by a high degree of concentration, with five banks, namely Capitec, Absa Bank Ltd, Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd, FirstRand Bank Ltd and Nedbank Ltd, dominating the sector.

Tax revenue performance by tax type for 2012/13 vs 2011/12, contribution

Tax type	2012/13 collections	2011/12 collections
Personal income tax	34%	33,8%
Company income tax	19,8%	20,6%
Secondary tax on companies / Dividends tax	2,4%	3%
Value-added tax (VAT)	26,4%	25,7%
Domestic VAT	29,8%	29,7%
Import VAT	13,7%	13,7%
VAT refunds	-17,1%	-17,6%
Fuel levy	5%	4,9%
Customs duties	4,8%	4,6%
Specific excise duties	3,5%	3,4%
Taxes on property	1,1%	1,1%
Skills development levy	1,4%	1,4%
Other taxes and duties	1,7%	1,5%
Total tax revenue	**100%**	**100%**

Source: South African Revenue Service, 2013.

Total banking-sector assets amounted to R3 652 billion at the end of December 2012.

The total assets of the four largest banks accounted for 83,8% of total banking-sector assets as at December 2012 (December 2011: 84%). Gross loans and advances had increased to R2 753 billion by the end of December 2012. Home loans remained the largest component of gross loans and advances, representing 30,3%, followed by term loans at 20,1%, and other loans and advances at 11,0%.

Total liabilities grew by 6,3%. Funding from depositors remained the largest components of banking sector liabilities in 2012, accounting for 85,7% of total deposits at the end of December 2012. Deposits from corporate customers (including financial institutions) constituted the largest portion of total banking-sector deposits at 45,9% in December 2012.

The banking sector operating profit increased by 73% to R9,2 billion in December 2012. The return on equity and return-on-assets ratios had improved to 17,7% and 1,3%, respectively, by the end of December 2012. The cost-to-income ratio (also known as the "efficiency" ratio) improved during 2012 and amounted to 52,9% in December 2012.

The banking sector remained adequately capitalised throughout 2012. The total capital-adequacy ratios (CAR) and Tier 1 CAR of the banking sector increased marginally from 15,1% and 12,2%, respectively, at the end of December 2011 to 15,9% and 12,6%, respectively, at the end of December 2012.

Impaired advances decreased to R112,1 billion in December 2012. The ratio of impaired advances to gross loans and advances improved during 2012 and amounted to 4,1% at the end of December 2012. The ratio of specific credit impairments as a percentage of gross loans and advances increased to 40% in December 2012.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005), to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA of 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA of 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, regulates the granting of consumer credit by all credit providers, including micro-lenders, banks and retailers.

The National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act. Out of a population of close to 50 million,

South Africa has just over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act. The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist over-indebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions

Cooperative Banks Development Agency

The Cooperative Banks Development Agency was established in 2009, in terms of the Cooperative Banks Act, 2007. Its objectives are to provide for the registration of deposit-taking financial service cooperatives, savings and credit cooperatives, community banks and village banks, and their regulation and supervision. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of cooperative bank personnel. Access to financial services is a precondition for economic development. As 37% of South Africans have no access to regulated financial services, National Treasury is committed to a range of initiatives to increase access.

Financial cooperatives are owned and controlled by members. The agency provides training and support to ensure that the members' savings and assets are properly managed, and not exposed to undue risk. In line with government's responsibility for regulating banking and developments in the cooperative banking sector, the department has developed appropriate legislation to supervise and support the sector.

Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997) stipulates that the DBSA's main role is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a development finance institution within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002).

The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry. Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, cooperatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
  - service delivery
  - resource management
- sustainability.

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

Financial Services Board

The FSB is a regulatory institution, established in terms of the FSB Act, 1990 (Act 97 of 1990). The functions of the board include:

- supervising compliance with laws regulating financial institutions and the provision of financial services
- advising the Minister on matters concerning financial institutions and financial services
- promoting programmes and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial services industry to inform and educate users and potential users of financial products and services.

In June 2013, President Zuma promulgated the Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012), which will regulate financial markets and over-the-counter (OTC) derivatives. The introduction of the new law is meant to bring South Africa in line with international norms and standards.

The Act ensures that financial markets in South Africa operate fairly, efficiently and transparently to promote investor confidence. It also ensures that the legislative and regulatory framework is brought in line with the recommendations of international standard-setting bodies such as the

G20, Financial Stability Board, Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and the International Organisation of Securities Commissions.

The Act primarily focuses on the licensing and regulation of exchanges, central securities depositories, clearing houses, trade repositories and market infrastructure, as well as the prohibition of insider trading and other market abuses.

The Act also improves OTC trading in derivatives and does away with misleading and conflict-of-interest trading. This is one of several commitments made by the G20 countries.

To ensure that the market has adequate time to adapt to and comply with the new requirements, the regulations and rules that will give substance to the Financial Markets Act of 2012, will become fully operational following a transitional period.

Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CISes are investment structures where individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated by the Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

The South African CIS industry has recovered well after the financial crisis. The industry continued to benefit from strong investor confidence in the first quarter of 2013, attracting nett inflows of R47 billion.

The three consecutive quarters of record-breaking nett inflows for unit trusts and other local CISes resulted in the highest ever nett inflows for any rolling 12-month period when R166 billion in nett inflows was recorded for the year ended March 2013.

At the end of the first quarter of 2013, the local CIS industry managed assets of R1,28 trillion and offered investors 988 funds.

Financial advisers and intermediaries

The purpose of the FAIS Act of 2002, is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to certain clients, in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS Division, is responsible for regulating the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services to clients by FSPs, in respect of a wide range of financial products.

In terms of the provisions of the FAIS Act of 2002, before conducting any transaction, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB. Information on authorised FSPs may be obtained from the FSB website.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act of 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers, in terms of the Act, to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on Financial Service Providers

The Minister of Finance appointed the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function, is to investigate and report, or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act, 2002.

The advisory committee comprises a chairperson, a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes, established by Section Three of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act. They are appointed by the Minister after consultation with the board.

The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of financial service providers

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of the following FSPs:

- financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion
- those who offer discretionary intermediary services, in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking
- hedge-fund managers
- investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers)
- those who represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services, in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies), on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

Insurance companies

Insurance is an agreement between a policy-holder and an insurance company. It is divided into long and short-term insurance. In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998) and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998

(Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policyholders.

Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is an FSB committee responsible for combating market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa. The three forms of market abuse prohibited in South Africa are: insider trading, price manipulation and publication of false or misleading statements.

All three forms of market abuse are criminal contraventions. In addition, an offender may be referred to the FSB Enforcement Committee, which can impose unlimited penalties. In the case of insider trading contravention, such penalties are distributed to people who were prejudiced by the offending transactions.

Retirement funds

To encourage South Africans to save more, employer contributions to retirement funds will become an employee fringe benefit for tax purposes from April 2015.

Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27,5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income.

An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 will apply.

In addition, government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

Enforcement

The Enforcement Committee of the FSB adjudicates on all alleged contraventions of legislation, regulations, and codes of conduct administered by the FSB within the South African non-banking financial services industry.

The FSB administers the following Acts:

- CIS Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002)
- FSB Act of 1990, the FAIS Act of 2002
- Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act, 2001 (Act 28 of 2001)
- Financial Supervision of the Road Accident Fund Act, 1993, (Act 8 of 1993)
- Friendly Societies Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998)
- Long-Term Insurance Act of 1998
- Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Short-Term Insurance Act of 1990
- Supervision of the Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 32 of 1996)
- Securities Services Act, 2004 (Act 36 of 2004).

The committee considers cases of alleged contraventions of legislation administered by the FSB. The industries regulated by the FSB include: CISes; FSPs; insurance; nominee companies; retirement funds and friendly societies.

The committee may impose unlimited penalties, compensation orders and cost orders. Such orders are enforceable as if they were judgments of the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Government bonds

Retail bonds

Government issued retail bonds to encourage South African citizens to save and as a diversified source of funding. Retail bonds may be purchased from National Treasury, the South African Post Office and Pick n Pay stores countrywide. Since the introduction of RSA fixed-rate retail savings bonds in May 2004 and inflation-linked retail bonds in April 2007, the cumulative amount issued had reached R21,2 billion by the end of August 2013.

Domestic capital market bonds

Increased global demand for emerging markets' higher-yielding debt has led to rising international interest in South African government bonds. In the run-up to the inclusion of South African government bonds in the Citi World Government Bond Index from October 2012, interest in these bonds was very strong.

After the inclusion, however, non-residents' net purchases of local bonds dwindled. In the first nine months of 2013, non-residents purchased a net of only R18 billion's worth of domestic bonds, along with liquidity concerns, given the possible phasing out of stimulus measures.

Among the most traded government bonds in the market are the R157 (13,5%: 2015) and the R186 (10,5%: 2026). Although some upward trend was evident from May 2013, the daily yield on the R157 government bond averaged 5,68% in 2013 to September. The R186 government bond averaged 7,58% in 2013 to September. The average yield spread between the R186 and the R157 bonds widened to an average of about 190 basis points in the nine months to September 2013.

The break-even inflation rate – calculated as the differential between nominal bond yields on conventional government bonds and the real yields on inflation-linked government bonds within the ten-year maturity range – increased from an average of 5,88% in September 2012 to 6,33%

in September 2013. Similarly, the long-term break-even inflation rate (20-year) increased from an average of 6,02% in September 2012 to 6,40% in September 2013, owing to a more pronounced increase in the nominal yields on conventional government bonds.

Primary market

Net issues of fixed-interest securities in the South African primary bond market increased from R199 billion in 2011 to an annual record high of R269 billion in 2012. National government remained responsible for the bulk of the net issuances in the local bond market, consistent with its elevated funding needs. Government funding in the domestic primary market is, among others, effected through long-term market loans, which comprise fixed-income bonds, inflation-linked bonds, floating-rate notes and retail bonds.

The total nominal value of debt securities listed on the JSE Limited (JSE) increased by R136 billion in the first eight months of 2013 – with a contribution of R96 billion by national government – to reach R1,8 trillion at the end of August 2013.

By December 2013, three new domestic bonds had been issued – the two new fixed-income bonds, R2 030 (8,00%; 2030) and R2 037 (8,5%; 2037), and one new inflation-linked bond, R2 046 (2,5%: 2046).

They were well received by market participants, with their trading values contributing to the improved market turnover. The new issues were in line with announcements in the Budget Review 2013 and two more new fixed-income bonds are expected to be issued in the remainder of 2013/14.

International bonds

South Africa placed a US$2 billion 12-year global bond in the international capital markets in September 2013. The bond was priced at an interest of 5,875% and a spread of 315 basis points above the 10-year United States of America (USA) Treasury's benchmark bond.

The interest of 5,875% was 121 basis points higher than the coupon of the 12-year global dollar coupon issued in 2012 at 4,665%.

After reaching a spread of 287 basis points over the underlying US Treasury bond on 1 June 2012, the spread on the RSA global bond maturing in 2024 narrowed to 129 basis points on 9 January 2013, before widening to 224 basis points on 1 October. The new R2 025 bond narrowed to 254 basis points on 1 October 2013.

After net issues declined to R0,1 billion in 2012, rand-denominated bond issuance activity in international bond markets increased in 2013. This was due to more prominent non-resident issuer interest in rand-denominated bonds in the European bond markets.

Net issues of rand-denominated bonds in the European bond markets amounted to R11 billion in the first nine months of 2013. By contrast, in the Uridashi bond market, redemptions of rand-denominated bonds exceeded issues by R7,4 billion in the first nine months of 2013.

This resulted in total net issues of R3,5 billion in both markets over the nine months to September 2013.

Secondary market

The local bond market continued to benefit from prudent macro-economic policies, which saw the country through the global financial crisis in 2008. By December 2013, turnover of R16 trillion had been recorded in the bond market.

Non-residents contributed about 10% to total turnover in September 2013, while local investors added the remainder. The bond market capitalisation on the JSE amounted to R1,9 trillion in August 2013, with national government contributing the largest share of 62% to the total market capitalisation. Fixed-rate (including zero-coupon) bonds accounted for 65% of the total listing on the exchange, in terms of instrument composition, while inflation-linked and floating rate contributed 21% and 14%, respectively.

Exchange rates

Movements in the exchange rate of the rand remained highly volatile, with external and domestic developments having an ongoing effect. In the first quarter of 2013, the rand declined by about 5,7% against a basket of trading-partner currencies. The nominal exchange rate of the rand showed increased levels of volatility when the currency declined by about 6,6% in January 2013, and increased by 4,3% in February, before declining again by 3,2% in March.

The rand came under pressure towards the end of January, weakening to a level of R9,11800 against the US dollar, following the downgrading of South Africa's sovereign credit rating by Fitch rating agency and amid market concerns about global growth, owing to unresolved fiscal issues in the United States. On the domestic front, work stoppages in parts of the mining sector and a further widening in the current-account deficit exerted downward pressure on the rand in March 2013.

The exchange rate of the rand came under more significant pressure from May 2013 onwards, after having modestly benefited during April from the unveiling of large monetary stimulus by the Bank of Japan. The rand's performance

echoed a general sell-off in global financial markets, following the US Federal Reserve's statement that a slowdown in quantitative easing may begin sooner than previously anticipated, which prompted a sell-off in emerging-market currencies and commodity-led currencies.

Slowing growth in China and a downward revision of global growth forecasts compounded the rand's weakness. More specific to South Africa, increasing labour tensions in the mining sector, hedging activities related to renewable energy projects, weak domestic economic growth, concerns about a high fiscal budget deficit and the widening of the current-account deficit also had a negative effect on the rand. The nominal effective exchange rate of the rand consequently declined by 6,8% from the end of March 2013 to the end of June 2013. For the same period, the rand depreciated sharply by 8,9%, 7,2% and 7,6% against the euro, US dollar and British pound, respectively.

The exchange rate of the rand stabilised in July 2013 as concerns about the size of South Africa's current-account deficit subsided. When emerging-market currencies depreciated sharply against the US dollar during August 2013, as concerns about capital outflows from these countries intensified on expectations of tapering of quantitative easing by the US Fed, the rand depreciated to R10,4 against the US dollar. On a trade-weighted basis, the rand declined by 4,1% from the end of June 2013 to the end of August 2013.

In the first half of September 2013, the rand briefly appreciated to R9,55 against the US dollar as the emerging-market currencies appreciated broadly after the Fed delayed tapering its bond purchases programme.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange increased by 12,2% from US$19,5 billion in the first quarter of 2013 to US$21,9 billion in the second quarter. While both spot and forward transactions increased over this period, the increase can largely be explained by non-residents' participation in the swap market, which increased from an average of US$6,8 billion per day to US$7,6 billion per day over the period. This partly reflected foreign investors in the South Africa bond market hedging against the currency.

Exchange controls

Exchange Control Regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

Since 1994, there have been gradual exchange control reforms concerning individuals, corporates and institutional investors. The liberalisation has focused on progressively increasing the individual foreign capital allowance, increasing institutional investors' foreign exposure and allowing South African firms to raise capital and expand their operations offshore from a domestic base.

Under current exchange control regulations, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

South African individuals, for example, are currently able to transfer up to R4 million, per individual per calendar year, out of the country and invest it overseas. Additional allowances are available for travel and other defined activities.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd

The JSE Ltd is privately owned and funded, and governed by a board of directors. Its activities are licensed and regulated by two Acts of Parliament, namely the Stock Exchanges Control Act, 1985 (Act 1 of 1985), which governs the equities markets, and the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), which governs the derivatives markets.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE Ltd listings requirements, which ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. The JSE Ltd monitors applications for alterations to existing listings, and scrutinises company

In February 2013, the Financial Stability Board (FSB) welcomed the shift to a Twin Peaks model for South Africa to streamline responsibilities and elevate the importance of regulating market conduct.

The Twin Peaks approach entailed creating a prudential regulator housed in the South African Reserve Bank, and transforming the FSB into a dedicated regulator of market conduct to maintain and enhance the safety and soundness of regulated financial institutions.

disclosures to the public. It also provides the Stock Exchange News Service through which company news, including price-sensitive information, is distributed to the market.

The JSE Ltd has been bold in restructuring, in view of increasingly tough global competition, adopting new technologies and outsourcing aspects of its business.

The traditional open outcry market, in which traders jostled for deals on a noisy trading floor has now disappeared and been replaced by a less colourful, but faster, computer-driven, trading system (the Johannesburg equities trading screen-based system).

The JSE Ltd has been opened to corporate membership, resulting in a stampede by foreign banks, which have bought out most of the major local broking firms, using these as platforms for other financial services, such as corporate and government advisory work.

The electronic settlement system, Share Transactions Totally Electronic (Strate), has replaced the previous manual settlement method. Strate Ltd is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

The JSE Ltd's trading and information systems were replaced with the London Stock Exchange's (LSE) Sequence and the London Market Information Link or LMIL systems, branded JSE SETS and InfoWiz, respectively.

The trading engine and information dissemination feed-handler is hosted in London and connected remotely to the JSE Ltd 9 000 km away, via a transcontinental undersea cable and an innovative, integrated solutions design. More than 1 500 traders and information users access the system, using a sophisticated application service provider with sub-second response time.

The JSE Ltd has also aligned its equities trading model with that of Europe, and reclassified its instruments in line with the Financial Times of London Stock Exchange (FTSE) Global Classification System. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

One of the most reliable trading platforms worldwide now serves the investment community. The LSE can now disseminate trade information about instruments listed on the JSE Ltd to more than 104 000 trading terminals around the world, raising the profile of the JSE Ltd among the members of the international investor community.

Government Systems

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary.

The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as "distinctive, interdependent and interrelated."

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders.

It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to the building of a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals.

The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government is consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

Since 1994 a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process.

The website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, ministers and deputy ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The Presidency, July 2014	
President	Jacob Zuma
Deputy President	Cyril Ramaphosa

The President may select any number of ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

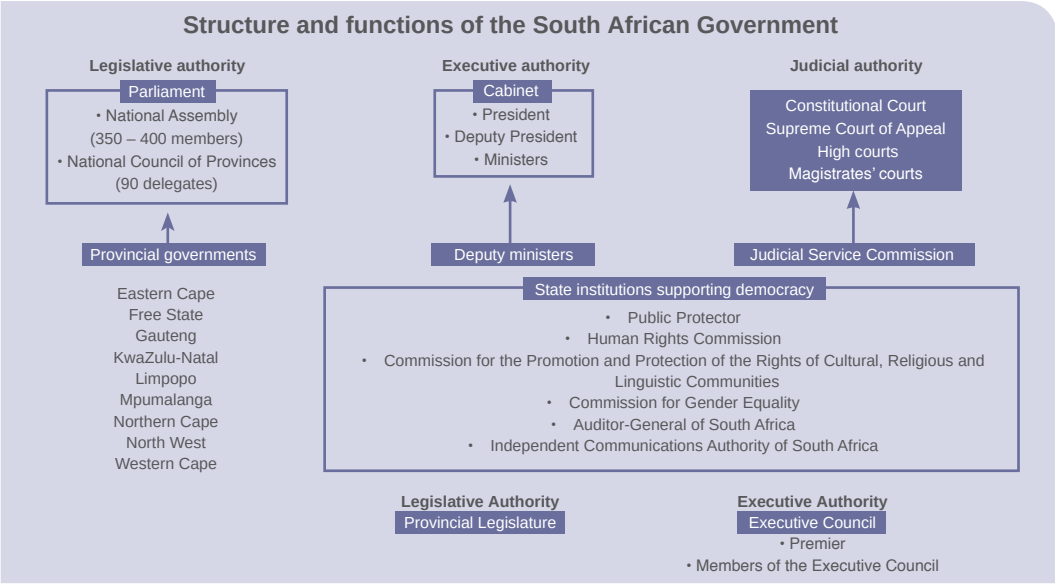
The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the speaker, assisted by the deputy speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate



from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance.

NCOP Online (*www.parliament.gov.za/ncop*) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations.

It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions.

The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Government clusters

Clusters were established to foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government's planning, decision-making and service delivery.

The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of clusters are to ensure alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes, and provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters function at different levels, namely ministerial, directors-general and communication There are seven clusters.

In March 2013, respective cluster ministers briefed members of the media on the content of the reports and elaborated on the progress made.

Ministers had entered into delivery agreements with President Jacob Zuma, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

The 12 outcomes identified by government include:

- improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all people in South Africa are and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive economic growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced
- a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa and world
- an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Transport (Chair)
- Public Enterprises (Deputy Chair)
- Communications
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Economic Development
- Energy
- Finance
- Human Settlements
- Public Works
- The Presidency: National Planning Commission
- Water and Environmental Affairs.

Economic Sectors and Employment Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Rural Development and Land Reform (Chair)
- Science and Technology (Deputy Chair)
- Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
- Communications
- Economic Development
- Finance
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Mineral Resources
- Public Enterprises
- Tourism
- Trade and Industry.

Governance and Administration Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Home Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Finance
- The Presidency: Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration.

Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Basic Education (Chair)
- Health (Deputy chair)
- Arts and Culture
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Science and Technology
- Sport and Recreation.

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at August 2014

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Senzeni Zokwana	Bheki Cele
Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Rejoice Mabudafhasi
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Faith Muthambi	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Pravin Gordhan	Obed Bapela Andries Nel
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Kebby Maphatsoe
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Madala Masuku
Energy	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Thembi Majola
Environmental Affairs	Edna Molewa	Barbara Thompson
Finance	Nhlanhla Nene	Mcebisi Jonas
Health	Aaron Motsoaledi	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education and Training	Blade Nzimande	Mduduzi Manana
Home Affairs	Malusi Gigaba	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Lindiwe Sisulu	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Nomaindia Mfeketo Luwellyn Landers
Justice and Correctional Services	Michael Masutha	Thabang Makwetla John Jeffery
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	Patekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources	Ngoako Ramatlhodi	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Nkosinathi Nhleko	Makhotso Sotyu
Public Enterprises	Lynne Brown	Gratitude Magwanishe
Public Service and Administration	Collins Chabane	Ayanda Dlodlo
Public Works	Thembelani Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Candith Mashego-Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Zanele kaMagwaza-Msibi
Small Business Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Elizabeth Thabethe
Social Development	Bathabile Dlamini	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport and Recreation	Fikile Mbalula	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	David Mahlobo	Ellen Molekane
Telecommunications and Postal Services	Siyabonga Cwele	Hlengiwe Mkhize
The Presidency: Performance Monitoring and Evaluation	Jeff Radebe	Buti Manamela
The Presidency: Women	Susan Shabangu	
Tourism	Derek Hanekom	Thokozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Rob Davies	Mzwandile Masina
Transport	Dipuo Peters	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Sanitation	Nomvula Mokonyane	Pamela Tshwete

Social Protection and Community Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Social Development (Chair)
- Public Works (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Environmental and Water Affairs
- Human Settlements
- Labour
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Transport
- Women, Youth, Children and People with Disabilities.

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation (Deputy Chair)
- Finance
- Trade and Industry
- Tourism
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Water and Environmental Affairs.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Justice and Constitutional Development (Chair)
- Police (Deputy Chair)
- Correctional Services
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Home Affairs
- State Security.

Izimbizo

The National Imbizo Focus Week ran from 10 to 17 June 2013 and saw ministers and deputy ministers, premiers, MECs, mayors and councillors meet with communities to discuss the struggle against substance abuse.

The intention was to scale up the national action plan against substance abuse.

The Imbizo formed part of the interventions aimed at entrenching South Africa's democratic, developmental state through participatory democracy.

The second National Imbizo Focus Week took place from 7 to 13 October 2013.

It provided a platform for national, provincial and local government executives and the public to interact face-to-face.

The Imbizo also celebrated successes and addressed challenges in implementing government programmes.

The focus week was held under the theme: "South Africa is much of a better place than it was in 1994."

Government representatives took part in, among others, door-to-door household profiling, walkabout or project visits, stakeholder dialogues and community engagements among other things.

Government expects these izimbizo to mobilise all role players and forge partnerships in the build-up towards the "20 Years of Freedom" celebrations in 2014.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the National Assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the NCOP rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments.

There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises three political principals: the President, the Deputy President, and the Minister of Performance, Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

In all R462,1 million of The Presidency's R1,1 billion budget for 2013/14 went to administration, R393,7 million to the National Youth Development Agency, R160 million to Brand South Africa, R77,7 million to the National Planning Commission; and R2,8 million for statutory allocation.

National Development Plan (NDP) 2030

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero and the reduction of inequality
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3
- providing affordable access to healthcare
- ensuring effective public transport.

The NDP offers a long-term socio-economic development road map.

Monitoring and evaluation

According to the Management Performance Assessment Tool (MPAT) report released by The Presidency in September 2013, 80% of government departments did not comply with service-delivery requirements.

The report, which measured the state of management practices in the Public Service over the 2012/13 financial year, included an assessment of all national and provincial government departments.

The MPAT measures departments against 29 management standards, awarding level one (red), level two (orange), level three (yellow), or level four (green) scores.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every four years.

All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote.

The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies
- ensure that those elections are free and fair
- declare the results of those elections
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations
- promote voter education
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

In October 2013, the IEC embarked on a voter registration drive at schools by hosting Schools Democracy Week in partnership with the Department of Basic Education to register young people to vote in the 2014 election.

This followed concerns that just 10% of those aged 18 and 19 had registered to vote.

A number of activities were also scheduled to take place after school, including registration drives, debates and town-hall style interactive sessions.

Programmes and initiatives

Presidential Hotline

As part of President Zuma's directive to create an interactive, accessible and responsive government, the Presidential Hotline was established in 2009. Members of the public can use the toll-free hotline to lodge queries or complaints relating to government services. The hotline is supported by a network of public liaison officers in national departments, provinces and municipalities.

Since its establishment, the hotline has served as an important source of information for government-wide performance monitoring and evaluation, and for monitoring the impact of government on citizens as it enables government to track issues that are important to citizens and respond accordingly.

Brand South Africa (Brand SA)

Charged with marketing South Africa at home and abroad, Brand SA's focus internationally is to positively influence and shape perceptions about South Africa among target audiences.

The new slogan, "South Africa: Inspiring New Ways," is set to represent the next phase of the country's development, where South Africa has moved from possibility to delivery, and is now an important regional power.

Internationally, Brand SA lobbies and networks extensively among global opinion leaders to shift perceptions about the country and the continent.

Being a member of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade bloc (BRICS), for example, provides a platform to engage and influence perceptions.

Brand SA also regularly brings groups of international journalists to the country to interact with the South African Government and business representatives, experience local life and culture, and learn about the country's latest technological developments.

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs is responsible for facilitating cooperative governance, to support all spheres of government and to assist the institution of traditional leadership with transforming itself into a strategic partner of government in the development of communities.

The best mechanism to build confidence between the people and municipalities is to address the following priority issues:

- accelerating service delivery
- promoting good governance
- enhancing sound financial management
- rolling out infrastructure development and effective maintenance
- intensifying the fight against corruption.

According to *Census 2011*, access to piped water in the dwelling or yard had increased since 1996 when only 60,7% of households reported access, compared to 73,4% in 2011. The percentage of households with no access to piped water decreased from 19,7% in 1996 to 8,8% in 2011.

Households that have flush toilets connected to the sewage system increased to 57% in *Census 2011*, from 55% reported in *Community Survey 2007*; households without toilets declined to 5,2% in *Census 2011*, from 8,3% reported in *Community Survey 2007*.

Households using electricity for lighting increased from 58,2% in 1996 to 84,7% in 2011, while those using paraffin and candles decreased over the same period from 12,7% to 3% and from 28,7% to 11,4%, respectively.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004), which regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and equitable valuation methods of properties, and for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies.
- The Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009), which was introduced in September 2009 and aims to extend the validity of a valuation roll and supplementary valuation rolls from four to six years.
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003), aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2002) which establishes a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.
- The Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011), aimed at professionalising local government for improved service delivery and performance management, while also instilling a people-centred local government mindset in municipalities.
- Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998), which provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to prepare, implement and review integrated development plans (IDPs) and establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems.
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998).
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998)*
- National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), which were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process. In September 2013, the National Traditional Affairs Bill was published in the *Government Gazette* for public comment. The amendment of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.

Budget

The Department of Cooperative Governance was allocated R56,12 billion, including transfers for 2013/14. The Department of Traditional Affairs was allocated R105 million.

The Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent (Misa) was allocated R252 million.

The Community Work Programme (CWP) programme was allocated R1,6 billion.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening cooperative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementation of the New Growth Path (NGP) in all spheres of government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF)

The PSDF was finalised in August 2012 to:

- be the spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- guide (metropolitan, district and local) municipal IDPs and spatial development frameworks and provincial and municipal framework plans
- help prioritise and align the investment and infrastructure plans of other provincial departments, as well as national departments' and parastatals' plans and programmes in the provinces
- provide clear signals to the private sector about desired development directions
- increase predictability in the development environment, for example by establishing "no-go," "conditional" and "go" areas for development and redress of the spatial legacy of apartheid.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997) up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The DoCogta aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at August 2014

Eastern Cape	
Phumulo Masualle	Premier
Mandla Makupula	Education and Training
Sakhumzi Somyo	Finance and Economic Development
Phumza Dyantyi	Health
Helen August-Sauls	Human Settlements, Safety and Liaison
Fikile Xasa	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Thandiswa Marawu	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Mlibo Qoboshiyane	Rural Development and Agrarian Reform
Nancy Silwayi	Social Development, Women, Youth and People with Disabilities
Pemmy Majodina	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture
Free State	
Sekgobelo Elias Magashule	Premier
Mamiki Qabathe	Agriculture and Rural Development
Olly Mlamleli	Cooperative Governance, Traditional Affairs and Human Settlements
Mosebenzi Zwane	Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Tate Pule Makgoe	Education
Elzabe Rockman	Finance
Benny Malakoane	Health
Seiso Mohai	Provincial Treasury
Butana Komphela	Police, Roads and Transport
Sam Mashinini	Public Works and Rural Development
Sefora Sisi Ntombela	Social Development
Leeto Mathabo	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Gauteng	
David Makhura	Premier
Faith Mazibuko	Agriculture, Environment, Rural and Social Development
Sizakele Emelda Nkosi-Malobane	Community Safety
Lebogang Maile	Economic Development
Panyaza Lesufi	Education
Barbara Creecy	Finance
Qedani Dorothy Mahlangu	Health
Jacob Mamabolo	Human Settlements and Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Nandi Mayathula-Khoza	Infrastructure Development
Molebatsi Bopape	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Ismail Vadi	Roads and Transport
KwaZulu-Natal	
Edward Senzo Mchunu	Premier
Cyril Xaba	Agriculture, Environmental and Rural Development
Ntombikayise Sibhidla-Saphetla	Arts, Culture, Sport and Recreation
Nomusa Dube	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Mike Mabuyakhulu	Economic Development and Tourism
Peggy Nkonyeni	Education
Belinda Scott	Finance
Dr Sibongiseni Maxwell Dhlomo	Health
Ravi Pillay	Human Settlements and Public Works
Weziwe Gcotyelwa Thusi	Social Development
Thembinkosi Willies Mchunu	Transport and Community Safety and Liaison

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at August 2014

Limpopo	
Stan Mathabatha	Premier
Joyce Matshoge	Agriculture and Rural Development
Makoma Makhurupetje	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
Seaparo Sekoati	Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
Stanley Bhebhe	Education
Ishmael Kgetjepe	Health
Rudolph Phala	Provincial Treasury
Jerry Ndou	Public Works, Roads and Infrastructure
Mapula Mokaba	Transport, Safety and Liaison
Joyce Mashamba	Social Development and Welfare
Nandi Ndalane	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mpumalanga	
David Mabuza	Premier
Andries Gamede	Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration
Vusi Shongwe	Community Safety, Security and Liaison
Refilwe Mtsweni	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Norah Mahlangu-Mabena	Culture, Sport and Recreation
Regina Mhaule	Education
Eric Kholwane	Finance, Economic Development and Tourism
Gillion Mashego	Health
Violet Siwela	Human Settlements
Dumisile Nhlengethwa	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Nomsa Mtsweni	Social Development
Northern Cape	
Sylvia Lucas	Premier
Norman Shushu	Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
Alvin Botes	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
Grizelda Cjiekella-Lecholo	Education
Magdalene Chotelo	Environment and Nature Conservation
John Block	Finance, Economic Affairs and Tourism
Maccollen Jack	Health
Dawid Rooi	Roads and Public Works
Simon Sokatsha	Social Development
Lebogang Motlhaping	Sport, Arts and Culture
Masa Bartlett	Transport, Safety and Liaison
North West	
Supra Mahumapelo	Premier
Gaoage Molapisi	Community Safety and Transport Management
Tebogo Modise	Culture, Arts and Traditional Affairs
Wendy Matsemela	Education and Sports Development
Magome Masike	Health
Collen Maine	Local Government and Human Settlement
Sambatha Madoda	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Manketsi Tlhape	Rural, Environmental and Agricultural Development
Ontlametse Mochware	Social Development
Desbo Mohono	Tourism
Wendy Nelson	Treasury and Enterprise Development

In his State of the Nation Address in February 2013, President Zuma announced government's plan to establish a Presidential Remuneration Commission that would investigate the appropriateness of the remuneration and conditions of service provided by the State to all employees. He said that the first priority would be teachers, because of education's status as an apex priority since 2009, and its standing as an essential service to the nation.

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at August 2014

Western Cape	
Helen Zille	Premier
Dan Plato	Community Safety
Momafrench Mbombo	Cultural Affairs and Sport
Debbie Schafer	Education
Ivan Meyer	Finance
Alan Winde	Finance, Economic Development and Tourism
Theuns Botha	Health
Bonginkosi Madikizela	Human Settlements
Anton Bredell	Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
Albert Fritz	Social Development
Donald Grant	Transport and Public Works

- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the LGSA, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipality. There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single-employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent (Misa)

At the end of March 2013, Misa deployed 68 technical consultants and 24 service providers that support 100 priority municipalities. During 2012/13, Misa technical consultants accelerated 862 infrastructure projects amounting to R12,7 billion. A total of 36 005 jobs were created through Misa.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy (LGTAS)

The LGTAS was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified. These are:

- service delivery

- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption.

The department aims to review all pieces of legislation that impede service delivery. In this regard, more than 300 sections of legislation that fall under this category have been identified and reviews undertaken.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

Community Work Programme

The CWP is a government programme aimed at address, poverty and the high unemployment rate.

The programme is not an employment solution for participants, but serves as an employment safety net, which provides them with a minimum number of regular days of work. This is typically two days a week or eight days a month, thereby supplementing their existing livelihoods by offering a basic level of income security. It is an ongoing programme that complements rather than replaces government's existing social grants programme.

Local economic development (LED)

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised for the sake of achieving economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Municipal Demarcation Board (MDB)

The MDB is an independent authority responsible for the determination of municipal boundaries. The board's status as an independent authority is also protected by Section 3 of the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 and various judgements by the Constitutional Court.

In addition to the determinations and re-determinations of municipal boundaries, the MDB is also mandated by legislation to declare the district management areas; to delimit wards for local elections; and to assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, in terms of the Organised Local Government Act of 1997.

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the Presidential Coordinating Council, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

Salga held its Human Resource Management and Development Strategy conference in Midrand in March 2013. Salga indicated that it aimed to turn municipalities into professional and responsive entities with its Local Government Human Resource Management and Development Strategy.

The strategy is intended to help municipalities make better use of the human capital at their disposal, for them to be able to fulfil their important objective of accelerating service delivery as well as promoting development in local government as a whole.

The strategy emphasises employing individuals who are prepared to extend themselves in serving the needs of people, are professional, and are constantly learning and developing themselves.

Municipalities have become more responsible in reporting their financial position, with all 278 municipalities having submitted Section 71 financial information to the National Treasury for the last two quarterly reports.

One of Salga's achievements was the establishment of public accounts committees on municipalities, which allowed councils themselves to exercise accountability. By 2013, 93% or 258 municipalities had accounts committees and 95% had audit committees.

Spending of the MIG was at 79% for 2012/13, while spending by municipalities of the Urban Settlements Development Grant, which assists municipalities to upgrade informal settlements, improved on the 90% spending level of 2011/12.

Municipalities receiving direct conditional grants reported average expenditure of 88,4%.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act of 200, was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre (NDMC) and functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster risk.

South Africa has also made significant progress in implementing the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint which aims to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

Through the NDMC, the Department of Cooperative Governance registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) for a national certificate in disaster risk management.

The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

Traditional affairs

In September 2013, Cabinet approved the publication of a Bill that would pave the way for the Khoisan people to be recognised.

The Bill makes statutory provisions for the recognition of the Khoisan and also addresses limitations of existing legislation relating to traditional leadership and governance.

The Bill will contribute to the NDP's key target relating to broadening social cohesion and unity while addressing the inequalities of the past.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the rural-development strategy.

It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leader-ship.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of issues, which include policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance.

Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader and headmen and women), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)

The GCIS's mandate is to serve as the central communications agency of a relatively new democratic government leading the reconstruction and development of post-apartheid South Africa namely a government communication system that mobilises the nation behind the NDP, showcases progress and invites South Africans to work together to address challenges is critical to the achievement of Vision 2030.

The GCIS is responsible for informing all citizens of South Africa about government's work and how they can participate in governance and consolidating the country's democracy.

The GCIS has a responsibility to act in the interest of all South Africans, without discrimination and to communicate effectively in all official languages and reach all communities in urban, peri-urban and rural areas.

The GCIS has reached millions of South Africans through different platforms which include publications, the news media, radio, television and izimbizo.

Cabinet directed the department to reposition the Thusong Service Centres programme to widen government access.

Repositioning means the department, working with partner departments, will have to look at the possibility of identifying the suitable structure, platforms and partnerships to effectively fulfil the mandate of the programme, which is not only limited to information.

In 2013, the department expanded citizens' access to information and services, including the use of integrated mobile units where key service departments sign up people for services and provide information. Mothers and grandmothers in urban and peri-urban areas are now able to register for social grants, and apply for identity documents and certificates through Home Affairs within their localities.

The GCIS continues to enhance existing communication platforms and products, and initiate new ones to ensure that targeted audiences and communities receive relevant information through various means.

It is also establishing partnerships with strategic stakeholders within the three spheres of government, and within broader society, to achieve more.

Using various platforms, just over 3 000 communication projects have been implemented in the most remote corners of the country, reaching more than 23 million people since 1994.

The partnership with the Phelophepa health train of Transnet alone visited 24 train stations in four provinces and served around 380 000 beneficiaries.

The GCIS supports municipalities in their communication, with preference given to municipalities that are part of the LGTAS, to close the gap between municipalities and communities, which sometimes contributes to the factors behind unlawful protests in some communities.

The department has a mandate to ensure that government's vision and policies are clearly understood in the public service. The GCIS

coordinates the Internal Communicators' Forum, to ensure messages disseminated across the various channels and outlets managed by departments are coherent.

Communicating government information is not the primary business of the public media. *Vuk'uzenzele*, a free national government newspaper, continues to gain traction among its target audience with a monthly circulation of 1,7 million.

In 2012/13, some 20,4 million copies of *Vuk'uzenzele* were distributed in deep rural, rural and peri-urban areas. *Vuk'uzenzele* is the only newspaper in the country available in Braille and all official languages. The online version of the newspaper is due for further enhancement and improved usability. The online edition has attracted a remarkable 483 533 hits since April 2013.

SAnews.gov.za produces hard news and human-interest features, and carries many exciting pictures, video content on YouTube. It is also available on Facebook and Twitter.

The government news agency has become more popular with the public as opposed to the media and it will continue to be marketed to the broader public as a complement to South Africa's rapidly diversifying news and information mix.

The GCIS, through its media-buying operation, continues to support the financial viability of a diverse community media sector, by placing over R37 million in advertising in the community press, radio and television.

The milestones of 20 Years of Freedom, the fifth democratic general election and the millennium development goals (MDGs) are among the important topics covered in 2014.

Budget

Over the medium term, expenditure is expected to increase from R396,7 million in 2013/14 to R430,8 million in 2015/16. The increased spending will mainly be in the administration programme and will be used for information technology (IT) costs and office accommodation costs. The GCIS was allocated additional funding of R19,1 million over the medium term.

As an additional savings measure approved by Cabinet, the GCIS budget was reduced by R3,9 million in 2013/14, R8,3 million in 2014/15 and R13,1 million in 2015/16.

Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA)

The MDDA was set up by an Act of Parliament, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002) to enable historically disadvantaged communities and people not adequately served by the media to gain access to the media. Its beneficiaries were community media and small commercial media.

To achieve its objective, the MDDA encourages:

- ownership and control of, and access to, media by historically disadvantaged communities and historically diminished indigenous language and cultural groups
- the channelling of resources to community and small commercial media
- human resource development and capacity-building in the media industry, especially among historically disadvantaged groups
- research regarding media development and diversity.

Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA)

The DPSA is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for the Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

This mandate has evolved over the years from transforming and modernising the Public Service through the development and implementation of policies and frameworks, to providing implementation support to ensure compliance, improve service delivery and strengthen monitoring and evaluation.

In terms of the Public Service Act of 1994, as amended, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees
- the health and wellness of employees
- information management
- electronic government in the Public Service
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other intervention to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The DPSA has identified five focus areas that will form part of the overall work of the Public Service and Administration Portfolio over the next four-year period. These will serve as the main strategic indicators that will point to whether the Public Service is effective, efficient and development-oriented.

They are:

- services rendered with speed
- services easily accessible to citizens

- services provided at lower cost
- appropriately skilled public servants to render services.
- competitive conditions of service for public servants and the achievement of labour peace.
- no corruption
- a positive impact on the lives of people and the economy.

The Minister of Public Service and Administration and union leaders launched the Public Service Charter in August 2013. The charter is a commitment between the State as the employer and labour, which seeks to professionalise and encourage excellence in the public service and improve service delivery. It also introduces service standards in the public service, with a call to public servants to meet and exceed them.

Anti-corruption bureau

The Minister of Public Service and Administration launched the anti-corruption bureau to fast-track disciplinary cases in the public sector. The bureau would form part of amendments to the Public Service Act of 1994.

The amendments also include banning all public servants from doing business with the government.

Cabinet and provinces have adopted a manual on procedures for recruiting, retaining and dealing with those officials that resign.

Uniform standards will be applied to all public servants across government.

The bureau will conduct investigations, institute disciplinary proceedings and work with existing law enforcement agencies, such as the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), and the other related agencies such as, Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) and South African Revenue Service (Sars).

Criminal cases will be referred to law enforcement agencies.

The bureau also has to provide technical assistance and advisory support to deal with disciplinary matters in the public administration, while ensuring that the public sector applies uniform disciplinary standards.

A case management system allows officials to monitor the progress of cases to ensure that they are finalised speedily. By 2014, an agreement was already in place with the NPA to ensure that whistle-blowers were protected.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- Public Service Act of 1994 as amended by Public Service Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 30 of 2007)
- State Information Technology Agency (Sita) Act, 2002 (Act 38 of 2002)
- Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000)
- Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- Public Service Laws Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 47 of 1997)
- Public Service Laws Second Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 93 of 1997)
- Public Service Regulations, 2001, as amended 31 July 2012.

Role players

Community development workers (CDWs)

During 2013, CDWs were able to link early childhood development centres with programmes of the Department of Social Development. In the area of HIV and AIDS, CDWs disseminated user-friendly information on these conditions and mobilised communities to actively participate in HIV and AIDS-related awareness programmes including World AIDS Day.

To promote food security, CDWs identified indigent households and mobilised them to benefit from the departments of agriculture and rural development's food security programmes.

To contribute to job creation, CDWs played a role in identifying and linking unemployed youths to government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and Community Works Programme.

To empower CDWs with information on government priorities, the department convened a national CDW conference for 500 CDWs from all provinces in March 2013. In 2013/14, the department highlighted the role of CDWs as agents of participatory democracy by emphasising their functions which include:

- communicating government and other information to communities in an accessible way
- providing feedback to government regarding community experiences of service delivery and governance
- providing early warning to government of any obvious reduction in service standards and performance that could lead to the collapse or significant impairment of overall service functions

The Presidential Remuneration Commission, announced by President Jacob Zuma in the State of the Nation Address, would ensure that there was a fair, equitable and efficient remuneration system in the Public Service.

The commission reviewed the remuneration and conditions of service policy in the Public Service and would make recommendations concerning issues such as a suitable job classification framework for nurses, doctors, teachers and statisticians to establish the link between pay and responsibilities of specific jobs.

- reporting any corruption or irregularity encountered within the sphere of government, government departments, community organisations or the private sector.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked with and empowered to, among other things, investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service. This mandate entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof, of government programmes.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration, as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles
- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complies constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
- either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
  - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
  - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
  - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advise national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

The Government Leadership Summit held in Pretoria in April 2013 was told that a productive civil service could help tackle the socio-economic challenges facing the country.

An effective public service had to develop a deeper understanding of the constitutional imperatives and government mandate of providing a better life for the country's citizens.

This would make it easier for government to develop the necessary skills in its human capital to deal with the challenges faced by South Africans across the board.

The summit aimed to create a platform for sharing views on the professionalisation of the public service, and finding potential solutions to improving the delivery of quality public services by building a public service that is devoted to serving citizens and government.

Government Employees Medical Aid Scheme (GEMS)

While fixing the Public Service, the department had to had to start by building a healthy, safe working environment for all public servants because, ensuring a healthy workforce and a sound and enabling working environment is essential for constructing a capable developmental public service.

Membership of GEMS continues to grow. The target for 2013 was 750 000 principal members of which 250 000 should be employees on salary levels 1 to 5.

Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises (SOEs) to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices for them to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of rural development, accelerated service delivery at local government level, as well as human settlement.

State Information Technology Agency (Sita)

Sita consolidates and coordinates the State's IT resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and improve interoperability.

Sita is committed to government's IT strategy, which seeks to leverage economies of scale, enhance the interoperability of government systems, ensure system security, eliminate duplication and advance Black Economic Empowerment. Its turnaround strategy would see Sita develop into an agency able to successfully deliver e-government services.

Government Information Technology Officers Council (Gitoc)

The Gitoc advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery.

Its membership consists of the chief information officers from national departments and premiers' offices.

The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement guidelines and e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

National School of Government (NSG)

The NSG (previously Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy) offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local level of government.

This includes training of new public service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates, preparing them for public service employment opportunities.

The school is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed public service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos.

It will nurture a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation, in pursuit of a performance-oriented public service.

Core training will not be outsourced, but will be performed internally.

The school will provide everything from adult basic education and training to higher education courses, and will be registered to carry out the necessary accreditation.

The school is to be run like a customer-focused business, with participants having to pay tuition fees. It is funded by PSeta and skills development levies are drawn from departments' payrolls.

All new public servants will be required to undergo induction training.

Programmes and projects

Continental Capacity Development Programme

The DPSA continues to provide coordination for the implementation of the Continental Capacity Development Programme.

South Africa is engaged in several post-conflict interventions in several countries, namely:

- the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC): developing and implementing the Anti-Corruption Framework, the public service Census and capacity-building programmes
- Burundi: rebuilding and strengthening its Public Service for it to run effectively and implementing capacity-building programmes
- Rwanda: capacity-building programmes and leadership development
- South Sudan: capacity-building in human resources and enhancing legislative and policy review.
- For the first time, government included the participation of traditional leaders as one of the sectors in the Africa Peer Review Mechanism process. This move was necessitated by the fact that 70% of South Africa's population is rural.
- Through the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, South Africa was asked to assist in developing a framework for civil society's participation in the review of government programmes.

Public Service Month

South Africa marks Public Service Month in September each year.

It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery.

Public Service Month is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day. It takes place on 23 June every year.

Batho Pele

The *Batho Pele* campaign, aimed at improving service delivery to the public, was implemented in October 1997 and revitalised during the 2012 Public Service Month.

Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles were derived and made known in a White Paper as the principles for transforming public service delivery, which are:

- regular consultation with customers
- set service standards
- increased access to services
- higher levels of courtesy
- more and better information about services
- increased openness and transparency about services
- remedying failures and mistakes
- giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele Awards

Hard-working and dedicated public servants, those doing their bit behind the scenes to make the country a better place over the last 20 years of democracy, were given their time to shine in November 2013, at the inaugural Batho Pele Excellence Awards.

The winners were:

- Dr Kelly Gate, a surgeon from the Bethesda Hospital in KwaZulu-Natal, won the Best Overall Batho Pele Award and gold for Best Public Service Leader of the Year.
- Former Chairperson of the Public Service Commission, Professor Stan Sangweni; South Africa's oldest teacher, Nontsikelelo Qwelani and former Secretary of Parliament, Ambassador Sindiso Mfenyana, were honoured with The Public Service Lifetime Achiever Awards.
- Nosipho Ncaba, Director-General (DG) of the Department of Environmental Affairs, scooped the award for Best National Head of Department.
- Constable Mapule Tshepe from Kagiso Police Station won the Best National Frontline Service Award.
- The Department of Science and Technology received an award for Best Functioning National Department.
- The Department of Community Safety in the Western Cape won the Best Functioning Provincial Department Awards.
- The Best Implemented Project of the Year Award went to the KwaZulu-Natal Schools Environmental Education Programme.
- The National Department of Public Enterprises scooped the award for Best Department on Professional Ethics.
- The Department of Cooperative Governance, Housing and Traditional Affairs in Limpopo was awarded Best Public Service Creative Innovator of the Year for its New Engine Server.

The awards will be extended to cover the entire public service. It is hoped that the awards will reinforce the diligence of public servants and the compassion they show to people.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

By May 2013, South Africa was well on track with the creation of an Assets Register intended to accurately reflect for the first time the State's assets.

To establish an Immovable Assets Register, the records of 180 000 land parcels, which ascribed custodianship to a responsible department or level of government, were investigated.

A physical verification process started in July 2013 and by 31 March 2015 an Immovable Assets Register was expected to be completed.

Still waiting to be completed was the allocation of custodianship of 4 500 land parcels, while about 24 000 land parcels also had to be vested.

This process would be rounded off by March 2016. With a sustainable register of State immovable assets in place, the department has at its disposal the tools to leverage a massive portfolio for economic development.

The DPW manages 2 788 leased properties in South Africa, all of which have been reviewed.

Of these 1 316 needed attention, revision or renewal, while 365 have already been addressed.

Recommendations for the remaining 951 leases were expected to be in place by the end of June 2013.

The DPW experienced challenges when it opted for a turnaround project to rebuild the department.

A Business Improvement Unit was created to drive this process.

The core of this unit is located in the office of the DG to ensure that the process is not derailed in the event of the Minister being recalled.

The turnaround strategy homed in on five areas, including developing a credible register of State immovable assets, auditing leases, and reducing fraud and corruption.

Working closely with the SIU, the department investigated a number of irregular leases and projects, with 23 out of a total of 40 investigations completed.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP remains an effective part of government's response to the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality.

Through the EPWP, projects such as building low-cost bridges over rivers, were making a real difference to people's lives.

The initial target in the second phase of the EPWP, for the period 2009 to 2014, was to create 4,5 million work opportunities.

This target had been increased to nearly five million new work opportunities, with a special emphasis on unemployed youth and women.

Some 8 000 youth were recruited for artisan training to be employed by the national and provincial branches of the Department of Public Works.

The projects carried out by the EPWP sought to improve the quality of life of poor communities, in particular.

Road maintenance projects; the Working for Water projects, which also involve the removal of alien vegetation; Home Community Based Care projects; the Community Safety Programme and a cemetery maintenance programme piloted in rural municipalities are among the projects that made a positive impact on the lives of poor communities.

Departments should investigate an expanded role for the EPWP in the roll-out of the Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs), and

ensure that government departments and SOEs all use the EPWP and labour-intensive methodology to maximise job creation.

Budget

The departmental budget allocation was R6,2 billion in 2013/14. The department's adjusted baseline reflects the ongoing reorganisation and includes the reprioritisation of R827 million to the Administration and the Immovable Asset Management programmes to provide for the implementation of the turnaround programme in the department.

Capital projects created some 40 000 jobs during 2013/14.

Some 300 capital projects were expected to be completed by the end of March 2014.

The erosion of core professional services in the department has negatively affected its ability to deliver on its mandate. The department secured a budget appropriation of R66 million to fill 88 out of 219 vacant and unfunded core professional positions.

Department of Home Affairs (DHA)

The DHA is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates. This goes beyond merely issuing documents. It encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

The most important strategy is to capacitate staff and establish a new culture and values through the organisation. The phased roll-out of the smart ID card was launched on Nelson Mandela Day, 18 July 2013. The smart ID cards will eliminate the fraudulent use of fake or stolen IDs, as they are nearly impossible to duplicate or counterfeit. The new smart ID card will have a microchip, the specifications for which cannot be disclosed for security reasons. The microchip will house the necessary biometric data unique to every individual. The information on the chip will be laser-engraved to prevent tampering.

It would take between six and eight years for all South Africans to get smart ID cards, which would replace green ID books.

The department was in the process of retrofitting 27 regional offices with technology, so that applicants' information could be captured on the spot. The department will expand the number of offices in 2014 to over 140.

The machines that would print the new smart ID cards, were named after women veterans who led the Women's March to the Union Buildings in 1956 – Helen Joseph, Lilian Ngoyi, Sophie de Bruyn and Rahima Moosa.

The first issue of a smart ID card is free of charge, but cards issued subsequently cost R140, which is the fee for the green ID book. The department expects to replace six million a year or 500 000 a month. That means that the smart card machines will produce 3 000 per hour, or 24 000 in an eight-hour day, or 480 000 a month. This rate of production can be increased in future, if required, by adding a second eight-hour daily shift to bring production to 960 000 per month or nearly 12 million cards a year.

The national roll-out of the new smart ID cards was expected to cost about R5,34 billion. This was based on the 38,2 million IDs registered in the National Population Register as at May 2013.

Budget

The department's budget for the 2013/14 financial year was set at R6,7 billion. Departmental programmes received R4,8 billion, of which R1,8 billion was allocated to the provinces. The Film and Publication Board received R82 million. The Electoral Commission received R1,6 billion. The Government Printing Works received R134 million.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995)
- Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010)
- The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010)
- Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998)
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), as amended by the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004)
- Immigration Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 13 of 2011) which provides for, among others, revising provisions relating to the Immigration Advisory Board

- Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998) gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), which provides for a stricter immigration policy to control illegal immigration. Implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003; the Act was later amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills
- The Refugee Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 12 of 2011), which contains certain amendments to eliminate abuse of the asylum system and redefines in a clear and transparent manner the criteria for refugees seeking asylum
- South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof.

In October 2010, the National Assembly adopted the South African Citizenship Amendment and Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bills. The Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010) seeks to streamline the procedures related to the following:

- who, other than parents, should register the birth of a child, including the next-of-kin or a legal guardian
- the registration of orphans and abandoned children
- simplifying the process for the change of surnames of children and adults
- paternity, including steps to be followed when a mother registers a child under one father and later changes to another
- registration of birth after 30 days
- registration of adopted children to ensure alignment to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010) amends provisions of the South African Citizenship Act of 1995 that deal with citizenship by birth and naturalisation, and the loss of citizenship in terms of the mandate of the DHA.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act of 2010, among others, ensures that a child:

- born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent
- born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while they are minors, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship, in accordance with international law and practice.

Citizenship

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption, in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

National Population Register

To encourage parents to register their babies within 30 days of delivery, 344 hospitals, clinics and healthcare facilities were connected to the DHA in 2013. Officials visited 88 hospitals and other healthcare centres for collection of registration forms.

Immigration

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence and departure from South Africa. The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment
- temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) are facilitated
- ensure that tourism is promoted

- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories.

In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Government Gazette,* after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Act provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations
- the designation of ports of entry
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing
- the transmission of passenger name record information
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence
- revising penal provisions.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

South Africa also signed visa waiver agreements with Belgium, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Italy, Panama and Spain, in April 2013.

With a view to enhancing economic, cultural and humanitarian ties, South Africa signed visa waiver agreements with several countries in February 2013.

An agreement was signed with the Benelux States of Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg on the exemption of visa requirements for holders of diplomatic, official and service passports.

An agreement was also signed with Italy on the exemption of visa requirements for holders of valid diplomatic and service passports.

South Africa and Spain signed an agreement regarding visa requirements for holders of diplomatic passports and South Africa signed an agreement with Panama concerning reciprocal exemption from visa requirements for holders of diplomatic, official, consular and special passports.

Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods, could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission (ATA) convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors companies and individuals can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted,

In March 2013, the Department of Home Affairs stopped issuing abridged birth certificates and now only issues unabridged certificates. The unabridged certificates are issued on the spot, thus reducing turnaround time. The unabridged certificates contain the parents' particulars in full – identity numbers, names in full, place of birth and citizenship – at the time of the baby's birth.

An unabridged birth certificate is required for overseas travel, claiming citizenship by descent and applying for permanent residence, as well as nationally for insurance claims or any other purpose where proof is required of the identity of the individual's parents.

removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria.

The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time.

The department will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act of 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitors' permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relatives' permits
- work permits with the following categories:
  - quota work permits
  - general work permits
  - intra-company transfer work permits
  - exceptional skills work permits
  - corporate work permits
  - retired person permits
  - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements may proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such people can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may obtain visitors' permits at a port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for this period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their country of origin/residence. In countries where there are no representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them. The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, at the nearest regional/district office of the DHA where the applicant is employed.

Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest regional/district office of the DHA in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the DG of the DHA, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

Asylum seekers

In June 2013, the Minister of Home Affairs reconfirmed the department's intention to ensure that applications for asylum in South Africa are adjudicated more efficiently, while providing effective and humane administrative assistance to genuine refugees.

With a view to ensuring South Africa is able to contribute to making the lives of refugees and asylum seekers more humane, steps were taken to process applications more efficiently and fairly.

The department reviewed its procedures and implemented a fast-track capacity to process application status.

The annual commemoration of World Refugee Day as declared by the UN High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) takes place in June. Consistent with its intention over the last few years to highlight the plight of refugees, the UNHCR declared the theme for 2013 as "One family torn apart by war is one too many".

The department strengthened its partnerships with international organisations, including the UNHCR. This extends to finding durable solutions for refugees after the UN has declared a cessation and they are able to return to their homeland.

Government liaised closely with neighbouring countries as part of developing a regional response to asylum seeker and refugee management within the SADC.

Removal of undesirable people

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the DG of the DHA.

Role players

Government Printing Works (GPW)

The GPW, a division of the DHA, is a South African security printing specialist that deals with the printing of passports, visas, birth certificates, smart ID-cards and examination materials, as well as government stationery and publications, such as tender bulletins and government gazettes.

It does this by continuously updating its security printing technology and today, boasts a new state-of-the-art facility that has been benchmarked internationally and is widely divergent from its humble beginnings.

Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to other government departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service, and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

Learning Academy

The Learning Academy deals with issues of learning and development, research, knowledge and information management within Home Affairs. The academy has three main sections, namely:

- Learning Programme Delivery
- Research and Information Management
- Quality and Stakeholder Management.

It forms part of the support for the department's core business of offering immigration and civic services for South Africa.

The academy has registered the National Certificate of Home Affairs Services with the SAQA. This qualification has three specialisations, namely: Refugee Affairs, Immigrations and Civic Services. The department is accredited by the Pseta as a site for learning, allowing the Learning Academy to enrol learners for the registered home affairs qualifications.

The academy also offers generic learning and development such as customer services, management development, programmes and training in uniform processes and procedures of the services offered by the department.

Managing research in the DHA entails coordinating research projects that external scholars and researchers want to conduct on the department.

The Research Management Unit also identifies research areas within the department that can assist in better delivery of the department's services.

Health

South Africa is making progress in improving the health status of the nation. Free primary healthcare (PHC) for children and pregnant mothers has had a significant, positive impact, in terms of immunisation and child nutrition.

South Africa's leadership in turning the tide against the HIV and AIDS epidemic was acknowledged by United Nations Programme on HIV and AIDS (UNAIDS) in its February 2013 publication. The country has one of the largest antiretroviral (ARV) programmes, with some two million people on treatment.

As a result, data from the Rapid Mortality Surveillance system shows that South Africa's life expectancy has increased to 60 years, exceeding the 2014 targets. Infant and child mortality rates are also decreasing.

Inequality and the quality of healthcare remain an area of concern. This applies also to the number of mothers who die due to direct and indirect factors related to pregnancy.

The Department of Health (DoH) implemented a two-pronged approach to overhaul the health system namely by having the health system focus on PHC and by improving the functionality and management of the health system. To this end the department put measures in place to ensure that the health system is managed by appropriately trained and qualified managers.

The initial focus was on hospital chief executive officers, senior managers and district managers. Their skills and competencies are assessed independently.

The DoH has an overall responsibility for healthcare in the country, with a specific responsibility for public-sector healthcare. The department's priority is to improve the health status of the entire population and to realise its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this, it has identified four strategic outputs:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality
- combating HIV and AIDS and decreasing the burden of tuberculosis (TB)
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

These focal areas are consistent with the health-related millennium development goals (MDGs), which the United Nations (UN) expects nations of the world to attain by 2015.

Healthcare in South Africa is undergoing far-reaching reforms to revitalise and restructure the system and to ensure access to quality healthcare for all. In addition to its large public health sector, South Africa also has a smaller but fast-growing private sector.

Service-delivery agreement goals include the following:

- Life expectancy must increase from 54,9 years for males and 59,1 years for females to 58 years for males and 60 years for females by 2014.
- South Africa's maternal mortality ratio (MMR) must decrease to 100 or less per 100 000 live births by 2014. The MDGs *Country Report* estimates South Africa's MMR to be 625 per 100 000.
- The child mortality rate must decrease to 20 or less deaths per 1 000 live births by 2014.
- The TB cure rate must improve from 64% in 2007 to 85% by 2014.
- 80% of eligible people with HIV and AIDS must access ARV treatment (ART).
- New HIV infections must be reduced by 50% by 2014.

As part of improving the healthcare system and ensuring that all South Africans have equitable access to essential health services, government is introducing the National Health Insurance (NHI) System. It is a financing system that will ensure that all South Africans, including legal long-term residents, are provided with essential healthcare, regardless of their employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

Life expectancy

Mortality in South Africa continues to decline. However, TB still ranks as the number one leading cause of death in the country, according to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *The Mortality and Causes of Death in Africa 2010: Findings from Death Notifications Report, released in April 2013.*

The report showed that mortality in the country continued to decline, with a total 543 856 deaths having occurred in 2010. This was 6,2% lower than in 2009. TB maintained its rank as the number one leading cause of death in South Africa, accounting for about 12% of deaths that occurred in 2010.

Other contributors to the number of deaths were influenza, pneumonia, intestinal infectious diseases, other forms of heart disease, cerebrovascular diseases and diabetes. HIV was the seventh leading cause of death, causing 3,4% of all deaths.

The data showed that nearly 10% of deaths were due to non-natural causes, mainly affecting the 15 - to - 19 age group. The number of male deaths due to non-natural causes was more than three times the number of female deaths due to non-natural causes. Most non-natural causes resulted from external causes of accidental injury. According to the report, transport accidents and assault caused about 10% of all non-natural causes of death.

Maternal and child health (MCH)

Child health

Carefully planned and systemic interventions, based on the service-delivery agreement objectives, have been adopted for child health. Interventions are based on a three-tiered health promotion and disease prevention strategy, namely:

- preventing unintended pregnancies
- preventing complications
- preventing death or disability from complications.

These are targeting various phases, namely: pre-pregnancy; pregnancy; birth; newborn/postnatal and childhood.

Postnatal and newborn interventions include:

- early and exclusive breastfeeding
- provision of warmth
- infection control
- provision of vitamin A to the mother when indicated.

Community-based interventions include:

- increasing home visits by community workers to within 10 days of delivery for normal birth - weight babies and an additional three in the subsequent three weeks for lower birth - weight babies
- improving referral channels between community health workers and midwives
- expanding the Perinatal Problem Identification Programme to include more facilities.

One of the key interventions to improve the nutritional status of South African children is to reduce vitamin A deficiency in children under five years of age through supplementation. Immunisation is an essential intervention to protect children against vaccine-preventable diseases that can be prevented by vaccination, including polio and measles. In improving MCH, government reached 70% immunisation coverage for diarrhoea and pneumonia.

Maternal health

Most of the DoH's interventions in HIV and AIDS are directed at saving pregnant women and children, as mortality brought on by HIV and AIDS and malaria disproportionately affect young women of childbearing age more than men. By April 2013, the transmission of HIV from mother to child had decreased since 2010 from 8% of infants to 2,7%.

Women's health

Women tend to have a higher burden of disease than men and therefore need more services.

The package of interventions for women's health includes:

- family planning and contraceptive services
- care following sexual assault
- treatment of sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
- focus on diseases specific to women such as cervical cancer.

Sexual and reproductive health interventions include contraceptive information services, safe termination of pregnancy and reproductive health education and services.

Sexual assault is an area needing strengthening, due to weak intersectoral collaboration between the provincial departments of health, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the South African Police Service (SAPS) and the justice system.

In August 2013, the three-day International Maternal, New-born and Child Health Conference was held in South Africa. The conference dealt with maternal and child mortality, which was put on the international agenda of the UN as Goal number 4 in the MDGs. Action to save the lives of women and children was on top of the agenda as leaders from African countries met to find solutions to prevent maternal and child mortality.

HIV, AIDS and TB

South Africa is committed to the goals of "Zero New HIV infections", "Zero Discrimination" and "Zero AIDS-related deaths" through ongoing investment in scientific research, the provision of necessary treatment and raising awareness about HIV and AIDS.

In September 2013, the Gauteng Health Department awarded certificates to 270 professional nurses who successfully completed their training in Nurse Initiated Management of ARV Therapy. The skills acquired throughout the training will help the department to achieve its vision of producing a skilled, competent, caring and productive healthcare workforce in Gauteng. It will also help to reduce the burden of HIV and TB, as more nurses will now administer ARVs.

By September 2013, Gauteng had 378 sites administering ART, making early access to treatment possible for those who need it. The move also reduced the impact of HIV and AIDS on the health system, and decreased the number of deaths from TB and AIDS-related illnesses.

At the sixth Multilateral Initiative on Malaria Pan African Conference held in Pretoria October 2013, a study showed that during the 2012/13 season, all nine districts in South Africa at risk of malaria entered into elimination mode, reporting local case incidents of less than one case per 1 000 in the population at risk. South Africa hopes to eliminate malaria by 2018.

A study conducted by the University of KwaZulu-Natal's Africa Centre for Health and Population Studies, focusing on the provision of ART to the population of the province in 2013, showed a drop in new HIV infections in KwaZulu-Natal.

It found that the adult life expectancy of the general population in KwaZulu-Natal has increased from 49 to 60 years, and new HIV infections have dropped as a result of the widespread availability of ARVs freely provided by government.

The healthcare system

South Africa's national healthcare system is being reformed and revitalised. The process comprises five key areas, namely:

- improving infrastructure
- planning, developing and managing human resources
- ensuring quality of care at PHC institutions
- re-engineering PHC
- reducing the cost of healthcare.

As part of interventions to enhance the quality of care, the DoH commissioned an independent comprehensive audit of PHC facilities to assess infrastructure, human resources, cleanliness, the attitude of staff, the safety of staff and patients, infection control, drug stock-outs and the reported long queues patients faced.

Other improvements as a result of the implementation of the Health Turnaround Strategy include an increase in the availability of essential medicines at facilities having increased from 40% to 78%.

Legislation and policies

The National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003) provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa. It highlights the rights and responsibilities of healthcare providers and users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery, from health facility up to national level. It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments. The Act provides for the right to:

- emergency medical treatment
- have full knowledge of one's condition
- exercise one's informed consent
- participate in decisions regarding one's health
- be informed when one participates in research
- confidentiality and access to health records
- complain about poor service
- be treated with respect (health workers).

Other legislation that informs the health sector includes the:

- Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), which provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), which provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy. The Act also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), which provides a legal framework for mental health, in particular the admission and discharge of mental health patients in mental health institutions, with emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.
- Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996), which provides a legal framework for the termination of pregnancies based on choice,s under certain circumstances.
- Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998), which provides a legal framework for sterilisations, also for people with mental health challenges.
- South African Medical Research Council (MRC) Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), which provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.
- Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), which provides for the control of tobacco products, and the prohibition of smoking in public places and advertisements of tobacco products, as well as sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.
- National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000), which provides for a statutory body that provides laboratory services to the public health sector.
- Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974), which provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974), which provides for the regulation of the pharmaceutical profession, including community service by pharmacists.
- Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), which provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), which provides for the regulation of health practitioners such as chiropractors, homeopaths and others; and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979), which provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), which provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), which provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants; in particular setting quality and safety standards for the sale, manufacture and importation thereof.
- Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), which provides for medical examinations of people suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- Human Tissue Act, 1983 (Act 65 of 1983), which provides for the administration of matters pertaining to human tissue.

National Health Amendment Act 2013, (Act 12 of 2013)

The Act enabled the Minister of Health to establish the Office of Health Standards Compliance. It will have three units, with the first being the inspectorate.

It will be mandatory for the unit to inspect every health facility once every four years. Problematic health facilities will be inspected often to avoid deterioration. Once a particular facility has been inspected, it will be graded on a scale of A to F, and subsequently a report will be released publicly.

The second unit of the body will be a health ombudsperson.

The public will be able to lodge complaints about the negative experiences (including non-availability of drugs and long waiting times) encountered during their visits to health facilities.

The department identified 400 unemployed graduates in three major fields including finance, human resources and information and communications technology.

They underwent training in governance by the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy.

These graduates were then divided into teams of 45 each and dispatched to various provinces to help in the fields of supply chain management,

The public-private sector partnership agreement between the Health Ministry and the task team on Eye Health, appointed to reinvigorate and implement Vision 20/20 to curtail the waiting list for cataract surgeries, stipulates that all provinces perform 1 500 cataract surgeries per one million population.

asset reconciliation and management and human resources management, especially the cleaning of the public administration system in the provinces.

Budget and funding

The health sector received R133,6 billion from the 2013 National Budget. Some of the money went towards ensuring the completion of 1 967 health facilities and 49 nursing colleges, which were in various stages of planning, construction and refurbishment.

More than R800 million was allocated for the scale-up of the provision of ARV treatment. However, an additional budget allocation of R100 million in 2014/15 and R384 million in 2015 will be necessary to partly address the announced decrease in funding over the medium term from the United States of America (USA) President's Emergency Plan for Aids Relief (Pepfar).

Pepfar has contributed roughly R4 billion a year towards the South African national HIV and AIDS and TB response, but the amount is likely to decrease by 50% over the next five years.

As a result of the phasing in of the NHI, spending on health infrastructure increased from R3,3 billion in 2009/10 to R5,4 billion in 2012/13, and is expected to grow to R6,5 billion over the next three years.

The allocation to the provinces for the existing NHI grant is R48 million, R70 million and R74 million, respectively, over the next three years.

In October 2013, South Africa received R3 billion from the Global Fund to Fight AIDS, TB and Malaria.

Role players

South African National AIDS Council (Sanac) Trust

In February 2013, the new Sanac Trust, which includes members from civil society, business, academia and government, was inducted. Their mandate is to facilitate and manage a multisectoral approach to the implementation of the National Strategic Plan (NSP).

The goals of the NSP are to halve the number of new HIV infections; ensure that at least 80% of people who are eligible for treatment for HIV are receiving it; halve the number of new TB infections and deaths from TB; ensure that the rights of people living with HIV are protected; and reduce the stigma related to HIV and TB.

The work that the council undertakes is crucial at a time when South Africa has turned the tide on the response to HIV, but still has a long way to go in addressing the scourge of HIV and AIDS.

In April 2013, Sanac welcomed the availability of fixed-dose combination (FDC) ARVs, saying it would encourage patients to stay on treatment and reduce incidents of non-compliance and non - adherence.

The new R1,4-billion Natalspruit Hospital in Gauteng opened its doors to patients in September 2013. The new 771-bed hospital, which replaced the existing Natalspruit hospital, also has a gateway clinic and a crèche. The services offered include: accident, emergency and trauma unit; adult intensive care unit (ICU) and high care; paediatric ICU and high care; psychiatric ward, TB ward; gynae and maternity services, as well as a burns unit.

Medicines Control Council

The Medicines Control Council oversees the regulation of medicines in South Africa. Its main purpose is to safeguard and protect the public by making sure that all medicines that are sold and used in South Africa are safe, therapeutically effective, are and consistently meeting acceptable standards of quality.

The council is mandated to:

- advise the Minister of Health on any matter referred by the Minister or arising from the application of the Act
- keep the medicines register
- register new medicines
- amend entries in the register
- prohibit the sale of unregistered medicines
- transfer certificates of registration
- cancel the registration of medicines
- approve medicine labels and advertisements
- authorise the sale of unregistered medicine for certain purposes.

Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases (CCOD)

The CCOD was established to compensate ex-miners and miners for the impairment of lungs or respiratory organs and to reimburse then for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment.

If the ex-miner is deceased, the CCOD compensates the beneficiaries of the ex-miner.

The CCOD administrates the government's grant for pensioners.

Council for Medical Schemes

The Council for Medical Schemes provides regulatory supervision of private health financing through medical schemes. Its objectives include:

- protecting the interests of medical schemes and their members
- monitoring the solvency and financial soundness of medical schemes
- controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes
- investigating complaints and settling disputes in the affairs of medical schemes

- collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare in South Africa
- making rules regarding its own functions and powers
- making recommendations to the Minister of Health on criteria for the measurement of the quality and outcomes of the health services provided by medical schemes.

Medical Research Council

The MRC is a science, engineering and technology institution, with the purpose of improving the health and quality of life of South Africans through research, development and technology transfer. Its powers and duties include:

- undertaking research of its own accord and on behalf of the State
- operating and maintaining research facilities the Minister of Health assigned by
- promoting cooperation between South Africa and other countries on research, development and technology transfer
- developing and using technological expertise
- promoting the training of researchers
- establishing and controlling research laboratories and other facilities
- cooperating with people and institutions doing research in other countries
- making grants available to universities, technikons, colleges, schools, museums and other institutions
- participating in joint research operations with other institutions
- cooperating with educational authorities, scientific or technical societies and industrial institutions representing employers and employees to promote the training of researchers
- undertaking investigations or research assigned by the Minister
- advising the Minister on research policy and priorities and the development, promotion, implementation and coordination of research.

Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSCA)

The HPCSA has a mandate to protect the rights of patients and to guide the professions across South Africa. While healthcare costs are a constant concern to all parties, only by working together within the prescribed ethical guidelines can it be ensured that all parties' rights and responsibilities are met. Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards
- promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison
- determining strategic policy
- consulting and liaising with relevant authorities
- controlling and exercising authority over the training and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in humankind
- promoting liaison in the field of training
- communicating to the Minister information that is of public importance.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The AHPCSA regulates all allied health professions, which include ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic, homeopathy, naturopathy, osteopathy, phytotherapy, therapeutic aromatherapy, therapeutic massage therapy, therapeutic reflexology and unani-tibb.

South African Dental Technicians Council (SADTC)

The SADTC controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental technologists and practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make, alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances
- promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists
- advising the Minister of Health.

South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC)

The SAPC ensures the provision of quality pharmaceutical services in South Africa by developing, enhancing and upholding universally acceptable standards, professional ethics and conduct, ongoing competence and pharmaceutical care.

The council is tasked with:

- assisting in promoting the health of South Africans
- advising the Minister of Health or any person on matters relating to pharmacy
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care with universal norms and values

The 19th World Transplant Games took place in July 2013, in Durban. At the same event, a new postage stamp, specially designed by the Post Office for the World Transplant Games 2013 to raise awareness about the shortages of organ donors in South Africa, was unveiled.

- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession.

South African Nursing Council (SANC)

The SANC controls and exercises authority, in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers
- removing or restoring any name in a register
- issuing licences to nursing agencies
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS was established in 2001 by amalgamating the South African Institute for Medical Research, National Institute for Virology and National Centre for Occupational Health, as well as university and provincial pathology laboratories. It is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with 349 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population.

All laboratories provide diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, including anatomical pathology, haematology, microbiology, infectious diseases, immunology, human genetics, chemical pathology, epidemiology, occupational and environmental health, occupational medicine, tropical diseases, medical entomology, molecular biology and human nutrition.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance
- South African Vaccine Producers, which is the only South African manufacturer of antivenom for the treatment of snake, scorpion and spider bites.

According to the International Diabetes Federation, an estimated six million people in South Africa live with diabetes.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution, in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme, including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. The programme has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Resources

Medical practitioners

More than 216 191 medical practitioners are registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector.

In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Oral health professionals

There are 5 667 dentists, 2 886 dental assistants, 1 053 oral hygienists and 569 dental therapists registered with the HPCSA. Dentists are subject to the continuing professional development system and the community service system. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists. There are 25 876 professionals registered with the SAPC.

Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, whereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives. There are 260 698 registered nurses. This figure includes registered, enrolled and auxiliary nurses, but excludes students and pupils.

Health facilities

There are 4 200 public health facilities in South Africa. The number of people per clinic is13 718, exceeding World Health Organisation guidelines of 10 000 per clinic.

Since 1994, more than 1 600 clinics have been built or upgraded. Free healthcare for children under the age of six and for pregnant or breastfeeding mothers was introduced in the mid-1990s.

Provincial hospitals

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with or without medical-aid cover. Patients are classified as hospital patients, if they can't afford to pay for treatment. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Patients with medical aid are charged a private rate that is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants.

Medical schemes

There are about 88 medical schemes in South Africa, with around 8 469 784 beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of about R84,9 billion.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered.

Programmes and projects

Anti-Substance National Plan of Action

Government and its partners are implementing the Anti-Substance National Plan of Action.

The plan focuses on enabling policy and legislation, reducing the supply and demand of drugs, as well as treatment and rehabilitation of addicts.

By June 2013, a total of 215 Local Drug Action committees around the country were helping communities to manage their own preventive work at grassroots level.

The SAPS plays a key role in the fight against drug, substance and alcohol abuse. In 2012, the SAPS conducted 394 379 liquor compliance inspections and 74 547 illegal liquor traders were charged and closed down.

The Foundation for a Drug Free World hosted a two-day seminar in August 2013, to train those who wish to take effective action against substance abuse in their communities. The seminars took place in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, Johannesburg and Pretoria.

Re-engineering primary healthcare

PHC was high on the department's agenda during 2013. Some of the focus areas of PHC included building clinics and hospitals, managing diseases and ensuring that there were enough health professionals.

The intensified focus on PHC has three streams – district specialists, the school-based health programme and municipal ward-based PHC agents. District specialists include a principal obstetrician, a principal paediatrician, a principal family physician, an advanced midwife and a senior primary care nurse.

As part of its successful war against malaria, the Limpopo government set aside an additional R89 million to fight the disease in 2013. All primary health care clinics are fully equipped to deal with malaria patients at community level, with malaria tests and treatment available at all clinics. All hospitals are also prepared to deal with more severe cases of malaria.

These specialists train interns, community service doctors and medical officers. They are the link between the prevention and management and cure of diseases.

As part of the school-based healthcare programme, school health teams visited 1 610 poor schools between July and September 2012. They offered services that focused on eyecare, dental and hearing problems, as well as school immunisation programmes.

As part of efforts to improve PHC, 10 000 PHC workers had been trained and assigned to municipal wards in the country by 2013. Each ward has a team comprising a professional nurse and six community healthcare workers.

Health Sector 10-Point Plan

In pursuit of its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans, the DoH remains firmly focused on the implementation of the 10-Point Plan for the health sector for 2009 to 2014.

The plan is aimed at creating a well-functioning health system capable of producing improved health outcomes. It consists of a number of priorities such as: the provision of strategic leadership and the creation of a social compact for better health outcomes; the implementation of the NHI plan; improving the quality of health services; overhauling the healthcare system and improving the management of the health system.

The plan also includes other priorities that are crucial for the department to reach its goal of improved health outcomes. These include better human resources management, planning and development; the revitalisation of infrastructure; the accelerated implementation of programmes for HIV and AIDS and STIs; increased focus on TB and other communicable diseases; mass mobilisation for better health; a review of the drug policy; and strengthening research and development.

National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012–2016

The integration of HIV, AIDS and TB into the NSP on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012–2016 outlines a 20-year vision in the fight against the double scourges of HIV and AIDS and TB.

The NSP has four strategic objectives, namely:

- addressing the social structural drivers of HIV, STIs and TB care, prevention and support
- preventing new HIV, STI and TB infections
- sustaining health and wellness
- ensuring the protection of human rights and improving access to justice.

The NSP 2012–2016 further encourages South Africans to be tested for these diseases at least once a year; and every pregnant woman to undergo routine HIV testing.

The department also targeted 600 000 men for male circumcision as part of the strategy.

Fixed-dose combination antiretrovirals

The FDC – containing emtricitabine, efavirenz and tenofovir – is a multiple ARV drug in a single pill, which helps reduce pill burden. It is easy to take, highly effective and in no way inferior to taking three individual drugs.

About 180 000 HIV-positive patients started on the FDC ARVs in April 2013. The FDC ARVs were expected to improve compliance by reducing the risk of patients defaulting from treatment. With the new pill, patients will now be taking one tablet once a day, instead of three to five pills a day. The FDC ARVs are given to newly diagnosed HIV-positive persons, HIV-positive pregnant women and breast-feeding mothers.

The department revised the guidelines for the Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission paediatric and adult treatment, due to the treatment regime switching to FDC ARVs.

More than 7 000 doctors and nurses were updated on the new guidelines and at least one or two healthcare professionals in each facility have been updated. In addition, more than 200 master trainers have been trained, including those based at regional training centres, as well as those stationed at the department's development partners.

By April 2013, some 1,7 million patients were on ARV treatment and the department hoped to expand this to 2,5 million by the end of 2014.

From 1 April 2013, the Gauteng DoH rolled out the FDC ARVs, to all those receiving and those who are still going to be initiated on ARVs.

National Health Insurance

The NHI scheme shows government's commitment to the country's health infrastructure, which remains a priority.

Healthcare faced significant problems, including rising costs and poor access to generic medication; an overemphasis on cure instead of prevention; and insufficient regulatory control.

These factors threatened sub-Saharan Africa's ability to achieve the UN's health-related MDGs by 2015.

Universal health coverage would provide every citizen with access to affordable healthcare, irrespective of a person's socio-economic conditions. South Africa's NHI was expected to take 14 years before it was fully implemented because it faced problems such as infrastructure, staffing and water supply.

NHI pilot programmes were rolled out in some of South Africa's major cities in 2013.

The spending focus over the next few years will be on overseeing the 10 NHI pilot projects

and conducting health economics research, focusing on the roll-out of the plan and alternative healthcare financing mechanisms.

Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

At the sixth South African AIDS Conference that took place in Durban in June 2013, the Minister of Health said that sexual and reproductive health services needed to be part of South Africa's ISHP.

The DoH, in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education, revised the National School Health Policy in 2011.

The policy is aligned to the Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement, 2010–2014, the government programme of action for the promotion of long and healthy life for all South Africans, as well as the MDGs.

The revised policy also made way for the comprehensive ISHP for grade 0 to 12 learners, implemented at subdistrict level. This implementation strategy incorporates the principle of equity and human rights, with specific consideration to the availability of resources required to cover all learners.

The ISHP's goal is to contribute to improving the general health of school-going children, as well as the environmental conditions in schools and to addressing health barriers to learning.

The ISHP:

- guides the provision of a comprehensive programme that operates within the PHC package
- provides preventive and promotive services that address the health needs of school-going children
- facilitates referral to health and other services ,where required
- supports the school community in creating schools that promote health
- ensures sustainable coordination and multisectoral partnership
- mobilises resources for the implementation of the school health policy.

HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign

Some of the HCT Campaign's achievements since its launch by President Jacob Zuma in 2010 are the following:

- Before 2009, some 2,6 million people had gone for counselling and testing, but since the launch 18 million people have been tested.
- Before the HCT campaign, 539 819 patients entered into treatment, whereas in 2013 ,617 000 people were initiated into treatment
- Only 250 nurses initiated ARV treatment in 2009, but during 2010/11, 10 542 nurses were trained and certified to initiate treatment

The target for 2013/14 was to initiate 550 000 new people on treatment.

In June 2013, during his State visit to South Africa, President Obama of the USA discussed the *Pepfar Report* with President Zuma.

According to the report, some 1 651 800 HIV-positive individuals were on ART; 7 055 000 individuals received HCT; 924 300 pregnant women received HCT, with 253 000 HIV-positive pregnant women receiving ARV medication to prevent mother-to-child transmission.

The *Pepfar Report* underscored the fact that the success of the programme was achieved in direct partnership with the South African government. Pepfar's male circumcision programme was launched in 2009 and in 2013, the fund aimed to increase the number to 500 000 voluntary medical male circumcisions.

A third medical male circumcision clinic was opened in October 2013 in North West, as part of a provincial campaign to reduce the risk of HIV infection among men.

According to the WHO, the risk of HIV is reduced by 60% if a man is circumcised.

Over the next year, government will strive to medically circumcise one million men through its Medical Male Circumcision campaign launched in December 2013. Members of Parliament got the chance to undergo HIV tests in Parliament in October 2013.

Managing communicable and non-communicable diseases (NCDs)

The DoH launched its strategic plan for the prevention and control of NCDs, in May 2013.

A multi-stakeholder dialogue on addressing risk factors for NCDs in the African region was held in South Africa, in March 2013.

In his opening address of the WHO dialogue, WHO Regional Director for Africa, Luis Sambo, told delegates that Africa faced a rapidly increasing burden of NCDs, alongside the continued threat of communicable diseases.

The main NCDs in the region include diabetes, cancer, chronic respiratory diseases, mental disorders and cardiovascular diseases.

The African region remains the only WHO region where communicable diseases still account for more deaths than NCDs, according to a 2010 global status report. In 2008, about 2,8 million deaths were attributed to NCDs and this is projected to increase by 27% over the next 10 years.

In 2013, the Gauteng DoH spent R1,2 million on installing 95 new ozone generators at its forensic pathology mortuaries to maintain a healthy environment at the facilities.

The main risk factors associated with NCDs are tobacco use, alcohol abuse, an unhealthy diet and physical inactivity.

South Africa is working on the establishment of the National Health Commission.

The NHLS, the National Institute for Communicable Diseases and the DoH commemorated World Hepatitis Day on 29 July 2013. The theme for 2013 was, "This is Hepatitis. Know it. Confront it."

Hepatitis B is widespread in sub-Saharan Africa and South Africa. Past studies have found that about 8% of children under the age of one and almost 16% of children under the age of six are infected with hepatitis B.

Between 10% and 18% of South African adults are hepatitis B virus carriers. Infection has been more common in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Since 1995, all children have been vaccinated against hepatitis B. It is hoped that the disease and its complications will soon become far less prevalent. Up until 1995, the hepatitis B vaccine was only given to people in high-risk groups, particularly healthcare workers.

The hepatitis B and C viruses are transmitted through infected blood and blood products, sexual contact, inadequately sterilised surgical equipment and sharing needles for drug use. In many cases, the route of transmission is not known. Blood safety in South Africa has effectively reduced hepatitis B and hepatitis C transmission. South Africa joined the international community in observing World Polio Day in October 2013, and urged parents to have their children immunised against polio and other diseases that can be prevented by vaccination.

Improving human resources planning, development and management

In March 2013, the Minister of Health unveiled the NSP for Nurse Education, Training and Practice, aimed at reconstructing and revitalising the nursing profession as part of the department's efforts to improve health outcomes.

The objectives of the strategy are to:

- promote and maintain a high standard and quality of nursing and midwifery education and training
- enhance and maintain professionalism and a professional ethos among members of the nursing and midwifery professions
- promote and maintain an enabling, well-resourced and positive practice environment for nursing, midwifery and patients/clients throughout the lifespan
- enable strong leadership at all levels of nursing and midwifery practice
- guide the production of sufficient numbers and the appropriate categories of nurses required to deliver healthcare services within the policy framework for the healthcare system.

Out of 342 nursing colleges, 84 are inactive while renovations are underway. For some, this including the procurement of basic equipment for effective training. About 37 000 nursing students enrolled in colleges in 2013. Five hundred retired nurses have been put on the department's database and will be assisting with the Schools' Health Programme. By March 2013, about 1 200 medical students from South Africa were studying in Cuba.

The Minister of Health has signed regulations to reduce the salt content in several foodstuffs. The new regulations were published in the *Government Gazette* in March 2013. Salt reduction is critical in the fight against hypertension and other non-communicable diseases. According to draft regulations to the Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), food manufacturers have until June 2016 to comply with the first set of sodium (table salt) targets.

Albertina Sisulu Executive Leadership Programme in Health (ASELPH)

The Minister of Health launched the ASELPH in April 2013. ASELPH aims to strengthen health policy transformation and service excellence in South Africa.

It aims to strengthen human-resource capacity in the health system, which is needed to deliver high-quality, cost-efficient services through strength-ened, executive-level training of health leaders and managers.

The programme is a partnership between the University of Pretoria, University of Fort Hare and Harvard University, represented by Harvard School of Public Health and South Africa Partners in collaboration with the South African national and provincial departments of health.

ASELPH is seen as a local flagship programme capable of setting the standard for executive-level health leadership and management training in South Africa.

In addition, ASELPH organises and hosts university forums, policy seminars and round tables to address key policy debates, as identified by the DoH and focus on issues that will present the greatest challenges to implementation.

ASELPH also uses new teaching and learning strategies: each new training offering its curricula and pedagogical strategies and teaching materials (including case studies and exercises) is based on collaborative research that identifies information gaps and produces learning objectives.

The programme is responsive to emerging initiatives in the South African health sector through a combination of strategies that include:

- targeted training of executive, district and hospital managers who are responsible for services related to the NHI
- strengthened management capability of current and emerging district, health-related leaders who are responsible for the implementation of the NHI and the re-engineering of the PHC system
- advancement of sustainable, relevant, educational and training capacity for health executives responsible for the management of large public health programmes such as HIV, STIs and TB.

Improving health infrastructure

Government prioritised the upgrading of health infrastructure through Strategic Infrastructure Project 12. This project focuses on the refurbishing of nursing colleges, and building or refurbishing of public hospitals and other health facilities. During 2013, attention was paid to four central hospitals in Gauteng – Chris Hani Baragwanath Academic, Charlotte Maxeke Johannesburg Academic, Dr George Mukhari and Steve Biko Pretoria Academic.

In North West, about 315 provincial health facilities were ready to roll out the new FDC pill to HIV-positive patients. The province provided ARV treatment to about 181 557 patients in 2013. The North West provincial health department had established 13 maternity waiting homes, 10 of which were functional by May 2013, as well as procuring 10 obstetric ambulances to exclusively transport pregnant women.

The *Committee on Morbidity and Mortality in Children under Five Years Report (2012)* indicated that South Africa's infant mortality rate decreased from 47,4 per 1 000 live births in 2007 to 38,1 per 1 000 live births.

From August 2013, a rapid response team, made up of clinical engineers, attended to the maintenance of hospital equipment on an urgent basis in any province with malfunctioning equipment.

Major changes to the health system aimed at improving service delivery, included decentralising several functions that were carried out at provincial health offices to hospital chief executive officers (CEOs) and hospital managers.

As part of the major shake-up, hospital CEOs have been given a contingency budget for emergency procurement of non-negotiables on an urgent basis to do away with delays and stock-outs of essential items. They will also be given the power to buy equipment worth less than R500 000 on a quotation basis; a healthcare war room – called the Cost Centre Management System – was set up at head office to monitor the availability of medicines and other essentials via other cost centres that will be based at regional and district hospitals.

Clinicians will be given decision-making powers on matters relating to their services, including monitoring the availability of non-negotiables, and availability of equipment and consumables.

A committee made up of clinicians will meet monthly to assess the maintenance of essential equipment, and compile a list of equipment that will be forwarded directly to suppliers to eliminate the middle man.

The 32-bed Kgatelopele Wellness Care Centre in Mmabatho, North West, built at a cost of R35 million by the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa, was opened in December 2013.

Strengthening research and development

Government's initiative to boost human resources development in health research and innovation was launched in March 2013, as the country strives to improve the overall quality of health. The National Health PhD Scholars Programme has seed funding of R15 million, of which R5 million was from government and R10 million from the private sector. The programme wants to deliver 1 000 PhDs in all health professional fields over the next 10 years.

The Minister of Health named and introduced the first 13 recipients of the scholarship at a news conference in Cape Town, in March 2013.

For the duration of their full-time studies, each of the 13 recipients will be paid the after-tax salary they were receiving from the DoH. They are also expected to return to their institutions after gaining their doctorates.

Although the 13 will study in South Africa, with one of them also due to do some research in Scandinavia, no restrictions have been placed on where they or future recipients should study.

In South Africa, like in the rest of the world, the health research workforce is ageing, and also declining numerically.

This limits the capacity to increase the numbers of healthcare professionals required in the country.

It also causes inability to cope with increasing demands imposed on the health service by the colliding epidemics of infectious diseases such as TB and HIV and AIDS, high rates of maternal, infant and child mortality, violence, injuries and NCDs.

The new health research leadership produced under this scheme will also address the need for academic healthcare professionals to train and inspire the next generation of healthcare professionals in existing and new universities.

The government's intervention would address the shortage of academic healthcare professionals by introducing fully funded doctoral scholarships.

KZN

Human Settlements

Government is committed to providing sustainable human settlements to improve the quality of household life for the poor. Such provisions entail access to quality accommodation, basic services, secure tenure and affordable mortgage finance.

Formal housing has grown by 50% since 1994, translating to an additional 5,6 million formal homes since the country's first democratic elections.

The Department of Human Settlements' (DHS) service-delivery priorities include upgrading well-located informal settlements, and providing proper services and land tenure to 500 000 households by 2014.

The department plans to increase the rate of affordable rental housing delivery to at least 20 000 units per year. It has set aside 6 250 ha of well-located public land for low-income and affordable housing, accommodating approximately 400 000 units by 2014.

The department has planned to accelerate the provision and upgrading of bulk infrastructure networks to prioritised settlements by 2014, and will accommodate people whose salaries are too high to get government subsidies, but too low for them to qualify for a normal bank mortgage.

By May 2013, government had, for the first time since 1994, passed the three million mark in providing houses and housing opportunities in South Africa.

Most beneficiaries were from the poorest groups in South Africa. The main focus of housing delivery efforts remains the provision of quality housing for the poorest of the poor, many of whom are in and around informal settlements.

The policy of providing grants to enable the poor to get free housing was unsustainable. It was driven by unemployment, poverty and inequity.

Legislation and policies

The following legislation, policies and strategies govern the DHS:

- The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.
- The Community Schemes Ombud Service Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities. The Act establishes an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes.

- An increasing number of community schemes are being developed, where there is governance by the community involved, shared financial responsibility, and common land and facilities. The Act is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving the control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.
- The Estate Agency Affairs Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) and the Mortgage Default Insurance are expected to address challenges associated with the upgrading of slums, access to basic services, accreditation of key municipalities and land acquisition for human settlements. The programme of improving property markets remains a major challenge.
- The Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing-development process. For this purpose, it lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defines the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.
- The Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure the proper functioning of the rental housing market. It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals. The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrates' court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose lays down general requirements relating to leases. Among other things, the Act prescribes that: leases may be oral or in writing; tenants can demand a written lease; the landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant; the landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in; the balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.
- The Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), among other things, provides for rulings by rental housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals.
- The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. The DHS has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act of 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA. The Act provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. Provincial governments are given responsibilities to approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme. Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones. The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

Human Settlements Vision 2030: On the Road to 2050 aims to provide houses and services in rural and urban areas. It focuses on the total eradication of backlogs of more than 2,1 million housing units, which translates to about 12,5 million people.

Under Vision 2030's framework, most South Africans will have affordable access to services and a quality environment; instead of living in isolation on the periphery of cities.

The DHS is a key player in the property market. A recent study found that of the six million registered residential properties in the Deeds Registry, 1,44 million were government-subsidised houses. This represents just less than a quarter of registered residential properties and

In September 2013, the intergovernmental, multibillion rand Cornubia Development, situated north of Durban, became a reality, as 482 housing units were handed over for occupation. The units consist of two bedrooms, a lounge, a kitchen and ablution facilities. Cornubia is a mixed-use and mixed-income development consisting of 1 200 ha of the land. Of these, 80 ha are earmarked for industrial development. The rest is for commercial, housing and other public amenities. The completed Cornubia Development is expected to yield 23 000 housing units within the next 10 years.

could increase to 35% if the backlog in issuing title deeds is overcome.

The value of a title deed provides the following:

- protection of rights to a property
- asset security
- facilitation of entry of ordinary South Africans as players in both the property as well as the financial markets.

What is least understood yet nevertheless a major contribution to asset formation by beneficiaries is that each time government facilitates the acquisition of a house, it comes with its own land.

Housing the poor was an ingredient of the department's three-part response to the State's Vision 2030 Strategy.

"Gap housing" is a term that describes the shortfall, or "gap" in the market between residential units supplied by the State and houses delivered by the private sector.

The gap housing market comprises people who typically earn between R3 500 and R15 000 per month, which is too little to enable them to participate in the private property market, yet too much to qualify for state assistance. Gap housing is another element of the State's Vision 2030 Strategy.

Gap housing is a policy that addresses the housing aspirations of people such as nurses, fire fighters, educators and members of the armed forces, who earned between R3 000 and R15 000 per month and, therefore, did not qualify for Reconstruction and Development Programme houses and did not earn enough to obtain home loans.

Nationally, the houses were financially assisted by the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) through an intervention called FLISP, which gives all qualifying beneficiaries the certainty of being granted loans, bonds or mortgages by banks and other financial institutions.

Those in the middle- to high-income groups could apply for housing bonds.

The challenges ahead include removing racial connotations from living spaces, which more than anything else, reflects the real evil of apartheid social engineering. Undoing this policy will require time and major resources.

As part of its strategy in this regard, the department is obliging banks to give loans to black people who want to buy properties in previously exclusively white areas.

It has also been buying up high-rise buildings in inner cities, and refurbishing and transforming them from office space to rented family units. This form of social housing has become popular with young couples, students and single mothers.

Areas close to townships, known as "no-man's land" that were used as buffer zones to separate black townships from white areas are being eradicated. The land is being used for housing with occupants being moved closer to cities.

New non-racial towns and cities are being developed to fulfil the principle of a united people in non-racial residential areas. Lephalale, which will be known as Joe Slovo City, in Limpopo, is an example of this policy.

Integrated Urban Development Framework

The Integrated Urban Development Framework is an ongoing consultative process aimed at encouraging members of the public and experts in the human settlements field to suggest how inclusive urban settlements should be designed, such as:

- inhabitants of sustainable human settlements, located both in urban and rural areas, must live in a safe and a secure environment
- sustainable human settlements are supportive of their communities, thus contributing towards greater social cohesion, social crime prevention, moral regeneration, support for national heritage, recognition and support of indigenous knowledge systems, and the ongoing extension of land rights.

The new framework was a policy process aimed at changing the apartheid legacy of urban division, which now sees many South Africans living in places that are far from their places of work, and having to bear the cost of spending most of their income on transport.

The new framework will also tackle the call by the National Development Plan for spatial planning of urban areas to address the main challenge of enabling job creation linked to sustainable livelihoods and to establish well-performing human settlements. This should be at the heart of what municipalities do and how they function.

Planning and project implementation takes place at municipal level. Grants, such as the Urban Settlements Development Grant, will be used to ensure that the approach to national socio-economic development is integrated.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery is a structuring device for steering interdependent activities into a new bargaining context so that all of the activities in the wider sector co-produce desirable outcomes such as:

- more sustainable human settlements for social equality
- economically efficient and effective settlements
- environmentally sensitive built environments with reduced carbon footprints.

The areas of focus broadly take account of the department's mandate. These focus areas are:

- social cohesion
- planning and development
- financing human settlements
- neighbourhood design: building communities (through spatial and physical articulation).

Inclusionary Housing Policy

The New Economic Growth Path has identified energy, transport, roads, water, communication and housing as key areas in its strategy to fast-track sustainable growth, employment and equity creation.

This has been given a boost by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC) and is a breakthrough in the effort to reverse the system of apartheid infrastructure and its spatial planning. The introduction of the PICC means the beginning of the end for government operating in silos.

Sanitation, which provides the most basic protection to the private dignity of citizens, is an internationalised programme through the United Nations (UN) millennium development goals (MDGs) as agreed to by all UN member states. In the PICC, this programme has been made a national priority. This is also one of the key recommendations of the Ministerial Sanitation Task Team's preliminary findings.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban. Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

Budget

The department's 2013/14 budget was hiked by R2,9 billion to R28,1 billion. The allocation was expected to be increased to R32,7 billion in 2015/16. The conditional grant to provinces totalled R53,7 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. The Urban Settlements Development Grants to municipalities received about R30 billion in the MTEF period.

Subsidies and funding

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards.

The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS's areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The new subsidy amount is R84 000. The amount comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

The revised subsidy amount is expected to improve beneficiary access to mortgage finance. It is available on a first-come first-served basis.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions.

The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab-rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

As part of the Government's Comprehensive Housing Plan, government provides a 40 m^2 house with two bedrooms; a separate bathroom, with a toilet, shower and hand basin, a combined living area and kitchen with wash basin, and a ready board electrical installation where electricity supply is available in the township, to qualifying households earning less than R3 500 a month.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The housing-subsidy programme for farm residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme will be applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents will play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions with regard to the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

Following consultation with banks and other financial institutions, the FLISP was introduced in April 2012 to assist households earning up to R15 000. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by the State. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHFC was established in 1996 as a development finance institution to search for new ways to mobilise finance for housing from sources outside the State.

The corporation provides wholesale finance and acts as a fund and risk manager. The organisation has been incorporated as a company with share capital in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973, as amended).

The NHFC supports the Breaking New Ground Strategy of the DHS by facilitating and funding the development of sustainable human settlements and the eradication of informal settlements.

The NHFC's function is to:

- provide wholesale funding to intermediaries for small home-improvement loans to households
- fund long-term project finance to social housing and private rental landlords
- provide bridging funding in partnership with others to the development of affordable homes, particularly integrated developments
- provide retail home loans to the lower end of the housing market through various channels.

The NHFC fulfils a facilitating role by:

- implementing risk-enhancement mechanisms to encourage active participation in the low- to middle-income housing market
- promoting an enabling environment in the low- to middle-income housing market through advocacy and involvement in development
- improving access to housing finance for people in the low- and middle-income housing market to improve their living standards.

The NHFC has interacted with all provinces to identify pilot projects regarding the FLISP, to reprioritise funding allocations and to conclude implementation protocols.

Development finance institutions

To ensure the alignment of appropriate financial instruments to achieve the human settlements mandate, the consolidation of the development finance institutions namely the RHLF, National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha) and the NHFC was in the process of being finalised in 2012.

Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF)

The RHLF was established in 1996 by the national Department of Housing, with initial grant funding from the German development bank, the Kreditanstalt "fur Weiderbaufbau (KFW).

The RHLF was set up as a wholesale development finance institution with the mandate of enabling low-income earners to access small loans that they could afford to repay. Borrowers use these loans to incrementally improve their housing conditions.

As a wholesale finance institution, RHLF facilitate housing microloans through intermediaries or retail housing finance lenders.

Role players

People's Housing Process (PHP)

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guiding the beneficiaries in building their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy.

The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is allocated by the State and the authorities. Unlike the project-linked subsidy, where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

The PHP is a useful tool for community involvement.

Savings resulting from beneficiaries participating in the building of their own homes and the material used may result in homes that are bigger and of better quality than contractor-built houses.

Housing institutions

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the DHS.

The institutions are the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC), NHFC, Nurcha, the Social Housing Foundation, RHLF, the Housing Development Agency (HDA), Servcon Housing Solutions, SHRA and Thubelisha Homes.

Stakeholder management

Increased operations through new partnerships would address the challenges of rapid urbanisation. The DHS has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa.

The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

Women in housing

As a result of initiatives such as the Women's Build and the Women in Housing Indaba, women's participation in the construction industry is projected to increase significantly to reach the 50% target for female-owned projects in housing construction by 2014, including disabled women and youth.

National Women Build is a Letsema housing construction project, which was originally launched in 2005 in Gauteng. Since then, the project has been hosted by different provinces where houses have been built for vulnerable and marginalised women.

National Women Build promotes the spirit of volunteerism as well as public-private partnership.

Khuthaza has been operating as Women for Housing since 1995. Khuthaza, meaning "encourage" in isiZulu, is a non-profit organisation supporting the development of women in the housing and construction sectors.

Khuthaza encourages the entrance of women into the built-environment sectors and the development of thriving careers and businesses. It supports government initiatives relating to housing and infrastructure delivery, the maintenance and growth of the construction industry and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE).

The National Women Build is a partnership between government, the private sector and communities to raise consciousness about the construction sector and women's role in it.

The project also contributes to the creation of sustainable human settlements.

Youth Build

The Youth Build SA Programme integrates academic achievement, work experience, social action, leadership development and personal transformation in a single project. It was piloted in Ivory Park, Midrand, in Gauteng and is being introduced to other parts of the country such as Kirkwood in the Eastern Cape and Langa in the Western Cape. Its components include:

- education and skills development
- leadership and service
- counselling and support services
- exit opportunities.

The five-year planned project will see:
- 1 000 young people trained in various related skills
- 10 small businesses created
- 10 scholarships awarded.

The estimated cost of the project is R31 million.

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998, as amended), to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and to regulate the home-building industry.

The council provides training and capacity-building to promote satisfactory levels of technical standards in the home-building environment.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha was established as a Presidential Lead Project in 1995, in partnership with the Open Society Institute.

The institution's strategic focus is on financing building contractors in the housing industry, specifically subsidised, affordable housing and related community infrastructures, differentiating between established and emerging contractors.

Finance is provided directly to established contractors while a separate, specialised intermediary channel is used for the provision of finance to emerging contractors, resulting in the normalisation of risks associated with this market segment by the traditional financial institutions.

In this regard, intermediaries assist the emerging contractors with a range of construction support services.

Housing Development Agency

The HDA was established in terms of the HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), in April 2009. Its purpose is to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state- and privately-owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements.

The agency is required to facilitate the acquisition of land in a way that supplements the capacities of government across all spheres.

The HDA provides project-management expertise in human-settlement projects and facilitates the development of projects through accelerated and innovative project packaging.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI) and Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational. NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available, accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be located best.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The HDA's sole mandate is to acquire land on behalf of government for human settlement. The target is to acquire 6 025 ha by 2014. This is expected to provide for 500 000 housing units.

Resources

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The DHS continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for capacity building, as well as guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The DHS has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote BEE and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

The department identified the following interventions in 2012:
- accreditation of municipalities
- professionalising skills in human settlements
- establishing a Centre of Excellence for Human Settlements Research.

Programmes and projects

Sustainable human settlements

Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life are defined by:
- access to adequate accommodation that

is suitable, relevant, appropriately located, affordable and fiscally sustainable
- access to basic services such as water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity
- security of tenure irrespective of ownership or rental, formal or informal structures
- access to social services and economic opportunities within reasonable distance.

Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP7)

The SIP7 is part of the 17 SIPs contained in the Presidential Infrastructure Plan.

They incorporate a range of economic and social infrastructure projects and cover all nine provinces with the emphasis on poorer regions.

Investment in rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure have been identified for Limpopo.

SIP7 focuses on 12 of the country's major cities in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, North West and the Western Cape.

The cities include major metropolitan municipalities such as Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane in Gauteng, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Metro in the Eastern Cape, eThekwini in Durban, Cape Town in the Western Cape and Mangaung in the Free State.

The cities were chosen because of their demographic and economic significance. They are to be given implementation powers, with the PICC expected to exercise an oversight role.

In Gauteng, some of the projects that are up and running include the implementation of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System in the province's three metropolitan cities. Tshwane is expected to spend more than R1,6 billion on its BRT System.

Johannesburg finalised plans for a major rehabilitation of Diepsloot and Ivory Park townships, including the construction of clinics, schools and community libraries.

About R45 million has been set aside to turn Ekurhuleni into an aerotropolis – a new urban form where cities grow around airports, connecting workers, suppliers, executives and goods to the global marketplace.

An amount of R2 billion has been earmarked for a new rail link connecting Cape Town International Airport and the city centre while in other provinces such as the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal the focus will be on expanding ports and rail services.

Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP)

The CHP for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground) is aimed at eradicating informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It incorporates principles such as:
- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level, applying them consistently throughout townships
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types, ranging from single-stand to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement-upgrading pilot projects in each province.

These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects. The goal of upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is aligned to the UN MDGs to improve the lives of 100 million slum dwellers worldwide.

Houses built under the Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme in Mayfield, Grahamstown, in the Eastern Cape were handed over in September 2013.

The CHP focuses on:
- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The department developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of government.

These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines.

The department also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance

of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

Mpumalanga launched the Rapid Implementation Unit (RIU) in March 2013. The RIU, which is stationed in his office, was deployed to oversee the implementation of housing units across Mpumalanga.

By September 2013, about 7 000 houses had been handed over in various communities through the RIU.

Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket and living under the following conditions:

- provisions made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased demand for affordable and well-located rental accommodation. The DHS has developed a project pipeline with a mix of public-private sector rental stock.

The KwaZulu-Natal Human Settlements and Public Works Department launched the province's five-year Rental Housing Strategic Plan in Durban in May 2013. The five-year rental housing plan is informed by the National Rental Housing Strategy of which Social Housing, Community Residential Units and Institutional Subsidy Programme are essential components.

Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme replaces the National Hostel Redevelopment Programme and the proposed Affordable Rental Housing Programme.

There are approximately 2 000 public hostels that need to be addressed by government.

There are also 200 000 residential units owned by provinces and municipalities. The programme, therefore, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income individuals. It targets low-income individuals and households earning between R800 and R3 500 a month, who are unable to enter the formal private rental and social housing market.

The CRU programme covers:

- public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- "grey" hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

The Mahikeng CRU programme in Extension 39 was officially launched in October 2013, giving more people a decent place to call home. Units provide secure and stable rental tenure for lower income earners. Potential tenants are selected according to specific criteria such as, they must be a South African citizen, not an owner of any property in the municipality, earn between R1 600 and R3 500 per month (gross income), not owe the municipality any services money, pass an affordability check, and they must be a major to be able to sign the legal documents.

Emergency housing

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land, servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial and recreational purposes, schools and clinics, as well as residential stands for low-, middle- and high-income groups. The land-use and income-group mix is based on local planning and needs assessment.

In 2013, South Africa had almost 2 700

informal settlements compared to 300 in 1994.

Despite the steady increase in subsidies, factors such as escalating building costs, inflation and rising land prices have slowed down the delivery of houses.

The National Upgrading Summit in Khayelitsha took place during July 2013. Since then government has changed its approach to providing communities with housing to allow for more flexibility, more creativity and more humanity. Government became more creative in its response to upgrading informal settlements and more flexible regarding the efforts of the poor to plan, build and maintain the communities in which they live.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), provides for the establishment of the SHRA and the disbursement of three types of institutional investment grant, namely:

- project acquisition and feasibility grants
- pre-accreditation grants
- general capacity-building grants.

The main objective of the SHRA is to regulate and support the social housing sector to accelerate the delivery of social housing stock through the investment programme.

Issuing certificates and updating the accreditation register is part of the SHRA's mandate to regulate social housing institutions and manage the investment programme for social housing.

International relations

The South African Government is party to the UN MDGs, which provide for the significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020.

In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat programme: the Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976, the Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of persons without adequate housing.

International Relations

In 2014 and beyond, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation (DIRCO) will lead a coordinated campaign, through the footprint it has established, to diversify and consolidate South Africa's international relations.

The department is committed to promoting South Africa's national interests and values, the African Renaissance and the creation of a better world for all.

The department's strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters
- protect South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence
- provide consular services to South African nationals abroad
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith.
- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, heads of state, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations (UN) and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people.
- The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), establishes an African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.

- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by the Republic of South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Budget and funding

DIRCO received R5 540 million for the 2013/14 financial year.

Foreign policy

By prioritising the African continent and promoting its renewal, development and reconstruction, South Africa is contributing to building a better Africa, which is the central foreign policy goal of the South African Government.

The country has come a long way with its partners the world over. Within 20 years, South Africa went from being a pariah state to a great nation with a visionary foreign policy that promotes relations with other countries.

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies. In this regard, the department continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security, particularly to countries in Africa.

Regarding conventional weapons, including small arms and light weapons, South Africa actively participates in UN efforts related to the Anti-Personnel Mine Ban Convention, the Convention on Cluster Munitions, the Certain Conventional Weapons Convention, the UN Programme of Action on Small Arms and Light Weapons and efforts aimed at establishing an arms trade treaty.

Role players

South Africa has key partnerships such as the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum. South Africa's Government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP). These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better world and Africa.

African Union (AU)

The AU emerged from the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established in 1963 with a charter signed by 32 countries in Addis Ababa. The OAU, which was officially disbanded in July 2002, was replaced by the AU with 51 members who pledged to work for closer political integration and unity among African countries.

The series of events lined up to celebrate the 50th anniversary of the formation of the OAU provided a platform to promote social cohesion, build a common identity and a sense of belonging for all people of the continent.

The activities aligned to Africa Day celebrations in May 2013 included the Scramble for Africa Conference, which deliberated on matters affecting the continent.

President Jacob Zuma unveiled an artwork as South Africa's cultural contribution to the 50th anniversary in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

In 2013, the Department of Arts and Culture, City of Tshwane and the Africa Institute of South Africa celebrated the 50th anniversary of the OAU under the theme "2013, Year of Pan-Africanism and African Renaissance".

The anniversary facilitated and celebrated African narratives of past, present and future that promote a Pan-Africanist spirit. It enthused and energised South Africans to see themselves as part of an African movement for change. It also enabled South Africans to acknowledge the role of the OAU in bringing an end to apartheid.

The AU, which now has 54 member states, brought together the continent of Africa to address its challenges collectively, such as armed conflict, social upheaval, climate change, and poverty.

It seeks to promote an integrated, prosperous and peaceful Africa that is people centred and represents a dynamic force on the world stage.

Africa Day reflected the key lessons of the past 50 years and acknowledged the contributions of founders of the OAU and Pan-Africanism in all countries, regions and the African diaspora.

AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC)

South Africa plays an important role in efforts to bring about peace and stability on the continent.

The AUPSC is the organ of the AU in charge of enforcing union decisions. Members are elected by the AU Assembly to reflect regional balance within Africa, as well as a variety of other criteria,

South Africa hosted the 23rd World Economic Forum in May 2013, under the theme "Delivering on Africa's Promise." The forum reflected on a broad range of economic issues relating to the African continent, converging particularly on the issues of growth and development.

including capacity to contribute militarily and financially to the union, political will to do so, and effective diplomatic presence at Addis Ababa.

The AUPSC entered into force in December 2003, after being ratified by the required majority of AU member states. It is made up of 15 member states and is responsible for the resolution of conflict, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction and development (PCRD) in conjunction with the UN.

South Africa ended its term in the AUPSC on 1 April 2012 in line with the principle of rotation among members of the southern region.

On relinquishing its seat in the council, South Africa emphasised its commitment to continue contributing to the resolution of peace and security challenges in Africa.

AU regional economic communities (RECs)

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

Nepad, an AU strategic framework for pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. Nepad provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

Nepad manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security
- climate change and national resource management
- regional integration and infrastructure
- human development
- economic and corporate governance
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communication technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosts the Nepad Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The peer-review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

Nepad remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the EU-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa-China Partnership, the Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), the Tokyo International Conference on African Development, the NAASP and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through Nepad, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education has improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community (SADC)

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992. Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became the SADC, its mandate changed to the following:

- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development

In October 2013, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation launched a new 24-hour online radio station, Ubuntu Radio. It is the first of its kind in Africa and the first in South Africa to operate under the auspices of a government institution for non-commercial purposes. The station is accessible on the internet, at *www.ubunturadio.com*.

- breaking down tariff barriers
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment
- realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour service
- achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

In June 2011, 26 African countries signed an agreement to create a free trade area (FTA) that covers more than half of Africa.

In July 2012, Ministers from the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation convened in Pretoria, Gauteng, for their 14th meeting, which charted a way forward for the region.

The Tripartite FTA (TFTA) Agreement is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations within southern Africa through trade. This is evident from the ongoing discussions to achieve inter-regional cooperation and integration among the RECs of the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa, the East African Community and SADC aimed at forming a TFTA with the ultimate goal of establishing a single customs union.

The three RECs comprise 26 countries, a combined population of close to 600 million people, and a combined gross domestic product of just under US$1 trillion. The tripartite integration process will rest on three pillars:

- market integration
- infrastructure development
- industrial development.

The TFTA is an important vehicle for regional integration. Developments within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) membership and the elevation of regional integration efforts continue to supplement and complement the SADC's work.

The objective of Sacu is to enhance intra-Sacu trade and overall economic growth through increased investment, improved infrastructure and expanded industrialisation. To this end, Sacu members have developed a comprehensive work programme on priority areas.

At the SADC summit in Malawi during August 2013, two women were ushered in at the top – Malawian President Joyce Banda as chairperson and Stergomena Lawrence Tax of Tanzania as executive secretary. Tax, who was elected during the Heads of State and Government summit, took over from Dr Tomaz Augusto Salomão, who served two terms of eight years. Tanzania handed the Chair of the Organ on Politics Defence and Security Cooperation to Namibia in 2013.

Heads of State and governments of the Sacu member states attended the fourth Sacu Summit in April 2013, held in Gaborone, Botswana to discuss various issues broadly related to regional trade and industrialisation, under the auspices of the customs union.

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global development agenda and address underdevelopment, social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally. Through participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law. South Africa was one of the 51 founding member of the UN in 1945. Since then, UN membership has grown to 192 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994 following its transition to democracy.

UN General Assembly

President Zuma attended the 68th Session of the UN General Assembly (UNGA68) in New York in September 2013.

The 2013 theme was "Setting the stage for the post-2015 agenda."

UNGA68 took place closer to the 2015 target date for achieving the United Nations Millennium Development Goals (MDGs). Given the approaching deadline, international deliberations on the post-2015 development agenda have become a major focal point in the multilateral arena.

The President addressed the General Assembly on the progress made by South Africa in the implementation of the MDGs.

UN Security Council (UNSC)

In December 2012, South Africa concluded its second term as an elected member of the UNSC.

South Africa's second tenure in the UNSC was aimed at building upon its experience during its previous term by contributing to achieving peace and stability on continent and in all the regions of the world, developing effective partnerships between the UN and regional organisations in maintaining international peace and security,

advancing the African Agenda, including highlighting the continent's priorities in the area of peace and security, promoting the rule of law within multilateralism and the reform of the UN system, and working towards improving the working methods of the UNSC to make it a more legitimate, representative and effective body.

Throughout its term, South Africa sought to promote a multilateral, rules-based system. The country approached its membership of the UNSC from the premise that the UN remains the most appropriate forum for addressing international challenges in the maintenance of international peace and security, which are best served through collective cooperation.

Despite constraints, South Africa influenced a large number of UNSC outcomes and actively engaged on all issues on the Security Council's agenda pursuant to the global mandate associated with its membership.

South Africa's leadership role and significant contribution to the work of the Council on African issues particularly on Sudan, South Sudan, Somalia, the DRC, Mali and Libya and its principled position on the Middle East and Western Sahara is well recognised.

Notable achievements during South Africa's tenure include its leadership role in chairing the Working Group on Conflict Prevention and Resolution in Africa, the strategic intent is to find ways by which to prevent and resolve conflicts in Africa and the 1540 Committee, which prevents non-state actors from gaining access to weapons of mass destruction.

South Africa also championed landmark UNSC decisions on strengthening the strategic cooperation between the UNSC and the AUPSC in Resolution 2033 as well as the promotion of the rule of law in conflict and post-conflict situations.

The country also co-led a Security Council Mission to Africa and led a successful visit of the Council to Timor-Leste in 2012.

South Africa participated in the 57th Session of the UN Commission on the Status of Women took place at the UN headquarters, New York, in March 2013.

South Africa participated in various activities of the session and hosted and coordinated side events on gender-based violence, the economic empowerment of women as well as an event which emphasised strengthening the hand-in-hand approach in the fight against gender-based violence, strategies and approaches for ending violence against women, and strengthening partnerships for working solutions. The theme for the session was "Elimination and prevention of all forms of violence against women and girls." The review theme for the session was "Equal sharing of responsibilities between women and men, including care giving in the context of HIV and AIDS."

UN Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc)

Ecosoc is a premier organ of the UN responsible for economic and social development matters of the world.

South Africa assumed membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. This will give South Africa an opportunity to be located at the centre of the debate on the global development agenda, including the acceleration of the implementation of the MDGs.

UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco)

South Africa is an active participant in key Unesco governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee, and has previously served on the executive board.

Since its return to Unesco, South Africa has also ratified a number of Unesco conventions including the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (July 1997), Convention Against Discrimination in Education (March 2000), the International Convention Against Doping in Sport (November 2006) and the Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions (December 2006).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict with Regulations for the Execution of the Convention (December 2003). National interaction with Unesco's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for Unesco, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

UN Human Rights Council

South Africa played a leadership role in several inter-governmental processes at the UN pertaining to human rights and social development issues. It is also the current Chair of the Open-ended Working Group on Private Military and Security Companies (PMSCs), which objective is to elaborate a legally binding regulatory framework and to ensure that PMSCs are held accountable for their activities.

South Africa is also the current chair of the Adhoc Committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UNSCF)

In February 2013, South Africa and the UN signed a five-year UNSCF that will help

government as it tries to meet its development agenda and implement its Programme of Action. Government has high expectations that this will provide a framework for cooperation that will enhance the contribution of the UN towards the realisation of the country's development agenda.

South Africa strongly supported a multilateral, rules-based system as a means of achieving a better country, and contributing to a better and safer Africa, in a better world.

The framework symbolised South Africa's recognition of cooperation and learning from the global institutions.

Under the "delivering as one" concept, the UN system sought to strengthen further the management and coordination of UN activities so that they can make an even more effective contribution to the achievement of internationally agreed upon development goals.

To ensure an appropriate oversight of the framework, a steering committee would be established to give strategic direction and guidance in implementing the framework. It would then be monitored and reviewed annually, through meetings with government and other stakeholders.

UN agencies would develop joint annual working plans, hold joint reviews and undertake monitoring activities as much as possible, in the interests of alignment and harmonisation, and to reduce the transaction costs for government.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body.

South Africa also takes part in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and making decisions on key issues regarding global and public health.

Group of 20 (G20)

In 2013, the G20 marked its fifth anniversary. Leaders from Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) met in February 2013 in Durban, where they agreed to the eThekwini Declaration. The leaders expressed concerns about the stalling of the International Monetary Fund reform process.

They recalled the urgent need to implement the 2010 IMF Quota and Governance Reform, and to complete the next general quota review by January 2014, as agreed at the G20 Seoul Summit to ensure the fund's credibility, legitimacy and effectiveness.

In September 2013, the G20 summit took place in Saint Petersburg, Russia. Leaders agreed on coordinated measures on banking reform, tax and trade regulations, and how to spark sustainable economic growth.

G20 countries account for 85% of global economic output, 80% of global trade, and two-thirds of the world's population.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa trade alliance

South Africa's BRICS membership will help the country and the continent to address its socio-economic challenges.

The fifth BRICS Summit was held in South Africa in March 2013. The BRICS Business Council was established during the 2013 BRICS Summit in Durban at that time, with South African businessman Patrice Motsepe named chairman of the body.

In August 2013, business leaders from the BRICS group of countries converged in Johannesburg for the first meeting of the BRICS Business Council. In September 2013, leaders of the BRICS bloc met away from the G20 meeting, which was held in Russia. The BRICS bloc emerged saying the G20 leaders could do more to boost global demand and market confidence. The summit presented a unique high-level opportunity for South Africa to further support key priority areas of the African Agenda.

They welcomed the good progress made towards the establishment of the BRICS-led New Development Bank and the Contingent Reserve Arrangement (CRA). Progress has been made in negotiating the capital structure, membership, shareholding and governance of the bank. It will have an initial subscribed capital of US$50 billion from the BRICS countries. The bank is expected to fund infrastructure projects crucial for development in BRICS member countries.

On the CRA, consensus has been reached on many key aspects and operational details regarding its establishment.

As agreed in Durban, the CRA will have an initial size of US$100 billion. South Africa committed US$5 billion.

The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) signed three Memoranda of Agreement (MoUs) with its counterparts from China, Russia and Brazil to facilitate mutual cooperation for improved economic growth and job creation.

At the BRICS Conference, BRICS leaders pledged to boost support to Africa. BRICS can help forge a new funding model in Africa where

regional projects spanning a number of countries are favoured for finance. The continent's link to BRICS and the BRICS link to Africa offered a window of opportunity to African countries to boost trade and to industrialise.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) trade alliance

IBSA is a coalition of the south that has facilitated dialogue at a level previously unimaginable. Development cooperation, along with the views on tackling socio-economic distress and trading among the three nations distinguishes IBSA from BRICS. All the IBSA members are democracies and can discuss issues which cannot be discussed in BRICS summits.

IBSA continues to play its unique role as a body bringing together three democracies of the South from three continents.

The realisation of a trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues, and are substantial emerging economies within their subregions.

Apart from promoting South-South dialogue, IBSA also fosters inter-regional cooperation.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on three levels, namely: heads of state and government, government-to-government and people-to-people cooperation.

Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC)

South Africa is one of the founding member states of the IOR-ARC, which was launched in Mauritius in March 1997. There are 20 Indian IOR member states.

The objectives of IOR include promoting the sustained growth and balanced development of the region and of the member states, and creating common ground for regional economic cooperation. This also includes formulating and implementing projects for economic cooperation relating to trade facilitation and liberation, promotion of foreign investment, academic, scientific and technological exchanges, tourism and the development of infrastructure and human resources.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 54 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

In March 2013, South Africa hosted the first Commonwealth Conference on Education and Training of Youth Workers.

In late-August 2013, the South African Parliament hosted the 59th Commonwealth Parliamentary Association Conference in Johannesburg.

In 2009, the Commonwealth embarked on a modernisation/reform process. As part of this, the organisation adopted a large number of recommendations from the Eminent Persons Group. In May 2013, member states approved a new strategic plan for the period 2013/14 to 2016/17.

In November 2013, the biannual Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM), under the theme "Growth with Equity: Inclusive Development" took place in Colombo, Sri Lanka. President Zuma represented South Africa. At the same time the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation attended the pre-CHOGM Foreign Ministers Meeting.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The Islamic Republic of Iran is chairing the NAM from 2012 to 2015. The NAM consists of 120 member states. It is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

The next NAM Summit is scheduled to be held in Venezuela during 2015.

International relations

South Africa and Africa

South Africa regards Africa as the centrepiece of its foreign policy and remains committed to promoting the African Agenda, particularly regional peace, security and stability, as the key determinants for socio-economic development on the continent.

Relations with southern Africa

Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability, regional integration and the promotion of the SADC Agenda. Both countries are still part of respectively the SADC Troika and the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Troika.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

In August 2013, President Zuma travelled to Angola where he had consultations with his counterparts President José Eduardo Dos

Santos, and the President of the DRC, Joseph Kabila Kabanga.

They discussed a range of issues relating to peace and stability in the region, particularly current peace efforts in the DRC. The meeting was a follow-up to a meeting held by the three leaders in March, which was aimed at strengthening bilateral political and economic relations between the countries.

By October 2013, South Africa and Angola had signed over 22 bilateral agreements and MoUs covering a wide range of sectors such as trade and industry, energy, science and technology, sport, mining, tourism and defence.

Botswana

President Zuma hosted his Botswana counterpart, President Ian Khama, for a visit aimed at strengthening and deepening the existing historical relations between the two countries in November 2013.

The two presidents presided over the inaugural session of the Bi-National Commission (BNC) which they established in 2012.

The BNC is a framework for cooperation, which elevates the two existing bilateral cooperation frameworks, namely the Joint Permanent Commission on Cooperation and the Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation on Defence and Security from Ministerial level to Head of State level.

South African companies have a huge presence in Botswana and are involved in various sectors including mining, housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services. These companies continue to contribute to the growth and development of the neighbouring Botswana economy.

Democratic Republic of Congo

President Zuma attended the signing ceremony of the Peace, Security and Cooperation Framework for the DRC and the Region in Ethiopia in February 2013.

The 11 signatories to the framework included the presidents and representatives of Angola, Burundi, the Central African Republic (CAR), the Republic of Congo, the DRC, Rwanda, South Africa, South Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda and Zambia.

The UN Secretary-General and the Chairperson of the AUC signed as witnesses and guarantors, along with the chairpersons of the International Conference on the Great Lakes Region and the SADC.

The Minister of Energy participated in a workshop in March 2013, that worked towards the finalisation of the Grand Inga Project Treaty in the DRC. The project has the potential to supply clean and cost-effective hydroelectric power to meet the needs of the DRC and surrounding or nearby countries, including South Africa.

The two countries signed the treaty in October 2013 during President Zuma's state visit to the DRC that was aimed at strengthening existing relations between the two countries.

The growing bilateral economic cooperation between South Africa and the DRC received added impetus through a two-day Business Forum held in Kinshasa at the same time.

Lesotho

Bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Lesotho includes trade and investment, security, energy, transport, agriculture, tourism and water.

With South Africa being Lesotho's only neighbour, the economies of the two countries are interdependent. South African companies have a significant presence in Lesotho and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project has been in operation for over 20 years and supplies South Africa with about 780 million cubic meters of water a year. When fully operational, Phase 2 of the project will substantially increase the volume of water supplied to South Africa.

In April 2013, South Africa and Lesotho resolved to work towards increasing economic activities that will lead to the creation of sustainable jobs that are mutually beneficial to the two economies.

President Zuma met and held discussions with Lesotho Prime Minister Thomas Thabane in May 2013, in an effort to promote the African Agenda and strengthen bilateral relations between the two countries.

The two countries agreed to work towards the full implementation of the agreement on free movement of people, goods and services between the common borders, which will in turn boost trade.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi share strong historical political, economic and cultural ties and warm relations in the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade.

The then Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Marius Fransman, participated in a meeting of the SADC in Lilongwe, Malawi, in October 2013.

Mozambique

In February 2013, President Zuma met with his Mozambican counterpart, Armando Guebuza, in Pretoria within the context of the enhanced bilateral cooperation between their respective countries.

At the end of August 2013, South African enterprises got a chance to present their services at the Feira Internacional De Maputo (Facim) in Mozambique.

The objective of the South African National Pavilion at Facim was to promote and present South African potential in general, with more focus on the participating companies to attract potential buyers, distributors and agents, and to raise awareness among South African industries about trade opportunities available globally.

Relations between South Africa and Mozambique were strengthened by growing ties in trade, investment tourism, migration and security.

Sectors targeted for the trade fair were agriculture and agro-processing, mining and capital equipment and allied services, electro-technical equipment, automotive components, built environment, security equipment and protective gear and boat-building.

Facim is an international multi-sectoral trade fair hosted annually in Mozambique with approximately 50 000 visitors and exhibitors from different regions and countries.

Namibia

The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

In May 2013, Millennium Challenge Account Namibia (MCA-N) Compact contracted the South African non-governmental organisation (NGO), Open Africa and Grant Thornton Consulting to assist the Namibia Tourism Board in plotting three self-drive travel routes in Namibia.

President Zuma arrived in Windhoek in November 2013 for a state visit aimed at strengthening political and economic relations.

President Zuma, who led a high-level delegation, held private talks with his counterpart, President Hifikepunye Pohamba.

The highlight of the visit was the inauguration of the BNC between the two nations, which served as an important mechanism for the strengthening and enhancement of cooperation.

South Africa hosted the first Commonwealth Conference on Education and Training of Youth Workers from 18 to 20 March 2013, at the University of South Africa in Pretoria. Participants agreed that Commonwealth countries around the world must shift their focus on innovation and creative thinking to find opportunities to improve the lives of its citizens, especially the youth. Commonwealth Day – aimed at promoting an understanding of global issues, international cooperation and the work of the Commonwealth to improve the lives of its two billion citizens – is celebrated annually on the second Monday in March.

In 2013, members agreed to focus on the critical issue of "Opportunity through Enterprise – Unlocking Potential with Innovation and Excellence."

Swaziland

The Kingdom of Swaziland and South Africa share common borders and have very strong common cultural links. Since South Africa's re-entry to the Commonwealth, relations have been conducted at high-commissioner level.

Both countries are members of key sub-regional, regional and international organisations, including the Sacu, the SADC, the AU, the Commonwealth and the UN.

A bilateral agreement between Swaziland and South Africa provides a mechanism for the two countries to cooperate in areas of mutual benefit, ensuring that healthy relations are maintained and further developed.

Tanzania

South Africa established formal diplomatic relations with Tanzania in 1994, immediately after attaining its freedom.

The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interaction between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

South Africa is one of the top 10 major investors in Tanzania and accounts for approximately 10% of total investment in Tanzania.

South African exports are concentrated predominantly in the areas of manufacturing, including machinery, mechanical appliances, paper, rubber products, vehicles, iron and steel, services and technology.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia. Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe have a common and long history of regional affiliation and cultural ties. Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

Uganda

Relations between South Africa and Uganda date back to the time of the struggle against apartheid when Uganda provided support to and solidarity with the South African liberation movement.

Bilateral cooperation between the countries includes trade and investment, defence and security, agriculture, water and environmental affairs, social development, public works and science and technology.

Kenya

South Africa and Kenya occupy key roles in their respective regions on the continent. Relations between the two countries were upgraded to full diplomatic status on 12 April 1994.

In April 2013, President Zuma attended the inauguration of the President-elect Uhuru Kenyatta in Kenya's capital Nairobi.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995, when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa.

The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation.

The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission that will meet every two years.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

Relations with central Africa

Gabon

South Africa and Gabon have a legal framework through a cooperation agreement.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa were established in May 1994.

In April 2013, a joint technical team from the Department of Water Affairs and from Rand Water undertook a fact-finding mission to São Tomé and Príncipe on what South Africa can do to provide water treatment support.

They identified infrastructure refurbishment, the provision of rainwater harvesting tanks and knowledge sharing on waste water management as critical areas of intervention.

President Zuma hosted his São Tomé and Príncipe counterpart, President Manuel Pinto Da Costa, who was on a state visit aimed at revitalising diplomatic relations between the two countries in August 2013.

The two presidents discussed and cemented cooperation in key priority areas such as energy, water and health.

Republic of the Congo

In February 2014, the Republic of the Congo bestowed its Order of Merit on Mathews Phoza at a ceremony in Brazzaville occurring during the 25th anniversary celebrations of the signing of the Brazzaville peace accord, which paved the way for the end of the Angolan civil war and Namibia attaining independence.

President Zuma attended the Forbes Africa Forum in July 2013. President Denis Sassou-N'Guesso invited him to attend the forum. The forum focused on the theme "The emergence of an African middle class: conditions, issues and challenges."

During his visit to the Republic of Congo, President Zuma used the opportunity to discuss with President Sassou-N'Guesso issues related to strengthening bilateral relations between the two countries, and also on matters of peace and security in the central African region.

Equatorial Guinea

In February 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry visited Equatorial Guinea to explore business opportunities and increase trade and investment with a business delegation comprising representatives from 13 South African companies. Targeted sectors included agro-processing, infrastructure, electro-technical, and capital and mining equipment.

Cameroon

Cameroon is the economic hub of the Central African Region and exports commodities to most countries of the zone. The seaport of Doulla in Cameroon is used to export goods to landlocked countries in the region such as Chad and the Central Africa Republic (CAR). Many South African companies have already seized business opportunities there. Cameroon is a member of the AU, has adopted Nepad programmes and subscribes to the MDGs. In pursuit of South Africa's regional economic

integration and developmental agenda for the continent, Cameroon has been identified as a strategic partner.

Central African Republic

In January 2013, 200 Department of Defence and Military Veterans personnel were deployed in the CAR, in the aftermath of the coup d'état that toppled President Bozize. The SANDF withdrew its soldiers during April 2013.

In the same month, President Zuma attended the Extraordinary Summit of the Economic Community of Central African States (ECCAS), which discussed the CAR.

Chad

In 2013, South Africa appointed a Resident Ambassador in N'djamena.

The discovery and exploitation of oil in Chad and its authorities that have appropriately channelled the revenues has led to the country's economic take-off. South Africa has received aid and other related humanitarian requests from Chad.

In 2013, the African Renaissance Fund supported a project proposal for food relief to the government of Chad to the value of R20 million, which included maize, sorghum, fortified milk, palm oil and pearl millet.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

Algeria

President Zuma undertook a working visit to Algeria to hold bilateral consultations with Algerian President Abdelaziz Bouteflika, in May 2013. The visit took place within the context of the historic and excellent bilateral relations that exist between South Africa and Algeria.

Among the issues discussed was the convening of the Sixth Session of the BNC in South Africa and the preceding BNC Ministerial Mid-Term Review to evaluate the status of bilateral relations.

South Africa and Algeria continue to work hand-in-hand in building a stronger AU and its structures. To this end, regional developments such as the Mali and CAR crises and the general security situation in the Sahel and Maghreb regions also featured prominently in the consultations with President Bouteflika.

Western Sahara

In June 2013, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation hosted her Western Sahara counterpart, Mohamed Salem Ould Salek, for bilateral consultations in Pretoria.

They signed MoUs on diplomatic consultations; financial contribution toward the construction of a youth sport development complex, and financial contribution towards the humanitarian landmine assistance programme.

The signing of these agreements will further solidify the strong relations that already exist between South Africa and Western Sahara.

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have created a political environment that is conducive to business. As part of the MoU on Economic Cooperation signed with Egypt in 2009 a trade and investment seminar held in February 2013 in Kempton Park, provided an opportunity for South African and Egyptian business people in various sectors to meet and explore opportunities.

The seminar also formed part of the two countries' efforts to facilitate intra-Africa trade, by ensuring that business communities between the two partnering countries acquire insight into each other's markets.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa has also participated in discussions on Côte d'Ivoire at the UNSC and supported its resolution on the extension of the mandate of the UN Special Operation in Côte d'Ivoire and the French forces that were to support it until 13 July 2013.

South Africa is committed to working with the government of Côte d'Ivoire in its quest for national unity and reconciliation.

In January 2013, North West Premier Thandi Modise led a delegation of the provincial government scheduled to meet with Ministers from the Côte d'Ivoire delegation, which included the Ministers of the promotion of youth, sport and recreation, Alain Michel Lobognon, and tourism Roger Kacou.

South Sudan

South Sudan and South Africa upgraded the missions in their respective capitals to fully fledged embassies. By January 2014, South Africa had trained more than 1 600 government officials from South Sudan as part of a capacity-building programme within the context of the AU PCRD initiative.

Various engagements with senior Sudanese and South Sudanese officials to discuss the negotiation process illustrated South Africa's ongoing support to the AU negotiations between Sudan and South Sudan over post-independence issues.

Somalia

In January 2013, South Africa pledged its support for Somalia's new government and the country on its road towards a prosperous and stable democracy.

Nigeria

Nigeria is considered one of South Africa's most important partners in pursuing the vision of African renewal. As two of the strongest economies in Africa, cooperation between the two countries is pivotal to the growth of the continent.

President Zuma paid a working visit to President Goodluck Jonathan in Abuja in April 2013. The two presidents met within the context of focusing attention on the bilateral, regional, continental and international relations between the two countries. A number of agreements and MoUs were signed at the time.

In December 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Ms Elizabeth Mabete and a business delegation were in Nigeria on an outward selling and investment mission.

Ghana

In November 2013, during his first State visit to Ghana, President Zuma held talks with President John Mahama.

Three MoUs were signed during the visit namely on Transport-Related Matters, Bilateral Air Service Agreement and Electricity.

A business forum, attended by over 150 business people from South Africa, took place on the sidelines.

Relations between South Africa and Ghana have matured over the years with an increase in bilateral trade from US$32 million in 2008 to US $60,9 million in 2013.

South Africa will participate in a National Pavilion at the Ghana International Trade Fair in 2014.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso are working on a draft MoU on economic and technical cooperation, and a draft agreement between the Chamber of Commerce and Industry of Burkina Faso and Business Unity South Africa.

Cape Verde

Bilateral discussions on a General Cooperation Agreement, lead to the signing of a Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC), early in 2013.

Senegal

In September 2013, President Zuma travelled to Senegal where he met with his counterpart President Macky Sall to strengthen bilateral relations and exchange views on various regional and global issues.

The state visit gave President Zuma and his delegation an opportunity to engage with the Senegalese government on specific areas of interest, including building defence capacity, trade and economic development, mining and mineral beneficiation, water purification and job creation among other things.

South Africa and Senegal continued to play an important role in promoting peace and stability through participating in peacekeeping operations in their regions.

Niger

In October 2013, South Africa and Niger recommitted to strengthening bilateral relations between the two countries, as well as working together to promote peace and stability in Africa. This emerged after the inaugural session of the JCC, which the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and her counterpart Mohamed Bazoum co-chaired.

During their official talks, the two Ministers expressed satisfaction at the warm and fraternal relations that exist between the two countries.

They also expressed their desire to deepen bilateral cooperation between the two countries in the fields of food security; geology and mining, energy, security as well as new areas of cooperation such as arts and culture, tourism, trade and industry; and infrastructure development.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China have enjoyed 15 years of formal diplomatic relations. It has been proposed that 2014 be heralded as the Year of South Africa in China and that 2015 be declared the Year of China in South Africa.

The Chinese government also provided 200 scholarships to South African students.

South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa and the bilateral trade volume accounts for more than a quarter of China-Africa trade.

According to the Beijing Declaration, China and South Africa will work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa.

The two sides will continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing.

China and African countries have pledged to ensure the full implementation of the proposals enshrined in the Beijing Action Plan 2013 to

In July 2013, the United Nations (UN) appointed former Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka as executive director of UN Women.

2015 of the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC).

South Africa has taken over co-chairmanship of the FOCAC from Egypt, on behalf of Africa, for the next six years. The forum is one of the most strategic partnerships between Africa and its development partners.

The sixth Ministerial Conference of the FOCAC will be held in Johannesburg, South Africa in 2015.

During March 2013, Chinese President Xi Jinping and President Zuma signed several agreements in various fields that would serve to strengthen the already cordial ties between South Africa and China.

On the sidelines of the International Labour Conference 2013 in June in Geneva, the Minister of Labour met with Xiaochu Wang, China's Deputy Minister of Human Resources in Social Security.

The two countries – who are both part of BRICS – could learn a lot from each other on matters pertaining to collective bargaining, industrial relations, inspections, enforcement services, and social protection.

The last in a series of three South African expos kicked off in Beijing in September 2013, with South Africa looking to foster a more balanced and sustainable relationship with China.

The expo, held at the Beijing Exhibition Centre, was a platform to present South Africa's Top 10 value-added products and services for export to China, which is South Africa's largest trading partner. It attracted scores of Chinese businessmen and ordinary people.

The three expos also present the Top 10 investment opportunities, which include agro-processing, chemicals, automotive steel and aluminium.

A total of 63 South African companies participated in the expos, which began in Xiamen and were now concluding in Beijing.

In October 2013, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe and Chinese Vice-President Li Yuanchao co-chaired the fifth South Africa-China BNC in Beijing.

The BNC was preceded by the Strategic Dialogue Mechanism, which comprises sectoral committees on foreign affairs, economic and trade matters, science and technology, education, energy and minerals.

The 2013 BNC reviewed progress made in implementing previous BNC decisions.

The BNC discussed, among other things, regional and global geopolitical issues.

The two countries signed bilateral agreements promoting cooperation in the areas of human resources development and tourism.

Mongolia

In 2013, South Africa and Mongolia strengthened bilateral relations by exploring areas of further cooperation between the two countries when Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe held talks with that country's Prime Minister, Norovyn Altankhuyag.

South Africa and Mongolia could work together to meet that country's international commitments on climate change.

Mongolia's vast coal reserves offer an opportunity for collaboration on clean coal technologies. South Africa's coal-to-liquid technology would mitigate and possibly reduce the country's contribution to greenhouse gases.

East Asia

Japan

In 2013, Japan and South Africa celebrated 103 years of official relations. Japan is South Africa's third-largest trading partner with the two countries cooperating in various fields such as training and skills development.

In February 2013, the Department of Trade and Industry (the dti) and the Bank of Tokyo-Mitsubishi UFJ Ltd signed a MoU that will see the two parties collaborate in increasing Japanese investment into South Africa and strengthening relations between the two.

The MoU emanates from a visit to Japan by the Minister of Trade and Industry in 2012, where both parties agreed to collaborate in the area of increasing Japanese investment into South Africa.

In March 2013, a South African delegation attended the fifth Tokyo International Conference on African Development in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The conference, a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan, was launched in 1993 to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa.

President Zuma participated in the fifth Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD-V) held in Yokohama, in May 2013. This was followed by a working visit on 4 June 2013.

The TICAD is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993, with a view to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa. The 20th anniversary of the TICAD Process coincided with the 50th anniversary of the founding of the OAU/AU, in 2013. The TICAD-V Summit was held under the theme, "Hand in Hand with a Dynamic Africa," which symbolises the growing economic stature of Africa in the global economy.

About 40 African heads of state participated in the TICAD Summit, which takes place every five years.

At the summit, the African heads of state and government, Japan and the TICAD partners adopted the TICAD-V Declaration, as well as its five-year action plan that will guide the strategic cooperation between Africa and Japan between 2013 and 2017.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the ROK were established in December 1992. Increasingly the focus of the bilateral relationship is on economic and business links.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia, while South Africa is the ROK's largest trading partner in Africa. Trade between the two countries encompasses a wide variety of products ranging from minerals to sophisticated high-technology electric products.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the DPRK in August 1998. The two countries enjoy cordial relations, which date back due to the historic support that the DPRK provided during the struggle against colonialism and apartheid. The South African ambassador to China is also accredited to the DPRK's capital, Pyongyang.

In November 2013, Deputy Minister Ebrahim, paid an official visit to the DPRK to hold political consultations and review bilateral relations. The visit also took place in the context of the 15th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic ties. Then Deputy Minister Ebrahim Ebrahim held consultations with Vice-Minister Kim Hyong Jun, and paid the Foreign Minister Pak Ui Chun and Kim Yong Nam, the President of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly courtesy calls.

He shared South Africa's experience of denuclearisation, highlighting the great benefits that accrued to South Africa from its decision to dismantle its nuclear weapons in 1994.

The DPRK was encouraged to recommence the family reunion programme with the ROK, both on humanitarian grounds and as a confidence-building measure.

As part of the programme arranged by the DPRK government, the South African delegation visited the demilitarised zone at Panmunjom as well as various newly constructed social amenities in Pyonyang showing the progress that the DPRK has made in recent years.

However, economic relations between the two countries remain limited owing to the sanctions imposed by the UNSC because of the DPRK's nuclear programme, which affects the ongoing tension in the Korean Peninsula.

Central Asia

There is no South African representation in Uzbekistan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, and Kyrgystan, but the South African ambassador in Turkey is accredited to these countries on a non-resident basis.

Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan and South Africa established diplomatic relations in March 1992. The South African Embassy in Kazakhstan was opened in December 2003 in Almaty, and relocated to Astana in February 2008.

Deputy Minister Ebrahim, hosted Kazakhstan's Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Kairat Sarybay, in October 2013.

Sarybay was in South Africa to co-chair the third Round of Intergovernmental Consultations.

South Africa and Kazakhstan have substantial economic interests, which overlap in several important areas such as trade, the production and collaborative marketing of strategic minerals, technology exchange, machine production, as well as oil procurement for South Africa.

The President of Kazakhstan was on a state visit to South Africa in December 2013, during which he signed several draft agreements.

Azerbaijan

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the oil-rich Azerbaijan came under the spotlight in May 2013. Deputy Minister Fransman, was on an official visit, which reviewed the relations between the two countries.

Deputy Minister Fransman held discussions with his counterpart Araz Beyukaqa Oğlu Azimov to review the status of bilateral relations and exchange views on regional and multilateral issues of common interest.

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Azerbaijan were established in 1991.

The South African Embassy in Ankara, Turkey, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Azerbaijan. Azerbaijan opened a new embassy in South Africa in January 2012.

Turkey

South Africa's major exports to Turkey comprise mineral products, base metals, machinery and mechanical appliances, electrical equipment, chemical and allied products, vehicles, aircraft, iron and steel, organic chemicals, ores, slag and ash.

In November 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry addressed a business seminar in Istanbul while in Turkey with a business delegation on an Outward Selling and Investment Mission.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages with the south, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth and where synergies and complementaries in products and technologies exist.

In South Asia, South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

In many respects, South Africa and India share a common vision on a range of global issues and domestic challenges, including the need to address the challenges of poverty, underdevelopment, deepening democracy, protecting human rights and reforming institutions of global governance.

In addition to bilateral cooperation, South Africa and India cooperate at multilateral level in pursuit of common objectives in institutions and organisations such as the UN, the NAM, the India-Africa Forum, IBSA and BRICS.

South Africa's trade relations with India have flourished since the establishment of full diplomatic relations in 1993.

Trade statistics with India continue to reflect the potential that exists for expanding the commercial relationship.

In the context of south Asia, India – South Africa's strategic partner – is by far South Africa's largest trading partner. South Africa's main exports to India include coal, gold, diamonds and phosphates, while South Africa's main imports include pharmaceuticals, textiles and clothing, spices, machinery and metal products. South Africa currently ranks second in the list of African exporters to India.

In October 2013, the third Africa-India Trade Ministers' Meeting took place in Johannesburg. Ministers of trade from several African countries including Nigeria, Ethiopia, Benin, Namibia, Senegal and Libya attended the high-level gathering.

Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial, bilateral relations.

South Africa views Pakistan as an important role-player in the international arena and South Africa welcomes the strengthening of democracy in Pakistan. South Africa has identified additional avenues of cooperation regarding law enforcement issues, an Extradition Treaty, an Agreement on Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters, an MoU on Cooperation in Combating the Illicit Trafficking in Narcotics, Drugs, Psychotropic Substances and Precursor Chemicals.

Sri Lanka

Bilateral trade between Sri Lanka and South Africa has seen a steady increase in growth in both exports and imports.

In November 2013, President Zuma attended the Commonwealth Heads of Governments meeting in Sri Lanka.

South-East Asia

Strengthening South-South relations remains an important pillar of South African's foreign policy, especially in Asia, a region that has surpassed the EU as the country's biggest trading partner.

Thailand

In August 2013, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation hosted her Thai counterpart, Surapong Tovichakchaikul, for a working visit that redefined and refocused the priority areas of bilateral cooperation between the two countries.

The visit came as the two countries celebrated 20 years of diplomatic interaction characterised by strong state-to-state and government-to-government relations that include cooperation at many levels, bilateral as well as multilateral.

During the past two decades, Thailand has become South Africa's biggest trading partner in Southeast Asia and South Africa has become Thailand's biggest trading partner on the continent.

Thailand is also the second most important destination for South African tourists. According to official South African trade statistics, the total volume of bilateral trade in 2012 was R26,8 billion, up from R19,8 billion in 2011.

In an international multilateral context, Thailand is an important partner and ally for South Africa in Southeast Asia.

Malaysia

President Zuma arrived in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia in August 2013, on an official visit to boost political, economic and social ties with the southeast Asian country.

The visit, which celebrated the 20th anniversary of diplomatic relations between Malaysia and a free, democratic South Africa, boosted cooperation in business, trade and investment, and also served to promote South Africa as a viable destination for Malaysian tourists, business and investments.

A meeting of the South African-Malaysian Business Forum has also enabled leading South African business people to interact with their Malaysian counterparts to identify opportunities for business in sectors of mutual interest.

Malaysia remains the largest investor in South Africa from the Southeast Asian region.

Since 1994, Malaysia has assisted more than 300 South Africans in their studies that range from short courses to full scholarships for degrees in engineering and information technology.

A number of South African universities have signed MoUs with their Malaysian counterparts.

Vietnam

Over the past 20 years, the relationship between South Africa and Vietnam has grown into a multi-faceted relationship with growing cooperation in many fields, rapid growth in people-to-people links and strong state-to-state and government-to-government relations, which includes cooperation at many levels – bilateral, as well as multilateral.

Political relations with Vietnam are strong, with a substantial exchange of high-level visits between the two countries over the past few years.

The protection of South Africa's wildlife, particularly the rhino, has been high on the agenda of discussions with Vietnam.

Regarding cooperation in the field of wildlife protection, the two countries shared concerns about the illegal trade in protected wildlife species and products, especially rhino, and agreed to work together to put an end to this issue.

In 2013, the two signed an action plan that promotes cooperation between the two countries in law enforcement and compliance with legislation such as the Convention of International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Cites).

The implementation plan will see the development of joint legislative efforts to conserve biodiversity, build capacity and promote the participation of international organisations and NGOs in the process.

It also includes strengthening cooperation through the exchange of information, best practice and research, technology use, transfer and development, natural resource management, wildlife trade and protected areas management.

Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR, and Timor-Leste

South Africa's political relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR and Timor-Leste are cordial and friendly.

In October 2013, South Africa signed a memorandum aimed at curbing rhino poaching with the government of the Lao PDR.

The MoU on Biodiversity was accompanied by the endorsement of an implementation plan, putting into action steps to eradicate wildlife crimes.

Myanmar

Like the rest of the international community, South Africa has welcomed the political reform process underway in Myanmar and has supported all efforts aimed at opening up the political space for participation by all the people of Myanmar through the political parties of their choice.

In December 2013, Deputy Minister Ebrahim was in Myanmar to explore avenues to boost bilateral relations between the two countries. The visit focused on trade and investment, according to his ministry.

The deputy minister also had bilateral discussions with his counterpart, Thant Kyaw, and paid a courtesy call on Vice-President Sai Mauk Kham and met with the country's Minister of Commerce, U Win Myint.

Philippines

In January 2013, DIRCO hosted the inaugural meeting of the South Africa-Philippines Bilateral Consultative Forum. The meeting came after the signing of the agreement between the two countries on the sidelines of the 67th session of the UNGA in September 2012, in New York, United States of America (USA). The forum serves as an instrument for structured bilateral consultations with the aim of advancing cooperation between the two countries.

The South African government established formal diplomatic relations with the Philippines in November 1993. The Philippine Embassy in Pretoria was established in June 1994. South Africa, in turn, established an embassy in Manila in December 2004.

Relations between South Africa and the Philippines are strong both at bilateral and multilateral levels. Both countries are influential in organisations of the south, including the NAM and the G77+China.

On the economic front, both countries have undertaken efforts to enhance bilateral trade and commercial relations.

In November 2013, South Africa joined the international community in making a contribution to rescue efforts in the typhoon-ravaged Philippines.

South Africa contributed R4 million in response to the call for international assistance by the government of the Philippines.

The contribution by South Africa was made to Rescue SA towards its rescue operations to the Philippines in the wake of the super typhoon Haiyan, which has claimed more than 5 000 lives, caused many injuries and left behind a trail of devastation.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

Australia

South Africa and Australia have a history of productive cooperation across a range of sectors and issues, including fisheries protection, mining, law enforcement, sport, tourism, education and training in fields such as ICT, public administration, mining and resources management, defence relations and customs cooperation.

Australia is the sixth-largest export destination for South African goods. The majority of exports from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high-quality passenger motor vehicles head the list.

With its renewed focus on Africa, Australia has committed to work together with the African continent to address development challenges in such areas as human resource development, mining and resources management and infrastructure development.

South Africa and Australia work closely together for the benefit of third countries such as Zimbabwe in the areas of sanitation and revenue collection.

South Africa and Australia also work closely together at multilateral level in organisations and institutions such as the Commonwealth, the UN and the Cairns Group particularly on issues that affect African.

New Zealand

At bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

In sport, South Africa and New Zealand have strong ties – especially in rugby and cricket, but in recent years also soccer.

The two countries enjoy productive cooperation at multilateral level. Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the Southern Hemisphere's views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

The two countries also enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Southern Indian Ocean Fisheries Agreement, and interact regularly within the context of the World Trade Organisation and the Cairns Group.

The emergence of women as political and business leaders was discussed at the Global Summit of Women, in which South Africa participated in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, in June 2013.

The Global Summit of Women is a non-profit organisation headed by the International Planning Committee of Women leaders from different parts of the world.

In addition to focusing on the emergence of women as political and business leaders, the summit provided information on access to the Malaysian and Asian-Pacific markets.

Over 1 000 women leaders shared their winning strategies to advance women's economic lives and ensure global prosperity.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Arab States remains cordial, with ongoing engagements at various political and economic levels that are anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

The Outward Selling Mission to Saudi Arabia and Kuwait in November 2013 aimed to expose South African companies to the Middle Eastern market and deepen bilateral trade and investment relations between these countries.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

South Africa is committed to maintaining cordial diplomatic and trade relations with the UAE. South African companies have made a major contribution to the development of the UAE economy with over 200 of them having representative offices in the UAE.

The potential for greater interaction between the two countries is enhanced through the 56 weekly flights between South Africa and the UAE. South Africa and the UAE have signed five bilateral agreements, which provide the framework for cooperation.

Iran

South Africa and Iran have established a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC) to allow for a high-level review of existing bilateral relations and to consider ways in which these could be expanded.

The JBC, chaired by South Africa's Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and Iran's Minister of Economic Affairs and Finance, meets alternatively in South Africa and Iran biannually. The JBC is regarded as one of South Africa's most successful and longest-running bilateral mechanisms. Several South African companies are involved in major projects in Iran.

Deputy Minister Ebrahim visited the Islamic Republic of Iran in April 2013.

The Deputy Minister's visit took place at the invitation of Dr Hossein Amir Abdollahian, Deputy Foreign Minister for Arab and African Affairs of Iran, who visited South Africa in May 2012.

One of the main objectives of the visit was for the countries to exchange views on domestic and regional developments, to review the

implementation of bilateral engagements and to assess the potential for the expansion thereof, particularly in the field of education and environmental affairs.

The visit also gave the two governments the opportunity to engage on the latest nuclear developments, and human rights, with a particular emphasis on exchanging South African best practices on human rights.

Despite the challenging international situation confronting Iran, South Africa attaches significant importance to its bilateral relations with that country.

In October 2013, South Africa hosted the 11th Meeting of the South Africa-Iran Joint Commission. The Joint Commission with Iran is one of the longest-running structured bilateral mechanisms South Africa has with any country.

South Africa maintains a friendly relationship with Iran, even though the international sanctions imposed against the Islamic Republic have made trade increasingly difficult.

Because of sanctions, South Africa had to end its oil imports from Iran in June 2012. The Joint Commission will allow the two governments the opportunity to take stock of relations and to consider means in which bilateral ties might be further expanded.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised during a visit by former President Nelson Mandela in November 1994. Two missions were established in the kingdom during March of 1995: an embassy with a chargé d'affaires in the capital Riyadh and a consulate-general in the commercial capital of Jeddah.

The consulate-general is responsible for looking after the needs of South African pilgrims performing Hajj and Umrah duties in the holy cities of Makkah al Mukarramah and Medina al Munawarra.

Saudi Arabia is a fellow G20 member and remains South Africa's largest supplier of crude oil.

Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the State of Qatar were established in 1994, strengthened by official visits to Qatar by former presidents Nelson Mandela and Thabo Mbeki, as well as by visits of several Cabinet Ministers.

In terms of trade relations, Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus, primarily owing to its export of crude oil and petrochemicals to South Africa.

In April 2013, Deputy Minister Ebrahim attended the fourth round of bilateral consultations in Qatar.

The visit provided an opportunity to engage the government of Qatar on developments in the region and to review the status of bilateral relations in the fields of trade and industry, energy, tourism and arts and culture.

Discussions were held on increased investment by Qatar in South Africa and on possible trilateral cooperation in Africa.

Oman

In November 2013, Mpumalanga Premier David Mabuza said the province was ready to enter into an agreement with Oman to help resolve that country's food security problems. This comes after a nine-member delegation from Oman conducted a three-day tour to various agricultural projects in the province.

Kuwait

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made major multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange.

The third Africa-Arab Summit of Heads of State and Government opened in Kuwait City in November 2013, under the theme "Partners in Development and Investment."

The two-day summit was preceded by a joint foreign Ministerial meeting, with Kuwait's Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Minister, Sheikh Sabah Khaled Al-Hamad Al-Sabah, calling on the participating countries to work in collaboration to boost the partnership between African and Arab countries.

Iraq

In 2013, the dti sent a delegation to Iraq comprising government officials and people from the private sector on an international trade initiative.

African press officers of the diplomatic community met for a sharing session in Pretoria in August 2013. This was the first meeting of press officers of the diplomatic communities based in South Africa, which was held under the theme "Pan Africanism and the African Renaissance." It contributes towards the extended recognition and celebration of the 50th Anniversary of the Organisation of African Unity. The purpose of the meeting was to encourage African press officers of the diplomatic community to report fresh news from the continent, explore more avenues to disseminate developmental news stories to the world, while allowing dialogue and engagement to take place. The Government Communication and Information System hosted the session.

The department undertook to seek ways to assist Iraqis with the challenge of obtaining South African visas, as there is no embassy in Iraq. Iraqi citizens get their visas in Jordan.

Trade relations between South Africa and Iraq were generally conducted through intermediaries and it was envisaged that from the signed agreement, a guideline for direct trade would be formulated.

Arab-Israel peace process

South Africa supports peace between Israel and the Arab world, which must involve an end to the illegal occupation by Israel of Arab land, namely in Palestine, Syria and Lebanon, which has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region over the last six decades.

South Africa does not have a policy aimed at boycotting Israel, but discourages people from visiting Israel because of the country's continued occupation of Palestinian land.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have agreed to strengthen cooperation in local government and municipal development.

The two countries made the agreement at the fourth Congress of the United Cities and Local Government held in Rabat, Morocco, from 1 to 4 October 2013.

The two countries undertook to strengthen cooperation in areas including:

- legal frameworks for local governance
- urban and strategic development planning
- restructuring of local governments
- strengthening community participation in local government
- municipal engineering and planning
- municipal elections.

The similar historical experiences shared by the two countries make for a strong foundation for mutual learning. The delegations thus called on the various municipalities present to forge partnerships aimed at improving service delivery to the people.

Relations with the Americas

United States of America

Formal relations between South Africa and the USA go back as far as 1789, when the USA opened a consulate in Cape Town. South Africa continues to place a high premium on high-level political exchanges. The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, travelled to the USA in November 2013 to attend the Strategic Dialogue. It is anticipated that Secretary John Kerry will travel to South Africa in 2014 for the Strategic Dialogue.

In June 2013, President Zuma hosted President Barack Obama during an official visit to South Africa. After official discussions various announcements and commitments were made by the President of the USA, the most significant were:

- The need for the extension of the USA African Growth and Opportunities Act (Agoa), which expires in 2015, as it would benefit both countries. South Africa will continue engaging the USA Congress in particular for an extension of Agoa, to secure long-term access for South African exports into the US market.
- Africa is rising and that it is the second-fastest growing region after Asia. President Zuma pointed out that the strategy towards sub-Saharan Africa that the USA launched in 2012 was well timed to take advantage of this growing market. China's economic inroads into Africa were, however, the backdrop to the USA's renewed interest in Africa.
- President Zuma put forward a range of projects which the USA could become involved in, including infrastructure development and skills development for the youth. Underpinning these investments would be the drive for regional integration, industrialisation and localisation of supply and manufacture.

The USA is a major economic partner for South Africa and continues to feature high on the list of trade and investment partners. There are about 600 companies from the USA trading in South Africa, which provide over 120 000 local jobs. These companies contribute about 30% of all corporate social investment for corporate social projects.

The USA is South Africa's third-largest trading partner and 98% of South Africa's exports enter the USA market duty-free and quota-free under the current dispensation of Agoa and the Generalised System of Preferences.

While the USA is a significant market for South Africa, South Africa is the USA's biggest market in Africa accounting for US$7,3 billion of American exports. South Africa is also an important investor in the USA, with the announcement of an investment by Sasol in Louisiana, which could prove to be one of the biggest investments in the history of the USA.

The USA is an important supporter of South Africa's domestic priorities and has made an effort to align its assistance programmes and projects with these. The USA is a major source of official development assistance (ODA) to South Africa, contributing approximately US$541 million in ODA per year. The major area of focus is health and AIDS in particular. Under the USA President's Emergency Plan for AIDS

Relief (Pepfar), South Africa is currently the 15th largest recipient of foreign aid from the USA.

South Africa has been very successful in using Pepfar funding to address HIV and AIDS. The Partnership Framework Implementation Plan was signed during former USA Secretary of State's visit to South Africa in August 2012. In the transition the USA will reduce its annual assistance from US$484 to US$250 by year 2017. The transition plan has a five-year timeline.

The USA regards South Africa as a global model because it is the first country to go from a development assistance-led effort to a country-led approach. Both countries committed that there would be no interruption of treatment and care services during the transition of direct service provision to the South African Government.

The USA understands the importance of the African Agenda to South Africa, particularly regional economic integration, which is the cornerstone of continental integration. Initiatives such as USA trilateral cooperation between the USA and the SADC region and the rest of the continent in the area of food security have been pivotal to this relationship.

Canada

Between 2008 and 2013, Canada's official development assistance to South Africa amounted to R250 million.

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, at bilateral and multilateral levels, on the African continent, ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to foreign direct investment (FDI).

President Zuma hosted the Governor-General of Canada, David Johnston, for a state visit in May 2013. This was Johnston's first visit to South Africa, which formed part of his tour of Africa, including stops in Ghana and Botswana.

The purpose of the state visit was to strengthen bilateral relations between the two countries. South Africa remains Canada's second-largest trading partner in sub-Saharan Africa.

About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest. Canada views South Africa as a gateway into the SADC and the rest of Africa.

Canada's involvement in South Africa focuses on strengthening service delivery, HIV and AIDS and rural development.

In November 2013, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe was in Canada for a working visit to promote investment by Canadian companies in South Africa's mining sector.

The Deputy President met with a range of stakeholders in the mining industry including mining companies, investors, bankers and asset managers. He also held meetings with the Canada-South Africa Chamber of Commerce and the Toronto Stock Exchange and paid Prime Minister Stephen Harper and the Governor-General of Canada, David Johnston, courtesy calls.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

Latin America and the Caribbean

Latin America

The developing countries in Latin America continue to play an important role in international political bodies and formations such as the NAM, the G20 (Brazil and Mexico), BRICS (Brazil), IBSA (Brazil) and the UN. South Africa's business sector has extensive interests in the region, including SAB Miller, AngloGold Ashanti, Naspers, Denel, Sasol, PetroSA.

These relate to exports of capital equipment, intermediary goods and investments as well as a growing presence of South African companies in the service sector.

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the development agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the south at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels. In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in Caribbean Community and Common Market (Caricom) and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

Brazil

The presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil, helped to ensure the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

South Africa remains committed to continuous engagement with Brazil, as per the terms of the Strategic Partnership Agreement signed in July 2010. The Ministerial-level Joint Commission met in July 2013.

Argentina

The Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries signed a statement of intent with her Argentine counterpart, Norberto Yauhar, in Pretoria in June 2013. Argentina is South Africa's third largest trading partner in the Latin American and Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico.

Regular Ministerial meetings ensure continuous improvement in bilateral ties.

The fourth meeting of the Argentina-South Africa BNC took place in Buenos Aires in August 2013, co-chaired by the Minister of Foreign Affairs and Worship of the Argentine Republic, Héctor Timerman, and Minister Nkoana-Mashabane.

A major outcome of the BNC was an undertaking to establish a Joint Sub-Commission on Trade and Investment within the framework of the BNC for the purposes of addressing bilateral and multilateral issues, including non-tariff barriers. In addition, the two countries signed a Tax Information Exchange Agreement, and an Agreement on Mutual Assistance between Customs Administrations.

Chile

Political relations between South Africa and Chile remain sound. The Joint Consultative Mechanism (JCM) continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

The last JCM took place in Pretoria in July 2012. As a major foreign investor in Chile, South Africa used the opportunity to address bilateral issues such as cooperation in trade and investment and the avoidance of double taxation.

The meeting also discussed a number of other areas, including the possibility of a dialogue regarding a preferential trade agreement subject to concurrence with Sacu, science and technology and academic exchanges in the tertiary education sector.

From South Africa's perspective, Chile is seen as a "like-minded" country in terms of multilateral relations, North-South and South-South relations.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial north, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

Colombia and Ecuador

Colombia and Ecuador are experiencing growing interest from South African companies primarily in the mineral resources sector.

The latter part of 2013 saw Ministerial visits from both Colombia and Ecuador to South Africa as a follow-up to high-level visits by South Africa to those countries in September 2013.

Peru

Deputy Minister Fransman visited Lima, Peru, in September 2013. The visit was used to strengthen political, social and economic bilateral relations. The two counties also identified new areas of cooperation.

The Pacific Alliance was also on the agenda. It is a mechanism for the economic and commercial integration of Chile, Colombia, Mexico and Peru.

During his visit, Deputy Minister Fransman met with his counterpart Fernando Rojas, as well as the Deputy Minister for Social Benefits, Paola Bustamante, and the Deputy Minister for Foreign Trade and Tourism, Carlos Posada Ugaz. He also and he met with the Peru Investment Agency's Director, Carlos Herrera.

South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with SABMiller and Anglo American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

Venezuela

Relations between South Africa and Venezuela came under discussion when Minister Maite Nkoana-Mashabane held talks with her counterpart, Elias Jaua Milano, in September 2013. Minister Nkoana-Mashabane was in Venezuela to strengthen bilateral relations and cooperation in the areas of energy, mining, agriculture, education, as well as arts and culture.

The two countries have a MoU regarding bilateral consultations. Three MoUs were also signed by PetroSA and Petróleos de Venezuela, which granted PetroSA a block in order to explore Venezuela's oil reserves.

South African exports to Venezuela consist mainly of ferro-vanadium and related products, followed by liqueurs. South African imports from Venezuela consist mainly of oil.

Between June and July 2013, trade statistics showed imports standing at R42,5million, while exports stood at R84,6 million.

Cuba

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region.

Several South African medical students have graduated from Cuban medical faculties thanks to the South Africa-Cuba medical study programme.

The 80 bursaries offered by Cuba in 2013 increased the number of qualified medical practitioners in South Africa significantly. Several hundred Cuban specialists are deployed in South Africa, rendering professional services in the fields of public health, human settlements, public works and social development.

In February 2012, South Africa and Cuba signed a R350-million economic assistance package agreement geared towards helping that country improve its food security. The total package to the island nation is three-pronged, with the first portion being a R40-million grant for the purchase of seeds by Cuba. The second part of the agreement is a R100-million solidarity grant. The third portion is a R20-million credit line. This is a loan facility with R70 million made available to Cuba immediately. The JCM with Cuba takes place annually at deputy Minister level, with the last one taking place in September 2013.

Jamaica

The Jamaican and South African governments have waived visa requirements for all South African and Jamaican passport holders to enable nations from each side to enter the country for a period of up to 90 days without visas. This provision facilitates the smooth movement of South Africans and Jamaicans engaging in music, education, and sports.

United Kingdom (UK) and Ireland

United Kingdom

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact.

Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, and sports and recreation.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions.

The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large investments in the UK.

South Africa and the UK have important trade and economic relations, which continue to strengthen, although the global economic crisis has had a significant impact on bilateral trade.

The UK is by far South Africa's most significant source of long-haul tourists, a position it has not relinquished for the past 15 years.

The 10th South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum met in September 2013 in Cape Town, co-chaired by Minister Nkoana-Mashabane and UK Foreign Secretary William Hague. The Bilateral Forum is a structured mechanism to monitor and manage bilateral relations between the two countries and meets every two years, co-chaired at Foreign Minister level.

During the 10th Bilateral Forum, the two countries have committed to strengthening bilateral relations further through the following:

- launched the South African-UK Business Council
- held a highly successful Youth Dialogue with youth representatives from the public and private sectors
- continued discussing immigration issues, including the visa issue
- acknowledged the long history of cooperation on development, guided by the National Development Plan (NDP) and its vision to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality
- expressed satisfaction at the effective defence relationship between the two countries and the high level of interaction and cooperation
- renewed science and technology cooperation and agreed to make it a key pillar in the bilateral relationship
- reported on new programmes for arts and culture cooperation
- reviewed regional and multilateral cooperation
- committed to work together to achieve regional and global development goals in support of Africa's future, including through the new South African Development Partnership Agency.

The UK announced in April 2013 that it would end its development cooperation programme in South Africa in 2015.

Ireland

The Republic of Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations

South Africa hosted the Asia-Middle East Investment Seminar in Cape Town in November 2013, with the aim of seeking investment from the regions. More than 100 representatives from Asian and Middle Eastern diplomatic corps attended the two-day seminar. South Africa hosted a series of trade and investment seminars in KwaZulu-Natal, Free State and North West to expose the economic opportunities in South Africa to its trade partners.

with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in the following sectors: business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and IT services, and plastics.

Through the previous and current Irish aid programmes, the Irish Government has been providing development assistance to South Africa, focusing on education and skills development thereby contributing to the promotion of South Africa's national priorities. The current programme has a budget of R39 million per year.

Relations with Europe

European Union (EU)

In July 2013, President Zuma and his delegation met with the EU delegation led by the President of the European Council, Herman Van Rompuy, and President of the European Commission, Jose Manuel Barroso, in Pretoria.

Given the challenges that face South Africa, President Zuma emphasised that the central theme of South Africa's engagements with Europe should be "Job Creation through Inward Investment."

This is also in response to the diverse demands of South Africa's NDP. The summit was used to highlight job creation initiatives that South Africa is implementing and to encourage the continuation of EU development cooperation in South Africa.

Since 1994, building on shared values and mutual interests, South Africa and the EU have developed a comprehensive partnership based on the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA).

The SA-EU relationship is guided by the principle that the EU should support South Africa's national, regional and African priorities and programmes to eradicate poverty and underdevelopment.

The EU is South Africa's main development assistance partner, amounting to € 980 million for the period 2007 – 2013, with a further € 900 million from the European Investment Bank for the same period.

A South African delegation, led by President Zuma, was in talks with representatives from the EU in July 2013, where ways to boost trade and investment were discussed. President Zuma welcomed the European Council President, Herman Van Rompuy, and EU Commission Head, José Manuel Barroso, for the sixth South Africa-EU Summit at the Sefako Mapogo Makgatho Presidential Guest House.

The summit was an opportunity to strengthen strategic relations between the EU and South Africa, and to discuss a number of key issues, in particular the South Africa-EU strategic partnership, key peace and security topics in Africa and beyond, and also global governance, climate change, trade, development issues, and the relations between Africa and Europe as a whole, as set down in the joint Africa-EU strategy.

President Zuma also discussed the October 2014 deadline imposed by the EU for the conclusion of the economic partnership agreement (EPA) with the SADC countries. The EPA gives the countries preferential access for their agricultural and agro-processed products to EU markets.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries (Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg) remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major providers of tourism. The Netherlands is the second-most important source of FDI into South Africa.

There has been important trilateral cooperation with the Netherlands and Belgium in the past in support of peace and security in Africa, inter alia on capacity building in the Great Lakes Region. Such trilateral cooperation can be further expanded in the future.

There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium, as well as with the Netherlands, on the issues and complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

Belgium

Relations between South Africa and Belgium are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives. Belgium is South Africa's 12th largest export destination globally and ranks sixth in the world in terms of FDI in South Africa, among other things focusing on mining, green energy, ports, logistics and agriculture.

Belgium has allocated substantial resources to South Africa in the form of ODA since 1994. This support has covered such areas as health, ports management and logistics, education, rural development and further education and training. The budget of the development cooperation programme, which will run up to 2016, is R66 million a year. The Belgian region of Flanders also has a long-standing development programme in South Africa, also with a budget of R66 million per year up to 2016.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane held a bilateral meeting with her Belgian counterpart, Didier Reynders, Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign

Minister, in June 2013 in Brussels. The meeting covered bilateral political and economic relations as well as the African Agenda, including the Great Lakes Region.

In October 2013, a high-level and very large Belgian economic mission of 333 participants, including 252 business leaders, arrived in South Africa hoping to boost trade, investment and other ties.

Didier Reynders, the Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Minister, was the political head of the delegation, but several other federal Ministers and leaders of the Walloon and Flanders sub-national state governments were also participating. The overall mission was headed by Princess Astrid, representing her brother, the new King Philippe.

The Netherlands

Apart from being the second-most important source of FDI into South Africa, the Netherlands is South Africa's seventh-largest trading partner in the world. The Netherlands is the fourth most important source of long-haul tourists to South Africa, with 92 547 visitors in 2012. The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral Ministerial meetings are held regularly.

Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

German-speaking countries

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the German-speaking countries cover various issues, including investment and trade, science and technology, defence, culture, the environment, tourism, sport, development cooperation and energy, but also entail multilateral and trilateral engagements.

Germany

The South African-German Year of Science (2012–2013) displayed great strides in science and technology cooperation. Around 41 joint research projects were initiated, focusing on areas such as astronomy, renewable energy and pharmaceuticals.

The German Development Agency maintains a big and active presence in South Africa and also extends its capacity building and other development assistance programmes into the SADC region and the rest of Africa. Together with the Southern Africa-German Chamber of Commerce in Johannesburg (the largest of its kind in South Africa) and the German business community, it makes a substantive contribution to vocational education and skills development for young South Africans.

The affluent German tourism market is the second-most important in Europe for South Africa and saw 266 333 Germans visiting South Africa in 2012.

Following the visit in May 2012 by Deputy President Motlanthe to co-chair the German-South African BNC, South Africa looks forward to hosting the next BNC in 2014.

South Africa and Germany signed an MoU in February 2013 to enhance bilateral dialogue and practical cooperation between the two countries in the energy sector by establishing a partnership, which builds on the ongoing successful cooperation in the energy sector.

The main objective of the energy partnership is to improve and develop a sustainable energy infrastructure, particularly through the increased use of renewable energy and energy efficiency.

In April 2013, German Foreign Minister Guido Westerwelle paid an official visit to South Africa, during which he recommitted Germany to strengthening economic relations further, with South Africa.

The German Minister for Food, Agriculture and Consumer Protection, Ilse Aigner, met with the South African Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries in May 2013, for bilateral discussions.

Germany is a good partner in terms of offering South Africa technical assistance in agriculture. The meeting also culminated in the signing of a statement of intent regarding cooperation in the field of vocational training for the development of the agricultural economy and providing the population with safe food.

Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland are based on equal partnership. There are some 200 Swiss companies in South Africa, employing around 36 000 South Africans.

Consultations at the level of deputy ministers of international relations and a Joint Economic Commission at the level of Ministers of trade occur annually.

Switzerland has granted South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

Switzerland actively contributes to numerous development assistance programmes in South Africa and elsewhere in Africa.

The dti hosted the South Africa-Switzerland business forum in September 2013, which

presented business opportunities in the renewable energy sector.

South Africa and Switzerland also signed an MoU on cooperation and trade promotion.

Switzerland remains South Africa's major trading and investment partner in the European Free Trade Association.

South Africa held high-level discussions with Switzerland when Deputy Minister Fransman was on an official visit in November 2013.

He co-chaired the fifth Annual Switzerland-South Africa high-level consultations (HLC) with his Swiss counterpart, State Secretary for Foreign Affairs, Yves Rossier.

The HLC, held in Fribourg, discussed ways and measures to enhance bilateral and economic relations in support of South Africa's national priorities.

The HLC consists of the Foreign Policy, Economic Development, Trade and Financial Issues, Development Cooperation, as well as the Science and Technology Working Group.

Since the establishment of the HLC, many bilateral engagements have taken place. These include the signing of the Scientific Cooperation Agreement, the establishment of the Joint Economic Committee and the Agreement on the Support for Energy Efficiency Monitoring and Implementation Project.

Austria

South Africa continues to enjoy cordial bilateral relations with Austria, focused primarily on economic exchanges. South Africa ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners, and is by far Austria's major trading partner in Africa. Some 400 Austrian companies are currently engaged in trade relations with South African companies. More than 50 Austrian companies have direct investments in South Africa.

Tourism between Austria and South Africa has undergone an increase of 120% since the early nineties and between 2011 and 2012 alone these numbers increased from 21 841 to 25 179.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic countries – Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden. Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa. This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

Denmark was a very strong supporter of the anti-apartheid struggle and a major force in sanctions and disinvestment. In addition, Denmark has always had a very active development cooperation programme, which ended in 2013. The Danish Government is focusing on renewable energy development in South Africa. This programme has been developed in response to the commitments made in the MoU of October 2011 between Denmark and South Africa and to the Declaration of Intent on the South African Renewable Initiative (SARI) to which Denmark is a co-signatory.

The programme has been designed with the intention of assisting South Africa in implementing its policy of developing a low-carbon economy with special focus on electricity supply.

As part of the country's 2009 to 2013 programme, more than R7 billion is disbursed to projects ranging from water, energy, education, and governance, the South African Police Service, business support, and the fight against HIV and AIDS. In addition, Denmark remains a strong supporter of Nepad and African development.

Norway

Deputy Minister Fransman co-chaired the inaugural HLC with his Norwegian counterpart, State Secretary Bard Glad Pedersen in Oslo during his official visit in November 2013.

The structured HLC cover the areas of international relations and human rights, trade and investment, renewable energy, education and skills development, and science and technology.

Finland

In June 2013, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation concluded a successful working visit to Finland, where she participated in the 13th Africa-Nordic Foreign Ministers' Meeting, held in the Finnish town of Hameenlinna. The meeting addressed three issues, namely, how macro economic challenges affect the Nordic Welfare model, Africa on the rise – how to make economic growth inclusive, and seeking solutions to African conflicts – the role of regional and global actors.

The annual gathering was a frank and open dialogue between African and Nordic like-minded states focusing on mutual cooperation in developmental matters.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane held bilateral talks with her Finnish counterpart, Erkki Tuomioja. The meeting focused on South Africa-Finland bilateral political and trade relations. The two Ministers also exchanged views on issues of common interest, including the reform of global governance institutions.

South Africa attaches great importance to its Nordic partners, and this visit provided a platform to further consolidate and strengthen the already cordial relations between South Africa and Finland. The meeting also served to deepen Africa-Nordic cooperation.

Sweden

In May 2013, ministers from South Africa and Sweden met in Pretoria to assess the state of relations between the two countries. The high-level meeting was attended by the ministers of International Relations and Cooperation, Trade and Industry, National Planning, and the Deputy Minister of Finance. The two sides also exchanged views on developments on the African continent and in the multilateral arena.

Sweden is one of the important investors in South Africa, with more than 100 companies creating around 30 000 jobs.

In October 2013, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe and the Deputy Prime Minister of Sweden Jan Björklund convened the eighth South Africa-Sweden BNC in Pretoria.

The eighth session assessed the state of relations between the two countries, particularly the implementation of the programme of bilateral cooperation. Sweden has a well-developed maritime sector and South Africa has established a Maritime Skills Development Programme with Sweden through the South African Maritime Safety Authority. Through the programme, 26 South African postgraduate students have been awarded scholarships to study at the World Maritime University in Malmo, Sweden.

Mediterranean Europe

France

France is a significant trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people. In October 2013, French President François Hollande paid an official visit to South Africa.

South Africa will count on France's support in ensuring the effective implementation of the United Nations Resolution 2033, which provides for closer coordination between the Security Council and the AUPSC.

Italy

South Africa's relations with Italy are cordial. Between 2012 and 2013, South Africa undertook a number of high-level visits to Italy. Deputy President Motlanthe met with Italian Prime Minister Mario Monti in Italy to review the scope of relations between the two countries and identify possible further areas of cooperation. The Deputy President addressed a business luncheon on South Africa's Infrastructure Development Programme and opportunities for investment.

Spain

By September 2013, Spanish companies had targeted the energy, financial services, tourism, textiles, information technology and software, metals, and mining sectors in South Africa for FDI.

In July 2013, the ninth Session of South Africa-Spain Annual Consultations was concluded in Pretoria.

The discussions were co-chaired by Deputy Minister Fransman and his counterpart, the Secretary of State Gonzala De Benito.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general.

Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

In November 2012, during the visit to South Africa by the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, responsible for Greeks abroad and development, Konstantinos Tsiaras, an agreement on economic cooperation aid was signed.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with Cyprus, partly because of the large and influential Cypriot community in South Africa, of about 60 000 people.

In 2011, the South African Embassy in Washington DC conceived the South Africa 2012 (SA 2012) Campaign, premised on the recognition of 2012 as a year which focused on South Africa, with events such as the African Diaspora Summit, as well as the Centenary Celebrations of the African National Congress.

The highlight of the SA 2012 campaign was the Celebration of the Life, Legacy and Values of Nelson Mandela.

The climax of the campaign was the unveiling of the Nelson Mandela statue in front of the newly renovated Embassy of South Africa on 3051 Massachusetts Avenue in Washington DC in September 2013.

In September 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane paid a working visit to Cyprus at the invitation of their Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Erato Kozakou-Markoullis. During the visit, the MoU on Bilateral Political Consultations, and the Protocol to the Agreement on the Avoidance of Double Taxation and Fiscal Evasion were signed.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by the High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and development cooperation.

In February 2013, Deputy Minister in the Presidency Obed Bapela visited Portugal.

Bilateral relations between both countries have not reached their full potential especially considering the historical and current political and cultural links between the two countries.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Cooperation in gas and oil and the peaceful use of nuclear energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

Poland

Polish-South African relations entered a new phase after the fall of apartheid. Poland is regarded as one of the countries in central Europe with great strategic importance to South Africa.

Poland is not only one of the strongest role players in the political and economic arenas in central Europe, but also an emerging power in the EU.

In October 2013, Deputy President Motlanthe, held discussions with visiting Polish Prime Minister Donald Franciszek Tusk in Pretoria.

Russian Federation

South Africa regards the Russian Federation as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries.

With the dissolution of the USSR, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the Russian Federation in February 1992.

In February 2013, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted Minister Donskoy, Minister of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation, in Pretoria during an Joint Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation co-chairpersons' meeting. The agreements under consideration are in the fields of agriculture, education, energy, fisheries, justice, mineral resources, science and technology, and transport.

South Africa and Belarus marked the beginning of an important relationship when the two countries established a working group to facilitate bilateral cooperation in agriculture. In March 2013, on the sidelines of the BRICS summit in South Africa, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and Head of Presidential Affairs in Belarus Viktor Vladimirovich Sheiman discussed further cooperation in the field of agriculture between the two countries.

Belarus expressed its interest in deepening relations with South Africa when it drew attention to its potential in the agro-industrial and scientific sectors.

An MoU concerning the intent to discuss further cooperation in the field of agriculture between the two countries was signed.

WE ARE
from
CITIES AND
from
ES AND THE VILL
as
OUR PURPOSE
MEN FROM THE DEGRAD

Justice and Correctional Services

The responsibilities of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) are closely linked to those of the Department of Correctional Services (DCS). Both include ensuring a just, peaceful and safe society and both are involved in South Africa's criminal justice and court system.

The DoJ&CD is responsible for ensuring an accessible justice system that promotes and protects social justice, fundamental human rights and freedoms, thus providing a transparent, responsive and accountable justice for all.

In particular, the department leads government programmes to afford all citizens equal benefit and protection of the law and the realisation of the Bill of Rights. The department also exercises executive oversight in the provision of public defence for citizens from disadvantaged backgrounds.

The DCS is responsible for ensuring a just, peaceful and safe society by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and people subject to community corrections.

South African law is a combination of different legal systems, with its origin in Europe and in Great Britain. Its foundation lies in Roman-Dutch law, which is itself a blend of indigenous Dutch customary law and Roman law. As with any other country, the common law has been augmented by statutory law and many of the cases before the court are now concerned with their interpretation and application. Because of the unique heritage of South African law, and the constitutional imperative to regard comparative law, foreign law is frequently consulted, not as binding but as persuasive authority.

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

The DoJ&CD's mandate from the Constitution provides a framework for the effective and efficient administration of justice and to promote constitutional development through the development and implementation of legislation and programmes to advance and sustain constitutionalism and the rule of law. At the same time, the department also provides an enabling environment for the judiciary and constitutional institutions to exercise their constitutional powers and functions freely and independently.

Legislation and policies

The department derives its statutory mandate from various pieces of legislation in the form of statutes and subordinate legislation.

The department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts.

The following are categories of functions emanating from different legislative instruments relevant to the department:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the superior courts, Magistrates' courts and special courts: the Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995), the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959), the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training: the Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act, 2001 (Act 47 of 2001), the Judicial Service Commission Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994) as amended, the South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), and the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU); the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998), the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: the Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969), the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), and the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of Masters of the High courts and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates: the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights: the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (Paia), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), better known as the Equality Act of 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter 9 institutions: the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).
- Legislation regulating the management and control of public expenditure: the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the public service: the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012).
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012).
- Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012).
- Repeal of Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012).
- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012).
- Cabinet approved the introduction of the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill, 2013, in April 2013. The Bill paves the way to regulate and promote the use of DNA in combating crime, taking into account constitutional requirements. The use of DNA evidence holds the potential to alleviate bottlenecks in the CJS. Maximising the use of DNA evidence promotes fairness, confidence, and certainty in the administration of South Africa's laws.
- The President signed the proclamation to bring the Constitution 17th Amendment Act and the Superior Courts Act into operation in August 2013. The Constitution Seventeenth Amendment Act is implemented with the Superior Courts Act, which repeals the Supreme Court Act of 1959.
- The Legal Practice Bill, which has far-reaching implications for the legal profession, was approved by the National Assembly in November 2013. The legislation will bring an end to the long tradition of self-regulation by the legal fraternity. It will replace bar associations with a single council, which the Minister of Justice can dissolve if he loses confidence in it. It also allows him to designate three of the 22 members of the council. The 120-clause Bill is vital for transforming the legal profession and improving access to justice.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy.

It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of State.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security.

Budget and funding

A total budget of R16,7 billion was allocated to the DoJ&CD for the 2013/14 financial year. Of this budget allocation R5,8 billion was allocated to the Court Services Programme, R3 billion was for the NPA and R1,84 billion for Public Entities and Chapter 9 Institutions. Growth in 2013/14 is driven by the following:

- the carry-through cost of salary increases
- investment in Thuthuzela Care Centres
- major investments in information technology (IT) upgrades and systems development as part of the Criminal Justice System (CJS)
- additional capacity for Legal Aid, the Office of the Public Protector and the South African Human Rights Commission over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Savings, totalling R230 million in the MTEF period, had been identified in selected goods and services items, by reducing spending on advertising, communication, catering and entertainment, stationery and printing, travel and subsistence, venues and facilities. The savings have funded the following policy priorities:

- Commissions of Enquiries: the Strategic Defence Procurement Package and the cost of finalising the Marikana Commission in 2013/14.
- Assessment of the impact of the decisions of the Constitutional Court and the Supreme Court of Appeal on South African law and jurisprudence.
- Transformation of State Legal Services.

The 2013 budget sets out the following:

Additional allocations of R300 million in 2013/14, R400 million in 2014/15 and R450 million in 2015/16 for investments in IT upgrades and systems development as part of the CJS development; funding improved conditions of service in the department, the NPA, Chapter 9 Constitutional Institutions and the SIU and Legal Aid South Africa (Legal Aid SA).

The department received additional funding over the MTEF period to increase capacity in legal aid (R45 million), the Public Protector (R24 million) and South African Human Rights Commission (R24 million).

Over the next three years, the department will spend R3,1 billion on the construction of courts and other infrastructure projects. A further R96 million will be spent on day-to-day maintenance and R291 million on the rehabilitation of court facilities. An amount of R249 million was earmarked in 2013/14 for the DoJ&CD, NPA and Legal Aid SA for the reduction in criminal case backlogs in regional and district courts.

In 2013/14, the department envisaged spending R1,9 billion on public prosecutions, R159 million on witness protection, R116 million on asset forfeiture, R305 million on the SIU and R1,36 billion on legal aid.

In support of the constitutional institutions, the department will transfer R116 million to the South African Human Rights Council (SAHRC) and R199 million to the Public Protector.

Role players

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent people within the budget allocated to it by the State. For 2012/13, Legal Aid SA provided assistance in 736 679 matters. This includes legal representation in 438 844 criminal and civil matters and advice in a further 297 835 matters through a national legal aid call-centre among other things. The staff comprises a representative team of 183 at national office and 2 395 staff based at 128 justice centres nationally comprising 64 main and 64 satellite offices.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU is an independent statutory body that is accountable to Parliament and the President. It was established by the President, conducts investigations at his request, and reports to him on the outcomes. The SIU, the Anti-Corruption Task Team (ACTT), the AFU and the Hawks have made notable progress in the quest to combat corruption in the public sector. The work of these agencies complements efforts of the Department of Public Administration and other entities outside the public sector such as Corruption Watch, which aim to rid the country of corruption. Not only does corruption erode the fruits of South Africa's

hard-earned democracy, but it also tarnishes the country's good name locally and internationally and discourages foreign investment.

The SIU was created in terms of the SIU Act, 1996. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry in that the President refers cases to it by issuing a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU Act, 1996, including:

- serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any State institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property
- any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on State property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category thereof.

The SIU can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it discovers during an investigation. For example, it can obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

The SIU litigates its cases in the Special Tribunal, a specialised court that deals specifically with its cases. This avoids some of the delays usually associated with civil litigation.

The focus of the SIU is the public sector, but it also deals with private-sector accomplices.

It can investigate private-sector matters that cause substantial harm to the interest of the public.

As the focus of the SIU is on civil litigation, it does not have the power to arrest or prosecute suspects. When it uncovers evidence of criminal activity, it hands a court-ready docket to the South African Police Service (SAPS) and/or the Hawks.

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible.

It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

By February 2013, the capacity of the SIU had increased from 70 staff members to more than 600.

The SIU had 25 active proclamations by May 2013 – 10 arising from national government incidents, seven from provincial government incidents, six from local government incidents and two from state-owned enterprises.

Investigations in relation to seven proclamations were finalised in 2012/13. Another 15 were finalised in 2013/14 and 10 are envisaged to be finalised in 2014/15. These include the investigation of 481 incidents of serious corruption recorded in 2012/13 and more than 758 persons who were under criminal, financial and/or forensic investigation in 2013.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is a statutory body established in terms of the South African Law Reform Commission Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973).

The commission does research with reference to all branches of the law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law.

In August 2013, President Jacob Zuma appointed five commissioners to the SALRC.

The members' fields of experience range from human rights law and administrative law to corporate governance law.

The SALRC is chaired by a judge and consists of members from the judiciary, legal professions and academic institutions. It conducts research with reference to all branches of South African law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law. This includes the following functions:

- repealing obsolete or unnecessary provisions
- removing anomalies
- bringing about uniformity in the law
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- making common law more readily available.

To achieve its objectives, the SALRC is drawing up a programme in which matters requiring consideration are included and submitted to the Minister for approval.

Recent SALRC programmes included:

- statute law: establishing a simplified, coherent and accessible statute book
- statutory law revision: redundancy, obsoleteness and constitutionality of legislation
- reviewing the Interpretation Act, 1957 (Act 33 of 1957)
- arbitration
- family mediation
- family law and the law of persons
- custody of and access to minor children
- review of aspects of matrimonial property law
- Hindu marriages
- sexual offences: adult prostitution

- assisted decision-making for adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- prescription periods
- review of the law of evidence
- hearsay and relevance
- electronic evidence
- review of administration orders
- specific civil action in respect of consequential damages arising from hoaxes
- administration of estates
- review of witchcraft legislation
- multidisciplinary legal practices
- expungement of certain criminal records
- the practice of ukuthwala (child abduction and forced child marriages).

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

South African society post-1994 has been marked by profound political changes and the establishment of progressive legislation, policies and programmes that have served to lay the basis for a new society. A key milestone is the formation of the NPA.

Also vital within the CJS was the formation of the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions, established in 1998. The Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions consists of deputy national directors and special directors of public prosecution who head the following specialised units:

- Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (Soca)
- Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)
- Priority Crimes Litigation Unit
- Office for Witness Protection.

National Prosecutions Service (NPS)

The NPS is headed by the deputy directors of public prosecutions. They stand at the head of the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country. All the public prosecutors and State advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the directors of public prosecutions in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Office for Witness Protection

The Office for Witness Protection provides a support service to the CJS by protecting threatened or intimidated witnesses and related people by placing them under protection, thus ensuring that they testify in criminal and other defined proceedings. The Office for Witness Protection has a proud record of no witnesses or family members in the programme being harmed or threatened since the office was established.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU focuses on restraining and forfeiting the proceeds of crime or property used to commit crime.

The unit has two major strategic objectives:

- to develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- to build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

The AFU completed 302 forfeiture cases in 2012/13, with a value of R118,4 million. The success rate of the AFU in this period was 94,1% (289 cases). In addition, 276 new freezing orders to the value of R518 million were obtained.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to State departments.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

This specialist unit is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director of Public Prosecutions.

The primary function of the unit is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecution of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law. Soca aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children

In March 2013, the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development signed contracts with civil society organisations that are grantees of the Access to Justice and Promotion of Constitutional Rights Programme, such as the Foundation for Human Rights. An amount of R6,8 million was made available in 2013 to civil-society organisations for this purpose.

- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the Soca's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. These one-stop facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for the finalisation of rape cases.

The TCCs ensure that service providers are available to a rape survivor in one location, rather than the victim being shuttled around through the CJS.

The TCCs provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly way.

In March 2013, Soca, in partnership with various State departments and United States Agency for International Development (USAID), launched the Increasing Services for Survivors of Sexual Assault Programme to enhance the role of the TCCs. The project is supported by the implemented of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence.

The Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units

The FCS units have been reintroduced in all 176 SAPS clusters across the country.

By October 2013, there were 176 FCS units, with a workforce of 2 238 members.

To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, 72 forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for the Courts of Law may review existing rules of court to efficient, expeditious and uniform administration of justice in the Supreme Court of Appeal, high courts and magistrates' courts.

Subject to the approval of the Minister, it may enact, amend or repeal rules for the above courts.

The board is headed by a Constitutional Court judge and includes experts in procedural law drawn from the judiciary, legal profession and academic institutions.

Its mandate includes:

- improving and modernising the rules of courts in accordance with technological changes and constitutional imperatives
- addressing challenges to the constitutionality of specific rules and effecting amendments precipitated by such challenges
- simplifying the courts' rules to promote access to justice
- harmonising rules of superior and lower courts
- reviewing the civil justice system to address inadequacies
- conducting legal and comparative research to determine viable solutions
- stimulating discussion with role players and interested and/or affected parties in the process of amending rules
- unifying and harmonising rules, regulations and procedures to transform the courts and to make justice accessible to all.

Judicial Service Commission (JSC)

The JSC selects fit and proper people for appointment as judges and investigates complaints about judicial officers. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the JSC publishes a notice giving details of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations.

It shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews.

Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The interviews are conducted in public, after which the commission deliberates and makes its decisions in private.

Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the commission, appoints the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, and the president and deputy president of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The President appoints other judges on the advice of the commission.

In the case of the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities (CRL Commission)

The CRL Commission's role of fostering social cohesion remains relevant as democracy continues to grow in South Africa. It is incumbent upon the CRL Commission to develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities. Its mandate is to make sure that democracy manifests itself in all aspects of the life of South Africans.

There are still communities that felt marginalised because they are not part of mainstream religions. However, most South Africans have gained awareness of their language rights and are beginning to make demands for better recognition.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against, judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, the Minister appoints a magistrate after consultation with the Magistrates' Commission. The commission also investigates grievances and complaints about magistrates and submits reports and recommendations to the Minister, who in turn tables them in Parliament.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity, grievances, salary and service conditions, and the training of magistrates.

South African Board for Sheriffs

Significant strides have been made in transforming the sheriff's profession in the country. Sheriffs have an important role in the CJS, as they act as a third party to serve court process and execute the warrants and orders of the court, which are issued in terms of the regulations of the different courts.

In July 2013, the department appointed 71 sheriffs to fill vacancies countrywide, taking the number of permanent sheriffs operating in the country from 298 to 369. The newly appointed sheriffs reflect the demographics of the country in respect of race and gender: 47 are African, 11 white, six coloured and seven Indian. Women represent 18 of the new appointees and men 53.

These appointments contribute substantially to bringing the Sheriff's profession in line with the transformative vision and goals of the Constitution. The new sheriffs assumed duty on 1 October 2013 after completing a mandatory induction training programme.

South African Human Rights Commission

As the independent national human rights institution, the SAHRC was created to support constitutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring the attainment of everyone's human rights in South Africa without fear, favour or prejudice.

The values of the SAHRC are integrity, honesty, respect, objectivity, the Batho Pele principles, and equality.

Each year, the SAHRC requires relevant organs of State to provide it with information on the measures taken towards the realisation of the rights contained in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, healthcare, food, water, social security, education and the environment.

The SAHRC has additional powers and functions prescribed by specific legislative obligations in terms of the Human Rights Commission Act of 1994; the Paia of 2000, and the Equality Act of 2000.

The commission has to:

- promote awareness of the statutes
- monitor compliance with the statutes
- report to Parliament in relation to these statutes
- develop recommendations on persisting challenges related to these statutes and any necessary reform.

The SAHRC is actively involved in ensuring the ratification of international and regional human-rights instruments by, among other things, advocating for the domestication of human-rights instruments.

At international level, the SAHRC is recognised by the UN Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights as an A-status national human rights institution. As an A-status institution, the SAHRC has adhered to the Paris Principles, which are the guiding principles that set out the nature and functioning of a national human rights institution.

The SAHRC deals with a wide range of human rights complaints. For 2012/13, it finalised 7 033 out of 8 924 cases brought to it.

Recognition for this work has taken the form of an award from the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights in October 2012 as well as the election of the Commission's Chairperson, Adv Lawrence Mushwana, as the Chair of the Network of African National Human Rights Institutions (NANHRI) in November 2011, and also as the Chairperson of the International

Coordinating Committee of National Institutions for the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights in May 2013. Adv Mushwana is the first African to hold this position.

Public Protector

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Section 182 of the Constitution mandates the Public Protector to:

- investigate any conduct in State affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice
- report on that conduct
- take appropriate remedial action
- be accessible to all people and communities.

The Public Protector has additional legislative powers contained in about 16 statutes. Among other things, it must resolve disputes or grievances involving the State through mediation, consultation, negotiation and any other remedies. It also has a mandate to enforce executive ethics, the Paia of 2000, the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000), and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

The only matters excluded from the mandate of the Public Protector are court decisions, judicial functions and matters outside the public sector.

By 2013, the third Public Protector, Adv Thuli Madonsela, had investigated 33 533 complaints a year, assisted by 160 staff members based at a national office and 238 at nine provincial and satellite offices throughout the country.

South African Judicial Education Institute

The SAJEI Act of 2008, established the institute to provide independent judicial education for judicial officers.

The SAJEI is responsible for the formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners in this legislation and other areas of judicial work.

Its purpose is to promote the independence, impartiality, dignity, accessibility and effectiveness of the courts by providing judicial education for judicial officers. In carrying out this function, the SAJEI is primarily directed and controlled by the judiciary. The institute provides education and training for aspirant and newly appointed judicial officers and ongoing legal education and training for experienced judicial officers.

During 2012/13, 2 187 judges and magistrates attended 56 seminars/workshops on a wide range of topical matters including sexual and gender-based violence. The Aspirant Judges Training Course was attended by 71 participants.

Court services

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court.

There are voluntary associations of advocates such as the General Council of the Bar and other formations of independent bars. There are four regional societies for attorneys, each made up of a number of provinces. A practising attorney is by the operation of the law a member of at least one of these societies, which promote the interests of the profession. The Law Society of South Africa is a voluntary association established to coordinate the various regional societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts. The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney.

All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the Minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of State at all levels of government.

The judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court

binds all organs of State and people to whom it applies.

The Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal
- High courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- Magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either High courts or Magistrates' courts.

Other courts include: Income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, Divorce courts, Small Claims courts, Military courts and Equality courts.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the Supreme Court of Appeal and the High courts are an important source of law. These courts uphold and enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all State organs and all people.

The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and develop Common Law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of State in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of State, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

The President, in terms of section 174(4) of the Constitution appointed Adv Mbuyiseli Russel Madlanga SC as a Judge of the Constitutional Court with effect from 1 August 2013.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The Supreme Court of Appeal, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the Supreme Court of Appeal, and 23 other judges of appeal. The Supreme Court of Appeal has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a High Court. Justice Lex Mpati is the President of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

Decisions of the Supreme Court of Appeal are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of High courts are binding on Magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

High courts

A High Court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty.

Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 High courts:

- the Eastern Cape High Court has four branches, located in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bhisho
- the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein
- Gauteng has two high courts, one in Pretoria (North Gauteng) and one in Johannesburg (South Gauteng)
- KwaZulu-Natal also has two high courts, in Pietermaritzburg and in Durban
- the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou
- the Northern Cape High Court in Kimberley
- the North West High Court in Mafikeng
- the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.

Specialist high courts

The following specialist High courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.
- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each preside over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically conduct hearings at remote areas outside the seat of the High Court designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned. This is with a view to enhancing access to justice.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a Regional Court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine Regional Court presidents and 351 Regional Court magistrates.

The Regional courts by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008), adjudicate civil disputes.

The Divorce courts were subsumed under the regional-court divisions. The Divorce Court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 (Act 9 of 1929), were repealed from 15 October 2010. The Regional courts therefore started adjudicating divorce matters from 15 October 2010. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

In the medium to long term, the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act of 2008, will reduce the workload in the High courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time is within the jurisdiction of Regional courts. This means that attorneys have the opportunity to represent their clients in matters where they ordinarily brief counsel, thus reducing the cost of litigation and increasing access to justice.

In total the Regional and District backlog criminal courts have dealt with 82 271 cases since their inception in 1996. Of these, 57 668 cases have been finalised, 21 932 withdrawn and 2 671 transferred to the High courts.

Magistrates' courts

Magistrates' courts form an important part of the judicial system as it is where ordinary people come into contact with the justice system daily.

For this reason, that the bulk of the department's budget and resources are concentrated here. Jointly with the Chief Justice, the department implements programmes aimed at supporting these courts. One such intervention is backlog courts. In the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's Strategic Plan 2013 – 2018, 24 of the 90 branch courts were identified for rehabilitation into full-service courts by 2014.

The department increased the civil jurisdiction of Magistrates' courts and Regional courts beyond their R100 000 and R300 000 thresholds, respectively.

This is with a view to widening access to justice as more people will be able to access the Magistrate's courts where it is cheaper and faster to obtain a legal recourse compared to the High courts.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service.

The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

The Ntuzuma Magistrates' Court, the 43rd court to be built since 1994, was opened in May 2013.

New equipment included the digital court system for recording of proceedings in active court rooms and an audio visual remand system, which links to the Department of Correctional Services for facilitation of postponements and other matters via video conference.

The Regional and High court rooms are fitted with CCTV equipment, two-way facilities and waiting rooms for facilitation of sexual offences cases involving minors.

The new court building will bring dignity to the manner in which justice services are administered in the communities of Inanda, Phoenix, KwaMashu, Ntuzuma and surrounding areas, especially since services at the old court site were limited.

Through the construction of courts, the right of everyone to have any dispute resolved by the application of the law in a fair public hearing before a court is guaranteed.

Besides the 43 new courts, the department has refurbished and equipped a further 24 branch courts and elevated them into proper courts. The outstanding 65 branch courts and 230 Periodical courts have been lined-up for rehabilitation consistent with the National Development Plan.

The Limpopo High Court will be completed by June 2014 and the construction of the Mpumalanga High Court commenced in July 2013. There are also six new courts planned for construction in the next three-year MTEF cycle.

Small Claims courts

Small Claims courts were established to adjudicate small civil claims. They were created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims.

The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R12 000.

By June 2013, there were 277 Small Claims courts.

The vast majority of the new courts and places of sitting are in rural areas and former black group areas.

The goal of having a Small Claims Court in every magisterial district is in sight. Gauteng and Mpumalanga have already achieved this.

The number of people enjoying the benefits of access to justice through Small Claims courts has increased steadily.

During 2012/13, 100 874 new cases were received, 68 305 summonses were issued, there were 50 045 trials, 36 368 judgments and 19 087 out-of-court settlements.

Establishing these courts depends partly on the number of dedicated women and men who volunteer their services as commissioners or as Advisory Board members.

The number of commissioners who preside over Small Claims courts has almost doubled in the past four years, from 811 in 2009 to 1 546 in 2013 – comprising 1 314 men and 232 women.

Members of the Small Claims Court Steering Committee and the Swiss Government are partners in this project.

The Small Claims Court in Soweto was officially launched in April 2013.

The opening of the Small Claims Court at the Protea Magistrate Court was a significant milestone in the department's quest to ensure access to justice for all South Africans.

The Small Claims Court Model is an effective dispute resolution mechanism, which contributes towards the realisation of the department's mandate to ensure access to justice for all.

Equality courts

The right to equality is protected by law in the Equality Act of 2000 and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two Acts work in synergy. The Equality Act of 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness about equality.

The department is engaged in the Access to Justice and Promotion of Constitutional Rights Programme.

This programme was developed under the framework of the *European Union (EU)/South Africa Country Strategy Paper and National Indicative Plan*, which set out South Africa's development strategy between 2007 and 2013 and identifies the areas to be funded by the EU.

The aim of the programme is to contribute to the promotion, protection and realisation of rights established in the Constitution through the following three key performance areas:

- improving access to justice
- raising awareness of rights
- strengthening participatory democracy.

For the 2012/13 financial year, 619 matters were enrolled before Equality courts. Most of the complaints dealt with included hate speech, unfair discrimination and harassment. The department is preparing legislation that will criminalise hate speech.

Traditional courts

There are Traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) in traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

Community courts

South Africa has established Community courts on a pilot basis to provide speedy resolution of certain types of community offences. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

These courts seek to assist the country's court case backlog. Community courts are normal District Magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses.

The business community and other civil-society formations have contributed significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen Community courts have been established. Four are fully operational and were formally launched in Hatfield, Gauteng; and Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchells Plain and Cape Town in the Western Cape.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point) and KwaMashu in KwaZulu-Natal; Mthatha, Eastern Cape; Bloemfontein and Phuthaditjhaba in the Free State; Thohoyandou in Limpopo; Kimberley in the Northern Cape; and Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia) in Gauteng.

Lessons from the pilot sites will assist in finalising the policy and legislative framework that will institutionalise Community courts as a permanent feature of the judicial system.

Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials.

It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud. Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office.

Criminal jurisdiction of the respective courts

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act of 1944 or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by District courts is limited to imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000.

A Regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

A Magistrate's Court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A Regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences.

Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment.

Sexual Offences courts

Sexual Offences courts had been reintroduced by the end of 2013/14 and up to 57 Sexual Offences courts would be operational countrywide within in the next three years.

The courts feature specially trained officials, procedures and equipment to reduce the chance of secondary trauma for victims.

There is a screening process to identify cases that fall within the sexual offences category; a special room where victims testify; a private waiting room for adult witnesses; and a private waiting room for child witnesses and victim support services.

The courts also include special equipment to enable victims to identify the accused from the testifying room when required to do so, as well as a designated court clerk and a court preparation programme for witnesses to prepare for court and to provide debriefing after they have testified.

Areas of legislation

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007, provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO)

The department has developed the National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO), which was deployed in 195 courts. The NRSO was established by an Act of Parliament in 2007.

It is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people.

The NRSO gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people. The NRSO is not open to the public and is kept confidential. Anyone found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people is put on the NRSO.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act of 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance money from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

From the 369 maintenance courts nationwide, the department registers about 200 000 new maintenance complaints a year. To reduce the maintenance queues at courts, the department installed technology to process payments through electronic financial transfers to replace the card-based manual system. The courts are also increasingly making orders for payments to be deposited directly into the accounts of beneficiaries.

Through the Guardian's Fund, the department contributes substantially to poverty alleviation. In 2012/13 the department made 37 000 payments totalling R1,006 billion to Guardian's Fund beneficiaries. In November 2010, the department introduced an electronic payment system reaching 92,88% of beneficiaries, reducing the turnaround time of payments and thereby limiting cheque payments with the associated risk of the money not ultimately reaching its beneficiaries.

Maintenance Turnaround Strategy: Project Kha Ri Unde

Project Kha Ri Unde is one of the subprojects of the Maintenance Turnaround Strategy. This is a three-year project aimed at reducing the turn-around times in service delivery from the entry point into the maintenance system up to the issuing of a maintenance order.

Domestic violence

The rigorous steps the justice, crime prevention and security (JCPS) cluster is taking to root out gender-based violence is the adoption of zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people and other forms of violence towards women and children. The department has, after engaging with Regional Court presidents, identified 57 Regional Courts across the country for use as dedicated Sexual Offences courts.

The department allocated a separate budget in its 2013 MTEF to increase the capacity of these courts. The earmarked budget was used in particular for the following:

- the creation of additional Regional magistrates' posts to increase the capacity of these courts
- appointment of additional personnel including intermediaries
- skills development programmes and social context training for regional magistrates and personnel of these courts
- enhancing the services provided by the TCCs which are essential in addressing secondary victimisation. More funds will be mobilised to increase the 51 TCCs across the country
- the installation and maintenance of the technological equipment fitted in the designated courts, such as CCTV cameras, to ensure the integrity of the judicial process.

The Ndabezitha Project with the NPA trains traditional leaders and clerks of the court in domestic-violence matters in rural areas. This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the DoJ&CD.

The department engaged in research methodology called the 10-Year Review of Implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 aimed at taking stock of all initiatives and projects in courts and the CJS to address the reduction and prevention of domestic violence.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011), is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing stalking and domestic violence.

A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship.

A protection order can be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions. A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown. The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

Human trafficking

South Africa has for the first time a single statute, which addresses the scourge of trafficking in persons holistically and comprehensively.

In July 2013, President Jacob Zuma signed into law the Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Bill, which will see a maximum penalty of R100 million or life imprisonment or both in the case of a conviction.

Besides creating the main offence of trafficking in persons, the new legislation also creates offences such as debt bondage; the possession, destruction and tampering with travel documents and using the services of victims of trafficking, among other things, all of which facilitate innocent persons becoming victims of this modern day form of slavery.

The new legislation gives effect to South Africa's international obligations in terms of a UN Protocol.

Transforming the judiciary

The department has made significant strides in its quest to transform the judiciary. By 2013, 61% of judges (generic) were black compared to only one in 1994. Similar progress has been made in addressing race and gender imbalances in the magistracy. Of the 1 661 magistrates, 974 are black and 687 are white, 647 are women and 1 014 are men. There are still challenges regarding the appointment of female judges.

Out of 239 judges only 76 are women. Out of a total of 311 judges appointed since 1994, 113 are white males compared to 76 female judges.

Of the 5 708 enrolled advocates only 1 841 are women, while there are 7 477 female attorneys from a total number of 21 463.

The department has increased the allocation of briefs to legal practitioners from previously disadvantaged individuals to 70% in 2013.

It is anticipated that the Legal Practice Bill will overhaul the current structure of the legal profession, which is inherently prejudicial to any woman who wishes to pursue a career as lawyer.

State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this.

This programme is mainly aimed at transforming justice, the State and society. It deals with the following functions:

- constitutional development
- legislative development (including conducting legal research)
- the provision of legal advisory services to other organs of State (including Parliament)
- providing litigation services to protect the organs of State
- the provision of probate services
- administration of the Guardian's Fund
- regulation of insolvency and liquidation systems.

The State Legal Services Programme's objectives include:

- improving service delivery at the Master's Office service points
- increasing efficiency in the provision of services to beneficiaries of the Guardian's Fund, trusts, and insolvent and deceased estates
- promoting constitutional development and the strengthening of participatory democracy to ensure respect for fundamental human rights
- improving the provision of legal services to State organs
- improving the policy and legislative framework for the effective and efficient delivery of justice services.

The State Legal Services Programme is divided into the following subprogrammes:

- Legislative Development, the Law Reform Commission and the Rules Boards for Courts of Law, prepare and promote legislation, conduct research and administer the Constitution.
- The Master of the High Court funds the Masters' offices, which supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates, trusts, curatorships and the Guardian's Fund.
- Litigation and Legal Services provides attorney, conveyance and notary public services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and other government bodies through the Office of the State Attorney, and provides legal support to the department and the ministry.
- State Law Advisers provides legal advisory services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and autonomous government bodies.

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of:

- deceased estates
- liquidations (insolvent estates)
- registration of trust's, tutor's and curator's administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and mentally challenged persons).

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, managed by others.

As part of the Turnaround strategy in the Master's Office, there has been a special focus on training frontline officials. The Master's Office is also investigating methods to deliver a more efficient and effective service to the public through the Internet.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over the parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The sections of the Children's Act of 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007 have expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation, and unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation at all. In addition, children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched, and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette.* The

TRC made recommendations to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years.

Government approved four categories of recommendations in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations
- TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance
- community rehabilitation.

By May 2013, the total number of beneficiaries who had been paid reparations was 16 721. The number of outstanding beneficiaries still to receive payment was 111. This was an improvement, compared to March 2013, when the total number of beneficiaries remaining to be paid totalled 133.

Child justice

Children's Act of 2005

The Department of Social Development (DSD) is the lead department for the implementation of the Children's Act of 2005. The DoJ&CD's main responsibility is towards Children's Court operations relating to the Act.

As the Children's Act of 2005 emphasises the effective implementation by all organs of State in an integrated, coordinated and uniform manner, the Members of the Implementation of the Children's Act of 2005 Working Group was established in 2010 to address challenges the department faced in implementing the Children's Act of 2005.

The department developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) link on its website. In addition, the department created an email address, *children@justice.gov.za*, which the public may use to contact the department on issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the DoJ&CD's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who are in need of care and protection. To gather statistics from the Children's courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act of 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court.

This means that every Children's Court can serve as a direct entry point for a child to seek help and protection. Children's courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act.

Child Justice Act of 2008

In April 2010, South Africa implemented the Child Justice Act of 2008, as part of an ongoing effort to promote and protect the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures for children in conflict with the law, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The National Policy Framework was tabled in Parliament in June 2010, and published in August 2010. The remarkable decline in the number of children awaiting trial in prisons marks a further success in the implementation of the Act.

The number of children between the ages of 14 and 17 who were in prison and awaiting trial dropped from 502 in April 2010 to 298 in December 2010.

The department established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused, and building peace in communities.

As defined by the JCPS Cluster, the restorative-justice concept is an approach to justice that aims to involve the parties to a dispute and others affected by the harm (victims, offenders, families concerned and community members) in collectively identifying

President Zuma appointed judges to the High Court, Labour Court and the Electoral Court.

The appointments were made on the advice of the Judicial Service Commission and in terms Section 174(6) of the Constitution.

- Advocate Igna Tersia Stretch, SC, was appointed judge of the Eastern Cape High Court, Bhisho.
- Segopotje Sheila Mphahlele was appointed as a judge of the South Gauteng High Court, Johannesburg.
- Advocate Albertus Johannes Bam, SC, was appointed judge of the North Gauteng High Court in Pretoria.
- Advocate Maria Mabel Jansen, SC, was appointed judge of the South Gauteng High Court in Johannesburg.
- Advocate Nicoline Janse van Nieuwenhuizen, SC, was appointed judge of the North Gauteng High Court in Pretoria.
- Nolwazi Penelope Boqwana was appointed judge of the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.
- Somaganthie Naidoo was appointed judge of the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein.
- Justice Pule Lazarus Tlaletsi, a judge of the Northern Cape High Court, was appointed Deputy Judge President of the Labour Court.
- Sungaree Pather was appointed a member of the electoral court for a period of four years, with effect from 2 December 2013.

harms, needs and obligations by accepting responsibilities, making restitution and taking measures to prevent a recurrence of the incident. This may be applied at any appropriate stage after the incident.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings.

The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the CJS are in place to try and heal the harm caused by the crime or offence, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned, which will lead towards rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Any restorative justice option is always voluntary for the victim involved. Therefore, such programmes and/or strategies will not be forced upon the victim of any crime or offence.

Court performance

This sub-branch of the DoJ&CD is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring processes and systems
- introducing case-flow management that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management
- developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework
- evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts
- facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated case-flow management with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the *Re Aga Boswa* (meaning "We are renewing") and Court Capacitation projects
- facilitating the implementation of multilingualism in courts and developing indigenous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions, rendering case-management business intelligence support to information system management in the development of IT tools and systems, and supporting initiatives for the effective management of court records.

The directorate assists in court capacitation initiatives, namely:

- the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Court Integrity Project
- upgrading five pilot courts, namely Pretoria, Tembisa, Nelspruit, Mkobola and Kimberley with notice boards, flat-screen television sets and DVD players
- providing integrity training to 120 departmental, 15 NPA and 15 judicial officers
- conducting audits on the management of court records
- facilitating activities on the Court Capacitation National Centre for State Courts Project in consultation with all other stakeholders such as chief directors and regional heads
- engaging human resources and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority and securing learnership programmes for court interpreters
- engaging in legislation development and finalising the legislative and operational framework for implementing and institutionalising the lay assessor system.

Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The DoJ&CD and participants from other partner organisations is developing an enhanced version of case-flow management in the court environment.

Efforts to eradicate such blockages will be proposed by adopting workable solutions. These include:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the Lower and Higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment
- maintaining case-flow management.

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the Integrated Case Management System (ICMS). This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations. The following offices have started experiencing the benefits of the ICMS:

- ICMS Civil is deployed in all Lower courts and 13 High courts
- ICMS Criminal is deployed in all Lower courts
- ICMS Small Claims is used in all Small Claims courts and designated Lower courts
- ICMS Masters has been introduced in all 14 Masters' offices and all 402 service points.

The further development of the ICMS Masters

System is in progress. This aims to create a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office. This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically.

Audio-Visual Remand System

The Video Remand Solution has been implemented at 47 courts and 22 correctional facilities. In 2011/12, 4 061 cases were remanded through the Audio-Visual Remand System. The development in this area of support to case flow management for the courts has brought about a significant improvement in the movement of cases through the use of technology.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS cluster departments have introduced the case backlog reduction intervention, which is aimed at reducing the number of backlog cases in the Regional and District courts, providing additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The aim of the backlog intervention is to ensure that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

The department provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases from the backlog roll.

Integrated Justice System

The Integrated Justice System aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of governmental meetings and forums.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS Cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the DoJ&CD is to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other countries/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign countries to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief direct-orate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African countries, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with SADC countries
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign countries outside the SADC region
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human rights treaties, including report writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extradition and mutual legal assistance requests, and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents, delays are experienced from time-to-time.

Provisions are included in extradition and mutual

The Cape Town's Master's Office moved to new, bigger and modernised premises in September 2013. The new premises have been equipped with state-of-the-art technology and will offer paperless estate administration services, which will enable practitioners and members of the public to view estate information online. One of those modernised tools being that the Master will now be able to use the Master's Own Verification Technology – which means people will no longer need to go to Home Affairs offices first to verify their identification.

legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa remains committed to the global promotion of the rule of law, and will continue cooperating with the UN system to ensure the success of the international human rights architecture.

South Africa views the ICC as an important element in a new system of international law and governance.

The workshop on the Ratification and Implementation of the Kampala Amendments to the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court, which focuses on the crime of aggression, was held in Botswana in April 2013.

The meeting was the first of African signatories to the Rome Stature on the continent.

South Africa supported the amendments to the Rome Statute agreed to at the Review Conference in Kampala in 2010, including those relating to the crime of aggression.

The *Handbook on Ratification and Implementation of the Kampala Amendments to the Rome Statute of the ICC* served as a good basis for discussion during the workshop.

Department of Correctional Services

Since 1994, and in keeping with the promotion of a human-rights culture, the focus is progressively shifting from an adversarial and retributive CJS to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs.

To promote good governance, ethical administration and effective human resource management, the DCS declared 2013 as "The Year of the Correctional Official."

This department has been in existence for 102 years. DCS marks the end of a life of crime, and the beginning of restoration. The department must deliver justice for victims and ensure that offenders make restitution both to society for their crimes, and leave correctional centres with better skills and prospects. The field of corrections is gaining prominence. On 16 May 2013, 45 students from the University of Zululand, graduated with a Bachelor of Arts in Correctional Studies.

The DCS remains committed to placing humane and safe detention and rehabilitation at the centre of service delivery. In doing so, the department strives to promote corrections as a societal responsibility, contributing to enhanced public safety and reducing reoffending.

In this regard there is a close link with government's Outcome 3, namely that all people in South Africa should be and feel safe. The strategic focus of the department is situated in four key deliverables, namely:

- reducing the average length of time in remand detention
- increasing the number of offenders in rehabilitation programmes
- increasing the number of victims who participate in parole hearings
- increasing the number of parolees without parole violations.

The department is committed to contributing to reducing reoffending through offender management and rehabilitation intervention and adding to the social reintegration of offenders through management of non-custodial sentences and parole.

The DCS has various offender rehabilitation programmes which focus on restorative justice, skilling, training, reading and offender reintegration.The department has also adopted various orphanages and old age homes, and continues to donate excess products to disadvantaged communities.

From April 2011 to March 2013, inmates at correctional centre farms and abattoirs produced 12 933 106 litres of milk, 1 135 319 kg of red meat, 3 604 149 kg of pork, 2 259 668 kg of chicken, 3 021 529 dozen eggs, 18 121 193 kg of vegetables and 1 259 899 kg of fruit as part of their rehabilitation programme, to plough back to communities and demonstrate remorse for crimes committed.

Legislation and policies

The department is compelled by the Constitution to comply with the following rights in terms of the treatment of offenders:

- equality
- human dignity
- freedom and security of the person
- right to healthcare services
- children's rights
- right to education
- freedom of religion
- rights to humane treatment and to communicate with and be visited by family and next of kin.

The department is mandated by the following legislation: Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998); Correctional Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 25 of 2008); and Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977).

Section 63A, Chapter 28 and Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 are of particular importance to the department as it provides for a procedure in terms of which the court may, on application by a head of a correctional centre and if not opposed by the Director of Public Prosecutions concerned, order the release of certain accused on warning in lieu of bail or order the amendment of the bail conditions imposed by that court on the accused.

Section 63A also forms the basis of a protocol between JCPS cluster departments to encourage the use of this provision to assist accused who do not pose a danger to society to be released from detention in circumstances where the bail set by the court cannot be afforded by the accused or his or her family.

Chapter 28 of the CPA of 1977 deals with sentencing and the entire chapter applies to the department's mandate. Offenders must be detained in accordance with the sentences handed down under this chapter.

The granting of parole and the conversion of sentences to correctional supervision is also done in accordance with this chapter, read together with the Correctional Services Act of 1998.

Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 regulates victim involvement in the decisions of parole boards.

The *White Paper on Corrections in South Africa* represents the final fundamental break with a past archaic penal system, and ushers in a start to the second decade of freedom where prisons become correctional centres of rehabilitation and offenders are given new hope and encouragement to adopt a lifestyle that will result in a second chance towards becoming the ideal South African citizen.

The Second Chance Act repudiates the notion that recidivism reduction is best achieved through deterrent threats alone, and calls for the delivery of services to former prisoners not in a minimal or grudging way but in a systematic, progressive fashion.

It is a re-entry movement that could be classified as therapeutic jurisprudence, restorative justice and to some extent victims' rights.

The Act provides programmes and services that will aid rehabilitation efforts and encourage positive participation in society upon release.

It eliminates "invisible punishment" by excluding access to public benefits such as social grants, general assistance, housing and jobs. The Act counters the effects of policies which have made it extremely difficult for ex-offenders to re-enter the normative non-criminal community and could explain why there are so many recidivists.

Budget

The overall budget for 2013/14 for the Department of Correctional Services was R18,748 billion.

Role players

Portfolio Committee on Corrections

The DCS has a similar body to the Parliamentary Portfolio committees and it keeps the department in check with regard to the humane treatment of offenders and fair labour practice for its workforce, among other pressing matters.

National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS)

The NCCS is a statutory body with the primary aim of guiding the Minister of Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

Its primary purpose is to provide advice in terms of policy, with regards to the correctional system and the sentencing process.

In March 2013, the Minister of Correctional Services met with the NCCS. The focus of the meeting was to monitor and evaluate progress of the NCCS. Issues discussed included overcrowding, parole board and case management committee training, training for psychologists and social workers as well as the Second Chance Act.

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services

The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services was established in 1998 with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services is an independent office.

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. A newly established Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed on 23 February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

The R22,8 million allocation to the DCS by Cabinet from the Criminal Asset Recovery

Committee Fund for the installation of an audio-visual system in the parole boards offices will give victims access to any of the 52 parole boards across the country to make presentations without having to travel.

In 2007, the department developed a policy on restorative interventions. This included the Victim-Offender Mediation Model, which outlines the process of identifying offenders who are genuinely ready to take part in Victim-Offender Mediation.

In addition, the department signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the Foundation of Victims of Crime to assist with tracing victims of crimes for their possible participation during parole placement considerations of offenders who committed crimes against them.

During 2012/13 the Foundation of Victims traced 1 037 victims of crime. Of these, 46 have participated in parole board hearings. Another 52 victims prepared by the Foundation of Victims of Crime have participated in the Victim-Offender Mediation Programmes while 875 victims were ready to participate in either the Victim-Offender Mediation Programmes or Parole Board Hearings.

Programmes and projects

Service Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP)

The department identified four key services to form the basis of the SDIP for 2009/10 to 2013/14. These are integrated into the department's strategic and operational plans. Regions report quarterly on:

- improving access of service providers and other stakeholders to correctional centres
- improving telephone and switchboard etiquette at all service points
- managing the payment of bail and fines at correctional centres
- improving the scheduling of visits to offenders to support family ties between offenders and their families.

Each year the department honours officials who excel in their tasks and go beyond the call of duty to ensure that quality service is delivered through the annual National Corrections Excellence Awards.

The DCS was also part of the development of the *Training Manual on Innovation* at the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy, in collaboration with the Centre for Public Service Innovation.

The Gallows Memorial

The Gallows Memorialisation Project at the Pretoria Central Prison was initiated to honour those political prisoners who were hanged and serve as a reminder to future generations not to take their freedom for granted.

It comprises a memorial and a museum, which includes the death row block housing the gallows where an estimated 130 political prisoners were hanged between 1961 and 1989.

As part of the museum, the chapel at the gallows was renamed the Steve Biko chapel, in memory of all those who died in detention.

There is also a garden of remembrance.

A roll of honour with the names of all the political prisoners can be seen at the entrance to the gallows.

Operation Vala

Operation Vala (meaning "close") is a 50-day special festive-season security plan, which includes:

- tightening security
- limiting offenders' externally focused activities to essential services
- curtailing goods and products brought to facilities by families and friends
- conducting impromptu searches to eliminate illegal substances
- maintaining appropriate staffing levels as informed by local threat assessments by heads of correctional centres and area commissioners.

Without security, no rehabilitation can take place. The department adopted a minimum security standards policy with six key pillars, namely personnel, technology, information, operational, physical and management supervision of security.

Operation Funda

Operation Funda (meaning "learn") is one of the DCS's flagship projects to enhance offenders' access to education and training to equip them for effective and sustainable social reintegration.

It came into being after the Minister raised concerns about the number of inmates serving life sentences considered for placement on parole who were incarcerated as juveniles for serious crimes, and had not had access to or used the opportunity to empower themselves.

Young people between the ages of 18 and 25 constitute 69% of the offender population. There are 13 dedicated youth facilities nationally.

In September 2013, 522 inmates from correctional centres in the Free State and Northern Cape who enrolled for a variety of courses and skills development programmes, graduated.

The purpose of the correctional system is not punishment, but protection of the public, promotion of social responsibility and enhancing human development to prevent repeat offending or the return to crime. The

department insists that people who leave correctional centres must have appropriate attitudes, and competencies for them to successfully integrate back into society as law-abiding and productive citizens. During the past six years, Correctional Centre Schools have been achieving an above 90% average matric pass rate.

By April 2013, 991 offenders were studying towards post-matric/higher education and training qualifications, 4 042 towards further education and training college programmes (including electrical engineering, civil and mechanical engineering and marketing) and 3 853 towards skills development programmes (including basic business skills training and entrepreneurship).

From April 2013, it was compulsory for every inmate to complete Adult Basic Education and Training levels 1 to 4.

Mother and baby units

The mother and baby units are separate cells built for mothers incarcerated with babies in correctional centres. This is to allow children as close to normal an existence as possible even if this is under the conditions of incarceration of the mother, while at the same time providing rehabilitation programmes in a centre that enhances their capacity to care for their children.

These facilities were also launched in response to the Child Justice Act of 2008. The Act created an imperative for the department to treat children incarcerated with their mothers in a humane manner.

It called for the department's programmes to be revisited, particularly those designed for women with children. These ideals resulted in the mother and baby units.

The facilities cater for children up to two years, after which they are released to a legal guardian chosen or recommended by the mother.

Imbeleko Project

The department, through its Imbeleko Project, facilitates a soft landing for children older than two years whose mothers do not have proper family structures. It also has accredited childcare facilities to which some of these children are released.

The objectives of the project are aligned with those of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Child Justice Act of 2008.

The implementation of the first phase focused on what happens to a child released from a child-friendly mother and baby unit after reaching the limited two years.

It also creates a harmonious environment between social workers from the welfare department and those from the department to continuously track the progress of the child who has to maintain contact with the mother through the foster parents. It calls for continuous interaction between the baby, mother and the foster parent well before the child is given away.

Halfway House Pilot Project

The halfway houses offer an opportunity to offenders who meet all the requirements to be placed on parole but do not have fixed addresses that can be monitored to which they can return to in communities.

Halfway houses reduce such offenders' potential to reoffend because they are given a second chance to experience a home-like environment. A halfway house is considered the final part of an offender's rehabilitation process.

Victim-offender dialogue (VOD)

Since the launch of the VOD programme in November 2012, more than 85 VOD sessions have been hosted, and 1 342 officials across the country have been trained in the VOD implementation guidelines.

One such session took place when victims of the 1996 Worcester bombing arrived in Tshwane by train from Worcester on 30 January 2013 to meet the youngest bomber at Pretoria Central Correctional Centre.

VODs are based on a theory of justice that considers crime, and wrongdoing, to be an offence against an individual or community, rather than the State. Restorative justice, that fosters dialogue between victim and offender, shows the highest rates of victim satisfaction and offender accountability.

Ultimately, every correctional centre will have a VOD Representative Forum.

The VODs provide an opportunity for offenders to meet with victims and account for their crimes, thereby rebuilding the nation. Through the VODs, parole boards and other structures, the department is working towards democratisation and creating more opportunities for people to join the fight against crime.

Correctional Services Learnership Programme

By October 2013, over 3 000 youths had been trained by the DCS.

A further, 1 009 youths graduated from the Correctional Services Training Centre in Kroonstad, in the Free State, in the same month.

The Further Education and Training Learnership in Corrections is one of the department's flagship skills development programmes.

It is aimed at creating a pool of entry-level correctional officials, and is a response to President Zuma's call to creating youth employment and alleviating poverty.

The department's learnership is a prime example of work-integrated learning, encouraged by the Department of Higher Education and Training, where learners get an opportunity to engage in both theoretical (three months), and practical (nine months), learning.

As part of government's programme of action to address unemployment, and expand opportunities for greater employment and empowerment of youth in the country, the learnership is a successful partnership between the DCS and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta) to train young people as correctional officials.

Offender labour

Offenders across the country are giving back to communities and demonstrating remorse for the crimes they committed against them.

Empowering offenders with skills to function effectively in society upon their release is essential to rehabilitation.

It is equally important to ensure that offenders are actively involved in productive activity while they serve their sentences.

Therefore, the establishment of a trading entity is being prioritised, which will have a positive effect on the use of offender labour.

By means of the trading entity the department will offer their customer base consisting of government, the private sector and non-governmental organisations a wide variety of products and services, ranging from furniture, clothing and steel works to food products, agriculture and many others.

In addition the department will continue donating products to disadvantaged communities from time to time to help alleviate poverty.

In line with the National Framework on Offender Labour, the department is increasing the number of offenders who participate in offender labour and skills development, programmes.

In February 2013, the department signed a Memorandum of Agreement with the Department of Basic Education to use offender labour to build schools and supply furniture. The obligations of the DCS include:

- manufacture and delivery of school furniture
- rehabilitation of school furniture
- construction of school infrastructure
- maintenance, and refurbishment, of schools
- establishment of school gardens.

Ten DCS workshops will manufacture the school furniture.

In May 2013, Noziwe Public School in Khuma, North West, received 52 refurbished desks and 37 computers donated by business.

Offenders, and officials, have built, and renovated, several houses, and schools, in disadvantaged communities including tiling, reroofing, installing built-in cupboards, painting and plastering, mowing lawns and cutting back trees, clearing bushes and cleaning yards. Agricultural productivity takes place on 21 correctional centre farms, and 96 smaller vegetable production sites, all spread over some 40 000 ha of land.

Vegetable production takes place on 21 farms, and 108 smaller centres; fruit production on 13 farms; milk production on 17 farms; red meat on 24 farming units; chicken on four farms; layers on eight farms; red meat abattoirs on 17 farms; white meat abattoirs on three farms; and 15 farms focus on piggery.

The abattoir at Leeuwkop Correctional Facility in Gauteng was a winner at the 2012 Nama Phepa Awards. It was declared the best in the province for three successive years in the Low Red Meat Abattoir category, winning the gold award.

At the Boksburg Correctional Centre Bakery, 22 offenders produce 2 000 loaves of bread daily which feed 5 000 offenders.

Electronic monitoring

The DCS launched a GPS electronic monitoring device for awaiting-trial detainees in November 2013, a move that was aimed at enhancing public safety through electronic monitoring.

The GPS electronic monitoring device could help to prevent potentially volatile situations involving offenders.

The watch-like gadget is strapped to the leg of the offender.

Once the bracelet is fitted, and activated, it cannot be removed without breaking the transmitter, strap or connecting clips. The device keeps Correctional Services officials aware of offenders' movements 24 hours a day, and triggers an alarm at a control room once an offender enters a restricted zone.

By monitoring offenders in this way the department wants to protect victims of domestic violence. Such victims can be given a receiver that alerts them when the perpetrator comes within a certain distance of them.

Automated Fingerprint and Identity System (Afis)

The department initiated the roll-out of Afis in correctional centres around the country. The department's Automated Personal Identity

System, which was developed through the Inmate Tracking Project, was implemented at 32 correctional centres and 99 community corrections offices.

This will eventually interface with the Department of Home Affairs' database to verify the identity of offenders.

Operational structure of correctional facilities

Inmates statistics

Between April and September 2013, of South Africa's total sentenced offender population, 19 026 inmates (approximately 18%) were serving sentences for sex-related crimes.

According to the latest National Offender Population Profile (September 2012), the major crime categories are economic, aggressive, sexual and narcotics.

As at May 2013, South Africa's inmate population was 152 514 of which 45 043 were remand detainees and 107 471 were sentenced offenders. Offenders sentenced to life imprisonment increased from about 400 in 1994 to more than 11 000 in 2013. Foreign nationals comprise 8 973 inmates (4 087 sentenced and 4 886 unsentenced).In addition, 65 931 offenders were outside correctional centres living in their respective communities; 48 716 were parolees, 15 491 were probationers (serving non-custodial sentences) and 1 724 were awaiting trial.

Parole boards

The interim case management committee structures were established in all centres in accordance with Section 42 of the Correctional Services Act of 1998.

The parole system is based on international best practices.

It allows for independent decisionmaking by correctional supervision and parole boards and it allows for the participation of victims as well as other role players such as representatives from the SAPS and DoJ&CD.

The average number of offenders on parole has grown from 44 941 in 2010/11 to 46 259 in 2012/13. The average number of offenders subjected to correctional supervision has decreased from 22 458 to 17 183 in the past three years.

During 2012/13, 78% of all offenders placed on parole underwent prerelease-release programmes.

The National Institute for Crime Prevention and the Reintegration of Offenders was first established in 1910 as the Prisoner's Aid Association and has a history in human rights, prison and criminal justice reform.

Of those placed on parole during 2012/13, 15,19% violated their parole conditions compared to 23,9% during the previous year. It represents a decrease of almost 9%.

Review of the CJS

The three main streams of core business of the department are vested in the budget programmes:

- remand detention
- incarceration and corrections
- social reintegration.

Remand detention

The Remand Detention Branch was established on 1 April 2012.

The Section 49E protocol was implemented in December 2012. The Section 49G protocols were implemented in July 2013.

IT solutions for implementation of and accurate data capturing, were developed in 2012 and implemented in April 2013. The solution will assist in determining which remand detainees qualify for referral to court at certain intervals in line with Section 49G provisions.

The first three months (April to June 2013) constituted the pilot phase during which the accuracy of information as well as referral of backlog cases was tested. A tool for calculating the length of detention was also developed and implemented in April 2013. In addition, a monitoring tool was developed for completion by all the regions that would make it easier to calculate a national average length of detention.

In conjunction with the National Council on Correctional Services, comprising judges, magistrates, attorneys, clinical psychologists, social workers, medical doctors, professors and officials, the department was reviewing various issues including overcrowding, CCTV cameras in correctional centres, parole board and case management committee training, training for psychologists and social workers as well as the Second Chance Act.

The Act counters policies that have made it difficult for ex-offenders to re-enter the normative non-criminal community, and could explain why there are so many recidivists. The Second Chance Act may assist in the task of assisting parolees not to reoffend.

During 2013, 26 dedicated remand detention facilities were established across the country.

The total number of children in remand detention decreased from 305 children at the end of March 2011 to 218 in March 2012 and a further reduction to only 135 on 31 March 2013.

In 2013/14, a Solicitor-General was appointed to oversee all legal services of the State, and

The Department of Correctional Services' contribution to preventing drug abuse includes school-children being taken on tours to correctional centres, with motivational talks from rehabilitated inmates. The inmates depict the realities of their life, demonstrating that crime does not pay. In Gauteng, by May 2013, 1 107 school tours had been undertaken by 56 634 learners and 3 321 educators.

assist in improving the quality of services offered to the State.

Social reintegration

The community forms an integral part of the rehabilitation of offenders on parole to reintegrate them as law-abiding citizens. Parole is used internationally to place offenders under supervision within the community.

By March 2013, in addition to the 152 550 inmates serving sentences inside a correctional centre, there were 63 240 offenders serving sentences outside correctional centres, who live in their respective communities.

The parole policy provides for credible members of communities to chair the Correctional Supervision and Parole Boards which have been allocated decision-making authority.

The department wants to return rehabilitated offenders to society as healthy, and responsible, community members.

As at April 2013, 98,4% of the 65 931 offenders under community corrections complied with all their parole conditions and did not reoffend. Parolees who obtained skills in correctional centres, are being provided with work tools, and start-up kits, to start their own businesses.

These include welding machines, sewing machines, car-wash machines and vacuum cleaners to create entrepreneurs and employment for parolees.

Through the Working on Fire project, female parolees are being trained and graduate to structural fire fighting. The training is not only confined to fire fighting, but includes administration and carpentry.

The department has also engaged the National House of Traditional Leaders in the rehabilitation, and reintegration, of offenders. This project is aimed at going back to the basics of rehabilitation and reintegration.

Other initiatives include parolees employed by the City of Johannesburg in the Gateway Project, the Clean Sweep Jo'burg Project, painting the Glenanda Clinic as well as a garden project at Helen Joseph Hospital, which supplies the hospital with fresh vegetables. Similar projects are being undertaken in other provinces.

Mineral Resources

South Africa is by far the wealthiest mineral jurisdiction in the world.

The industry remains the biggest contributor to the country's gross domestic product; however unrest in the industry has led to stoppages in mining production that have hampered growth, according to figures released by Statistics South Africa and the South African Reserve Bank in July 2013.

Government's industrialisation policy calls for a paradigm shift in mineral development, strategic investment in assets to maximise long-term growth beneficiation projects, enhanced value of exports, increased sources for consumption of local content, and creation of opportunities for sustainable jobs.

In May 2013, the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) was tasked to develop a rescue plan for the platinum and gold sectors to ensure long-term sustainability.

The platinum and gold sectors had been negatively affected by the persistent global economic market environment, which had an adverse bearing on their long-term viability.

The rescue plan is expected to enable the department to find appropriate government-wide measures for appropriate sector-wide responses, with particular focus on supply and demand side interventions to position them along a recovery path and a trajectory of long-term sustainability through the well-established tripartite structure of Mining Growth, Development and Employment Task Team.

Platinum and gold were among the largest sectors of South Africa's mining industry in terms of employment, investment and revenue generation.

In March 2013, Russia and South Africa signed a bilateral cooperation agreement on cooperation in the development of platinum group metals (PGMs), which would contribute significantly to the creation of a suite of interventions necessary to stabilise the platinum industry during the Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa Summit in Durban. The agreement is premised on an understanding that parties will make every effort to achieve, among others, sustainable expansion of the PGM market, create value-adding enterprises closer to production and work towards realising the potential for developing other sectors of the economy.

Legislation and policies

Some key legislation and policies relating to the DMR are the:

- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002). The promulgation of the MPRDA of 2002 in 2004

introduced a policy of equal access to South Africa's mineral resources. This democratic mineral dispensation introduced the policy of socio-economic responsibility, which was to be achieved through the application of Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Policy by ensuring that historically disadvantaged South Africans are brought into the mainstream of mining. However, challenges experienced in implementing these policies resulted in the need to review the MPRDA of 2002. The objectives of the review are to:
  - provide for a detailed consultation process
  - support the beneficiation strategy
  - streamline the licensing process to avoid delays and inefficiencies
  - provide for enhanced punitive measures
  - improve the current construct of the Act and remove ambiguities, and provide clarity on the mining of associated minerals.
- Mineral Health and Safety Inspectorate of the DMR, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996) as amended, which is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mine workers and people affected by mining activities.
- The Council for Geoscience (CGS) was established in 1993 under the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993).
- Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010), expands the functions of the CGS by:
  - mandating the CGS to be the custodian and curator of geotechnical information; to be a national mandatory advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure development; to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors; and to add to the functions of the council
  - putting mechanisms in place to address problems associated with infrastructure development on dolomitic land
  - empowering the CGS to be the custodian of all geotechnical data to compile a complete geotechnical risk profile of the country
  - enabling the CGS to become the custodian of technical information relating to exploration and mining.
- During 2010, the DMR unveiled the revised Mining Charter 2010, which updates and expands upon a set of empowerment targets with emphasis on a target of 26% black ownership of the country's mining assets by 2014.
- The Beneficiation Strategy was approved by Cabinet in June 2011. To ensure its efficacy, certain amendments to all relevant legislation will be effected. These include the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), the Diamond Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), and Section 26 of the MPRDA of 2002. Five value chains were prioritised from the selected commodities in the strategy, namely:
  - iron and steel: beneficiating iron ore, chrome, manganese, nickel and vanadium
  - energy commodities: focusing on coal and uranium
  - auto catalytic converters and diesel particulate filters: beneficiating PGM
  - pigment and titanium metal production
  - jewellery manufacturing: to increase the beneficiation of platinum group metals, diamonds and gold.
- Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010) is aimed at refocusing the objectives of the CGS to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in the country and to act as a national advisory authority in the areas of geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.
- The draft Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Amendment Bill, which was introduced to Parliament in May 2013. The draft Bill aims to enhance provision for the beneficiation of minerals to promote industrialisation and contribute to the nation's objectives of job creation and economic growth as envisaged in the National Development Plan (NDP).

Beneficiation strategy

The first National Jewellery Forum was held in October 2013 in Johannesburg. The forum brings together mining and jewellery manufacturing associations and government, with the view to creating entrepreneurs with the requisite skills to enable South Africa to become a global jewellery hub.

Jewellery manufacturing is one of the five key value chains identified in the Beneficiation Strategy, which when implemented, will leverage the country's precious metal and gemstone reserves to position South Africa as a thriving and globally competitive jewellery hub.

Budget and funding

The budget allocation of R1,394 billion for the 2013/14 financial year represented an increase of

The Special Presidential Package is aligned to the Mining Charter, which commits mining companies to, in consultation with stakeholders, establish measures for improving the standard of housing, including the upgrading the hostels, converting hostels to family units and promoting ownership options. The Thusanang (help each other) project, led by Anglo American, plans to deliver more than 20 000 housing units in six different mining villages in the greater Rustenburg area. The project will go a long way to addressing the housing needs of communities surrounding several mines around Rustenburg in North West.

R218,316 million at the most testing time in the post-apartheid history of the mining industry.

The predictable regulatory framework which is in sync with the dynamic socio-economic and political landscape of the country resulted in the following milestones:

- gross fixed capital formation has increased significantly under the MPRDA of 2002 from R18 billion in 2004 to R75 billion in 2012
- foreign direct investment grew from R112 billion in 2004 to R389 billion in 2012
- employment grew from 448 909 jobs in 2004 to 518 240 in 2012.

Gross sales of primary minerals increased from R98,5 billion in 2000 to R371,7 billion in 2012, while the number of operating mines increased from 993 in 2004 to 1 579 in 2012.

This is over and above the fact that during 2012/13, 56 new mining rights were granted which have the potential to create an additional 11 052 decent and sustainable jobs and attract capital expenditure of about R7,3 billion.

The implementation of the South African Mineral Resources Administration System online was carried with the additional allocation of R3 million from National Treasury, for 2012/13 to develop a number of reporting modules, including a transformation monitoring system, appeals and the acquisition of hardware infrastructure.

Role players

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

To make certain that the mining industry operates in a sustainable and competitive environment, all stakeholders in the industry need to intensify skills-development efforts.

The future of mining in the country largely depends on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives.

Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid as well as other technical skills. Capacity building within the department and associated institutions has also been prioritised in respect of identified critical areas of skills shortage and necessary interventions have been introduced, which include learnership programmes and bursary schemes.

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and implementing a sector skills plan
- developing unit standards and qualifications for the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships and apprenticeships
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning
- disbursing grants from the skills-development levy.

Chamber of Mines

The Chamber of Mines of South Africa is a prominent industry employers' organisation. Its purpose is to advance, promote and protect the collective interests of its members.

Its mandate includes monitoring, investigating, analysing and considering matters of collective interest to its members and providing recommendations on the position to be taken.

Where appropriate, the Chamber of Mines represents its members and provides technical and expert assistance on matters affecting their collective interest.

For its members in the gold and coal sectors, the Chamber of Mines negotiates wages and conditions of employment with trade unions representing mining employees.

Members of the Chamber of Mines account for about 90% of South Africa's mining production by value, and employ about the same percentage of the mining industry's labour force.

Some environmental issues affect the integrity of the industry. To tackle these, the chamber has engaged in:

- liaising with biodiversity stakeholders to develop the Biodiversity Guideline that will be user-friendly for environmental managers within the mining industry
- facilitating the industry's involvement with government and other stakeholders to develop and implement the plan to manage acid mine drainage
- supporting the development of best practices for mine water management through the Department of Water Affairs, such as the draft guideline on water conservation and water demand management.

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)

The SADPMR regulates the diamond, platinum and gold industries and accelerates beneficiation in the jewellery industry. The SADPMR's objectives are to:

- ensure that precious metal and diamond resources are exploited and developed in the best interests of all South Africans
- promote equitable access to and local beneficiation of precious metals and diamonds
- promote the development of precious metal and diamond enterprises
- advance broad-based socio-economic empowerment
- ensure compliance with the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS).

Its functions regarding diamonds include:

- implementing, administering and controlling all matters relating to the purchase, sale, beneficiation, import and export of diamonds
- establishing diamond exchange and export centres to facilitate the buying, selling, export and import of diamonds.

While the South African Diamond Board has an essentially regulatory role, the SADPMR has a promotional role as well.

By administering licences and export approvals, the SADPMR ensures that local demand for diamonds and precious metals is catered for, and that there is growth in local beneficiation of diamonds and precious metals.

The Intersessional Meeting of the KPCS for Rough Diamonds under the Chair of South Africa concluded its deliberations in June 2013. The landmark meeting brought together representatives of governments, the diamond industry and civil society to discuss ways of strengthening the effectiveness of the Rough Diamond Certification Scheme to ensure that diamond trade does not finance violence by rebel movements and their allies seeking to undermine legitimate governments.

The KPCS meeting was held on the 10th anniversary after its inception, in the very town where it was initiated and named after. Technical support for KPCS compliance as well as creating public awareness of its activities were also discussed.

Recommendations emanating from the intersessional meeting were considered at the plenary meeting of the KPCS held later in 2013.

During discussions, delegates reviewed the processes and functions of the KPCS to ensure that it remains relevant and credible in curbing the illegal flow of rough diamonds.

The KPCS was held under the theme "Ten years of stemming the flow of conflict diamonds."

Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek)

Mintek is the national mineral research organisation, specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with the mineral resources industry and other research and development institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources.

About 30% of its annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract research and development, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements, and joint-venture private sector companies.

Mintek is involved in research into the use of nanotechnology for medical applications of gold as well as giving effect to the Hydrogen Strategy, in partnership with the departments of Mineral Resources, Science and Technology and Trade and Industry.

This is intended to create future demand for gold and platinum, in keeping with the national objective of achieving 20% global market share of platinum catalysis by 2020.

Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC)

The MHSC has managed to strengthen the tripartite relationship (organised labour, organised business and the state) which in turn helped to increase the focus on occupational health and safety in the mining sector. Achievements included the provision of seven advice reports to the Minister, namely the:

- South African Mines Reportable Accidents Statistical System Codebook
- Shaft and Winders Regulations
- Refuge Bays Regulations
- Guidelines on Code of Practice (COP) for Mineworkers Incapacity due to ill health
- Guidance note for the management of tuberculosis (TB) in the South African Mining Sector
- Guidelines on COP for Fitness to perform work on a mine
- Guidelines on Mandatory COP of Risk-based Emergency Care on a mine.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS is mandated to carry out systematic geological, geophysical, geochemical, marine geoscience, metallogenic and engineering geological mapping of South Africa.

The CGS is also able to provide commercial geoscientific services.

The CGS participates in various Southern African Development Community (SADC) projects aimed at promoting the economic development of the Southern African sub-continent.

International cooperative projects that have been carried out, or are in progress, include geological mapping, geochemical and geophysical

surveys, and the production of maps in many countries, either on a bilateral basis or collaboratively in the SADC region.

State Diamond Trader

The State Diamond Trader achieved a profit of R5,1 million for the 2012/13 year against the budgeted profit of R11 million. Despite depressed global markets and the funding challenges of the State Diamond Trader coupled with lackluster performance by its clients, the State Diamond Trader achieved revenue of R411 462 599 in 2013/14. The State Diamond Trader has employed five trainees and appointed critical staff members in line with its revised human resources plan using its own funds. A new board was elected and in place after the lapse of the five-year term of the last board in September 2012.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP, whose main function is to drive the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) mining initiatives, was established during the African Mining Minister's meeting in Cape Town in February 2004. South Africa, as a major role player in this body, has played an important role as the Secretariat, in hosting as well as coordinating the affairs of the AMP. The AMP merged with the African Union Conference of Ministers Responsible for Mineral Resources Development.

African Diamond Producers' Association (ADPA)

The ADPA is an intergovernmental organisation that seeks to strengthen the level of influence African diamond-producing countries have on the world diamond market.

It implements policies, strategies and laws that assist the generation of diamond profits from foreign diamond mining companies to its member states.

The ADPA has three organs, namely the Council of Ministers, Executive Secretariat and the Meeting of Experts. The Council of Ministers constitutes 18 African countries, 11 of which – including South Africa – are full members, while the remainder enjoy observer status.

For South Africa, membership of this association presents an opportunity to position itself strategically among diamond-producing countries in Africa. It could add significant impetus to diamond beneficiation initiatives and also boost its aim of becoming the beneficiation hub and gateway to Africa.

A student mining indaba was held in July 2013 at the University of the Witwatersrand. The conference aimed to give students first-hand experience of the dynamics taking place in South Africa's mining industry. The mining sector remains the backbone of South Africa's economy, contributing largely to the country's gross domestic product.

Projects and initiatives

With significant resources of gold, uranium, chrome, manganese, PGM, titanium minerals, vanadium, coal, limestone, vermiculite and zirconium, South African mining real estate remains attractive for development.

South Africa has significant known reserves and resources of mineral commodities, with almost 60 minerals being actively mined and prospects for exploitation of an additional two new minerals in the short to medium term. A large number of these known reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methodologies. For this reason, there still lies considerable residual potential for discovery of world-class deposits using modern exploration technology.

This is further supported by existing mining infrastructure, which enables investors to leverage maximum value from their investment while simultaneously contributing to socio-political improvement.

Shale-gas exploration

The potential of shale-gas exploration and exploitation provides an opportunity for South Africa to begin exploring the production of its own fuel and marks the beginning of the reindustrialisation of the economy.

In October 2013, Cabinet approved the gazetting of technical regulations on petroleum exploration and exploitation.

The proposed regulations prescribe good international petroleum industry practices and standards, which enhance safe exploration and production of all petroleum and will further ensure that petroleum exploration is conducted in a socially and environmentally balanced manner.

A task team was established to investigate the socio-economic and environmental impact, as well as any associated risks of shale-gas exploration and exploitation. The investigation report made specific recommendations on measures that could be taken to mitigate the environmental impact of petroleum exploitation, with specific attention to shale gas hydraulic fracturing.

The main recommendation was to ensure that South Africa's regulatory framework was robust enough to ensure that if hydraulic fracturing associated with shale-gas exploration and exploitation were approved, any resultant negative impact would be mitigated.

Also, an interdepartmental committee was put together to look at strengthening the existing regulations. A comprehensive international benchmarking exercise of well-developed jurisdictions

that have begun shale gas exploitation was also undertaken.

The technical regulations provide for the assessment of the potential impact of the proposed activities on the environment; the protection of fresh water resources and mechanisms for the co-existence of shale gas exploitation and the Square Kilometre Array project.

The South African Government would have a free-carried shareholding of 20% in entities producing shale gas in the Karoo in the future.

Stability in the mining sector

In June 2013, then Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe asked stakeholders in the mining sector to make commitments aimed at averting a potential crisis in the mining industry. He met with trade unions, the Chamber of Mines and several government departments in Pretoria where he asked all parties to commit to bringing stability to the industry ahead of the annual wage talks.

The purpose was to look at the bold steps that needed to be taken by all the role players to stabilise the mining sector and avoid a crisis that could have a devastating impact on the economy.

Government wanted parties to give a commitment that they would conduct their business in terms of the law. The Marikana Peace Accord was brought back to the table as it was central to stability talks.

Mining companies, trade unions and government departments met in July 2013 to sign the Framework Agreement for a Sustainable Mining Industry, which is aimed at, among other things, resolving problems in the industry, rooting out unrest and restoring investor confidence in the sector.

Mine health and safety

The department continues to place particular emphasis on the health and safety of mine workers, which is crucial to the sustainability of the mining sector. As a result progress has been made in improving the record of fatalities, injuries and occupational diseases. A comparison of the years 2011 and 2012 shows a 9% improvement in fatalities in the mining industry.

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate of the DMR pursued a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss, also known as occupational deafness, by 2013. The department finalised the HIV and TB Reporting Form, which it developed to report these diseases in the mines. Mining companies are expected to report on the programmes implemented in relation to HIV and TB annually to the department.

These reports provide an understanding of the particular disease burden in the mining sector, furthermore they will inform the interventions in terms of awareness, prevention and treatment. A sizeable number of mining companies that are participating in the HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaigns and mine workers have heeded the call to test for TB and HIV.

The department, in collaboration with the MHSC, finalised the review of the Guidance Note on Management of TB in South African Mines. The guidelines on Minimum Standards of Fitness to Perform Work in a Mine, and Prevention of Flammable Gas Coal Dust Explosions in Collieries were also reviewed.

Two new guidelines were developed, namely Incapacity Due To Ill-Health and Injury Guideline as well as the Compilation of a Mandatory Code of Practice for Risk-Based Emergency Care. The Regulations on Reporting of Occupational Diseases were gazetted during 2013/14.

Illegal mining

In July 2013, the Minister of Mineral Resources requested that law-enforcement agencies conduct sting operations at several mine dumps to root out illegal mining. The department worked with local authorities to ensure that mine dumps, where illegal mining was prevalent, were claimed by the State and used for other projects such as the construction of low-cost housing.

In 2013, emergency teams had to be dispatched to disused mines and dump sites where illegal miners had lost their lives while drilling rocks underground.

The illegal activity was not only a threat to the health of the illegal miners, but also negatively affected the economy.

A 2010 study found that R6 billion was being lost to illegal mining annually.

Integrated licencing

The construct of the Mining Regulatory Framework is fragmented and has been identified as one of the binding constraints to the growth and competitiveness of the South African mining sector. The departments of mineral resources, water affairs and environmental affairs have agreed on the modalities of integrating the time frames and processes of environmental authorisation and water-use licensing for prospecting and mining operations.

The modalities include the departments implementing the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998) for the industry to be regulated by a single environmental piece of legislation.

Processes of environmental authorisation will be contained within the same time frames that apply to prospecting and mining authorisations, and the process of approving water use licences will also be finalised within the same time frames.

This represents a significant improvement in service delivery, both in terms of certainty regarding security of tenure when mining or prospecting rights are issued and in terms of improved turnaround times resulting from the processes being finalised in parallel rather than sequentially as was previously the case.

Job creation and sustainable development

Economic distress in the industry resulted in large scale retrenchments. As a result job creation targets were not achieved.

Following the review of the 2004 Mining Charter, which is subject to a 10-year review time frame, the DMR embarked on a process of reviewing and amending the 2004 Mining Charter to strengthen and sharpen its efficacy in driving transformation and competitiveness in the mining sector.

The implementation of the mining charter has been given 10 years to effect transformation. In view of this window the department conducted a baseline assessment of compliance by the mining industry with the Mining Charter and produced a preliminary report in 2009.

A second assessment report, which is due by 2014, has to be produced as a continuation of the initial assessment to ensure that the department quantifies the compliance levels over the 10-year window.

The socio-economic challenges brought about by communities living close to mining operations has necessitated departmental review of levels of compliance with the Mining Charter.

Rehabilitation of mines

The mine rehabilitation programme has had a positive effect on communities where the projects are including economic growth owing to sourcing labour and material locally. The programme also results in improved health and well-being of communities. The rehabilitation programme reduces the risk of asbestos fibres from historical asbestos mine sites that human and animal being exposed to.

By March 2013, the department had rehabilitated 13 mine sites.

A total of 284 jobs were created as part of the programme, which was 24 jobs more than initially projected for the year. The job creation element of the rehabilitation programme is one of the key requirements for all the rehabilitation projects. This contributes to some of the priorities of the NDP.

A report by actuarial scientists on the estimated State liability for the rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines commissioned by the department is under consideration.

The recommendations will assist the department in planning the rehabilitation programme, with a lucid indication of the resource requirements.

An annual review of the liability has also been completed. Both the initial report and the review report confirm the need for fiscal support to the department for rehabilitation work.

Acid mine drainage (AMD)

By November 2013, significant progress had been made towards addressing the critical challenge of AMD. The decanting of AMD in Gauteng into the environment and water courses is a result of mining activities over more than 150 years.

An Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on AMD was set up and co-chaired by the ministers of water and environmental affairs and mineral resources and included the ministers of finance, science and technology and national planning.

An intergovernmental task team was set up to ensure the programme of addressing AMD was underway and that progress was reported to the IMC, and thus to Cabinet.

Also, a task team of scientists and professionals in the water sector, namely the Team of Experts, under the leadership of the CEO of the CGS, was put together with tight timelines to advise the inter-governmental task team and the IMC.

The report recommended the implementation of emergency works to contain AMD at a predetermined level to ensure that ground and surface water is protected, as well as preventing other AMD-associated environmental and socio-economic effects. The IMC reported in November 2013 that the surface decant of AMD into the environment had been eradicated.

In the Central Basin, work towards the construction of an AMD pump station, neutralisation plant, as well as waste and neutralised water pipelines at the former East Rand Proprietary Mines (South-west Vertical Shaft) commenced in January 2013. Civil works, which started in December 2013, were at an advanced stage of development.

In the Eastern Basin there is a projection for infrastructure development similar to the one at the Central Basin. The bid was awarded by December 2013 with the project commissioning envisaged for December 2014.

The Team of Experts also compiled a long-term feasibility study towards the concrete management of the AMD.

The second Annual Mining Lekgotla was held in August 2013. It provided another opportunity for the key role players in the mining industry to continue engaging in finding lasting solutions to the challenges affecting this sector. Government also continues to support the framework agreement and its implementation for a sustainable and stable mining sector.

In September 2013, Rand Water chairperson in water utilisation, Professor Jannie Maree, received a United States patent for an acid mine water treatment process, the magnesium-barium-hydroxide (MBO) process, which removes metals and sulphate from mine water. It offers South Africa a technically sound and cost-effective solution for the acid mine water problem. Removing metals and sulphate with the MBO process could produce water that contained levels low enough to be acceptable as drinking water.

Resources

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 93% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium resources
- the Bushveld Complex is known for PGMs (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

Gold

South Africa dominated global gold production in the 20th century. There are 35 large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa, including the record setting TauTona mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana.

Cape Town hosts the annual Indaba Mining Conference, one of the largest gatherings of mining stakeholders, which attracts nearly 10 000 people representing more than 1 000 companies.

In 2013, South Africa had fallen from being the world's biggest gold producer to the number six position with a mere 6% contribution to total global gold production, despite still having an abundance of gold reserves in the ground.

Mining Weekly Online reported in October 2013 that the negative factors affecting South African gold mining included falling gold prices, rapidly escalating input costs, declining grade, falling productivity and illegal strike action.

In the first quarter of 2013, more than 60% of the gold sector was either marginal or loss-making on cash cost basis using the price of R401 000/kg and excluding capex.

Coal

The coal sector is important for the South African economy. The accelerated demand for coal, accompanied by an increase in international coal prices, has invariably changed the buying patterns and structure of the local coal export industry. The emergence of the export market for lower-grade coal has presented government with a challenge in that it has constrained the availability of coal that was historically sold to Eskom.

In the national energy plan, coal remains an important component of the country's future energy mix and requirements. Government resolved that certain minerals such as coal should be declared strategic national resources, based on the balance of evidence. The findings of the coal resources and reserves report concluded by the CGS were released in mid-2013.

Platinum group metals

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

The remaining PGMs are produced as co-products. South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM-resource in the world.

Platinum

Platinum mining in South Africa is supported by the country possessing over 80% of the world's

Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) introduced a 200-wagon train service named Shongololo (millipede) on its export coal line that will run directly from Richards Bay Coal Terminal (RBTC) to mines in Mpumalanga. This gives Transnet the capacity to exceed 81 million tonne a year. Decreasing the handling processes of trains will allow for higher reliability, which will mean improved sustainability and service predictability. The new service is expected to increase weekly railed export coal capacity from 1,4 million tonne per week to a potential capacity of 1,85 million tonne per week, which would be a 30% increase in current capacity. TFR is poised to deliver for the coal sector, both domestic and export, in excess of two million tonne per week – which is an annualised delivery of 96 million tonnes.

platinum group metal reserves. The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Amplats is the industry leader in the mining, marketing, and distribution of platinum. Amplats produces 40% of the world's total platinum group metals.

Other key platinum mining companies in South Africa include BHP Billiton and Impala Platinum.

Platinum mining in South Africa is growing. The establishment of projects such as the R7,1billion Twickenham Expansion Project, 100 km south-east of Polokwane, will see the production of 250 000 t/m pure platinum.

The well-underway Impala Platinum No. 20 Shaft Project, which is geared to produce 185 000 ounces of platinum a year from 2013 on the Bushveld Complex.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs. Palladium and platinum is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores, and a minor producer of ferrosilicon and silicon metal. Ferrous minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloys smelters. The Minister of Mineral Resources unveiled the R1 billion expansion project at BHP Billiton's Metalloys manganese smelter in Meyerton, south of Johannesburg, in March 2013.

It is the largest new investment in the manganese industry in the country and supports government's drive to increase the beneficiation in South Africa.

The furnace is designed to produce 120 000 kt of high-carbon ferro manganese a year, and includes improvements to ensure increased reliability, availability and also improved pollution control during the production process.

In July 2013, the Sibanye Gold Mine on the West Rand handed over new two-bedroom modern family units at the Tswelopele and Lehae Parks complexes to 100 families from the Libanon village. The handover of the family units is part of a bigger housing project – worth R200 million – that has so far provided 812 family units at various mining communities in the Westonaria area.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company at the town of Phalaborwa in Limpopo is South Africa's only producer of refined copper. Producing about 80 000 t per year, it supplies most of South Africa's copper needs and exports the balance.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum. Palabora's large block cave copper mine and smelter complex employs approximately 2 200 people. Palabora also owns a nearby vermiculite deposit, which is mined and processed for sale worldwide. Vermiculite is a versatile industrial mineral.

Manganese

South Africa has significant proven manganese reserves, but exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

South Africa, the site of the biggest diamond discovery, plans to process a greater proportion of its gems locally to keep more profit in the country.

Government wants to cut and refine 70% of the diamonds mined in South Africa by 2023. Only 4% were processed locally.

Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Mineral Regulation

The Mineral Regulation Branch was created following the promulgation of the MPRDA Act of 2002. Chief directorates have been created under the Mineral Regulation Branch for the following regions:

- northern
- central
- western
- coastal.

Each chief directorate is responsible for overseeing the activities performed by the Directorate Licensing and Legal Compliance in the three regional offices or directorates.

The functions of the Mineral Regulation branch are to:

- administer the MPRDA of 2002 and other applicable legislation to ensure the granting of prospecting and mining rights in terms of the Act
- promote mineral development including urban renewal, rural development and BEE
- address past legacies with regard to derelict and ownerless mines and enforce legislation regarding mine rehabilitation by means of regulated environmental management plans
- coordinate and liaise with national, provincial and local government structures for efficient governance.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved, and along with them mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface.

Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae.

Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the Witwatersrand (Ridge of White Waters) are world famous.

More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km^2 and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PMGs and vanadium.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex can best be viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features the Bourke's Luck Potholes, which have become a major tourist attraction.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, which covers 243 000 ha, has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two-thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and

for their early dinosaur evolution. During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth. The Vredefort Dome is the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth and is a World Heritage Site. It lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is the small bowl-shaped Tswaing meteorite-impact crater. Just 1 km in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park in North West is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world. The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures created during the collapse of the volcano. There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Cradle of Humankind

This World Heritage Site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group, which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded about 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak.

Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

THEMBEKA MYEDI
SHAFT

Police, Defence and Intelligence

Department of Police

The task of maintaining the safety and security of society is critical to the success of all government's programmes.

Law-enforcement services in South Africa fall under the Department of Police, which is responsible for policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police.

Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

South African Police Service

The SAPS is South Africa's principal law enforcement body and its policing objectives in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution are:

- preventing, combating and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensure offenders are brought to justice
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. Deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and provincial commissioners (under whom the police stations fall) report to the National Commissioner.

The SAPS' personnel complement stood at 197 946 by December 2013.

The allocation for entry-level appointments was 2 000 for Police Service Act personnel.

Operational training in 2012/13 focused on:

- the development of station management
- victims, women and children
- tactical and response development
- detective training
- crime intelligence development
- adult education and training
- K53 driver education.

To increase access to communities by building, upgrading and improving police stations, three police projects were completed in 2012/13.

These included new police stations in Amalia, North West and Weenen in KwaZulu-Natal and a new 10111 Centre in Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape.

In October 2013, National Police Commissioner General Riah Phiyega announced the introduction of an anti-corruption unit to deal with rogue police officers.

Strategic outcome-oriented goals

Ensuring that all South Africans are and feel safe (Outcome 3) is the broad outcome for the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster, and also underpins the work of the SAPS.

To deliver on this outcome, the department's 2010 – 2014 Strategic Plan focuses on providing police services that will ensure safer communities by:

- reducing all serious, contact and trio crimes
- increasing activities to prevent and combat border crime
- increasing the detection rate, the court-ready case docket rate and the conviction rate for all serious, contact and trio crimes and crimes against women and children
- addressing organised crime
- ensuring adequate availability of and access to police service points by bringing them closer to communities in rural areas.

Mandate

The SAPS derives its powers and functions from section 205 of the Constitution and from the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995).

This legislation regulates the police service in terms of its core function, which is to prevent, investigate and combat crime.

Budget

To support the achievement of strategic objectives, the spending focus was on increasing personnel numbers and physical resources such as basic equipment, capital infrastructure, skills development and technological enhancements in the information and telecommunications environments.

The budget for the Department of Police for 2012/13 was R63,3 billion.

Visible policing

Visible policing is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS, specifically responsible for:

- combating crime through crime operations
- providing for the activities at police stations
- combating crimes in the railway environment
- dealing with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children and community-based crime prevention
- providing a rapid-response service in respect of crimes in progress
- eradicating the proliferation of illegal firearms available for use in crime and violence
- ensuring effective compliance and enforcement of liquor control and second-hand goods legislation to address serious crime in South Africa.

Crime prevention

The SAPS conducted 34 428 policing actions in 2012/13, focusing on a number of priority areas to address the incidence of serious crime.

These actions included:

- 46 079 roadblocks and 2 902 917 stop-and-search operations
- 1 682 763 arrests for all crime during policing actions
- 67 020 vehicles stolen and robbed in 2012/13
- 51 730 vehicles recovered.

Vehicle identification

There are 51 vehicle identification sections countrywide.

Their functions include:

- identifying and investigating vehicles
- issuing South African Police vehicle identification numbers
- controlling all SAPS vehicle clearance offices
- controlling all unique marking of vehicles
- activities relating to the registration of vehicle manufacturers, importers and builders

The Dangerous Weapons Act, 2013 (Act 15 of 2013), among other things, states that "any person who is in possession of any dangerous weapon under circumstances which may raise a reasonable suspicion that the person intends to use the dangerous weapon for an unlawful purpose, is guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to a fine or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding three years."

In determining whether a person intends to use the object as a dangerous weapon for an unlawful purpose, all relevant factors, including but not limited to, the following must be taken into account:

- The place and time where the person is found.
- The behaviour of the person, including the making of any threat or the display of intimidatory behaviour.
- The manner in which the object is carried or displayed.
- Whether the possession of the object was within the context of drug dealing, gang association or any organised crime or any other criminal activity.
- Any other relevant factors, including any explanation the person may wish to provide for his or her possession of the object.

- concluding investigations into vehicles forfeited to the State
- and assisting local detective units with Interpol vehicle enquiries.

Drug eradication

The SAPS makes an effective contribution to the implementation of the National Drug Master Plan through its activities for supply and demand.

It serves as the country's blueprint for preventing and reducing alcohol and substance abuse and its associated social and economic consequences for South African society, and builds on the foundation laid down by government's programme of action on Alcohol and Substance Abuse.

In 2012/13 the SAPS made 168 468 arrests for drug-related crimes, confiscating 196 181 207 kg of cannabis, 108 752 Mandrax tablets, 145 560 kg of cocaine, 347 860 kg of crystal methamphetamine (tik) 46 223 kg of whoonga and 46 827 kg of nyaope.

The SAPS's Cannabis Eradication Programme destroyed 148 ha of cannabis fields.

In 2012/13, the Directorate of Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI) launched intensive intelligence and court directed undercover operations to identify, profile, infiltrate, investigate and neutralise drug groups, syndicates, and high-flyers by means of various projects.

Investigations led to the confiscation of:

- 2 077 997 kg of cannabis
- 9 103 176 kg of heroin
- 114 613 kg of methcathinone (CAT)
- 25 487 kg of cocaine
- 2 545 400 mandrax tablets
- 5 331 ecstasy tablets
- 69 626 kg of crystal methamphetamine (Tik)
- 0,079 kg of nyaope
- 20 007 kg of LSD.
- 41 clandestine drug laboratories with an estimated value of R300 000 for each laboratory were dismantled
- organised crime units made 334 arrests for narcotics-related crimes.

Firearms, Liquor Control and Second-hand Goods

The initiative addresses the abundance of firearms used in crime and violence in South Africa.

It also ensures compliance with and effective enforcement of legalisation concerning firearms, liquor and second-hand goods control.

From 1 April 2012 to 31 March 2013, the SAPS received 229 463 new applications for firearms and finalised 292 290 including 86 142 applications received prior to 2012/13.

The accreditation of businesses, associations and organisations is integral to the implementation of firearms control legislation in South Africa.

During 2012/13, 89 institutions were accredited.

In 2012/13, more than 10 000 arrests were made for illegal possession of firearms and ammunition during law-enforcement operations.

During 2012/13, 4 936 legal firearms and 84 051 legal rounds of ammunition were voluntarily surrendered to the SAPS.

During the same period the SAPS destroyed 56 051 firearms and 138 766 rounds of ammunition.

The SAPS confiscated 1 824 865,821 ℓ of liquor (including 57 061,967 ℓ of home-brewed beer) in 2012/13.

During the same period 74 547 identified illegal liquor premises were closed down and 394 379 inspections conducted to ensure compliance with liquor legislation.

Since the implementation of the Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009), 11 355 applications for the registration of second-hand goods dealers and recyclers were finalised and 42 037 compliance inspections were conducted.

Victims, women and children

The main responsibility of the SAPS towards empowering victims is to render a victim-friendly service to all victims of crime. It includes:

- developing, monitoring and implementing policies, directives and instructions aimed at improving services to victims of crime
- sensitising and training SAPS members to render a professional, victim-friendly service
- ensuring that SAPS facilities are victim-friendly.

By November 2013, 906 victim-friendly rooms (VFRs) had been established across the country to assist victims of crimes, especially crimes against women, children and the elderly.

To support victims, 14 679 SAPS members were trained in interventions of domestic violence, the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), human rights, children and youth at risk, and sexual offences.

The SAPS conducted various public education and awareness events at provinces and stations, particularly in support of Child Protection Week, Youth Month, Women's Month, 16 Days of Activism, and ministerial izimbizo.

Since the signing of the Protocol on Crime and Violence at Schools by the ministers for Basic Education and the SAPS in 2011, 16 810 schools,

with functional Safe School Committees, have been linked to police stations.

Community partnership programmes

Community Policing Forums (CPFs) at police stations serve as the instrument for ensuring that the SAPS engages and cooperates with communities.

By the end of March 2013, 1 131 functioning CPFs had been established at police stations.

The SAPS and Business Against Crime South Africa initiated a partnership aimed at transferring skills to develop and implement CPF projects and improve services to victims.

The South African Banking Risk Information Centre and the SAPS initiated a project focused on educating the community about the latest developments concerning fraud and corruption activities, robberies and ATM-related fraud.

Edcon and Independent Newspapers donated 24 trailers for the SAPS to establish mobile contact points to enhance the visibility of the police.

The crime reporting boards project is a collaborative effort between the SAPS and businesses.

Information on criminal activities is gathered at local level through a post box.

By October 2013, there were 336 crime-reporting boards countrywide.

Reservists

Reservists support the SAPS as a force multiplier, and as part of the police and community's cooperation in combating crime.

The South African Reserve Police Service Policy Framework and Guidelines was implemented in 2013/14, including a structured, reservist recruitment drive.

At the end of March 2013, there were 19 359 active reservists.

Emergency response services

In 2012/13, the SAPS responded to 9 122 688 calls to the 10111 call centres.

By October 2013, there were 471 police stations linked to 10111 call centres.

The SAPS has 29 Flying Squad units to serve as a force multiplier to respond to serious and violent crimes in progress that require immediate police action and response.

In 2012/13, the Inland Water Policing arm, responsible for diving-related support, attended to 2 979 diving operations/call-outs.

The SAPS' Mounted Service with its 25 mounted units spent 170 143 hours on horseback in 2012/13.

The 101 K9 units conducted 365 192 searches with its working dogs.

Railway Police

The Railway Police cover about 33 000 km of rail lines and serve an estimated 538 791 702 million passengers annually.

A total of 3 333 members are deployed in the railway environment.

The functions of the Railway Police include:

- providing a visible policing service to address the safety of commuters on trains
- conducting crime prevention and combating crime operations within the rail environment
- providing a rapid rail-policing service.

Railway Police are operational in the Western Cape (Cape Town, Retreat, Philippi and Bellville), Gauteng (Pretoria, Belle Ombre, Mabopane, Saulsville, Denneboom, Johannesburg, Krugersdorp, New Canada, Stretfort, Germiston, Springs and Kempton Park), Eastern Cape (East London, Mount Ruth and Swartzkop) and KwaZulu-Natal (Durban, Kwa-Mashu, Cavendish, Re-Union and Escombe).

The SAPS provides a reactive policing service at all Gautrain rail stations and carriages. Five National Mobile Train units are strategically placed in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

These units are actively involved in policing long-distance passenger and freight rail across the country.

They are also involved in cross-border operations, disruptive operations and provide a rapid response service to the rail environment.

During 2012/13, Railway Police arrested 47 541 within and outside the rail environment during daily deployments and operations.

Operational Response Services

Operational response services provide for specialised interventions and policing South Africa's borders.

This division is specifically responsible for:

- maintaining public order
- conducting medium-to-high and high-risk operations
- stabilising volatile situations, and preventing cross-border crimes.

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium-to-high-risk incidents falls within the broader tactical environment. This tactical capability comprises:

- The Special Task Force, deals with hostage situations; interventions to combat urban and rural terror; organised crime; serious and violent crime incidents and crimes against women and children; protection and VIP assistance; and search-and-rescue operations. In 2012/13, the task force intervened in 203 extreme situations.

- National Intervention units deal with serious and violent crime incidents; escort dangerous criminals; safeguard VIPs and big events; and provide specialised operational support to stations and other government departments. In 2012/13 these units conducted 3 160 interventions.
- Public Order Police deal primarily with public order through crowd management. There are 28 Public Order Policing units countrywide. In 2012/13, violence erupted in 1 882 unrest-related incidents such as labour disputes and dissatisfaction with service delivery, leading to 3 680 arrests, and 10 517 peaceful incidents such as assemblies, gatherings and meetings were also policed. In view of continued violent protest action the JCPS cluster was tasked to put measures in place at both national and provincial level to deal with such incidents effectively. The National Joint Operational and Intelligence Structure (Natjoints), as the operational arm of the JCPS cluster, was tasked to coordinate and monitor the management and investigation of these incidents countrywide 24 hours a day, seven days a week, in an effort to expedite the processing of these perpetrators through the Criminal Justice System.
- The tracking teams apprehend wanted suspects positively linked to crimes not detected by investigating officers. Six new tracking teams have been established in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape, the Free State, North West, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. During 2012/13, 940 suspects, wanted for serious and violent crimes, were traced and arrested.
- Tactical response teams (TRTs) provide immediate tactical response capacity, to such things as trio crimes; farm attacks; ATM bombings; cash-in-transit heists; taxi violence and serious gang-related crimes; planned operations or specific requests; providing assistance in crowd management; and escorting dangerous prisoners and valuable and or dangerous cargo. There are 40 TRT units countrywide. In 2012/13, TRT units provided protection to 423 cargos, escorted 276 dangerous prisoners, and assisted during 326 crowd management-related incidents, resulting in 3 332 arrests.

In June 2013, 40 Mpumalanga police officers learned to use sign language to serve hearing impaired people and open case dockets. It was expected that by the end of 2013, all 82 police stations in the province would have police officers who understood sign language to help speed up the process of opening dockets for hearing-impaired people.

Mobile operations

Mobile operations safeguard valuable and/or dangerous government cargo, including material of monetary value or with considerable importance or quality such as cash currency printing material, and potentially dangerous cargo such as explosives and ammunition, nuclear material, firearms and drugs.

During 2012/13, 169 cargos were safely delivered without security breaches.

SAPS Air Wing

The SAPS has 49 aircraft, which include 37 helicopters and 12 fixed-wing aeroplanes.

By the end of March 2013, the SAPS had 51 pilots including 31 helicopter pilots, six fixed-wing pilots, and 11 pilots flying both helicopters and fixed-wings and three student pilots.

The pilots flew 6 564,3 hours in 2012/13.

International assistance

The SAPS renders other specialised policing services to the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region and continent.

This, among other things, included deploying 57 members in Sudan, Darfur, and 15 to South Sudan on peace missions in 2013.

Border security

The unit provides policing and security at ports of entry.

Based on screening hits generated by the Movement Control System at the 72 ports the SAPS reacted to 3 435 wanted persons and 3 331 circulated stolen or robbed vehicles.

Between April 2012 and March 2013, 3 880 planned crime prevention and combating actions were conducted to enhance national security and territorial integrity.

Additionally, 3 578 roadblocks, 68 633 vehicle patrols, 285 air patrols, 109 454 foot patrols, 910 borderline patrols, 2 620 vessel patrols and 12 487 perimeter inspections were also conducted.

Detective services

Detective Services investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

By 2012/13, the SAPS had 25 844 detectives. As a means to evaluate the performance of the SAPS in solving crime, three criteria are used, namely:

- detection rate (the ability to solve cases)
- the court-ready docket rate
- conviction rate.

In 2012/13, 1 145 978 charges for serious crime

were investigated, 369 204 case dockets were court-ready and convictions for 352 513 charges were achieved.

Some 151 115 charges reported for crimes against women above 18 years were investigated and 43 443 case dockets were court-ready, while 42 822 reported charges for crimes against children under 18 years were investigated, and 21 400 case dockets were court-ready.

Convictions were secured for 32 457 crimes against women and 9 814 for crimes against children.

The detective service centres (DSCs) are an important interface in the frontline service delivery chain providing a 24-hour, seven days' a week service.

By October 2013, 338 DSCs had been implemented.

The main function of the 142 detective court case officers at High courts, Regional courts and Magistrates courts is to screen new court cases for completeness, to ensure that court dockets are brought to court at least two days before the court date, and to ensure that investigating officers comply with the instructions of public prosecutors in time.

Bilateral stock theft operations were held in 2012/13 with Lesotho, Mozambique, Swaziland and Zimbabwe.

The Bureau for Missing Persons provides support in tracing missing/wanted/unidentified persons. In 2012/13, the Bureau circulated the details of 971 missing/unidentified persons, placed the information of 313 missing and 59 wanted persons on the Internet and facilitated the broadcasting of information about 1 397 and 65 wanted persons in the printed media.

By October 2013, there were 176 Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units, with a workforce of 2 238 members.

To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, 72 forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Crime Stop and Primedia Crime Line

Crime Stop is a call centre responsible for collecting anonymous information/intelligence on criminal activity from the public.

Between April 2012 and March 2013, the call centre received 151 505 calls and 1 459 web tips. These led to 182 positive cases.

As a result, 240 arrests were made and goods to the value of R3 387 947 seized.

Crime Line provides members of the community with a platform to blow the whistle on crime by reporting it anonymously via SMS to the number 32211 or by reporting it on the website *www.crimeline.co.za*.

Between April 2012 and March 2013, 2 101 SMS tips and 1 285 web tips were received, and led to 150 positive cases with 241 arrests made and goods to the value of R3 782 887 seized.

Crime Line won two media awards at the 34th Crime Stoppers International Conference in Barbados in October 2013.

Specialised investigations

The DPCI, known as the Hawks, investigates cases relating to:

- organised crime
- serious and violent crime
- commercial crime
- fraud and corruption.

Serious commercial crime

This refers to:

- serious and priority fraud
- serious commerce-related theft (including theft of trust funds by persons who are obliged by law to keep a trust account)
- complex commercial crimes where the services of a charted accountant or forensic auditor is required during investigation
- contraventions of commerce-related statutes such as statutes relating to companies, close corporations, cooperatives, trusts, financial advisory and intermediary services
- insurance
- counterfeiting of currency
- counterfeiting of goods and intellectual property rights crimes
- banking-related crime
- exchange control
- estate agents
- deceased and insolvent estates
- serious corruption
- computer-related/cybercrime.

In 2012/13, 65 307 new charges of serious crime related to commerce were reported.

A total of 63 094 charges were referred to court of which 2 287 were withdrawn and 546 were closed as unfounded.

South Africa hosted the 2013 International Association of Women Police Training Conference in September, at the Durban International Conference Centre. The conference, held for the first time in Africa, was held under the theme: "Global Empowerment of Women in Policing" and the sub-theme: "Century of Experience to Excellence." Delegates who came from almost 100 countries across the globe, gathered to celebrate excellence in women empowerment in policing through a line-up of training and mentoring programmes.

Government-related fraud and corruption at local government level was an ongoing focus area of the DPCI.

During Operation Clean Audit, 45 public officials were arrested and 14 found guilty on charges including fraud, corruption and money laundering; 209 suspects were arrested and charged with crimes relating to counterfeit card fraud, card skimming and the possession of skimming devices, and 134 persons were found guilty on 851 counts relating to counterfeit card fraud.

The DPCI dealt organised card fraud syndicates a heavy blow with the arrest of 26 syndicate members. Various hand-held and ATM-mounted skimming devices were seized.

Serious organised crime

The organised crime investigation units within the DPCI are responsible for:

- prevention of a cross-sector of organised crime-related activities including illegal drugs
- plundering precious metals and diamonds
- smuggling firearms and weapons
- human trafficking
- money laundering
- specific violent crime
- smuggling or stealing non-ferrous metals
- vehicle-related crime
- endangered species
- crimes against the State.

These units arrested 198 individuals for the illegal purchase, theft and possession of uncut diamonds and unwrought precious metals and secured 71 convictions.

The theft of copper cable (electricity and rail cable) and related crime is viewed as sabotage of the national infrastructure.

Investigations have resulted in 130 arrests and 40 individuals were convicted.

During 2012/13, 104 persons were arrested and 49 convicted for poaching abalone and rhino.

The DPCI arrested 28 people associated with human trafficking; 56 arrests were made and 25 convictions secured for crime including foreign military assistance, high treason and terrorism, contravention of the National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002), possession of firearms and ammunition, dealing in and possession of radioactive materials, and Protection of the Constitutional Democracy Against Terrorist Related Activities.

In January 2014, South Africa's first police academy was officially opened in Paarl, Western Cape, with the first intake of 120 learners for 2014 who commenced with their studies towards a Bachelor of Policing degree. The government has partnered with the University of South Africa (Unisa) in a ground-breaking initiative aimed at the reskilling and professionalising the South African Police Service (SAPS).

The SAPS Paarl Academy aims to produce a new breed of police professionals equipped with the right theoretical and practical training to enable them to serve the country and its citizens diligently, efficiently and effectively.

Criminal records and forensic sciences

The function of the Criminal Record Centre is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

The Forensic Services Division has a new turnaround strategy, which focuses on the:

- increased capacity to enable the appointment of forensic analysts
- crime scene examiners
- development and enhancement of skills and competencies in the core business of the division
- optimal use of resources and procurement of physical and technological resources, including optimised business processes.

In 2013, the division had a staff complement of 7 450.

In their goal of bringing forensic services closer to communities, forensic services have further decentralised the forensic biology capacity to the Eastern Cape- and KwaZulu-Natal-based forensic science laboratories.

To modernise the business systems, the SAPS is deploying advanced technology in key areas to ensure improved turnaround times.

In July 2012, a state-of-the-art laboratory opened in Plattekloof as part of this improvement and capacity drive.

The modern design and technologies deployed are contributing to the improved turnaround times of cases, particularly those handled in the Western Cape laboratory.

In 2012/13, 2 087 574 fingerprint searches were performed to identify individuals involved in crime, and to determine whether an individual has a criminal record.

Of these, 1 215 069 (58%) were criminal searches of which 658 030 (54,16%) resulted in previous convictions being identified and verified, and 872 505 (42%) were non-criminal searches such as applications for firearm licenses, professional driver's permits and pre-employment.

The Criminal Record and Crime Scene Management (CR and CSM) arm expanded its front-line service delivery capacity to make it more accessible to local investigating officers, and to improve response times in attending to crime scenes.

To this extent one additional CR and CSM laboratory at Mitchell's Plain in the Western Cape and an additional eight Local Criminal Law Record Centre service points were established.

In 2012/13, Forensic science laboratories received 382 737 case exhibits/entries for forensic analysis.

A Drug Analysis laboratory, focusing on the analysis of methamphetamine cases, was set up in Belhar in the Western Cape.

Rapid analysis using Raman- and Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy was employed in Methamphetamine cases in the Western Cape.

Crime intelligence

This division is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, coordinating and analysing information gathering.

It also provides technical intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS.

Through its various national and provincial components, Crime Intelligence has established coverage throughout the country, extending to station level.

Cooperation with foreign law-enforcement agencies uses platforms such as Interpol and the South African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation, extending the range of crime intelligence beyond the national borders.

Network operations refer to planned and purposeful processes of obtaining, assembling and organising information through exploitation of all types of source on a target (organisation, group or individual) for further intelligence processing and/or use as evidence.

Crime Intelligence conducted 37 188 network operations in 2012/13, which led to the arrest of 10 607 individuals and the recovery of goods valued at R633 885 198.

Protection and security services and Presidential Protection Services

VIP protection services delivered by Protection and Security Services and Presidential Protection Services provide protection for the President, the Deputy President, former presidents, former deputy presidents, heads of State, their spouses and other identified VIPs while in transit.

In 2012/13, VIP Protection Services provided protection to 218 presidential, national and provincial dignitaries and to 232 foreign dignitaries, including heads of State, visiting South Africa.

Protection was also provided during 177 presidential visits outside the borders of South Africa and at 294 national and provincial major/special events, including the Diaspora Forum, African Cup of Nations and the Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa Summit.

Static Protection at the Protection and Security Services protected 40 installations/government buildings and 97 identified VIP residences.

To manage security for all national key points by means of the National Key Points Act of 1980, directive and regulations, 175 out of 182 national key points were evaluated.

In addition, 127 out of 248 strategic installations were audited in terms of the Minimum Physical Security Standard guidelines at national and provincial government departments to manage security for all authorities in government, parastatals, national key points and other government installations by means of a relevant regulatory framework.

Department of Defence and Military Veterans

The primary role of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is to defend South Africa against external military aggression.

In this regard deployment in an internal policing capacity is limited to exceptional circumstances and subject to parliamentary approval and safeguards.

Defence objectives as outlined by the Department's Strategic Plan include the defence mandate as per section 200 (2) of the Constitution, that of protecting South Africa, its sovereignty, its territorial integrity, its interests and its people in accordance with the Constitution and principles of international law.

The SANDF's main objectives are:

- the defence and protection of South Africa, its people and important national interests
- the safeguarding of South Africa and its people through aspects such as border safeguarding, supporting the SAPS and fulfilling South Africa's treaty obligations
- the defence contribution to South Africa's international agenda and the promotion of regional and continental peace and stability
- supporting civil authority in times of crisis, need or turmoil, and the defence contribution to South Africa's developmental priorities
- the civil control over defence and the accountable use of defence resources.

The SANDF has a defensive orientation and a non-threatening posture in accordance with the *White Paper on National Defence of the Republic of South Africa*.

Legislation and policies

The Department of Defence derives its mandate primarily from Section 200(2) of the Constitution.

- The mandate is given substance by the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), as amended; the General Regulations; the *White Paper on Defence (1996)*, the *Defence Review (1998)* and delegated legislation.
- The National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC) was established by the National Conventional Arms Control Act of 2002 to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.
- The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect in February 2001. The Minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans' Affairs from nominations received from recognised military veterans' organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.
- The Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act 18 of 2011), enjoins the Department of Military Veterans as part of its legislative mandate, restores the dignity and memorialises those who sacrificed their lives for the benefit of democracy and freedom in South Africa.

Defence strategy

The landward defence function has the mandate to protect South Africa and its territory by, among other things, providing an infantry capability for external deployment and a reaction force for internal safety and security, including border safeguarding.

It is also charged with providing signal capability for external deployment and internal signal support, and exercising a composite signal capability per year.

The SANDF's core mandate is the protection of the country, its territorial integrity and its people.

The numerous illegal immigrants who succeed in crossing South Africa's borders are testament to the enormity of this task.

Without the provision of adequate resources the SANDF is finding it challenging to deal decisively with the problem of suspected poachers from neighbouring countries such as Mozambique entering South Africa and its National Parks illegally.

Military strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence* (1996), the *Defence Review* (1998) and the National Security Strategy.

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the UN Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself.

This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity.

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the Peacetime Strategy for Force Preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational force preparation as well as force employment during times of conflict.

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives, namely:

- providing mission-essential training
- establishing a mission-trained force
- selective engagement where possible
- strategic positioning.

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:

- command and control, communications, computers, information, intelligence, infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities
- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- effective and appropriate support capabilities.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Air Force (SAAF), South African Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements.

Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Some examples of group system/formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the Air Command
- SAN – fleet command
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A group system or formation's specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

Training forms a key part of bolstering South Africa's defence capabilities, as the country continues to carry out its commitment to building peace and security on the continent.

Equipping the SANDF is a priority for maintaining the country's own security and for helping fellow African countries.

To this end, South Africa was expected to develop capable leaders within its defence ranks, leaders with a high level of discipline and sense of duty.

The defence force is actively recruiting young people through the Military Skills Development System and University Reserve Training Programme.

Budget and funding

The defence budget for the 2013/14 financial year amounted to R40,243 billion, or 1,1% of gross domestic product and 3,8% of total government expenditure.

The SANDF continues to give attention to government's commitment to improve the lives of military veterans.

An amount of R300 million was set aside for socio-economic benefits for 2013/14, in creating the systems required to effectively roll out the socio-economic benefits for veterans.

As part of Cabinet-approved budget reductions of R485 million in expenditure on contractors across five programmes was reduced: Force Employment, Landward Defence, Air Defence, Military Health Support and General Support.

Funds were reprioritised from contractors in the same programmes towards the financing of peacekeeping commitments in the Central African Republic, on which R200 million was spent in 2013/14, and R215 million in 2014/15.

The reduced spending on contractors was absorbed by the department using its own capacity to implement repair and maintenance projects rather than using contractors through the Department of Public Works.

Over the next three years, the department aims to refurbish 66 military bases, units and office complexes.

Over the medium term, R355 million has been allocated for infrastructure.

The department also continued with 29 refurbishment projects, for which R2,5 million was allocated over the medium term.

In August 2013, leaders from South Africa's Institute for Security Studies, Business Against Crime South Africa, AgriSA and the South African Banking Risk Information Centre pledged their support to the country's police service in the fight against crime.

To contribute to creating a police service that is professional, accountable, transparent and responsive, the meeting also shared and discussed the *Green Paper on Policing*.

Rebuilding the runway at Waterkloof Air Force Base was the department's only mega project.

It was completed in 2012/13 at an estimated cost of R1,1 billion.

The department continued with 28 refurbishment projects, including 2 Military Hospital in Cape Town, 4 SA Infantry Battalion in Middelburg, 6 SA Infantry Battalion in Grahamstown, 7 SA Infantry Battalion in Phalaborwa, 8 SA Infantry Battalion in Upington, 10 SA Infantry Battalion in Mafikeng, 21 SA Infantry Battalion in Doornkop, Air Defence Artillery School in Kimberley, the SA Army Combat Centre in Lohatla, the SA Navy Training Unit in Saldanha and the School of Engineers in Kroonstad.

Over the medium term, the programme was extended to include 57 small projects, including dealing with flood damage at Air Force Base Hoedspruit.

The department also funds 46 capital works building projects, which include the upgrade and construction of health and training facilities, security in infrastructure, and living and office accommodation.

Also included are improvements to accommodate members with disabilities.

Functions

Peace support operations

South Africa has been active in the formation of the SADC Brigade as part of the overall African Standby Force whose mandate is to provide the African Union (AU) with a rapid reaction capability consisting of five regionally based brigades.

The manner in which South Africa's has undertaken peace-keeping missions in the past is in line with the country's defence policy.

In Burundi and the Democratic Republic of Congo, South Africa generally followed a negotiated strategy in which it has functioned as a mediator, followed by a military commitment during the implementation phase.

In this case, the SANDF was used to broker peace agreements on extremely volatile circumstances.

Over the next three years the spending focus will be on conducting foreign peace missions, border safeguarding operations, other contingency-based deployments and anti-piracy operations, mainly reflected in the Regional Security and Support to the People subprogrammes.

Expenditure in the Support to the People subprogramme is expected to grow significantly across the seven-year period.

The projected increase in expenditure in the Regional Security subprogramme over the medium term is owing to the allocation

of an additional R80 million in 2013/14 and R90 million in 2014/15 for increased peace support operations in the CAR, assistance to the Mozambican defence force in the fight against piracy in the Mozambique Channel, and for increased deployments in foreign countries.

Border safeguarding

The spending focus over the next three years will be on border safeguarding and anti-piracy measures, which accounts for the increased expenditure of the Landward Defence, Maritime Defence and Force Employment programmes.

Effective border management is part of the government's crime-prevention strategy, which deals with cross-border crimes and poaching.

The SANDF works closely with the SAPS and other government departments on this.

As part of the SANDF troop deployment, operations were conducted to combat cross-border crime, stock theft and illegal grazing and rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park.

By 2013/14, 14 SANDF companies were deployed on the South African borders.

Organisational structure

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Executive Authority (the Minister) remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

In October 2013, the European aircraft manufacturer Airbus delivered its first A400M military transport plane to France. South African company, Aerosud, manufactured the cockpit lining, cabin lining and the wing-tip. Cobham South Africa in Westlake, Cape Town, supplied the satellite communications antennae and underlying systems for the A400M aircraft. Denel was responsible for two A400M work packages involving the design, engineering and fabrication of the wing-to-fuselage fairing and the fuselage top-shells.

The wing-to-fuselage fairing was the largest single aerostructure component ever produced in South Africa and provided an aerodynamic shroud over sensitive equipment located in the centre wing of the A400M. The A400M is an all-new military airlifter designed to meet the needs of the world's armed forces in the 21st century.

Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Defence Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

As head of the department, the Secretary for Defence is responsible for advising the Minister regarding defence policy by:

- Enhancing civil control through briefings to the parliamentary committees having oversight over the department and the Minister over the department.
- Providing the Chief of the Defence Force with comprehensive instructions.
- Monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister to the Chief of the Defence Force.
- Disciplining of, administrative control over and managing employees, including their effective use and training.

Chief of the SANDF

The Chief of the SANDF is appointed by the President of South Africa.

These duties include:

- Advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters.
- Complying with directions issued by the Minister.
- Formulating and issuing policies and doctrines.
- Exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions.
- Directing, managing and administrating.
- Executing approved programmes of the defence budget.
- Employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation.
- Training the armed forces.
- Maintaining defence capabilities.
- Planning contingencies.
- Managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Various divisions within the SANDF have specific responsibilities and capabilities including:

- The Joint Operations Division, which provides and employs defence capabilities, including an operational capability to conduct all operations, as well as joint, interdepartmental and multinational military exercises.
- The SA Army provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities.
- The SAAF provides prepared and supported air defence capabilities.
- The SAN provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities.
- The SAMHS provides prepared and supported health capabilities and services.
- The Defence Intelligence Division provides a

defence intelligence and counter-intelligence capability.
- Joint Logistic Services, a subprogramme of the General Support Programme, provides logistic services.
- The Command and Management Information Systems Division is a subprogramme of the General Support Programme and provides command and management information and related services.
- The Military Police Division is a subprogramme of General Support that provides military policing capabilities and services.
- The Military Skills Development System will, through professional education and training, result in all young officers being in possession of a bachelor's degree by the time they are promoted to the rank and level of major by 2020. Joint Senior Command and Staff Programme graduates will attain a postgraduate diploma or honours degree that paves the way for Executive National Security Programme graduates to obtain master's degrees. These degrees will be awarded through institutions of higher education accredited by the Council of Higher Education.
- The National Youth Service (NYS) is intended to play a key role in dealing with the consequences of youth unemployment and to the national goal of poverty alleviation. The service does not offer training for military engagement, but will draw on the potential of military training to promote discipline, self-esteem, confidence and a sense of belonging to the national community.

Defence Reserve Force

In terms of the South African Defence Strategy 2010 to 2030 and the SANDF Military Strategy 2007, the role of the reserve forces is to be in a state of predetermined readiness and provide the following capabilities:
- Augmenting the regular forces as key elements within the core force.
- Providing the bulk of the growth force and contributing to the ongoing operations conducted by the SANDF.
- Supplementing peace-support operations.
- Providing certain specialist skills.

National Youth Service

The NYS is a strategic priority of the department. The SANDF recruits young people into the various arms of the SANDF and in doing so is teaching them discipline, fitness and honour and fostering patriotism.

In November 2013, South Africa and Namibia signed a Memorandum of Cooperation that will see the NYS playing a much stronger role in youth development in the two countries.

In South Africa, approximately 138 000 young South Africans are enrolled in the NYS.

Since 2011, almost six million youths have received some form of assistance from State entities, including loans and vouchers for youth entrepreneurs, bursaries and scholarships for young learners, career guidance, vocational training and skills development.

Through the MoC young Namibians and South Africans would work together to fight poverty, inequality and underdevelopment.

The National Youth Development Agency and Namibia's NYS immediately implemented the Youth Service Exchange Programme, where Namibian and South African youth will engage in community development work from February 2014 to February 2015.

Maritime safety and security

The substantial increase in acts of piracy along Africa's coastline threatens the peace, security and stability of the continent.

Although the piracy hot-spots are off the east and west coasts of Africa, for instance the Gulf of Aden and the Gulf of Guinea, pirates have extended their activities to over 1 100 km offshore and have moved into Seychelles and Tanzanian waters, even reaching the Indian coast.

Somali pirates have operated as far south as the Mozambique Channel and as far as 72° east towards the Maldives.

As a direct consequence of piracy along the east coast of Africa, a growing number of shipping companies have had to route their ships via the Cape Sea Route instead of using the Suez Canal.

Because of these dynamics together with requests from foreign governments and multilateral organisations, the SA Navy has been compelled to provide a response to such security threats. It is therefore critical that the SANDF play a key role in helping to combat piracy, especially because there have been incidents along the SADC coastline recently.

South Africa has an exclusive economic zone of 1 553 000 km^2 of which the areas around the Marion and Prince Edward Islands comprise 474 400 km^2. The Atlantic Ocean borders the west coast, the Indian Ocean borders the east and south coast and the southern ocean surrounds the Marion and Prince Edward Islands. South Africa has tabled its claim to the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea for the extension of the continental shelf. This means that South Africa will have to exercise control and enforce state authority over 4 340 000 km^2 of maritime territory.

Other defence commitments

The department's other commitments include:

- achieving a reasonable level of military diplomacy by:
  - placing and managing defence attachés
  - establishing and maintaining bilateral and multilateral agreements
  - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, the AU and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meeting the international obligations of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- providing healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

As a member of the AU, South Africa rejects any attempt to seize power by force, and therefore supports sanctions and other measures against the perpetrators of any unconstitutional change of government and their total isolation.

In March 2013, 13 South African soldiers were killed during clashes with the rebel alliance known as Seleka in the CAR.

Military veterans

The budget of the Department of Military Veterans was increased by R1,3 billion to pay benefits to military veterans.

Government budgeted R300 million for 504 houses, access to free medical service and education for military veterans and their dependants in 2013.

In August 2013, two military veterans who fought in World War II were given keys to fully furnished houses, making them the first beneficiaries of a national housing programme for military veterans across the country.

The programme's target was 38 houses per province and an additional 200 in the Eastern Cape as part of government's recognition of the efforts of military veterans who fought to protect and preserve the country.

The Department of Military Veterans is also rolling out a programme that will give veterans free access to public transport, free healthcare and counselling, which will also be extend to family members.

From March 2013, the Department of Military Veterans undertook a process of updating the national veterans' register.

The department also resumed verifying military veterans who were not part of the integration process during the formation of the SANDF in 1994.

The registration and focused mostly on the former non-statutory forces (NSF) members. These comprise members of the Azanian National Liberation Army Military Veterans Association, Umkhonto we Sizwe Military Veterans Association and the Azanian People's Liberation Army Military Veterans Association.

By March 2013, the department had a database of about 56 000 people and was also in the process of cleaning up that data in collaboration with Statistics South Africa.

From March 2013, the Department of Military Veterans embarked on a programme of issuing healthcare cards to military veterans so that they could have easy and free access to the country's military hospitals. Healthcare cards were issued to military veterans that had updated their files with the Department of Military Veterans.

Cards were issued in phases starting with Gauteng and the Eastern Cape followed by KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Western Cape, North West, Free State, Mpumalanga and North Cape.

Issuing healthcare cards was a significant step in the direction of ensuring that the department roll out the social benefits stipulated in the Military Veterans Act of 2011.

The Act enjoins the department to ensure that military veterans, especially those from the NSF, are treated with dignity, honoured, memorialised and empowered in honour of the many sacrifices they made in bringing about freedom and democracy in South Africa as well as enhancing social cohesion and nation building.

In September 2013, the Department of Military Veterans established an umbrella body to unite all military veterans associations in response to section 7 of the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which directs the department to establish a body for all military veterans nationally to include all NSF members.

Role players

National Conventional Arms Control Committee

The NCACC is a committee of ministers, of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade.

It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, whereafter the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision.

An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC.

The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

Defence Force Service Commission

The Defence Force Service Commission was established in terms of the Defence Amendment Act of 2010.

Its functions include making recommendations to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans concerning improvements to salaries and service benefits of members of the SANDF.

South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association (AMD)

The AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship.

The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of South Africa's Defence Industry (Sadi), and is mandated by its members to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry.

It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services.

AMD member companies supply products and services to the Department of Defence, government organisations and other contractors, locally and internationally, in the defence and security marketplace.

As Sadi is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner.

The AMD's involvement in international marketing includes:

- co-hosting Africa Aerospace and Defence
- co-publishing the *Sadi Directory*
- negotiating the structuring of export incentives and the sponsorship of international trade show pavilions.

Within an emerging Defence Industry Support Framework, the Department of Defence, in collaboration with the Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor) and the AMD, will continue providing effective support to enable Sadi to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context.

The services range from information sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by Sadi in demonstrations for export purposes.

The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting the government in achieving its AU and New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

Castle Control Board

According to its Annual Performance Plan, the mission of the Castle Control Board is to be a service-oriented public entity, striving to optimise its tourism potential and accessibility to the public and to preserve and protect its cultural and military heritage. Among its values are the restoration and preservation of the dignity of the military in society, and national unity.

The main objectives of the board are to preserve and protect the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope, to optimise its tourism potential and public access to it. The board needs to practise sound corporate governance characterised by such things as accountability and responsibility as espoused by the *King III Report* on corporate governance.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

According to its Corporate Plan 2012/13 – 2014/15 Armscor intends being the premier technology and acquisition agency for the South African Government and governments of the SADC region. It aims to meet the defence materiel, defence technology, research, development, analysis, tests and evaluation requirements of the department or any other organ of state on request or any sovereign state on agreement, effectively, efficiently and economically.

Armscor may, with the approval of the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, exploit such commercial opportunities as may arise out of its duty to acquire defence materiel or to manage technology projects. It may also procure commercial materiel on behalf of any organ of state at the request of the organ of State in question.

In September 2013, the South African National Defence Force hosted the Eighth South African Joint Air Defence Symposium 2013.

The aim of the symposium was to highlight key areas of military and industrial participation, both nationally and within the Southern African Development Community to achieve indigenous joint air defence.

The theme of the symposium was, "Integrated Joint Air Defence within the Southern African Development Community."

Denel Group of South Africa

Government wants Denel to grow into a preferred global supplier in the defence industry.

To achieve this the state-owned company would have to aggressively invest in research and development to help secure long-term sustainability.

In support of the collaborative initiatives between the departments of public enterprises and defence the SANDF is expected to become the platform for showcasing Denel's capabilities.

Improvements in Denel's performance in 2013/14 included:

- a 10% growth in revenue, driven by a 34% increase in exports
- a 73% improvement in net profit of R71 million marking a third consecutive year of positive financial performance
- a 35% reduction in losses in Denel Aerostructures
- a 4% improvement in debt-to-equity ratio
- improvements in the terms of the Denel Aerostructures' Airbus A400M contract
- the introduction of new capabilities in Denel through the joint venture between Denel Dynamics and Tawazun Holdings
- Denel Land Systems' acquisition of a majority stake in Light Mobility Technologies to the introduction of armoured vehicles
- the accreditation of Denel Aviation as a maintenance, repair and overhaul centre for Russian Helicopters.

Project Horseshoe – the supply of combat vehicles – is one project that will benefit the local arms manufacturing industry.

Increased obligations particularly in foreign operations means the expansion of the SA Army's needs, including acquiring new armoured vehicles.

Denel will be responsible for the integration of various systems for the vehicle, including several smaller sub-contractors both locally and internationally.

It will also be manufacturing the weapon systems and the cannon barrel.

In September 2013, Armscor awarded a multibillion rand contract to Denel to manufacture over 200 armoured vehicles for the SANDF over a 10-year period.

The full-scale manufacture of the Badger New Generation Infantry Combat System was expected to create direct and indirect jobs.

The infantry combat vehicle provides the SANDF with unrivalled firepower, mobility and maximum armoured protection for the soldiers it transports.

Department of State Security

The mandate of the State Security Agency (SSA) is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people.

This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- The Domestic Branch (formerly the National Intelligence Agency).
- The Foreign Branch (formerly the South African Secret Service).
- The Intelligence Academy (formerly the South African National Academy of Intelligence).
- National Communications, which includes the former National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

Legislation and policies

The SSA is governed by the following legislation and policies:

- Constitution of South Africa, 1996
- Proclamation: *Government Gazette 32566*
- Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002)
- *Ministerial Notices No 32576*
- *Government Gazette No 25592:* Intelligence Services Regulations 2003
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994)
- Intelligence Services Oversight Act, 1994 (Act 40 of 1994)
- Intelligence Services Act, 2005 (Act 65 of 2005)
- *White Paper on Intelligence* (1994)
- Protection of State Information Bill, November 2011
- Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001)
- Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act, 1998 (Act 15 of 1998)
- Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002)
- SAPS Act, 1995
- Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001)
- Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Infor-mation Act, 2002 (RICA) (Act 70 of 2002
- Auditor-General Act, 1995 (Act 12 of 1995).

Functions

Domestic branch

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defined the primary functions of the Domestic Branch as gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department and without delay to transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and for this purpose to conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information regarding counter-intelligence to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

In view of these functions, the Domestic Branch's responsibilities include:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) domestic security situation to identify and report to the policy maker or executive departments any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- performing a reactive monitoring role in tracking events when a threat/crime has been identified or a crisis has already arisen, without duplicating the role of the other executive departments; the purpose of this monitoring role is mainly to enhance investigation and prosecution by providing tactical information and intelligence to enforcement and prosecution institutions and to decide the extent and the implications of threats or potential threats to national security and safety
- providing an integrated multi-analytical strategic projective assessment of patterns, trends and of security relevant issues, to provide strategic early warning and to enhance the Domestic Branch's support and involvement in policy formulation.

Foreign Branch

The Foreign Branch is a national intelligence structure.

The National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994, defines the functions of the Foreign Branch as:

- gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people and to supply intelligence relating to any such threat to the NICOC
- instituting counter-intelligence measures within the service and, in consultation with the service, counter-intelligence measures outside South Africa
- gathering departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department, and without delay to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to the NICOC.

In view of these functions, the Foreign Branch is responsible for:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) foreign environment to identify and report to the policy maker any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- providing the Executive with developments in the foreign environment that are likely to have an effect on the image, territorial integrity as well as the security of South Africa and its citizens
- advising on the opportunities that exist in the external environment that should be exploited to enhance South Africa's national interest, be it in the political, economic, social or international relations sphere
- advising on security threats against personnel, interests, strategic installations and assets of South Africa abroad
- conducting security screening investigations into its personnel as well as those of other departments identified for posting abroad.

Intelligence Academy

The Intelligence Academy under the SSA has a mandate to provide quality intelligence training to members of the Intelligence Community.

National Communications

The National Communications Branch of the SSA comprises Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), the National Communications Centre and the Office for Interception Centre (OIC). Comsec and the OIC are externally focused as they render services to the organs of State.

Comsec

Comsec was established in 2002 as a private company – Civilian Intelligence Community – with the primary purpose of ensuring that critical electronic communications of the state are secure and protected. Through presidential proclamation in 2009, Comsec was pronounced a government component, effectively transferring its ICT functions to the SSA. Its functions include:

- protecting and securing electronic communications of national importance against security threats
- conducting periodic analysis of the state of ICT security and advising the Minister of such analysis
- identifying and providing security to the critical electronic communications infrastructure of organs of state.

Comsec offers the following ICT security services:

- managed security services
- secure communications
- risk management and assurance services

In June 2013, the South African Centre for Information Security reported that cybercrime has become a national crisis. Government published a cybercrime policy in August 2013. A National Cybersecurity Committee would oversee the implementation of the policy, while the Department of State Security would accelerate an "awareness" drive. The aim was to create widespread awareness of cybercrime, to ensure citizens and public servants were enabled to respond to threats quickly and report the crime, and to enable the government and private sector to assess the scale of the attacks and formulate appropriate prevention plans. A Cybersecurity Hub was established within the Department of Communications to pool public- and private-sector threat information and process and disseminate information to relevant stakeholders in the industry and civil society.

Office for Interception Centre

The OIC was established in terms of the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002.)

The OIC provides a centralised interception service to law enforcement agencies involved in combating threats to national security.

Interception was previously conducted independently by the Law Enforcement Agency, which may have resulted in duplication of work and resources.

The formation of the OIC centralises interception activities and paves the way for better management of interception in an effort to increase efficiency, minimise duplication of resources and costs, and regulate and control the interception environment.

Vetting

Part of the SSA's objective is to be able to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedy manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable government and key state entities to do their work.

Crime doesn't pay. Reporting it does.
AMBULANCE
CXK268 GP
METROPOLITAN POLICE
JOHANNESBURG
TRAFFIC

Rural Development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) is committed to ensuring that South Africans in rural areas enjoy the same benefits as those in urban areas regarding the human rights and basic dignity guaranteed by the Constitution.

The DRDLR deals with land reform; access to land use; management and transformation of land relations; and all other matters related to the hopes and lifestyles of those who live on the land and who depend on the land for their livelihoods.

The department's key priorities are to:

- roll-out the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) to all rural municipalities
- improve productivity in land reform projects through effective implementation of the Recapitalisation and Development Programme
- expedite the finalisation of land claims
- improve corporate governance and ensure enhanced service delivery
- implement proper change management and innovation strategies
- enhance the efficiency of information management systems.

The CRDP is aimed specifically at reducing poverty by creating vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities.

To achieve this vision, the department defined its role and mission as being that of facilitating integrated development and social cohesion through partnerships with all sectors of society.

One of the department's most important strategic objectives is agrarian transformation.

The agrarian transformation strategy is aimed at:

- social mobilisation to enable rural communities to take initiative
- sustainable settlements with access to basic services and economic opportunity,;the meeting of basic human needs; and infrastructure development
- the establishment of cooperatives and enterprises for economic activities; wealth creation; and productive use of assets
- non-farming activities for strengthening rural livelihoods
- leadership training, social facilitation and familiarity with CRDP objectives; and socio-economic independence
- skills development and employment creation for youth, women and people living with disabilities

- the democratisation of rural development, and participation in and ownership of all processes, projects and programmes by rural communities
- coordination, alignment and cooperative governance by local municipalities, traditional councils, provincial government and rural communities
- participation of non-governmental organisations including faith-based organisations, community-based organisations and other organs of civil society
- social cohesion and access to human and social capital.

Legislation and policies

The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 extends the deadline for land claims to June 2019.

The amendment also criminalises false and fraudulent claims that have been deemed a waste of taxpayers' money, where people submit land claims, knowing that they do not have a valid historic claim to a piece of land.

The Act reopens the window for persons or communities dispossessed of their land due to past discriminatory laws and policies to lodge claims.

Extending the deadline for the lodging claims was in line with the proposals of the National Development Plan (NDP), the CRDP and other growth strategies intended to promote national reconciliation and social cohesion.

Cabinet also approved the submission of the report on the Audit of Registered State Land and a desktop analysis of private land ownership in South Africa for submission to Parliament.

The audit aims to determine the quantity of state-owned land and what it was used for.

The land audit will be used to enhance the integrity of the land register, which will serve as the basis for enhanced land planning and administration, including other functions relating to property portfolio management and improved delivery of services.

About 1,15 million land parcels have been surveyed. Fourteen per cent of land in South Africa is state owned, 79% is privately owned and 7% has not been registered.

About four million ha of unregistered land in the former Transkei are occupied by citizens and will be transferred either by the State or private owners once the verification process has been concluded.

In August 2013, President Jacob Zuma signed into law the Spatial and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), which seeks to bridge the racial divide in spatial terms and transform the settlement patterns that put a considerable burden on public resources.

The Act will also ensure that the restructuring of South African cities, towns and settlements is in line with the priorities and principles of the democratic government.

The objectives of the Act are to:

- provide for a uniform, effective and comprehensive system of spatial planning and land-use management
- ensure that the system of spatial planning and land-use management promotes social and economic inclusion
- provide for development principles, norms and standards
- provide for the sustainable and efficient use of land
- provide for the cooperative government and intergovernmental relations among the national, provincial and local spheres of government
- redress the imbalances of the past and ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land-use management.

President Zuma also assented to the Cooperatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013).

This is an amendment to the Cooperatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005), which came into effect on 2 May 2007.

This Act provides for the establishment, functions and powers of the Cooperatives Development Agency. Among other things, the amendment provides for associate membership of cooperatives, the annual submission of information to the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission (CIPC), categories of primary cooperative and the national apex cooperatives.

Besides providing for the establishment, composition and functions of the Cooperative Tribunal, the Act provides for a cooperative to apply for a declaratory order in respect of the liquidation process, and for the registrar of the tribunal to order the winding-up of a cooperative.

In 1995, the United Nations resolved to celebrate International Day of Cooperatives to recognise the role that cooperatives play in social and economic development and in creating a conducive environment for the development of this form of business. International Day of Cooperatives was celebrated in South Africa in July 2013.

The legislation amends the accounting practices by providing for the audit and independent review of cooperatives, the payment of fees by the cooperative for the amalgamation, division and conservation, including the transfer of cooperatives.

The Cooperatives Amendment Act of 2013 states that the provincial departments of economic development, under which cooperatives in South Africa fall, will be responsible for coordinating and reporting all cooperative activities in the provinces involving other departments and stakeholders, while the municipalities will be responsible for coordinating activities within their area of jurisdiction.

Budget and funding

In the 2013/14 financial year, the department earmarked R240 million to revitalise irrigation schemes on 5 000 ha of land in Valhaarts, Taung; and five schemes in uMkhanyakude, Uthungulu, Mzinyathi and Zululand districts in KwaZulu-Natal; and three schemes in the Eastern Cape including the Keiskama and Ncora irrigation schemes to increase food production in the country.

The department allocated R220 million to improve animal and veld management across the country.

Some R70 million was budgeted for roads and bridges across the country, including bridges in Pniel, and in Wuperthal, Western Cape, as well as a bridge and road in Diyatalawa, Free State.

In the agricultural value-chain, budgets were made available for R60 million in poultry, R32 million in dairy, R100 million in the fruit and vegetable industry, and R300 million in grains.

To recapitalise 552 farms and acquiring 170 000 hectares, R2,7 billion was set aside.

The Commission received about R3 billion, in settling 438 claims across the country.

For the formulation of spatial plans in municipalities, which will focus on rural and poor municipalities, and drafting the National Spatial Framework, which is a requirement of the NDP, R68 million was budgeted.

A budget of R25,2 million was allocated to formulating the Integrated Information Systems.

An amount of R448 million was budgeted in the development of the e-Cadastre system, which will enable a holistic view of land ownership, and to answer the question of who owns South Africa.

Role players

National Reference Group

The National Reference Group is an inclusive structure that represents varied interest groups ranging from beneficiaries, organised agriculture and civil society to academics and experts on land and agrarian issues. National reference groups constitute five working groups in respect of policy proposals made by the department in the Green Paper, namely the Land Management Commission; Land Rights Management Board and committees; Office of the Land Valuer-General; Three-Tier Tenure System; and Legislative Amendments and communal tenure.

Geospatial and cadastral services

The national geospatial information component is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

The Braille atlas for the visually impaired who can read Braille is a first in South Africa and is primarily intended to give visually impaired people access to geospatial information (maps).

This component will continue its map literacy and map awareness training for adults, and support to educators and learners to promote the use of geospatial information. Priority will be given to rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of geospatial information and a record of the land at a given time. National geospatial information acquires aerial imagery annually. The CRDP sites have been prioritised.cThe branch will also assist in creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans with existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The department has considered the adverse affect disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people and included in its strategy a disaster management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

During 2012/13, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform created nearly 35 000 jobs and further provided 17 279 people with various skills.

The enterprise development arm of the rural development branch generated 16 044 of these jobs, while infrastructure development created 5 838 jobs.

Cadastral surveys management

Cadastral surveying is the survey and demarcation of land for the purpose of defining parcels of land for registration in a land registry.

Cadastral surveying in South Africa is undertaken exclusively by or under the control of professional land surveyors.

South Africa not only allows the private ownership of property but also, in the case of land, actively encourages it. Initially all land derives from the State but, should the State wish to give or lend a piece of land to one or more of its citizens for that person to develop and to enjoy its use, cadastral surveying becomes necessary.

Cadastral surveying is used to define the land to be granted. Later, should the owner wish to sell off part of that land, the cadastral surveyor is again called in to partition the land to be sold. Furthermore, the services of the cadastral surveyor are required whenever a boundary beacon must be found or replaced.

Once the positions of the boundaries have been marked and recorded, the cadastral surveyor and the conveyancer work together to record ownership in a public register. This action ensures that the rights of the owner can be upheld against false claims and that all persons may know who owns what.

Deeds registration

There are 10 deeds registries in South Africa whose core responsibility is to:

- register real rights in land
- maintain a public land register
- provide registration information
- maintain an archive of registration records.

The deeds registries are in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Kimberley, Vryburg, Mthatha and King William's Town.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public for them to access information regarding:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- the purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

As far as the e-Cadastre Project is concerned, the enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records has commenced.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR)

In September 2013, Parliament's Ad Hoc Committee on Land Reform and Redistribution embarked on a nationwide public consultation programme as part of the reopening of the land reform and redistribution process. The week-long consultations formed part of the coordinated oversight activities by Parliament to reverse the legacy of the Native Land Act (1913). The consultations took place in Limpopo, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. During the visits, parliamentarians were joined by members of the provincial legislatures, the public, traditional leaders and other stakeholders to enquire about the systems put in place and to monitor processes for the reopening of the lodgement of land claims to enable the CRLR to implement a fair and transparent programme.

Several projects were visited to get input and feedback from those who benefited during the first phase of lodgement. The oversight assisted parliamentarians in relation to land restitution. At the end of the consultation process recommendations were made on the removal of blockages preventing the restitution of land. The recommendations were tabled before the National Assembly in September 2013. In September 2013, Cabinet approved the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Bill, which proposes the deadline for all land claims be extended to 2018.

Programmes and projects

Animal and Veld Management Programme (AVMP)

In September 2013, the Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform unveiled the AVMP.

It is aimed at providing relief for farmers in rural areas operating under challenging circumstances made worse by spatial congestion and environmental degradation owing to overgrazing.

The programme will also help with soil rehabilitation, spatial decongestion and regreening of the environment. It is part of government's intervention towards reversing the legacy of the 1913 Natives' Land Act, which led to the majority of black people being confined to 13% of the land, resulting in challenges of overcrowding and overgrazing in communal areas.

The department will identify farmers in communal areas who have showed potential for successful farming. Based on their track record, such farmers will be moved into some of the state-owned farms to enable them to expand their farming operations.

The AVMP is expected to reach the country's 24 poorest district municipality areas.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The CRDP is focused on enabling rural people to take control of their lives, with support from government. The programme aims to deal with rural poverty effectively through the optimal use and management of natural resources through an integrated broad-based agrarian transformation and the strategic investment in economic and social infrastructure that will benefit rural communities.

By January 2013, 2 656 CRDP-beneficiaries had been skilled and capacitated in technical enterprise development trade; 52 councils of stakeholders had been established as representative community forums; the CRDP had been rolled out to 157 rural wards, 143 698 poor households had been profiled to assess their needs; 692 km of fencing had been erected in the CRDP wards; and 96 km of roads had been upgraded.

In February 2012, President Zuma announced that government would pursue the “just and equitable” principle for compensation, as set out in the Constitution instead of the "willing buyer, willing seller" principle, which forces the State to pay more for land than the actual value.

The Best Female Entrepreneur Award is an annual competition which recognise, celebrates, honours and rewards the continuous contributions made by women in the fight against hunger, poverty and unemployment among rural communities.

In August 2013, the North West Department of Agriculture and Rural Development planted a variety of vegetables and fruit trees for 70 families in Marikana, Segwaelane, Wonderkop and at the local home-based care centre near Rustenburg.

This is aimed at encouraging backyard gardening in rural communities. Garden tools, rakes, spades, forks, watering cans, fertiliser and spray bottles were also handed over.

This project forms part of the department's One Family, One Food Garden Campaign, which aims to combat vitamin and mineral deficiency, which is the leading cause of malnutrition in many rural areas.

Rural Enterprise Infrastructure Development (REID)

REID aims to create an enabling institutional environment for vibrant and sustainable rural communities.

The Social Organisation and Mobilisation Unit is primarily responsible for the promotion of a participatory approach to rural development to ensure that rural communities are able to take full charge of their collective destinies.

The approach is predicated on social mobilisation of rural communities, so that there can be ownership of rural development projects and programmes.

The participatory approach is used to assess the needs of the rural areas through the profiling of households and communities.

The needs assessments are conducted through participatory rural appraisal methods, which also offers communities the opportunity to prioritise their needs.

The Technical Support, Skills Development and Nurturing Unit provides technical support to the institutions and structures established in rural communities, through skills development and capacity building. The unit determines skills levels of rural communities through household profiles, and develops training programmes aligned to interventions and economic opportunities. It is also responsible for the implementation of the job creation model, which is aimed at improving households' basic needs, as well as promoting economic livelihoods.

The job-creation model further entails the empowerment of rural communities through skills transfer, developing artisans and enabling communities to start their own enterprises.

The Rural Livelihoods and Food Security Unit forms strategic partnerships that are important to the improvement of rural livelihoods, by promoting both economic development and the development of rural enterprises.

These strategic partnerships also facilitate value added services such as agriprocessing and the establishment of village industries and enterprises.

The strategic partners involved are from the private sector, state-owned enterprises and international organisations.

The Institutional Building and Mentoring unit is responsible for facilitating, building and mentoring institutions in rural communities.

This function involves the identification of existing institutions and the assessment of needs, including building new institutions to ensure sustainable development.

The unit is responsible for the establishment and facilitation of community structures such as the Council of Stakeholders. It is also responsible for establishing and building the capacities of cooperatives.

Communal Property Association (CPA)

The CPA Act 28 of 1996 is aimed at enabling communities "to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed upon by members of a community in terms of a written constitution;,and to provide for matters connected therewith."

In November 2012, government held a two-day CPA workshop to discuss the Act and explore ways in which communal land located in rural areas could benefit those who live on it by unlocking the underlying mineral wealth. The workshop formed part of the department's ongoing consultation process with all its stakeholders to create a deeper understanding of one of government's key priority areas – rural development. The department used the platform to establish various national reference groups, with the first meeting held early in January 2013.

National Rural Youth Service Corps (Narysec)

During 2013, 12 881 rural youth enrolled for the skills training programme.

Narysec youths between the ages of 18 and 35 are recruited from the 3 000 rural wards, irrespective of gender and disability.

These youths are trained in various skills such as wastewater management, water purification, construction, electricity and agriculture so that they are marketable and can open their own businesses.

Government's aim for the youth is to enable them to develop their own rural areas once they are fully skilled.

After completion of the two-year training programme, they are redeployed in their communities.

The long-term strategic objectives of the programme are to:

- reduce youth unemployment in rural areas
- increase literacy and skills among rural youth
- increase the disposable income of youth in rural areas through employment and entrepreneurial opportunities
- reduce dependence on transfers from family members working in urban areas.

The youth benefited from agriculture programmes introduced by the department.

The Eastern Cape benefited from 2 603 enterprise development jobs, including 1 971 infrastructure jobs and an intake of 2 400 Narysec youths, while KwaZulu-Natal scooped a total of 5 047 jobs. The Free State had 1 613 rural development jobs, Gauteng 3 993, Limpopo 4 274, Mpumalanga 2 635, Northern Cape 2 275, North West 3 048 and the Western Cape 4 405.

Land Reform Programme

The principles which underpin the new approach to sustainable land reform are:

- deracialisation of the rural economy
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class
- strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security.

In the Eastern Cape, the Rural Development Agency, as established in terms of the Rural Development Strategy, was in place by June 2013. Through the Siyazondla programme 25 540 households have been supported in the stimulation of food security at household level in rural and peri-urban areas. Over 8 951 hectares of land were cultivated as part of the Government's robust intervention to revitalise agriculture in rural areas. This included both mass production for food security as well as commercialisation to boost primary production. On the revitalisation of irrigation schemes, Shiloh, Ncora, Kieskammahoek and Zanyokwe, significant improvements were also made towards becoming fully operational.

The year 2013 was the centenary of the Natives' Land Act of 1913 (Act No. 27 of 1913) promulgated on 19 June 1913, which is seen as providing the cornerstone of laws that followed, for a systematic process of land dispossession by the State.

By the end of January 2013, 77 979 claims had been settled which was 97% of the total claims, translating to 1,443 million ha and benefiting 13 968 female-headed households and 672 persons with a disability.

Strategic support was provided to 416 new emerging farmers through recapitalisation in addition to the existing 595 farms that were supported at a cost of R1,2 billion. Work on revitalising eight irrigation schemes, namely Ncora and Keiskamma Hoek in the Eastern Cape; Taung in North West; Vaalharts in the Northern Cape; Nkomazi in Mpumalanga; and Tugela Ferry, Nsuze and Bululwane in KwaZulu-Natal commenced.

The department also revived the Butterworth abattoir and tannery to assist local communal livestock farmers to become part of the red meat value chain.

A total of 823 300 ha had been acquired and redistributed since 2009. Of this, 7 000 ha were allocated to provide the core estate for the Cradock Bio-ethanol Project in the Eastern Cape. The project will be implemented in partnership with the departments of trade and industry, economic development, rural development and land reform, agriculture, forestry and fisheries, energy and the provincial departments of agriculture.

Smallholder support programmes are being reviewed and a smallholder plan is being developed. These plans are supported by some agro-processing programmes, including soya bean processing, canning, biofuels, furniture, and food processing industries, as well as small-scale maize milling in rural areas.

Other developments include the launch of the Zero Hunger Programme and the Aquaculture Programme. Zero Hunger creates opportunities for the smallholder sector to grow by opening up institutional markets for their benefit, such as the School Nutrition Programme, hospitals and clinics.

During July and August 2013, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, in partnership with the Gauteng Provincial Government, hosted the 1913 Natives' Land Act Exhibition at the Nasrec Expo Centre near Soweto.

As part of the implementation of the National Climate Change Response Policy, long-term adaptation scenarios are developed to determine which sectors may be climate sensitive and to develop response strategies.

Recapitalisation and development

During the past four years, another 7 000 jobs have been created during the department's implementation of the Recapitalisation and Development Programme, which saw 1 269 farms that had been lying fallow being converted into 100% productive farms.

The department's service-delivery programmes have created over 40 000 jobs.

Various rural development jobs have come about because of such initiatives as constructing bridges, schools, health facilities, roads and other infrastructure-related activities.

Infrastructure jobs were created during the first phase of rural development at identified rural development pilot sites and the CRDP sites in all nine provinces.

The introduction of the second phase of rural enterprises saw a huge jump in the number of jobs created in rural areas between 2009 and June 2012.

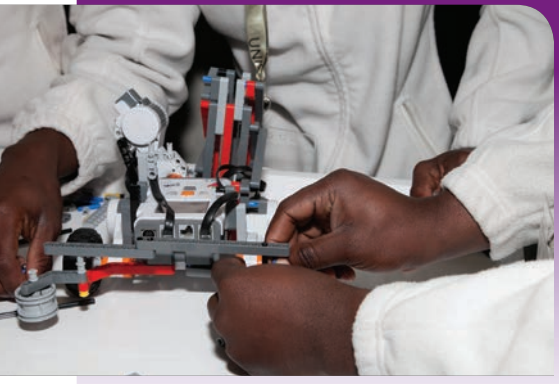
During the implementation of these infrastructure and enterprise projects several rural villagers, especially youths and women, benefited from the accompanying skills development.

This initiative culminated in 17 279 people gaining skills in various trades such brick-making, road paving, and the construction of houses and bridges.

Though the effect of the international economic downturn has depressed the property market, activities related to registering deeds are buoyant and continue to play a major role in the economy, as evidenced by the monetary value of transactions amounting to trillions of rand each year.

CASE IH
JX95

Science and Technology



The National Development Plan (NDP) identifies the important role of science, technology and innovation in achieving the country's longer-term vision.

The construction of the 64-dish MeerKat satellite dishes – a precursor of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) project – commenced in May 2013.

Government has injected R2 billion into the SKA project. The MeerKat is expected to be completed by 2016. In March 2013, South Africa officially launched the first of 64 antennas that will make up the MeerKAT radio telescope. The MeerKAT Karoo Array Processor Building, a cutting-edge data centre for the MeerKAT that has been built in an underground bunker at the Karoo observatory site, was officially opened at the same time.

The MeerKAT will be one of the precursors to the SKA telescope, and will later be incorporated into the mid-frequency component of SKA Phase 1 when that instrument is constructed. The SKA will be the world's largest radio telescope, located in Australia and South Africa but shared by astronomers around the globe.

Standing 19,5 m tall and weighing 42t, the new MeerKAT antenna towers above the antennas of the nearby KAT-7 instrument, an engineering prototype for the MeerKAT, which is now routinely used for scientific research.

The full MeerKAT array will consist of 64 identical receptors-antennas with receivers, digitisers and other electronics installed. Forty-eight of the antennas will be packed closely together in a 1 km diameter area, with rest located up to 4 km from the core.

Connected by 170 km of underground fibre-optic cable, the 64 receptors will operate as a single, highly sensitive astronomical instrument, controlled and monitored remotely from the MeerKAT control room in Cape Town.

As the government body responsible for the science and technology sector, the Department of Science and Technology (DST) is tasked with developing, coordinating and managing the National System of Innovation (NSI) that will bring about maximum human capital, sustainable economic growth and improved quality of life.

In this context the department is tasked with ensuring greater coordination and integration, as well as better management of all government-funded science and technology institutions, and to provide a holistic overview of public expenditure on science and technology.

The department funds basic research at universities and public entities, including science councils, so that they can train scientists, engineers and technologists and produce publications and patents.

Legislation

The DST is governed by the following legislation:

- Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008): Provides for the more effective use of intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development, through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (Nipmo), the Intellectual Property Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions.
- Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008): Intended to promote the development and exploitation in the public interest of discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements, and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency (TIA).
- South African National Space Agency (Sansa) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008): Establishes the Sansa to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities, and the creation of an environment conducive to the development of space technologies by industry.
- Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003): Establishes the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, and legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists-in-training.
- National Research Foundation (NRF) Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998): Establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology.
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997): Establishes the Naci to advise the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives.
- Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001): Establishes the Aisa to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists.
- Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008): Provides for the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development.
- The Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988): Refers to the activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one of the leading scientific and technological research, development and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes directed research and development for socio-economic growth in areas including the built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, and biological, chemical and laser technologies.
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007): Provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas.
- The Science and Technology Laws, Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014) seeks to, among other things, streamline the process for the nomination and appointment of members of the boards or councils of such entities as well as the filling of vacancies on the boards.
- The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to mandate the Council for Geoscience (CGS) to be the custodians of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors.
- Sanren, which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).

Policy mandate and strategies

The DST's major policy documents are the *White Paper on Science and Technology (1996)*, the 2002 National Development Research Strategy (NRDS), the *New Strategic Management Model for South Africa's Science and Technology System (2004)* – with its Policy on Governance Standards for Science, Engineering and Technology Institutions and Framework for the Development of a National Science and Technology Expenditure Plan – and the 2007 Ten-Year Innovation Plan (TYIP).

The DST is the custodial coordinator for the development of the NSI and influences this system through key strategies such as the NRDS and the TYIP. The latter, particularly, seeks to contribute to the transformation of the South African economy into a knowledge-based economy, in which the production and

dissemination of knowledge will lead to socio-economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

National Research and Development Strategy

The NRDS as the basis for the NSI and requires performance and responses in three key areas, enhanced innovation; providing science, engineering and technology human resources (HR) and transformation; and creating an effective government science and technology system.

A prime objective of the NSI was to enhance the rate and quality of technology transfer from the science, engineering and technology sector by providing quality HR, effective hard technology transfer mechanisms, and creating more effective and efficient users of technology in the business and government sectors.

The White Paper also set out the institutions to be established to promote the development of a well-functioning NSI. These were to be the national Ministry and DST, the National Advisory Council on Innovation, the NRF, the Innovation Fund, and national research facilities managed by government.

The NRDS is aimed at being a key enabler of economic growth alongside other strategies, such as the Human Resource Development Strategy, the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy and the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Ten-Year Innovation Plan

The TYIP is aimed at assisting to establish a knowledge-based economy for South Africa, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

The missions and platforms under the NRDS were expanded under the TYIP to include grand challenges in space science and technology, energy security, human and social dynamics in development, global change, and the bio-economy.

The responsibility for addressing the grand challenges is spread across many government departments.

The TYIP also set long-term goals based on the grand challenges it identified. They included:

- becoming one of the top three emerging economies in the global pharmaceutical industry, based on innovative use of South Africa's indigenous knowledge and rich biodiversity
- deploying satellites that provide a range of scientific, security and specialised services for all spheres of government, the public and the private sector.
- achieving a 25% share of the global hydrogen and fuel cell market with novel platinum group metal catalysts.
- becoming a world leader in climate science and responding effectively to the multiple challenges associated with global and climate change.
- meeting the 2014 millennium development goal to halve poverty.

The department has set indicators for each of these goals.

In July 2013, the Department of Science and Technology (DST) launched the South African version of the Scientific Electronic Library Online (SciELO-SA). It's a searchable full-text journal database that is completely open-access. The project is funded by the DST, maintained by the Academy of Science of South Africa, and endorsed by the Department of Higher Education and Training. South Africa joined SciELO in 2009.

National Nanotechnology Strategy

Nanoscience and nanotechnology are the study and application of extremely small things and can be used across all the other science fields, such as chemistry, biology, physics, materials science, and engineering.

Microscopy – the technical field of using microscopes to view samples and objects that cannot be seen with the unaided eye – was a boon to emerging research areas such as nanotechnology. This was aligned with the objectives of the National Nanotechnology Strategy. The growth of microscopy is essential to help government expand its research capabilities in important health- and economy related fields. The NRF has been supporting the microscopy community.

The department funded the establishment of the state-of-the-art specialised facility, the Centre for High Resolution Transmission Electron Microscopy, based at the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University in Port Elizabeth.

The department has invested R84 million in support of the centre through which South Africa is firmly positioned as a global player in the high-resolution arena. This investment is expected to translate into cutting-edge research and development capacity, providing young scientists with high-end skills and attracting beneficial collaborative partnerships internationally.

Given the importance and growth of microscopy, the DST regards it as crucial in addressing some of the strategic priorities in the areas of human capital development by training competent technicians to do research into HIV, mining and many other fields, using the high-end microscopes that the department has funded.

Budget and funding

The DST received R6,2 billion in 2013/14. Almost all of this (about 92%) went to science councils and agencies, and to other research institutions, including universities – which the department supports in various ways.

As approved in the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF), the DST allocated additional funds: R87 million, R310 million and R401 million in the 2012/13, 2013/14 and 2014/15 financial years, respectively, to relevant NRF programmes.

New-generation researchers are set to get R450 million; emerging researchers will get R196 million, and postgraduate bursaries are allocated R340 million.

The NRF's internship programme will receive an increased allocation of R110 million over the next three years.

The department received official development assistance from Australia, Canada, the European Community, Finland, the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) and Japan.

Role players

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

ASSAf was inaugurated in May 1996 by former President and patron of the Academy, Nelson Mandela. It was formed in response to the need for an academy of science congruent with the dawn of democracy in South Africa – activist in its mission of using science for the benefit of society.

ASSAf is the official national academy of science in the country and represents the country in the international community of science academies.

Africa Institute of South Africa

Aisa is a statutory body following the Aisa Act of 2001. Aisa's mandate is to produce knowledge aimed at informing sustainable political and socio-economic development in Africa. Its vision is to be an indispensable African voice on African Affairs, and its 2011 to 2015 research agenda is to seek solutions for Africa's developmental challenges.

Through its annual training programme that educates students from universities in research methodologies, Aisa has contributed to fostering a new generation of research specialists.

The institute has also been able to produce some of the finest research into contemporary African Affairs by field research every year throughout Africa. This means that all research output is based on first-hand empirical evidence.

Aisa has also become involved in community outreach programmes by providing maps and other resources to underprivileged schools in rural areas. The institute has undertaken to promote knowledge creation as a fundamental part of development and growth for Africa. As such, it aims to encourage research as a career choice for young people as they leave school.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is one of the leading science and technology research, development and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, Gauteng, and it is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices.

The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR. This takes place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; materials science and manufacturing; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging areas of research include science, explored by the CSIR, that could be unique to local circumstances or successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

The CSIR houses specialist research facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include information and communications technology (ICTs); laser technology, and space-related technology.

Research and development activities include intellectual property (IP) management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Consulting and analytical services include forensic fire investigations, food and beverage analysis, environmental testing, engineering forensics, wire rope testing, mechanical testing, fire and explosion tests, sports technology and analysis, and project management.

In September 2013, researchers at the CSIR developed the world's first digital laser.

The innovation, according to CSIR researchers, is regarded as a milestone in laser technology and could spur future laser-related innovations. Researchers say the development of the digital laser could have possible applications predominantly in the health, manufacturing and communications sectors, and other industries.

The team of researchers behind the innovation describe the development of the digital laser as a "disruptive technology," which will help to create

a new market and value network, and eventually disrupt the existing market and value network over time.

Human Sciences Research Council

The HSRC conducts large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific projects for public-sector users, non-governmental organisations and international development agencies. This is done in partnership with researchers globally, but specifically in Africa. The HSRC serves as a knowledge hub to bridge the gap between research, policy and action; thus increasing the impact of research.

The HSRC's six multidisciplinary research programmes are:

- education and skills development
- economic performance and development
- population health
- health systems and innovation
- HIV and AIDS, sexually transmitted infections and tuberculosis (TB)
- democracy, governance and service delivery
- human and social development.

The council's centres are the Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators; and the Centre for the Study of the Social and Environmental Determinants of Nutrition.

The HSRC Press is South Africa's only open-access publisher and is committed to the dissemination of high-quality, social-science research-based publications, in print and electronic form. HSRC Press publishes the research output of the HSRC as well as externally authored works.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

Naci advises the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of innovation in promoting and achieving national objectives, namely to:

- improve and sustain the quality of life of all South Africans
- develop human resources for science and technology
- build the economy
- strengthen the country's competitiveness in the international sphere.

The membership of Naci is broadly representative of all sectors and is constituted in a manner that ensures a spread of expertise and experience regarding:

- national and provincial interests
- scientific and technological innovation
- the needs and opportunities in different socio-economic fields
- research and development in all sectors.

The first ever evidence of a comet entering Earth's atmosphere and exploding was discovered by a team of South African scientists and international collaborators in October 2013. Professor David Block of Wits University, Professor Jan Kramers of the University of Johannesburg, Dr Marco Andreoli of the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation, and Chris Harris of the University of Cape Town, conducted highly sophisticated chemical analyses on black pebble found years earlier by an Egyptian geologist in the area of the impact. They came to the conclusion that it represented the first known hand specimen of a comet nucleus, rather than simply an unusual type of meteorite.

National Research Foundation

As an independent government agency, the NRF promotes and supports research in all fields of knowledge. It also conducts research and provides access to national research facilities. The NRF provides services to the research community, especially at higher education institutions and science councils, with a view to promoting high-level human capital development. The NRF aims to uphold excellence in all its investments in knowledge, people and infrastructure.

The NRF consists of three divisions namely: Research and Innovation Support and Advancement Agency (Risa), which constitutes the research support and promotion agency of the NRF; South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta), which provides and manages cross-cutting activities that advance science and technology in various communities in South Africa; and the national research facilities that undertake research in specific research fields.

Through Risa, the NRF:

- invests in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- develops the workforce, particularly previously disadvantaged men and women, to help all researchers unlock their full creative potential
- facilitates partnerships and knowledge networks
- supports and provides science and technology information to guide and steer strategic decisions.

Through Saasta, the NRF:

- steers young minds towards careers in science and technology
- interacts with the public on science, engineering and technology issues
- communicates the advances of science and technology to the public.

Through the national research facilities, the NRF:

- provides access to unique technologies, research methods and information
- provides state-of-the-art research platforms
- offers access to networking opportunities and international collaboration.

The NRF aims to contribute to the knowledge economy in South Africa by attaining at least 1% of global research and development output by 2015.

South African National Space Agency

Sansa was created to promote the use of space and cooperation in space-related activities while fostering research in space science, advancing scientific engineering through the development of South Africa's human capital and providing support to industrial development in space technologies.

The objectives of Sansa are to:

- promote the peaceful use of space
- support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology
- foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics
- advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development outreach programmes and infrastructure development
- foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

In March 2013, the Sansa and the Russian Federal Space Agency (Roscosmos) signed the RadioAstron space satellite agreement. The agreement paved the way for the two countries to work together on the development of science and space technologies.

If considered as a single, virtual telescope, RadioAstron would be the world's largest radio telescope, with a dish measuring about 390 000 km (almost 30 times the Earth's diameter or about the same size as the distance between the Earth and the moon).

Telkom has made an 18-m C-Band antenna available for RadioAstron tracking and acquisition in South Africa.

Under the agreement, Roscosmos will provide the hardware for upgrading the tracking station (antenna) for compatibility with RadioAstron, while Sansa will install and maintain the upgraded hardware and operate the tracking station.

Technology Innovation Agency

The TIA was established with the objective of stimulating and intensifying technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans by developing and exploiting technological innovations.

Its core business objective is to support the development and commercialisation of competitive technology-based services and products. The agency primarily uses South Africa's science and technology base to develop new industries, create sustainable jobs and help diversify the economy. It invests in the following technology sectors: advanced manufacturing, agriculture, industrial biotechnology, health, mining, energy and ICT.

The agency seeks to achieve its mandate by providing financial and non-financial support to its stakeholders, namely science councils, public entities, higher education Institutions, private research institutions and entrepreneurs.

National Intellectual Property Management Office

Nipmo aims to ensure that recipients of funding from a government funding agency assess, record and report on the benefit to society of IP emanating from publicly financed research and development. Recipients must protect IP emanating from publicly financed research and development from appropriation and ensure that it is available to the people of South Africa.

A recipient must identify commercialisation opportunities for IP emanating from publicly financed research and development.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa. It conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital, and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information. It also commercialises research results.

The ARC's functions are carried out through 11 research institutes whose activities are grouped under five divisions:

- field crops (grain and industrial crops)
- horticulture
- animal production and health
- natural resources and engineering
- technology transfer.

The ARC is also responsible for maintaining national assets and undertaking programmes or rendering services that are required from time to time by the department and other stakeholders.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and

In November 2013, a group of more than 40 students from the CubeSat Programme at the French South African Institute of Technology at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology participated in building Africa's first cube satellite. The ZACUBE-1 satellite was launched from Yasny in Russia. The Department of Science and Technology funded the project with R22 million.

related areas. Working closely with industry and other research and development institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation, which reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources. About 35% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract research and development, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements, and joint-venture private-sector companies. Mintek has about 780 permanent staff members, more than half of whom are scientists, engineers and other technical research and development specialists.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The MRC's objectives are:

- promoting the health and quality of life of the population of South Africa
- performing such functions as may be assigned to the MRC by or under the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991).

The MRC is a science council and therefore also a science, engineering and technology institution.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

In 2013, the Minister of Science and Technology, paid a courtesy visit to the Helmholtz Centre for Geosciences in Berlin. The visit to the centre was also aimed at strengthening existing research relations in the field of geosciences, particularly earth sciences.

South Africa and Germany have been collaborating in Inkaba-ye Africa (IyA) since 2003, in an effort to deal with the pressing challenges of global change.

A joint initiative between the DST and the German Federal Ministry of Education and Research, the Year of Science, celebrated 16 years of successful cooperation on science and technology between the two countries.

The DST committed R4 million towards improving the skills base in South Africa, aimed at understanding the earth system, in a major research programme in partnership with Germany. This commitment will support the project for a further five years, commencing in 2013/14.

More than 20 German and South African universities and research institutions have participated in IyA, and in as many sub-projects studying complex systems of the solid earth, the biosphere, atmosphere and oceans.

More than 210 postgraduate students from both countries have since completed degrees, which has resulted in a marked rise in graduation rates over the last few years.

The programme has also contributed more than 70 research papers published in leading international journals in the field of earth systems research, with a number of smaller spin-off projects arising from the cooperation.

The Africa Earth Observatory Network is the leading network of the cooperation programme on South Africa's side with Germany led by the German Research Centre for Geosciences.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that operates as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services. The SABS:

- publishes national standards, which it prepares through a consensus process in technical committees
- provides information on national standards of all countries as well as international standards
- tests and certifies products and services to standards
- develops technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitors and enforces compliance with such technical regulations
- monitors and enforces legal metrology legislation
- promotes design excellence
- provides training on aspects of standardisation.

To maximise its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of the SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This change ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that will be easily available to clients.

The seven industry sectors are:

- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials

- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

Sasol

Sasol's culture of innovation began in the 1950s when it developed its unique blend of coal gasification and Fischer-Tröpsch (FT) technology for its original coal-to-liquids operations at Sasolburg. It has since evolved these operations into fully fledged research and development facilities that form the heart of the Sasol technology research and development group.

Focused FT research and development in the 1980s and 1990s led to the development of the low temperature FT Sasol Slurry Phase process used at Sasolburg, and the high-temperature Sasol Advanced Synthol™ process used at Secunda.

Sasol Technology's Fuels Technology Division carries out work concerning fuels, lubricants, heating-fuel and road-binding material, research and development, and new product formulation and testing.

In addition, Sasol opened the Sasol Fuels Application Centre (SFAC), a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust emission testing and research facility in Cape Town. The SFAC enables Sasol to conduct sea-level engine and emission tests in line with international standards.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is a global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. It is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging. The group is a leader in research and development, and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw material, and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS has 265 laboratories and employs about 6 500 people. Their activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services; research, teaching and training; and producing sera for anti venom, reagents and media. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

Research conducted by the NHLS covers a wide spectrum of activities in all pathology disciplines. Grants in support of research are made by the MRC, the Cancer Association of South Africa, the South African Sugar Association, Poliomyelitis Research Foundation, pharmaceutical companies, private donors and a number of overseas institutions.

A large part of the research programme is financed by the NHLS itself from the earnings of its laboratory services.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, in the Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations are made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analysis of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri)

Ieri was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation. Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and community engagement in this field of study. Its tasks involve:

- conducting research into the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought-leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

Institute for Security Studies (ISS)

The ISS works towards a stable and peaceful Africa characterised by sustainable development, human rights, the rule of law, democracy, collaborative security and gender mainstreaming.

The ISS realises this vision by:

- undertaking applied research, training and capacity-building
- working collaboratively with others
- facilitating and supporting policy formulation
- monitoring trends and policy implementation
- collecting, interpreting and disseminating information
- networking at national, regional and international levels.

South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi)

The DST and the Department of Energy are joint custodians of Sanedi and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

The institute is entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public interest energy research, development and demonstration.

As such, it is responsible for enabling and implementing the energy technology roadmaps, which support long-term energy policies developed by the Department of Energy.

Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines.

The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council.

It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF)

The NARF coordinates agricultural research and development in the national agricultural research system.

Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC was established in 1971 following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water research and development
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water-use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

Institute for Water Research

The Institute for Water Research is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University in the Eastern Cape. Its main objective is to contribute to sustainable water-resource management in southern Africa.

This is achieved through scientific research into the structure and function of aquatic ecosystems; the application of research through specialist consultancy services; tertiary-level teaching and training; capacity-building for community development; and service on national and international management and policy-making committees.

South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi)

The Sanbi's biodiversity research comprises collaborative programmes set up to promote and catalyse knowledge about biodiversity.

The broad scope of research includes the origins, composition and functioning of biodiversity, its conservation and sustainable use, ecosystem services, and biodiversity responses to major drivers such as climate change. The research is organised into three divisions:

- Applied Biodiversity Research
- Biosystematics Research and Biodiversity Collections
- Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation.

Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

National research facilities

The seven national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

The SAAO contributes to South Africa's future development by creating and disseminating scientific knowledge; providing research infrastructure; and providing an interface between science and society. It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope (Salt).

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO is a radio astronomy observatory located in a natural bowl of hills at Hartebeesthoek just south of the Magaliesberg mountain range, Gauteng. It is the only major radio astronomy observatory in Africa.

HartRAO is mainly used for continuum radiometry, spectroscopy, pulsar timing and interferometry but also works together with radio telescopes on other continents as well as the orbiting Highly Advanced Laboratory for Communications and Astronomy radio telescope to perform very long baseline interferometry.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

Situated in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, Saiab is an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity.

Saiab runs a number of large, interdisciplinary and multi-institutional programmes.

The research facility is directed at fish taxonomy, systematics, genetics, phylogeography, biology, ecology, ethology, conservation, and fisheries management.

South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

Saeon maintains environmental observatories, field stations or sites linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in our understanding of ecosystems and our ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

The core research programme distinguishes between anthropogenic and natural change as well as unravels the relations between social and ecosystem change.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

Inspired conservation of wildlife through understanding, knowledge and connection, as the vision and mission statements, reflect a commitment by the NZG to bridge the gap between nature and humanity.

This is done by providing a platform on which humanity can gain knowledge about, cultivate a better understanding of and connect with nature in general, but wildlife in particular.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

iThemba LABS is a multidisciplinary facility aiming to become the leading African organ-isation for research, training and expertise in accelerator-based science and technologies.

The infrastructure is based at two sites, namely in the Western Cape, on Old Faure Road, and in Gauteng, on the campus of the University of the Witwatersrand.

Programmes and projects

The DST has four main programmes, which represent distinct but complementary ways of promoting the NSI, and harnessing science and technology to benefit all South Africans.

Research, Development and Innovation (RDI)

This is at the heart of the department's efforts to drive innovation in scientifically strategic areas. The programme has five subprogrammes:

- space science and technology
- hydrogen and energy
- biotechnology and health innovation

- innovation planning and instruments
- radio astronomy advances.

Space science and technology

Square Kilometre Array

The SKA Project could act as a catalyst for science, technology and engineering business opportunities, jobs and innovation, and has the potential to put Africa on the map as a world Big data and analytics hub.

The multi billion rand SKA, to be hosted in South Africa and Australia, will extend into eight African countries and will be the world's biggest telescope. It is also one of the biggest-ever scientific projects and multinational collaborations in the name of science.

The radio telescope should be operationally mature by 2020.

With thousands of linked radio wave receptors in Australia and in southern Africa, the SKA radio telescope will constantly scan space and feed the data to astronomers around the world.

The amounts of data being collected and transmitted by the SKA in a single day would take nearly two million years to play back on an iPod. This means the project requires supercomputing power and Big Data management and analytics capabilities on an unprecedented scale. The SKA is working with the world's most significant ICT powerhouses on the project.

One aspect of the project will see the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and IBM collaborating to research extremely fast, but low-power exascale computer systems, data transport and storage processes, and streaming analytics that will be required to read, store and analyse all the raw data that will be collected daily.

The SKA project will also have unprecedented data connectivity needs. Meeting the advanced technological and engineering needs of this project will result in significant local skills development, revolutionise science and technology research and enable innovative new businesses and employment in the science, technology and engineering fields.

Aside from the benefits to African science, Big Data capabilities could be the biggest spin-off from the SKA project.

The innovations, skills development and commercial potential emerging as a result of the project are huge. The potential is not just academic – the taxpayer-funded IP is developed to a point where it is ready to become commercialised and benefit the economy.

Human capital development is already taking place as a result of the SKA project, with bursaries and scholarships being granted to allow students to learn the necessary cutting-edge science, technology, maths and engineering skills to support the project. Because the SKA is a long-term project over decades, its effect will increase.

Going forward, there will be a strong drive to leverage the SKA as a spearhead for other programmes – including next generation high performance computing challenges and Big Data challenges.

Since 2005, the African SKA Human Capital Development Programme has awarded close to 400 grants for studies in astronomy and engineering from undergraduate to post-doctoral level, while also investing in training programmes for technicians.

Astronomy courses are also being implemented in other African countries, including Kenya, Mozambique, Madagascar and Mauritius. Career opportunities will increase substantially and new business opportunities will emerge.

The project has already changed the world's view of South Africa's scientific capability.

This project is a once-in-a-lifetime combination of science and engineering in South Africa.

Space science

Through Sansa, the country's capacity to design, build, maintain and possibly even launch satellites is being developed. As part of the four-country African Resource Management Constellation, South Africa has begun work on the ZA-ARMC1 satellite; R232 million has been budgeted over the next three years for this project. This satellite will enhance Africa's ability to monitor and manage its precious natural resources.

A business rescue plan for Sunspace was put in place, and the process of transferring its capabilities and IP into the Sansa satellite programme is continuing.

Information and communications technology

The DST is leading the implementation of the national ICT RDI Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the advancement of ICT RDI in South Africa.

South Africa's research capacity in the ICT field has become a strong competitive advantage.

The ICT RDI Strategy aims to achieve a marked increase in advanced human resource capacity, promote world-class research and build robust innovation chains for the creation of new high-tech ICT small enterprises. Implementing the strategy demands partnership involving government, the private sector, higher education institutions and science councils.

The Meraka Institute of the CSIR manages and coordinates the implementation of the strategy. An important envisaged outcome is a

vibrant, sustainable and innovative indigenous ICT industry that addresses a significant portion of the country's ICT needs and attracts investments by overseas-based multinational ICT corporations in RDI and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), Sanren and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyber-infrastructure that the DST supports. Hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

A major project for Sanren is the national backbone network, which aims to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link. On completion, the network will reach about 200 sites. The overall network architecture will consist of a national backbone connecting Durban, Pretoria, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and East London; with metro rings in Johannesburg, Tshwane, eThekwini and Cape Town.

Indigenous knowledge systems (IKS)

The Indigenous Knowledge System Policy serves as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources.

One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of such knowledge against exploitation.

This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial remuneration for the use of this knowledge

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information.

Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies.

By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The DST has three IKS priorities:

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge. The department established IKS documentation centres in all the provinces by 2013.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be how, with funding from the NRF, the MRC is developing the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in North West, with the aim of producing a nutritional herbal tea for the commercial market.

The DST has put in place validation systems within its science system to ensure that indigenous knowledge products are safe and backed by the best science in the world.

To give further impetus to these critical initiatives, the department has set aside a dedicated fund to support research into indigenous knowledge.

Two indigenous knowledge research chairs have been awarded as part of the country's Research Chairs Initiative (SARChI).

The first was awarded to the University of KwaZulu-Natal for work in the field of traditional medicines. The second was awarded to Walter Sisulu University.

These two chairs represent significant injections into the development of national research capacity in IKS.

The DST also established indigenous knowledge studies CoEs at the universities. The CoEs will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world.

The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce.

It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanisms and microbiology)
- Tellumat (develops electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (develops and improves tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables South Africa (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

Natural-resource development

South Africa's fluorspar chemicals sector has enormous economic potential. The DST has implemented a fluoro-chemicals development programme targeting human-capital development, new business formation and novel processes and products. A multipurpose fluorination pilot plant was completed and launched in 2012.

The department secured a commitment of R60 million for the period 2013 to 2015 from the competitiveness fund announced by the Minister of Finance in 2012.

This enabled it to increase the companies on its register by a further 50 by the end of 2012/13, with an additional 100 planned by the end of 2014/15.

Over the next three years, the department will allocate more than R100 million to the titanium initiative, R50 million of which will come from the economic competitiveness fund.

Human-capital development

The DST's Human-Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at developing and renewing science, engineering and technology human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

South African universities train more and more scientists each year, with whose help the country will be able to spend R45 billion on research and development by 2014, thus reaching its target for gross expenditure on research and development of 1,5% of gross domestic product.

Sixty new research chairs were awarded to various institutions of higher learning throughout South Africa during the 2011/12 and 2013/14 MTEF. This increased the number of research chairs in South Africa to 154.

Food security and access to clean water remain among government's top priorities – the department is therefore also focusing on using science and technology to ensure that existing water supplies are clean and is playing an active role in ensuring food security into the future.

To this end, seven of the 60 new research chairs initiated by the department will serve the areas of rural development, food security and land reform, bringing the total of such chairs to 10.

International cooperation

The DST is not only entrusted with the overall coordination of national research and innovation initiatives in South Africa, but is also responsible for overseeing and facilitating South Africa's international scientific and technological cooperation.

The International Cooperation and Resources Programme of the department is tasked with facilitating and nurturing bilateral scientific cooperation with countries in Africa, Europe, the Americas and Asia.

The same programme nurtures multilateral scientific cooperation with the African Union, the UN system, donor agencies and foundations, global research infra-structure projects, and multinational companies, as well as focused strategic partnerships, such as with the European Union (EU).

The department has three international offices, located at South Africa's diplomatic missions in Tokyo, Moscow and Brussels, dedicated to promoting cooperation with Japan, the Russian Federation and the EU.

The DST has also seconded an official to the secretariat of the SADC in Gaborone, Botswana.

Many of South Africa's national science councils or other public-funded research and technology organisations also have dedicated teams working on international cooperation. These include the NRF, which is responsible for

the implementation of international science and technology cooperation agreements.

African Network on Drugs and Diagnostics Innovation (Andi)

Andi is based in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, at the UN offices of the Economic Commission for Africa. Its board agreed that five regional hubs were to be created to support regional research initiatives, with South Africa offering to host the southern hub.

Andi evaluated African research initiatives on drugs and diagnostics, and identified 35 CoEs throughout Africa that were to receive priority attention. Fifteen of these are in South Africa.

All the centres are tasked with researching responses to the most intractable health burdens of the continent, from malaria and tuberculosis to river blindness. Many of these are diseases of the poor and invisible. Their researchers do not receive funding or intellectual support from established agencies – Andi's aim is to reverse this.

It provides support to innovation in quality water provision that is community-led and -based through various agencies. It supported the development and use of new energy-efficient and attractive construction materials through the CSIR-led infrastructure innovation programme – 410 houses were built in Kleinmond, creating an integrated suburb.

It supports rural-based poverty alleviation initiatives in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Another facet of Andi is the Ketlaphela/Lonza initiative that built a plant to manufacture active pharmaceutical ingredients for antiretroviral (ARV) production.

The departments of science and technology, trade and industry, economic development and health collaborated on this initiative to secure a significant proportion of the ARV market for local producers.

Women in Science Awards

The South African Women in Science Awards, which is part of government's efforts to recognise and create incentives for women scientists and researchers in the country and to profile successful women scientists, is an annual event, that took place in August 2013.

The objective is to create enough role models for young women and girls.

The theme of the 2013 awards was: "The Role of Science and Research against Violence towards Women."

This is rooted in the UN Commission on the Status of Women's 2013 theme: "Elimination and prevention of all forms of violence against women and girls."

The awards were made in the life sciences and humanities categories and include distinguished women scientists and distinguished young women in science.

Social Development

Social assistance continues to form an important part of government's strategy to fight the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

More than half of all households in South Africa benefit from government's social assistance programme.

According to National Treasury, for 22% of households, social grants are the main source of income.

Comprehensive social security alleviates and reduces poverty, vulnerability, social exclusion and inequality through a comprehensive social protection system.

Empowering young and old people, those with disabilities as well as women in particular, helps rebuild families and communities.

Welfare services create and provide social protection to the most vulnerable of society through the delivery of social welfare services via provincial government and non-profit organisation (NPO) structures.

Budget

A total of R113 billion (93%) of the Department of Social Development's (DSD) R120 billion budget went towards the payment of social grants.

The social assistance budget has increased by an average of 11% a year since 2008/09, in part due to the extension of the child support grant to the age of 18.

Legislation and frameworks

The department derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- Advisory Board on Social Development Act, 2001 (Act 3 of 2001)
- Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)
- Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007)
- Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978)
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002)
- National Welfare Act, 1978 (Act 100 of 1978)
- National Development Agency (NDA) Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998)
- NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997)
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)
- Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992)
- Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008)
- Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991)
- South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004)
- Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)

- Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978). The Act also provides for the appointment of the Independent Tribunal in a way to be prescribed by regulation, and contains a number of technical amendments and corrections.
- In terms of the Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 5 of 2010), beneficiaries and other applicants may now ask Sassa to reconsider the relevant decision before appealing to the tribunal. All applications for appeal must now show that they have gone through the reconsideration process at Sassa.
- In 2013, government proposed the Women Empowerment and Gender Equality Bill to enforce gender parity across all sectors of society. This demonstrates government's commitment to acting decisively and enforcing change in the workplace and speeding up the process of gender transformation.

  The proposed Bill calls for equal participation of women in the economy and for equal representation in decision-making in the private and public sectors. The proposed Bill comes at a time when gender transformation in corporate boardrooms continues at a much slower pace than in government.

National Family Policy

The DSD is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary care-giving and families in crisis to service providers in the area of family services.

The *Green Paper on Families* emphasises the need for all to build strong families that protect the most vulnerable members of society.

The purpose of the Green Paper is to provide a platform for all South Africans to engage and exchange views on how to build stable families.

It also addresses some of the challenges faced by individuals in families, including the abuse of women and children, the elderly as well as people with disabilities.

Child care legislation

The Children's Act of 2005 sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children; defines parental responsibilities and rights; and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- recognises new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Act of 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that records all people found unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, child care facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register is not open to the public and all requests for information must be directed to the DSD.

The Children's Amendment Act of 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)
- protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child and youth care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without the consent of the parents or guardian
- the discipline of children.

The national guidelines to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the *White Paper for Social Welfare (1997)* and the Children's Act of 2005, as amended.

Section 137 of the Children's Act of 2005, proposes new protection measures for child-headed households.

This section defines children from child-headed households, provides for appointing an adult to supervise a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households to access social grants and other material assistance.

Role players

Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities

The then Ministry for Women, Children and People with Disabilities' (DWCPD) mandate

was to advance, develop, promote and protect the rights of women, children and people with disabilities through mainstreaming, lobbying, advocacy, awareness raising, empowerment and monitoring compliance in government and all relevant sectors.

The Eight-Principles Action Plan for Promoting Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality within the Public Service Workplace entails:

- promoting and protecting human dignity and human rights for women, including the rights of women with disabilities
- the full implementation of national policies and guidelines on women's empowerment and gender equality through the departmental and sector-specific guidelines and standard operating procedures
- ensuring women's full participation in decision-making through the employment of 50% women at all levels of senior management in government
- putting in place departmental and sector gender management systems, adequate institutional mechanisms and dedicated gender units
- incorporating gender perspectives into all work of the department
- capacity development for women's advancement and gender equality
- availing adequate human, physical and financial resources for advancing gender equality
- ensuring full responsibility, ownership for and reporting on advancing gender equality within the Public Service.

In March 2013, the United Nations (UN) Commission on the Status of Women held its 57th session at the Headquarters in New York, United States of America (USA).

It called for the elimination of violence against women and girls, a global scourge that affects millions around the world.

In countries such as Australia, Canada, Israel, South Africa and the USA, intimate partner violence accounts for 40 to 70% of female murder victims.

South Africa participated in various activities of the session and hosted and coordinated side events on gender-based violence, the economic empowerment of women as well as an event which emphasised strengthening the hand-in-hand approach in the fight against gender-based violence, strategies and approaches for ending violence against women.

The theme for the session was "Equal sharing of responsibilities between women and men, including care giving in the context of HIV and AIDS."

In November 2013, the first ever National Conference on Albinism was held in Boksburg, Gauteng.

Hosted by the then DWCPD in partnership with the Albinism Society of South Africa the conference was attended by 300 delegates, including 90 children with albinism.

High on the conference agenda was the development of positive language associated with albinism in all official languages.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a public entity, listed under Schedule 3A of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA) 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). Its mandates are to:

- contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil-society organisations (CSOs)
- implement development projects in poor communities
- strengthen the institutional capacity of CSOs that provide services to poor communities
- promote consultation, dialogue and sharing of development experience between CSOs and relevant organs of State
- debate development policy
- undertake research and publication aimed at providing the basis for development policy.

The NDA supports the work of civil society in key areas of concern.

It is an important partner in the department's efforts to promote ECD by using its grants to strengthen the capacities of ECD community-service organisations, which support the department's efforts to reduce violence against women and children by providing key support to the gender-based violence sector.

NDA programmes include grant funding, capacity-building and research, policy dialogue and impact assessment.

Capacity-building interventions are geared towards ensuring that recipients of grant funding are not only given money to start and run their projects, but that they are empowered with the necessary skills to ensure sustainability.

The NDA has established the Programme Management Unit, which will be responsible for offering project management services to private and public-sector stakeholders who wish to fund poverty-eradication projects.

Particular emphasis will be placed on those in the NDA's primary areas of focus, namely food security, ECD, enterprise development and income generation programmes.

Income generation projects created 906 job opportunities against an annual target of 1 686,

representing a 63% negative variance against the annual target. This is an area that will receive focused attention in the 2013/14 financial year.

South African Social Security Agency

Sassa's core business is to administer, finance and pay social security transfers. The agency is required to:

- develop and implement policies, programmes, standard operating procedures and systems for an efficient and effective social assistance benefits administration system
- deliver innovative and cost-effective services to beneficiaries and potential beneficiaries through multiple access channels
- pay the right grant to the right person at the right time and place.

Sassa's mandate is to ensure the provision of comprehensive social security services against vulnerability and poverty within the constitutional and legislative framework.

The agency's key functions include the:

- effective management, administration and payment of social assistance
- the processing of applications for social assistance, such as social grants, grant-in-aid and social relief of distress
- the verification and timely approval of grant applications
- the management and reconciliation of grant payments to eligible beneficiaries by contractors
- the marketing of social assistance
- quality service assurance by ensuring compliance with norms and standards, and fraud prevention and detection.

By October 2013, social grant beneficiaries had increased to 16 106 110.

Although the number of beneficiaries has increased, government achieved savings on social grant payments when Sassa cleaned up the beneficiary re-registration process to reduce fraud.

Advisory Board on Social Development

The Advisory Board on Social Development's key functions include:

- advising the Minister on all matters related to social development
- identifying, promoting, monitoring and evaluating policy, legislation and programmes regarding social development
- facilitating dialogue with and the participation of civil society.

South African Council of Social Service Professionals

The South African Council of Social Service Professionals is a statutory body that promotes and ensures ethical behaviour and attitudes on the part of all social service professionals.

These include all social workers, social auxiliary workers, community development workers and practitioners, probation officers, assistant probation officers, child and youth care workers, youth workers, ECD practitioners and care workers, including community-based personal care workers.

The council's business is conducted within the framework of the following principles:

- promoting and maintaining a high standard of professional ethics
- promoting efficient, economic and effective use of resources
- being development oriented
- providing services impartially, fairly, equitably and without bias
- responding to people's needs and encouraging participation in its policy making
- being accountable
- fostering transparency by providing the public with timely, accessible and accurate information
- good human resource management
- being broadly representative of the South African people, with employment and personnel
- employing management practices based on ability, objectivity, fairness and the need to redress the imbalances of the past to achieve representation.

National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS

The National Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS is a multisectoral structure made up of government departments, CSOs, development agencies and donor organisations.

It is a formal structure used for collaborative planning and decision-making concerning issues pertaining to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS.

It has a steering committee initiated through consultations between government departments, civil society and non-governmental organisations (NGOs), and is currently composed of representatives of government and civil society.

The committee is chaired by the DSD, and co-chaired by a nominated member from civil society.

Relief boards

Four relief fund boards were established in terms of Section 16 of the Fund-Raising Act of 1978.

- Board of the Disaster Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to assist people, organisations and bodies that suffer damage or loss as a result of a disaster.
- Board of the Refugee Relief Fund: The key functions are to assist refugees as the board may deem fair and reasonable.
- Board of the State President's Fund: This board's functions are to assist victims of any act of terrorism in respect of their medical treatment and rehabilitation, and assist such victims and their dependants during any financial hardship or financial distress caused directly or indirectly by any act of terrorism.
- Board of the Social Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to make funds available to organisations capable of assisting people with psychosocial challenges, and rendering such social distress relief to victims of violence.

Non-profit organisations

The NPO Directorate of the DSD administers the Register of NPOs in South Africa.

It is a voluntary registration facility that enhances the credibility of the registered NPO as it reports to a public office.

Registration promotes effective, efficient and accountable management within the sector.

To strengthen the capacity of NPOs, the department will continue to build their capacity and monitor their compliance to legislation.

One of the functions of the department is to monitor all registered NPOs in terms of their compliance with the NPO Act of 1997.

The compliance rate has improved by 26%.

Training was provided to 1 200 NPOs and community-based organisations (CBOs).

Plans to strengthen the sector include:

- increasing the number of staff in the department who deal with registrations
- increasing the number of road shows to provide information and listen to challenges faced by the sector.

Programmes and projects

16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children

The 16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children is an annual awareness campaign observed globally.

It seeks to address policy and legal issues and to call for the elimination of all forms of gender-based violence.

In 2013, government launched the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children campaign in Mahikeng, North West.

The opening ceremony took the form of an interactive session with community members.

The campaign runs from 25 November, which was officially recognised by the UN in 1999 as the International Day for the Elimination of Violence against Women.

South Africa has added children to the campaign, as there is growing concern about the increasing violence against children.

The campaign ends on 10 December – International Human Rights Day.

Other important days commemorated annually during this 16-day period include World AIDS Day on 1 December and the International Day for Persons with Disabilities on 3 December.

Project Mikondzo

In September 2013, the Minister of Social Development launched a project to expand social services to 1 300 of the country's poorest wards and called on community members to lend their support to the department and its agencies.

Project Mikondzo (which means "footprint" in Xitsonga) will compel office-bound officials from the department, the NDA and the Sassa to join frontline officials to interact with communities in a bid to tackle social problems such as poverty, malnutrition, violence against women and child-headed households.

The 1 300 wards form part of 23 district municipalities from seven provinces, which Cabinet has prioritised for additional support.

The project includes an audit of ECD centres and the setting up of a command centre with a toll-free hotline open 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

It also includes a current substance abuse awareness campaign targeting sports and music events, the targeting of gender-based violence and the strengthening of NPOs.

The introduction would for example help government reach the about two million children who qualify for CSGs but who have not registered with Sassa to receive grants.

The project will be funded by Sassa and the department.

The audit of ECD centres, which covered 19 971 registered and unregistered centres, aims to establish, among other things, the kind of services these centres offer and the quality of infrastructure and resources available to them.

About 1 000 unemployed youths had been recruited and trained to carry out the audit.

The department began training caregivers to improve assistance to child and youth-headed households.

The department was also auditing 92 000 child-headed households that are in the Statistics South Africa database to ensure compliance with the Children's Act of 2005 definition of a child-headed household.

Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action

In March 2013, the Inter-Ministerial Committee on Substance Abuse met to review progress regarding the Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action. One of the key focus areas contained in the Programme of Action is the introduction of legislation to ban alcohol advertising.

To this end, the Department of Health has developed a Draft Control of Marketing of Alcohol Beverages Bill.

The objectives of this Bill are to provide for the:

- restriction of the promotion of alcoholic beverages
- prohibition of sponsorship associated with alcohol
- prohibition of free distribution and reward, with the aim of contributing to the reduction of alcohol-related harm and the protection of public health and community well-being.

In the same month the Central Drug Authority Board was inaugurated and regulations for the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008, were developed.

The Act complements both the National Drug Master Plan (2013 – 2017) and the Anti-Substance Abuse Programme.

The Act provides for a comprehensive national response for combating substance abuse in South Africa through:

- mechanisms aimed at reducing demand and harm in relation to substance abuse through prevention, early intervention, treatment and re-integration programmes
- registration and establishment of treatment centres and halfway houses
- the committal of persons to and from treatment centres and for their treatment.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term. It is also a deliberate attempt by public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create job opportunities for the unemployed.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis either by government, by contractors, or by NGOs under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

Early Childhood Development

Government has identified ECD as a key focus area in its effort to improve the quality of basic education and care for children.

In 2013, more than 836 000 children benefitted from ECD services in South Africa.

The department recognises that one of the ways of breaking the cycle of inter-generational poverty is investment in children to aid their development, especially from the ages of 0 – 4.

Providing ECD services, therefore, remains at the top of the department's agenda.

In 2013, the ECD programme started the implementation of the information communication and technology strategy, targeting 40 ECD sites in rural areas.

Childcare and protection measures were also improved, where the department was able to place 157 024 children in foster care, while the number of children accessing drop-in centres increased by 450%.

There are plans in place to ensure that all ECD centres are registered and early childhood practitioners appropriately trained. Programmes for parental training are also in the pipeline.

War on Poverty Campaign

During the International Day for the Eradication of Poverty, the DSD, Sassa and the NDA launched the Cooperative Shop Project.

The initiative is aimed at combating poverty by linking social grant beneficiaries (particularly the caregivers of children receiving CSGs) and other vulnerable groups to meaningful socio-economic opportunities. The department and its entities will identify cooperatives that need support, with the intention of developing the skills of the cooperative members to ensure they are able to produce goods of quality.

The project is in line with the developmental agenda of government and could be seen as an addition to the grants that are provided. The primary intention is not to take people out of the grant system but to provide opportunities for grant beneficiaries to supplement their income.

If the project is a success, the members of the cooperatives may well earn enough to support themselves and their families and thus move out of the social-security system.

Food for All Programme

The department is tasked with facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the Food for All Programme.

To this end, distressed households were being provided with food through the department and Food Bank South Africa programme.

While social relief of distress provides short-term relief for poor households, government recognises that longer-term solutions are needed.

Government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities.

To this end, households have been assisted in establishing food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

Social security and assistance

By putting money directly into the hands of the poor, government has improved the lives of South African children in matters such as nutrition, better education outcomes, healthcare and job-seeking behaviour.

Since 1994, the social grants system has expanded from 2,7 million to over 16 million beneficiaries.

Independent research results showed in November 2013 that the provision of social protection in the form of social grants had sustained many vulnerable households, particularly against the global financial crisis.

As from 1 October 2013, government has increased the monetary value of social grants. These included:

- the disability grant and care dependency grant, which increased to R1 270;
- the older persons grant for ages 75 and older, and the war veterans grant increased to R1 290;
- the CSG and the grant-in-aid increased to R300; and the foster child grant to R800.

In May 2013, the UN Children's Fund commended the South African Government on the impressive progress it had made in making essential services available to vulnerable children and youngsters, and supporting their parents and caregivers.

The country's progressive legal and policy framework created an enabling environment for the protection of children and young people, and guaranteed their rights to social services.

At the Conference on Orphans, Children and Youth made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS, which took place in May 2013 in Durban, delegates heard that improved financial stability, facilitated by social grants, improved children's school attendance.

Poor children who receive grants tend to stay at school for longer and perform better compared to poor children who get no financial support at all.

In 2013, government started implementing the new biometric-based payment solution for social grants.

The system forms part of government's commitment to strengthening, modernising and improving the integrity of the social-security system and eliminating all forms of fraud and corruption.

The re-registration deadline was extended by a month to the end of April 2013.

However, those who have not re-registered any type of grant and are not in possession of the new card have to present themselves and their children who receive child grants.

Social security reform

With effect from March 2013, tax-free interest-income annual thresholds were increased from R33 000 to R34 500 for individuals 65 years and over, and from R22 800 to R23 800 for individuals under the age of 65.

Other initiatives include making it compulsory for retirement funds to identify appropriate preservation funds for exiting members when changing jobs.

Retirement funds will also be required to guide their members through the process of converting savings into a regular income after retirement and to choose annuity products that meet appropriate principles and standards.

The tax treatments of pension, provident and retirement annuity funds will also be simplified and harmonised.

Governance reforms of retirement funds will also be implemented and measures will be put in place to ensure that trustees of retirement funds are trained once they have been appointed.

Tax deductions of pension and retirement annuity funds, as well as contributions to provident funds and employer contributions that will constitute fringe benefits, will be increased to 27,5% of remuneration or taxable income – whichever the greater may be.

This will simplify the way deductions for retirement annuities, fringe benefits and pension funds are calculated. An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 will be applied.

Job creation and alleviating poverty

National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)

Government recognises that the youth have a completely different struggle, which is that of substance abuse over and the fight for economic

emancipation, access to quality education, unemployment and HIV and AIDS.

Government hosted a number of public participation sessions around the country during the Imbizo Focus Week which took place in June 2013.

The izimbizo also focused on the fight against substance abuse.

The focus on youth development is still high on the Government and NYDA's agenda.

The Youth Employment Accord was signed in 2013. It is a viable and meaningful approach to addressing the challenge of youth unemployment.

As part of the Youth Employment Accord, the Economic Development Department committed R3 billion in support of the growth of young entrepreneurs over the next five years, through the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa), which will go a long way towards facilitating the growth and development of young entrepreneurs in South Africa.

The Commonwealth Conference on Education and Training of Youth Workers was hosted by the South African Government in partnership with the Commonwealth Africa Regional Centre, University of South Africa (Unisa) and the NYDA during March 2013.

It was geared towards sharing experiences and lessons learnt to advance the agenda of professionalising the field of youth work.

Held under the theme "Towards the professionalisation of Youth Work", the conference was based on the foundation that youth development practice is a profession like any other and therefore must be streamlined to meet the standards required for any profession.

Over the last 40 years the Commonwealth Youth Programme has liaised with member governments and academic institutions to provide education and training of youth workers.

This is evidenced by their widely offered Diploma in Youth Development Work as well as short courses and the Degree in Youth Development Work offered in Asia and the Pacific. In South Africa, Unisa offers a Commonwealth Diploma in Youth Development Work.

The universities of Venda in Limpopo and Stellenbosch in the Western Cape also offer youth work qualifications.

Great progress was made across the country during 2013:

- 606 unemployed graduates were appointed by provincial government departments across North West in internship programmes for them to gain much-needed workplace experiential learning
- 170 bursaries were awarded to needy and deserving students
- R11,9 million was budgeted for provincial bursary schemes for the 2013/14 financial year.

Food banks

Spending on community development increased in 2013 owing to an additional allocation of R120 million to FoodBank South Africa, aimed at strengthening the Food for All Programme.

The programme is meant to feed three million people by 2015/16.

The Food Banks Programme, which is part of the Zero Hunger Strategy, is an important channel through which vulnerable people access food.

The department also developed a training and mentoring programme for CBOs.

HIV and AIDS support

The National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and Tuberculosis (TB) 2012 – 2016, which addresses the social drivers and social impact of HIV and AIDS, is a key component of the department's fight against the spread of HIV and AIDS.

In 2013, free antiretroviral treatment reached 1,8 million adults.

Government also provided antiretroviral treatment to 150 000 children – up from 4 200 children in 2004.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

Most funds continued to be disbursed to loveLife, enabling it to increase and extend its HIV and AIDS awareness programmes, and scholarships for social work students.

By 2015/16, the number of students benefiting from these scholarships is expected to be 4 248.

Consistent with the department's commitment to keeping children in their families and communities, 3 150 child and youth-care workers from local communities were recruited and started with the training programme for the implementation of the Isibindi Model at 260 sites throughout the country.

The aim is to recruit 10 000 child and youth-care workers over the next five years. It is expected that the recruitment and deployment of this cadre of social service professionals will go a long way towards upholding government's constitutional obligation to protect and provide care and support for orphans, vulnerable children and youths affected by HIV and AIDS in South Africa.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach programme

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection.

The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS.

It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Care and support partnerships

The DSD developed a new National Action Plan for orphans, vulnerable children and youth affected by HIV and AIDS (2012 – 2016), which is aligned with the National Strategic Plan on HIV, STIs and TB (2012 – 2016).

The action plan calls for meaningful involvement and participation by all stakeholders in the national response to orphans, vulnerable children and youths affected by HIV and AIDS.

Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP)

From 2009/10 to 2012/13, expenditure on social crime prevention and victim empowerment increased significantly to provide for the implementation of the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008).

South Africa's Victim Empowerment Policy is based upon the concept of restorative justice.

Victim empowerment is a means of facilitating access to a range of services for all people who have individually or collectively suffered harm, trauma and/or material loss through violence, crime, natural disaster, human accident and/or through socio-economic conditions.

It is the process of promoting the resourcefulness of victims of crime and violence by providing opportunities to access services available to them, as well as to use and build their own capacity and support networks and to act on their own choices.

Hence, empowerment may be defined as having or taking control, having a say, being listened to, being recognised and respected as an individual and having the choices one makes respected by others by changing from a victim to a survivor.

In September 2013, Cabinet approved the submission to the United Nation (UN) Committee on the Rights of the Child and African Union (AU) Expert Committee the three reports relating to the progress made in securing the rights and wellbeing of children. The reports provide a transparent and critical opportunity for South Africa to assess the progress it has made in these areas:

- Country Report on the Optional Protocol on the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography
- the combined second, third and fourth report on the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child
- the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child: First Country report to the AU Expert Committee on the Rights and Welfare of the Child.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

In September 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry opened the third annual Sobriety Week, a national campaign aimed at creating awareness among the general South African public, particularly the youth, women and pregnant women about the adverse effects of liquor abuse.

Sobriety Week incorporates the International Foetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) Day, which is observed internationally on 9 September every year to highlight the irreversible damage caused to unborn babies when their mothers consume alcohol during pregnancy.

Government recognises challenges such as unemployment, which result in people using and abusing liquor.

Children and youth

In May 2013, government reaffirmed its commitment to continue its efforts to address violence against women and children through partnerships and the effective implementation of relevant policies and programmes during Child Protection Week.

The Home Community-Based Care (HCBC) programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services to orphans and vulnerable children are rendered through the HCBC programme and include early identification of

vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psycho-social support and material assistance.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities. It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support, which is complemented by proactive action at community level.

This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

Child Labour Programme of Action (CLPA) Report

The CLPA is South Africa's roadmap to the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour, which affects an estimated one million children in the country.

It serves to focus and guide the efforts of an array of government departments and civil society groups, including business organisations, labour federations and organisations serving the interests of children.

The key elements of the CLPA include targeting the implementation of government and other stakeholders' programmes and policies on poverty, employment, labour and social matters more effectively in areas where the work children do has serious negative effects on them.

The CLPA will also promote new legislative measures against the worst forms of child labour and strengthen national capacity to enforce legislative measures.

It is aimed at increasing public awareness and social mobilisation.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. It provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is an NPO that works to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of respect for children's rights.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line
- child rights and education
- training and education of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- lobbying and advocacy
- analysis of law and policy.

People with disabilities

South Africa acknowledges the importance of international cooperation in support of national efforts towards the implementation of the UN Convention on the Rights of People with Disabilities and its optional protocol to improve the living conditions of people with disabilities, particularly in developing countries.

South Africa has acceded to, or ratified, most of the African regional and international human-rights instruments in the area of economic, social, cultural, civil and political rights.

The Constitution requires that particular attention be given to relevant international laws and comparable international standards and experiences. There is increased representation of people with disabilities in Parliament, provincial legislatures and in local government.

People with disabilities are also represented in institutions such as the Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality and the NYDA. Government departments and provinces are setting up disability policies and targets for mainstreaming service delivery to people with disabilities.

South Africa has also made strides in improving access to health and social services for people with disabilities. The free healthcare policy for people with disabilities includes the provision of assistive devices.

Welfare services are also being streamlined to reach people with disabilities wherever they are through HCBC, rehabilitation and family-support programmes.

Skills development and employment opportunities for people with disabilities are also priorities.

The target is for at least 4% of skills development expenditure to be used to train people with disabilities, and for 2% of the workforce in the public and private sector to be people with disabilities.

In line with its mandate of mainstreaming and oversight, the then DWCPD ensured that each government department committed to clear milestones towards the attainment of 2% employment equity for people with disabilities and be held accountable for this target.

The IDC, in partnership with the then DWCPD, through its Transformation and Entrepreneur Scheme, committed over R200 million towards the women empowerment fund and R50 million for people with disabilities.

Government also encourages the private sector to continue employing people with disabilities, using the skills-development programmes to invest in training people with disabilities.

Transport remains a major barrier limiting the participation of people with disabilities in social, educational and economic activities.

The then DWCPD and the Department of Transport were working together to ensure that the Public Transport Strategy and initiatives respond to the transport needs of people with disabilities and integrate disability considerations.

The department also focuses on improving access to education for learners with disabilities through the promotion of the Inclusive Education Policy.

Government is promoting the integration of children with special needs into mainstream schools while acknowledging that children with severe disabilities still need special schools.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education.

Its objectives are to protect and promote the interests of people with visual impairment and enable all visually impaired people to achieve their optimal potential through independence; and by providing development care for and protecting the rights of those who, owing to circumstances beyond their control, are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

South African Braille Authority (Saba)

Saba was established in May 2012 as an NGO. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

These standards relate to the development and maintenance of Braille codes; production of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Through Saba, South Africa is a member country of the International Council on English Braille (ICEB).

ICEB membership enables South Africa to stay abreast of and participate in international Braille-related matters.

Many individuals belonging to Saba constituencies play important roles in ICEB structures.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100 member organisations throughout the country.

These organisations span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people.

The SANCB comprises four core business areas, namely Social Development, the Bureau for the Prevention of Blindness, Education and lastly fund-raising and public relations.

To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertakes tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations.

The SANCB provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College.

Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA), formerly the South African National Council for the Deaf, which was established in 1929. DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa.

Two other national organisations for the deaf are Deafblind South Africa and SHHH South Africa, the South African organisation for the hard of hearing.

An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language. As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote sign language.

Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website.

South Africa has a long-established deaf education system.

Statistics indicate that there are more than 40 schools for the deaf in South Africa. They include:

- De la Bat School (run by the Institute for the Deaf)
- Fulton School for the Deaf
- Kutlwanong School for the Deaf (Rustenburg)
- Kwa Thintwa School for Hearing Impaired
- St Vincent's School for the Deaf (Johannesburg)
- Vuleka School for the Blind and Deaf

The Institute for the Deaf in Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs.

South Africa has declared the first Saturday of November every year as National Children's Day. National Children's Day took place on 2 November 2013 under the theme: "Sireletsa Bana: Creating a Caring Society." (Translation: Protect the children).

In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witswatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies.

The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service.

Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child Health at the University of Cape Town, provides pre-school education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research.

The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education.

In addition to providing auditory-education services, the centre also engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. It provides auditory-oral pre-school and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf children together and provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists.

Older people

Older Persons Week celebrated in October every year, is aimed at promoting respect for the rights of older people.

In its efforts to create an enabling environment for protecting and promoting the rights of older persons, the department registered 104 community-based care and support services for older persons in 2013.

Also in 2013, a further 180 residential care facilities were registered.

The number of older persons benefiting from community-based care and support services increased to 35 197.

The Global AgeWatch Index Report, released on 30 September 2013, ranks South Africa second in Africa in terms of programmes implemented to secure the wellbeing of older persons.

The Global AgeWatch Index is a global study conducted by the UN and an elder rights group, the Help Age.

The Golden Games are held during Social Development Month in October.

The theme of the 2013 Golden Games was, "Building a caring society for all ages."

The games encourage older persons to live healthy lifestyles by participating in sport and other social activities.

The Golden Games are also a way to encourage all South Africans to provide support to older persons by helping them live healthier lives.

The old-age grant means test would be phased out by 2016, accompanied by offsetting revisions to the secondary and tertiary rebates.

All citizens over a designated age will be eligible for the grant, which will simplify its administration and address the disincentive to save that arises from the present means test.

Training and skills development

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

In August 2013, the DSD invited unemployed social workers to register on a new database aimed at keeping a record of all unemployed qualified social workers in the country.

The database will be used to lobby for funds to create social work posts that are required within the public service.

There are 9 456 social workers in the employ of government.

The Unemployed Social Workers Database will also inform the department about the number of unemployed social workers who have studied outside the DSD scholarship programme.

This is in response to the issue raised by communities and the media that there are qualified social workers who are unemployed.

The Draft Scarce Skills and Policy Framework of 2003 recognised social work as a scarce skill.

Government mandated the development of strategies to facilitate the recruitment and retention of such scarce skills.

The DSD has been the main driver in the implementation of this social policy.

In addition, the National Development Plan indicates that 60 000 social workers will be needed by 2030 to serve the population.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests

- advising the Minister on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards
- assisting in the promotion of social services.

Social work scholarships

As part of its efforts to develop skills and empower the youth, the DSD invited Grade 12 learners to apply for scholarships.

While recruiting, preference is given to deserving learners in rural areas, including those from child-headed households, those living in places of safety, dependants of war veterans and learners in no-fee schools.

Our Services
Call Centre - 0800 60 11 90 (toll
dha.gov.za
SOUTH AFRICA

Sport and Recreation

South African sportsmen and women excelled on the world stage in 2013/14. The country's national rugby and football teams both boosted their world rankings over the course of the year, while the Proteas remained the undisputed number one test cricket team.

Perhaps the biggest upset in football in 2013 occurred at the FNB Stadium in Johannesburg on 19 November when Bafana Bafana, ranked 61st in the world, defeated world and European champions Spain by one goal to nil. It was a welcome boost for a team which had missed out on qualifying for the 2014 FIFA World Cup hosted by Brazil.

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA)

The SRSA is the national department responsible for sport in the country. Aligned with its vision of an active and winning nation, it primarily focuses on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; manages the regulatory framework; and provides funding for different sporting codes.

The right to play and to participate in sport has been embodied in United Nations (UN) instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of all forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right, which all governments should make available to their people.

In line with the constitutional imperatives, the SRSA has been assigned the powers and functions to develop and implement national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

The SRSA aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve social cohesion, nation-building and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The SRSA's goals include:

- leading the process of sport transformation, asset development and equity in sport and recreation.
- ensuring that school sport is offered in all schools in South Africa.
- ensuring that institutional mechanisms are in place that provide equal access at all levels of participation in sport and recreation.
- contributing to social cohesion and employment opportunities through mass mobilisation in sport and recreation.
- contributing to a healthy lifestyle through the provision of recreation programmes.
- instituting a funding model to enable the

effective implementation of sport and recreation programmes.
- ensuring that high-performance systems are in place that will enable more athletes, coaches, technical officials and administrators to reach national and international standards that will contribute to an improvement in South Africa's international rankings.
- improving governance and the delivery of sport and recreation by means of effective and efficient administrative support systems; and adequate resources.
- supporting a well-governed sports community through the development of national policies and guidelines for sport and recreation in the country.
- using the potential of sport and recreation to achieve government priorities through cooperation with identified international, national, provincial; and local government departments.

Legislation and policies

During 2013/14 the National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998) was amended extensively and promulgated.

In terms of the National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), the Minister of Sport and Recreation has the legislative powers to oversee the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa. The key implementers of national policies for sport in the country are provinces and municipalities; as well as the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc), sports federations, and other agencies.

The Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act of 2010 (Act 2 of 2010) was drafted as a result of the Ellis Park Soccer tragedy and the subsequent findings of the Ngoepe Commission of Enquiry. *The White Paper on Sport and Recreation* was amended in 2011.

The department administers and controls bthe two public entities:
- Boxing South Africa, which was established in terms of the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001).
- The South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), which was established in terms of the SAIDS Act 1997 (Act 14 of 1997) as amended.

The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 29 of 1999) guides all financial activities of the SRSA. The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) regulates the conduct of business in the Public Service.

Budget and funding

The SRSA's budget allocation for 2013/14 was R1,073 billion. Of this, 73% (R815 million) was transferred to provinces, municipalities and sports federations. A large portion of it went to Provincial Conditional Grants and the School Sport Programme. The department used only R258 million for all its activities, including salaries.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is the controlling body for all high-performance sport in South Africa.

The SRSA and Sascoc cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the SRSA provides funding to Sascoc, for instance in the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

It is the national coordinating macro body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

Sascoc represents South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All-Africa Games.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS is the national antidoping organisation, funded by SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sports people.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing antidoping policy and implementing a national antidoping programme across all South Africa's sporting codes.

The SAIDS is certified in terms of the

In September 2013, Lucas Sithole won the wheelchair quad singles title at the US Open tennis tournament, becoming the first man from Africa to win a singles US Open title of any kind. Sithole, 26, defeated America's David Wagner 3-6, 6-4, 6-4 in the final. He went a perfect 4-0 in four days of play, defeating Andrew Lapthorne, Nick Taylor and Wagner twice.

International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000 standards in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS' key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international levels. The SAIDS also conducts in- and out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness for athletes; coaches; parents; sports organisation; members of the medical, pharmaceutical and sports-science professions; tertiary-education institutions; and the public. Information on national and international antidoping issues can be accessed at *www.drugfreesport.org.za*.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with counterparts worldwide to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International AntiDoping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

Boxing South Africa

Boxing South Africa's intention is to ensure effective and efficient administration of professional boxing in South Africa; to create synergy between professional and amateur boxing and to promote interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters, trainers and officials and Boxing South Africa.

It also considers applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing. It sanctions fights; implements the relevant regulations; and trains boxers, promoters, ring officials, managers and trainers.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national antidoping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

National sport federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- Aero Club of South Africa
- AFL South Africa
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa
- Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa
- Archery South Africa
- Athletics South Africa
- Badminton South Africa
- Baseball Union of Southern Africa
- Basketball South Africa
- Bowls South Africa
- Boxing South Africa
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa
- Canoeing South Africa
- Chess South Africa
- Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa
- Cricket South Africa
- Cycling South Africa
- Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa
- Darts South Africa
- Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa
- Federation Bocce
- Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa
- South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired
- Judo South Africa
- Jukskei South Africa
- Karate South Africa
- Korfball Federation of South Africa
- Lifesaving South Africa
- Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa
- Mind Sports South Africa
- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa

- Motorsport South Africa
- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa
- National Horseracing Authority
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa
- National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa
- Netball South Africa
- Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa
- Parachute Association of South Africa
- Physically Disabled Association
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa
- Powerboat South Africa
- Ringball South Africa
- Roller Sport South Africa
- Rowing South Africa
- Sascoc
- Scrabble South Africa
- Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa
- Snooker and Billiards South Africa
- Snow Sports South Africa
- Squash South Africa
- Soaring Society of South Africa
- Softball South Africa
- South African Amateur Fencing Association
- South African Bodyboarding Association
- South African Deep Sea Angling Association
- South African Figure Skating Association
- South African Fly Fishing Association
- South African Football Association
- South African Gold Panning Association
- South African Golf Association
- South African Gymnastics Federation
- South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- South African Hockey
- South African Ice Hockey Association
- South African National Archery Association
- South African National Equestrian Federation
- South African Polo Association
- South African Practical Shooting Association
- South African Rugby Union
- South African Sailing
- South African Shore Angling Association
- South African Tennis Association
- South African Underwater Sports Federation
- Surfing South Africa
- Swimming South Africa
- Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa
- Taekwondo Federation of South Africa
- Tenniquoits Board of South Africa
- Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa
- Transplant Sports Association of South Africa
- Triathlon South Africa
- Tug of War Federation of South Africa
- University Sport South Africa
- Volleyball South Africa
- Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa
- Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa
- Wrestling South Africa
- Wushu Federation of Southern Africa.
-

Programmes and projects

National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP)

The five transversal issues which permeate every building block of the NSRP and that are considered non-negotiable imperatives are reflected in five strategic objectives, namely transformation, priority codes, ethical environment, geopolitical sports boundaries and amateur versus professional sport. These issues are pertinent as they traverse the entire NSRP.

While it is envisaged that the *White Paper on Sport and Recreation* will remain relevant until 2019, the NSRP will be closely monitored annually to identify any hindrances that may affect on implementation and will be reviewed in its totality in 2020.

To fulfil the NSRP, which is anchored in the heart of the National Development Plan, R10 billion would be needed.

A school sports bursary, which offers R100 000 towards covering the costs of education and support required by pupils; opened many opportunities for sports veterans and legends, and attracted retired sports people who had registered with the department to offer help as coaches, officials and sports administrators.

Youth Development Programme

The South African Football Association (Safa) launched its most ambitious development programme in April 2013, in the form of national leagues for under-13 and under-15 boys and girls, in a bid to lift the country's football teams consistently into the top three in Africa and the top 20 in the world within the next decade.

The Safa Under-13 and Under-15 Boys and Girls League received funding from the R450 million 2010 FIFA World Cup South Africa™ Legacy Trust established following South Africa's successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup.

The programme kicked off in all of Safa's 311 Local Football Associations (LFAs) in May 2013, with coaches and talent scouts selecting LFA teams to participate in regional competitions, followed by provincial competitions in September and national competitions in December.

In the process, 1 000 boys and 1 000 girls who show potential will be identified and put through tests at high-performance centres located at the country's universities.

School Sport Programme

There are 16 priority school sport codes that government supported in 2013/14, namely: athletics, basketball, boxing, chess, cricket, football, goal ball, gymnastics, hockey, netball, rugby, softball, swimming, tennis, table tennis, and volleyball.

The SA Schools League Programme is the main programme and culminates in the annual SA Schools National Championships.

The league programme starts in February and runs until June, with schools competing in intra-school and interschool league competitions.

As this is the core of the programme, other deliverables support it with:

- the capacity development programme, which involves the training of educators and sport volunteers in sport-specific programmes.
- providing sport equipment and sport attire support to poor schools.
- the provision of cluster coordinators to aid the delivery and support of sport.
- the identification of sport focus schools where athletes are placed to further their sport development.
- the support to school sport structures at local, district, provincial and national levels.

The SA Schools National Championships took place in December 2013, in Bloemfontein. All nine provinces competed in 12 sporting codes (athletics, basketball, chess, cricket, football, gymnastics, hockey, netball, rugby, table tennis, tennis and volleyball) and two indigenous games (morabaraba and jukskei). The event was attended by more than 7 000 participants. The winning provinces at the championships were: Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, and the Western Cape. The 2014 SA Schools National Championships is expected to be held in December 2014, in Pretoria.

I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping Campaign

Safa, in conjunction with SAIDS, put Banyana Banyana players and the technical team through an hour-long anti-doping presentation in June 2013, as a way of sensitising the girls to the need to fight doping in sport.

The seminar also urged the girls to comply with the ethics of FIFA's Fair Play values. The anti-doping workshop for Banyana Banyana was aimed at helping the players understand doping control products and the ban federations can impose on players found guilty of using banned substances.

The presentation by a SAIDS project facilitator covered aspects of drugs used to stimulate athletes' performance, provided information on supplements and steroids and the adverse effects they can have on an athlete's body.

In November 2013, Ernst van Dyk and Lusapho April performed outstandingly at the New York City Marathon. Paralympian Van Dyk won second place in the wheelchair division and April came third in the men's elite category. Over 50 000 people participated in the event.

International Rugby Board (IRB) Keep Rugby Clean Campaign

The IRB's Keep Rugby Clean campaign has the backing of eight sports ambassadors, including British and Irish Lions captain Sam Warburton, Argentina captain Felipe Contepomi, Australian flanker David Pocock and South African Sevens star Cecil Afrika.

Keep Rugby Clean Day at the Junior World Championship (JWC) 2013 coincided with the official launch of a comprehensive e-learning programme that will be rolled-out on *www.keeprugbyclean.com*. The multilanguage site is an extensive learning tool that allows players, coaches, management and parents to learn about the dangers and consequences of doping.

The IRB JWC plays a leading role in preparing the future stars of the game for the rigours of test rugby and antidoping education is an essential element in that process. The IRB operates a zero-tolerance policy to drug cheats in sport, in partnership with the WADA.

ThinkSport Journal Project

The second edition of the *ThinkSport Journal* of the SRSA was published in August 2013. It includes thought-provoking writing on current issues in sport by prominent names in South African sport.

The theme of the publication is "Development and Transformation in Sport." The publication contains an extensive explanation of the Transformation Charter and a number of articles addressing sub-themes in transformation.

Little Green Book Project

The second edition of the *Little Green Book* that profiles exceptional athletes, coaches, administrators and technical officials while they are living, was produced in July 2013.

Qhubeka: bicycles for rural development

Through its partnership with South African non-profit organisation Qhubeka, Team MTN-Qhubeka helps rural African communities by giving bicycles to children in return for work done to improve their environment and their community: for every 100 trees grown to at least

30 cm, or for every tonne of waste collected, Qhubeka donates one bicycle.

No ordinary bicycle either but a Qhubeka Buffalo Bicycle, engineered specifically for African terrain and load requirements, designed by World Bicycle Relief in Chicago, United States of America (USA) and assembled and tested in South Africa.

Qhubeka, in partnership with the Wildlands Conservation Trust, has distributed more than 40 000 of the bicycles since 2004, in the process making a massive difference in the lives of rural communities lacking a fundamental element of development: transport.

Rural schoolchildren are particularly badly affected by a lack of mobility. In South Africa, of the 16 million schoolgoing children, 12 million walk to school. Of these, 500 000 walk more than two hours each way, spending four hours getting to and from school each day.

Major events

Nelson Mandela Sports Day

The annual Nelson Mandela Sports Day was launched in June 2013 in partnership with the South African Rugby Union (Saru) and Safa.

This event is consistent with the government programme to observe 67 minutes in honour of Nelson Mandela and the UN resolution on Nelson Mandela International Day. This event was expected to contribute towards social cohesion.

The inaugural Nelson Mandela Sport and Culture Day at the FNB stadium on 17 August 2013 saw, for the first time in the history of South African sport, South Africans watching both rugby and football teams playing against their opponents at the same venue. There were also cultural activities and a music concert later on the day. Proceeds of the day went to the building of the Nelson Mandela Children's Hospital.

African Nations Championship (CHAN)

South Africa hosted the CHAN tournament from 11 January to 1 February 2014. CHAN featured African national teams made up entirely of players from the domestic leagues of the different countries. As host, South Africa qualified automatically for the event and was joined from the Southern Zone by Zimbabwe, who booked their place with a win over Zambia, and Mozambique, who defeated Angola.

The other participants were Libya, Morocco, Mauritania, Mali, Ghana, Nigeria, Burkina Faso, Congo, Gabon, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi, Ethiopia and Uganda.

The draw for the tournament finals took place at the Confederation of African Football's headquarters in Cairo, Egypt on 18 September 2013.

The teams were divided into four groups of four, with the CHAN organising committee determining the four seeded teams based on the rankings of those countries.

The CHAN matches were played at the Cape Town and Athlone Stadiums in Cape Town, the Free State Stadium in Bloemfontein, and the Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane.

Fina World Cup

At the Fina World Cup in Barcelona in August 2013, Chad le Clos set a new world record in the 200 m butterfly event in a time of 1:49.04. Le Clos also won gold in the 100 m butterfly.

Cameron van der Burgh won gold in the 50 m breaststroke event in Barcelona and a silver in the 100 m breaststroke.

South Africa finished ninth on the medal table in Barcelona.

Roland Schoeman won gold in the men's 50 m breaststroke, 50 m freestyle and 50 m butterfly events at the Fina World Cup in Berlin.

Africa Cup of Nations (Afcon) 2013

The 2013 Afcon tournament was a resounding success and another reason why South Africa is a destination of choice for major sporting events. It was held from 19 January to 10 February 2013.

The three-week tournament concluded at Johannesburg's National Stadium, with Nigeria being crowned champions of Africa for a third time after beating their West African neighbours Burkina Faso 1-0 in the final.

In terms of the size and behaviour of the crowds, standard of play, organisation and general atmosphere, the tournament has set a benchmark for future Afcon tournaments.

Johannesburg City Parks in partnership with Township TV broadcast all the Afcon matches at nine public parks within the City of Johannesburg.

South African Sports Awards

The South African Sports Awards were presented at a ceremony in November 2013 where the Minister of Sport and Recreation South Africa honoured the sporting heroes who had excelled in the last 12 months.

Itumeleng "Spider Kid" Khune was the 2013 SA Sport Star of the Year.

Mapaseka Makhanya was the Sportswoman of the Year. She was champion in the 1 500 m and 5 000 m events at the South African Senior Championships in Stellenbosch. She was also crowned overall winner of the Spar Grand Prix series and claimed victory at the Gauteng Marathon, smashing the women's record by

more than six minutes in her marathon debut.

Cameron van der Burgh was the Sportsman of the Year. He is Africa's first home-trained world record holder and individual male Olympic Champion.

Sportswoman with Disability and Sportsman with Disability awards went to Kgothatso Montjane and Lucas Sithole respectively.

The Proteas were named the Team of the Year. They returned from a successful tour against Pakistan in Dubai. They drew 1-1 in a test series; won 4-1 in the One Day International series and won 2-0 in the Twenty20 series.

Other winners included:

- Administrator of the Year: Mimi Mthethwa – President of Netball South Africa
- Sports Woman of the Year: Mapaseka Makhanya – Athletics
- Newcomer of the Year: Thato Tsomole – Tennis
- Coach of the Year: Holger Losch – Tennis South Africa
- Volunteer of the Year: Zakes Mkhize – Triathlon South Africa
- Indigenous Games of the Year: Simphiwe Maphumulo – Morabaraba
- Federation of the Year: Swimming SA
- Photographer of the Year: Wessel Oosthuizen
- Journalist of the Year: Ramatsiyi Moholoa
- Developing School Team of the Year: Daniye Primary School
- School Team of the Year: Sol Plaatje School
- Recreational Bodies: Discovery 702 Walk The Talk.

National indigenous games

The 2013 National Indigenous Games Festival, which is organised annually by SRSA, took place at the Tshwane Events Centre in Pretoria from 20 to 24 September. The games played included *khokho, intonga, ncuva, morabaraba, diketo, drie stokkies, kgati, dibeke* and *jukskei,* all of which are indigenous to South Africa and played in various parts of the country. The event also provided recreational activities for young children and families.

Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Tournament

The tournament held in September 2013, was a huge success among learners, coaches and sports officials. This annual sporting event began with over 22 000 learners across South Africa, who were whittled down to 2 000 entrants who competed in the three-day 2013 tournament. Teams came from Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape, North West, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape.

Tournaments for netball, football, athletics and, recently introduced for its benefits for cognitive development, chess, took place. These games were played by girls and boys between the ages of 13 and 19, all of them coached by trained staff.

The Best Province of 2013 award went to the Free State, second place to KwaZulu-Natal and third place to the Eastern Cape.

National Sports Volunteer Corps (NSVC)

At the end of the 2012/13 financial year, 864 sports legends were registered for the NSCV programme.

The purpose is to keep a record of sporting greats in the form of sports legends and former players, athletes, coaches and administrators. This is done to use their experience in developing sport in schools. Most public and rural schools do not have specialist coaches to train their teams and to run their leagues. This initiative will help to overcome this shortcoming.

A further idea to attract the youth to participate in sport was the introduction of the sports bus. It has a "retro" look, working on a similar basis to the old-fashioned ice-cream van, which attracts people by playing an easily identifiable tune.

The department took delivery of 12 sports buses in 2013 that would transport sports stars who conduct training. The department hopes that it will encourage the youth to come out and see what is happening in the community, and participate.

Sporting achievements in 2013

One of the most exciting events in 2013 was the announcement of an athletics academy in Pretoria, aimed at high school pupils.

The project, which will cost in the region of R15 million a year, is being fully funded by an anonymous donor.

Athletics

Johan Cronj'e claimed bronze and the first -ever medal for South Africa in the men's 1 500 m event at the International Association of Atheletics Federations World Championships in Moscow in August 2013.

In May 2013, 23-year-old Reinhardt Hamman beat the African record for javelin of 43,37 m in the F37 class by throwing 44,93 m in the annual Nedbank National Championships for the Physically Challenged, securing him a gold medal in javelin; which he added to the gold medal he achieved for shot put and the silver for discus.

Biking, mountain biking, cycling

Ashleigh Moolman Pasio's 2013 was faultless.

In March; she claimed both gold medals at the South African Championships in Mbombela and then bookended her racing year appropriately in December with double gold at the African Championships in Egypt.

In between she competed in Europe against the world's best racers and moved into the top 15 in the International Cycling Union (UCI) world rankings, the highest climb ever by a South African road racer.

Daryl Impey made international headlines when he became the first South African to lead the Tour de France for two stages. He also snatched the silver medal in the men's team time-trial at the Road World Championships in Italy.

Back on South African soil, Impey won his second individual time-trial at the South African road championships.

Greg Minnaar retained his Downhill World Championship crown at the UCI Mountain Bike and Trials World Championships in Pietermaritzburg.

When it came to national representation, the South African cycling team continued its dominance in Africa, cementing its position as the number one cycling team in Africa.

Multiple South African champion, Kevin Evans, claimed victory in the elite men's road race at the Maccabi Games, increasing the tally of medals to four for the small team at the games in Israel.

The team went on to claim eight gold, four silver and four bronze medals at the African Continental Championship in Egypt.

The South Africans celebrated another milestone when national team rider Dylan Girdlestone won the eight-day Tour of Rwanda in Kigali.

Louis Meintjes was rewarded for his efforts when he was named Best African Rider of the Year in a poll of African cyclists conducted annually by La Tropicale Amissa Bongo. He claimed a silver medal at the UCI Road World Championships in Italy after finishing second.

On the local circuit, where national titles were at stake, Jay Thomson secured the biggest prize in road cycling lifting, the national men's title at the South African Road Championships in Mbombela. The gold medal followed Thomson's silver in the individual time trial.

Olympians Philip Buys and Samantha Sanders claimed the elite cross-country titles at the South African Mountain Biking (SA-MTB) National Championships in Port Elizabeth, while defending champion Tiaan Odendaal won his second consecutive downhill championship title.

Meanwhile, James Reid and London Olympic road cyclist Robyn de Groot, who recently turned to mountain biking, were crowned champions at the South African Mountain Bike Marathon Championships in Hazyview.

One highlight was the inaugural staging of the Mzansi Tour, which was won by Robert Hunter.

The Momentum 94.7 cycle challenge was won by Team Bonitas rider Willie Smith, who cruised to his maiden victory in the men's race.

Team Bonitas' Herman Fouche, claimed his first win of the season in the *Cape Argus* Cycle Tour. The women's race was won by Anriette Schoeman, who was later rewarded with a motion of congratulations in Parliament. She was praised for achieving a record seven Cape Argus titles.

Girdlestone stormed to victory in the 151 km Jock Cycle Classique, while Bestmed-ASG captain An-Li Kachelhoffer took the overall honours in the women's race.

Team Abantu's Nolan Hoffman bagged 15 road titles, which included the Amashova Durban Classic, GoWest Cycle Classic and the Engen Cycle Challenge.

In MTB racing, national women's MTB marathon champion Robyn de Groot capped a solid year with her win at the Momentum 94.7 MTB Challenge race, while Kallen Williams defended his men's title. De Groot won the national MTB marathon championships in June, as well as the women's 75 km marathon at the MTN Rooiberg event in the same month.

South Africa's team RE:CM's Waylon Woolcock and Erik Kleinhans secured the men's title at the seven-day Cape Pioneer Trek.

Cape Epic victory went to Christoph Saucer and Jaroslav Kulhavy in the men's race, while Yolande Speedy and Catherine Williamson won the women's race.

Max Knox and Nico Bell claimed overall victory in the three-day Nedbank sani2c MTB race which finished on the KwaZulu-Natal south coast.

Candice Neethling and Philip Buys bagged titles at the national mountain bike cup series.

Track cycling Olympian Bernard Esterhuizen smashed his own national record in the 200 m sprint qualifying event at the UCI Track World Cup in Mexico. He also won the men's title in the keirin at the Deer Park Nature Spring Water UCI Fastest Man (and Woman) on Wheels in Pennsylvania, USA. At the national championships in Belville, Esterhuizen won both the sprint and one-kilometre time-trial, but was beaten by Jeanne Nell in the keirin event, while Nolan Hoffman won both the scratch and omnium events.

Elite BMX racer Teagan O'Keeffe finished 12th overall in the UCI Supercross World Cup

standings, while Sifiso Nhlapo ended the season ranked 31 in the men's standings.

H4 hand-cyclist and defending road-race World Champion Ernst van Dyk won his second silver medal at the UCI Para-cycling Road World Championships in Canada.

Boxing

The SRSA wants boxing to be turned into a leading sport code in South Africa by 2017.

Vision 2017 is a strategy to resuscitate and promote boxing in all the provinces. The plan will improve the administration and safeguard the health and general wellbeing of professional boxers. Authorities have also pledged to promote, market, and sanction quality boxing events and tournaments.

To achieve these objectives, BSA has to ensure that there is strong leadership, accountability and diversity across all business units and governing spheres.

The parties further agreed that BSA would introduce guiding principles for improved revenue streams and revenue collection.

Revenues would be generated from government grants, bequests, site fees, ticket sales, registration fees, tournament licensing fees, penalties, incomes from invested surplus, sponsorship and fund-raising, broadcast and advertising income.

The National Boxing Indaba took place in September 2013 in Johannesburg. Its aim was to deliberate effective and efficient practices that would improve the administration, governance and regulation of open and professional boxing.

Themed "Galvanizing the Future of Boxing for the Boxer", the national Boxing Indaba was preceded by provincial izindaba to safeguard the interests of the boxer.

In October 2013, nine Eastern Cape boxers beat some of South Africa's big guns to secure themselves a seat on the plane to Scotland to participate in the 2014 Junior Olympics.

The nine boxers, including four boys and five girls aged between 15 and 18, won their places at the Junior Olympics by beating their opponents at a national youth boxing tournament held in Bethlehem in October.

Simpiwe Vetyeka became South Africa's first World Boxing Association world boxing champion in 20 years.

Cricket

South Africa's national team, the Proteas brushed Pakistan aside in a three-test series but six months later, Pakistan surprised South Africa by winning the first test in the United Arab Emirates, but with the rust out of their system, the Proteas romped to an innings victory in the second test to tie the series. The win was South Africa's 100th since the country's readmission to world cricket in 1992.

Three of Wisden's Cricketers of the Year were South Africans, with Hashim Amla, Dale Steyn and Jacques Kallis being recognised by the "Cricketer's bible."

Canoeing, rowing

In September 2013, South African paddlers excelled at the ICF Canoe Marathon World Championships in Copenhagen, Denmark, with Hank McGregor and Andy Birkett both claiming titles.

Hank McGregor captured the prestigious open K1 title on the final day of the competition to become world champion for the third time.

Andy Birkett, the three-time winner of the world's largest canoe race, the Dusi Canoe Marathon, meanwhile showed that his talents are not suited to the uniquely challenging Dusi only. He and Brandon van der Walt battled it out for the honours in the under-23 K1 category, with Birkett eventually edging out his South African compatriot for the title by a single second.

Kirsten Flanagan, the under-18 world surfski champion, added a silver for South Africa in the K1 women's junior race.

In the Masters World Championships, KwaZulu-Natal Canoe Club's Marion Young and Len Jenkins (sr) both came away with two gold medals.

Young, competing in her first World Championships, won K1 gold in the 35 to 39 age group and then teamed up with Angela Scruby to capture the K2 title. Jenkins, who had coached Young, managed the same feats in the men's 70 to 74 age group.

Lee McGregor teamed with Alan Hold for a K2 gold medal in the 60 to 64 age category. Hold had won a silver medal in K1 competition, while McGregor claimed fourth place against competition 10 years his junior while contesting the K1 race in the 50 to 54 age group.

Rowers David Hunt and Vincent Breet won gold in the men's pairs at the under-23 World Championships.

Golf

South Africa's Lee-Anne Pace came from behind to end a three-year title drought when she triumphed at the Turkish Airlines Ladies Open, a Ladies European Tour event, at the National Golf Club in Belek, Antalya, in May 2013.

Thomas Aiken captured the second European Tour title of his career in March 2013, winning the Avantha Masters in New Delhi, India to

become the sixth South African winner in just 12 tournaments on the European Tour.

In February 2013, South Africa Special Olympics gold medallist Thomas Lugg set a new benchmark for Special Olympians worldwide when he made a historic debut at the 2013 Sanlam South African Amateur Golf Championship at Johannesburg's Country Club.

Also in February 2013, Darren Fichardt captured the Africa Open Golf Challenge in East London to continue the run of success by local golfers in European Tour events hosted in South Africa.

Richard Sterne won his sixth title in February 2013, winning the event with a tournament record total of 27-under-par 260 in the Joburg Open at the Royal Johannesburg and Kensington Golf Club. It was the largest winning margin in the history of the event and, in relation to par, Sterne's commanding victory was the second-lowest winning total in the history of the European Tour.

South Africa's Louis Oosthuizen began 2013 in style by capturing the Volvo Golf Champions at Durban Country Club in January. With the win, he climbed to a career-high ranking of fourth in the world.

In the KeNako South Africa World Junior Tournament, Jade Buitendag, who had started the day a single shot behind the leaders, played an excellent round leaving Buitendag and Robert Burlison of England to play-off for the 2013 title, which Buitendag won.

Jason Froneman was paired with Buitendag in the team competition. The team's combined 136 strokes won the day against closest rivals, Australia's 147 strokes.

Lara Weinstein became the first player to successfully defend her title.

The KeNako Academy announced that it had signed a new three-year contract with the World Junior Golf Series, extending the KeNako South Africa World Juniors Tournament to 2016.

In June 2013, British Open Champion Ernie Els claimed his first victory in Germany when he won the BMW International Open in Munich.

A group of golfers, including South African sports celebrities Jacques Kallis, Nick Mallet, Jake White and Francois Pienaar, have raised and donated almost R650 000 to help fund several struggling community organisations.

The sports stars were among about 1 000 golfers who played in the week-long Cadiz Steenberg Classic at one of the world's top golf estates, the Steenberg Golf Estate in Cape Town. The event – one of Africa's biggest amateur golf fund raisers – has raised almost R4 million through auctions and donations over the past 12 years, providing critical aid to community organisations around the golf estate in Cape Town's southern suburbs.

Hockey

World number 11, South Africa, played world number one and 2012 London Olympic Games gold medallists, The Netherlands, in the Investec Challenge final in January 2013. In the same month, the Investec South African women's hockey team beat Austria 2-0 in their final World League round two match at Hartleyvale Stadium in Cape Town.

In September 2013, Marsha Marescia, the Investec South African women's hockey team captain, was honoured by the Minister of Sport and Recreation South Africa. The South Africa Under-21 women's hockey team had five players capped in the Investec South Africa women's senior side and were confident about delivering a good performance at the 2013 Junior World Cup women's event in Mönchengladbach, Germany.

In June 2013, South Africa's hockey captain Austin Smith netted a hat-trick of penalty corners in his team's 3-1 Test 3-1 victory over Malaysia in Potchefstroom.

Ice hockey

The South African women's national ice hockey team has participated in International Ice Hockey Federation events since the 1999 International Ice Hockey Federation (IIHF) Women's World Championship. The South African men's team was ranked 40th, and the women's team ranked 28th in the IIHF World Rankings. The 2013 IIHF World Championship Division III was an international ice hockey tournament run by the International Ice Hockey Federation. Group A was contested in Cape Town, South Africa, and ran from 15 to 21 April 2013.

Motorsport

Giniel de Villiers finished second in the Dakar Rally in a South African-built Toyota Hilux 4×4 and was named the South African Motor Sportsman of the Year. Kelvin van der Linde made South African motor-racing history when he won the 2013 Volkswagen Scirocco R-Cup Championship at the Hockenheimring circuit in Germany and Austria in October 2013 and won a place at the FIA Institute's 2013/14 Young Driver Excellence Academy.

Netball

South African netball umpire Theresa Prince began 2013 by officiating a test series between reigning world champions Australia and third ranked England in January.

The South African under-21 netball squad made a clean sweep of all their matches in their short tour of Singapore.

The under-21s played the Singapore under-21, Malaysia Schools and the Singapore Open team during their brief visit.

Rugby

The Springboks began their international season with an emphatic 44-10 win over Italy in their first game of the Incoming Series in June 2013.

South Africa staged a second-half comeback to record a flattering 30-17 win over Scotland in the four-nation tournament in June 2013.

Bryan Habana took his test try total to 50 as South Africa defeated a 14-man Samoa side 56-23 at Loftus Versfeld to win the Incoming Series final.

The Springboks got their Rugby Championship campaign off to a good start with a 73-13 annihilation of Argentina at the FNB Stadium in August 2013.

Two late penalties by flyhalf Morné Steyn sealed an unimpressive 22-17 win for South Africa over Argentina in a Rugby Championship Test in August 2013.

The new Springbok Experience rugby museum opened its doors to the public at the V&A Waterfront in Cape Town on Heritage Day 2013, and was given an enthusiastic thumbs-up by Springboks and former national captains.

The South African Sevens team finished second in the HSBC Sevens World Series, won titles in Las Vegas, Tokyo and Edinburgh, defeating New Zealand on all three occasions for the title, and also captured World Games gold in Colombia in August.

Former Springbok coach Ian McIntosh received the International Rugby Board's Vernon Pugh Award for Distinguished Service at the IRB World Rugby Conference and Exhibition in Dublin, Ireland, in November 2013.

Running

Endurance running is a popular sport in South Africa and is widely supported. It is highlighted by two ultra-marathons, namely the Comrades Marathon and the Two Oceans Marathon. Both events are world-renowned and attract large numbers of participants from across the globe.

The Comrades Marathon takes place in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans in the Western Cape.

Novice runner David Gatebe beat a highly competitive field at the 44th Old Mutual Two Oceans Ultra Marathon in April 2013, in a time of 03:08:54. Second place went to Nedbank runner Mthandazo Qhina (03:10:02), who competed in his fourth Two Oceans Ultra Marathon, while Moeketsi Mosuhli (03:10:23) from Lesotho claimed third place.

Natalia Volgina of Russia won in a time of 03:38:38, just over a minute ahead of second place Thabita Tsatsa from Zimbabwe. In third place was South African Charne Bosman.

The combined results for those athletes who completed both the Old Mutual Two Oceans Ultra Marathon and the *Cape Argus* Pick n Pay Cycle Tour in 2013 were Lindy-Lee Fölscher, who topped the women's race in a total time of 8:02:47, and Marco De Freitas, who took the men's in a total of 7:03:04.

In the half marathon, both the men's and ladies, winners established new course records despite windy conditions. Stephen Lesego Mokoka (Team Transnet) won the men's race in a time 01:03:36, beating Lusapho April (Oxford Striders) and Joel Mmone (Nedbank Development) to the finish.

In the ladies race, Ethiopian runner Biru Meseret Mengista stormed to victory in a time of 01:12:43, shaving more than two minutes off the course record, set last year by Rene Kalmer, who managed to take second place. Third place in the ladies 21 km went to Irvette van Blerk in a time of 01:15:20.

The searing heat and strong winds will have the 2013 Comrades remembered as one of the toughest Comrades marathons. Most memorable Comrades 2013 moments were:

- South African Claude Moshiywa won the 2013 race, in a time of 05:32:09. He crossed the finish line a comfortable nine minutes ahead of second-placed Jonas Buud (Sweden).
- Russian twin Elena Nurgalieva won her eighth Comrades Marathon. She is now just one win away from equalling Bruce Fordyce's nine-win record.
- Defending champion Ludwick Mamabolo finished in fourth place, after spending the last year fighting doping allegations regarding the 2012 race.
- Charne Bosman was the first South African woman across the line, in fifth place. She was just pipped at the finish line by Scottish runner, Joasia Zakrzewski.
- Alan Robb ran his 40th consecutive Comrades Marathon.
- Out of 19 907 entrants 14 336 started the race and only 10 188 finished.
- Around 7 000 runners crossed the finish line in the last 90 minutes of the event.

Soccer

Banyana Banyana finished in 11th place in the Cyprus Cup in March 2013 after defeating

Northern Ireland 5-4 in a penalty shootout at the Tasos Markou Stadium in Paralimini.

Banyana Banyana were too strong for Mozambique in an international friendly played at KaNyamzane Stadium in Nelspruit in June 2013, romping to a 5-0 victory.

Banyana Banyana played to a tough 1-1 draw with Zimbabwe in a friendly international at Sinaba Stadium in Daveyton, east of Johannesburg, in June 2013.

Bafana Bafana got their FIFA World Cup™ qualifying campaign back on track with a 2-0 victory over the Central African Republic (CAR) at Cape Town Stadium in March 2013.

Bafana Bafana's hopes of reaching the World Cup in Brazil in 2014 ended in heartbreak despite a Bernard Parker brace propelling them to an emphatic 4-1 victory over Botswana in their final qualifying match in Durban in September 2013.

The hosts needed to win the game to have any hope of reaching the global spectacle next year, which they did, but Group A leaders Ethiopia, who they needed to either lose or draw against CAR instead won the match 2-1. That enabled the East Africans to top the pool and reach the final 10-team qualifying stage at the expense of South Africa.

Orlando Pirates midfielder Tlou Segolela scored a goal in each half as Bafana Bafana defeated Lesotho 2-0 in an international friendly match played at the Setsoto Stadium in Maseru, Lesotho in June 2013. South Africa remains unbeaten against the Mountain Kingdom with five victories in six meetings and one draw.

Orlando Pirates made headlines when they reached the final of the African Champions League. However, defending champions Al Ahly, whom they had beaten 3-0 in Cairo in group play, stopped the Buccaneers in the final, winning 3-1 on aggregate.

Pirates' great rivals, Kaizer Chiefs, the most popular team in South Africa, won the Premier Soccer League title for the first time since 2004/05.

Surfing, surfski, sailing

The South African surfing team celebrated a superb double at the 2013 Reef ISA World Surfing Games in Panama in May 2013, when they were crowned the ISA World Team Champions and captain Shaun Joubert clinched the ISA Men's World Champion title.

In addition to the gold medals, South Africa collected the Fernando Aguerre World Team Champion Trophy, the International Olympic Committee (IOC) President's Trophy, and the once-off 5th Century Cup of the Discovery of the Pacific Ocean for winning the title for the first time outside South Africa and third time overall.

In July 2013, the Sapinda Rainbow project and Nelson Mandela Children's Fund bid *bon voyage* to 10 young South Africans (eight primary crew and two reserves) before they left for the United Kingdom (UK) to train for the Clipper Round the World Yacht Race, which set off from London on 1 September, at 40 000 miles, it is the longest ocean challenge on the planet.

The unique initiative aims to develop young community leaders of the future who will also raise international awareness and funds for the Nelson Mandela Children's Hospital.

The group took centre stage at the 2013 Annual Children's Celebration to mark its founder Nelson Mandela's 95th birthday. The event remains the children's way of honouring Madiba their champion.

Swimming

In September 2013, South African Olympic and Paralympic medal-winning swimmer Natalie du Toit was awarded an Honorary Member of the Most Excellent Order of the British Empire by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth of the UK for her contribution to Paralympic sport.

Four South Africans wearing only Speedo costumes, caps and goggles returned home triumphant after completing an icy and gruelling 134 km relay crossing of the treacherous Bering Strait from Russia to Alaska, USA over five days.

Ice swimmers Andrew Chin, Ram Barkai, Ryan Stramrood and Toks Viviers were part of the international relay swim in Arctic gale force winds (at times up to 44 knots), strong currents, 5 m swells and water temperatures ranging between 2° and 8°C.

The world-first epic relay adventure began on 5 August from Cape Dezhnev in remote Russia. A large Russian army vessel and two small Zodiac "rubber duck" boats supported the swimmers whose visibility in the stormy ocean was further hampered by thick fog.

Carina Bruwer, lead player of Sama Award-winning instrumental pop group Sterling EQ, successfully rounded Cape Point on 23 April 2013, finishing an 8 km extreme swim equipped only with a standard swimming costume, cap and goggles, according to openwater swimming rules.

The "Swim for Hope" was in support of the Little Fighters Cancer Trust, a local charity that offers support to children with cancer and their families.

Tennis

South Africa's leading tennis player, Kevin Anderson, missed out on winning his third career

ATP World Tour title when he went down to Spain's Tommy Robredo in the final of the Grand Prix Hassan II in Casablanca in April 2013.

Anderson, seeded second, was seeking his first clay court title after two previous titles on hard courts in the South African Open in Johannesburg and the Delray Beach International in Florida.

South Africa's junior tennis players proved they are the best on the continent by dominating the African Junior Championships at the University of North West in Potchefstroom, in February 2013.

Wayne Montgomery, the highest world-ranked junior tennis player in Africa at number eight in the world, won the boys' singles. He then teamed up with Matthew Rossouw to win the doubles.

South Africa's third title came in an all-South African girls' doubles final, won by Janet Koch and Jessica Simpson.

South Africa's leading players shone at the Airports Company South Africa South African Open at Ellis Park in Johannesburg in April 2013, but were thwarted in their quest for titles in the NEC Wheelchair Tennis Tour Super Series event.

Chess

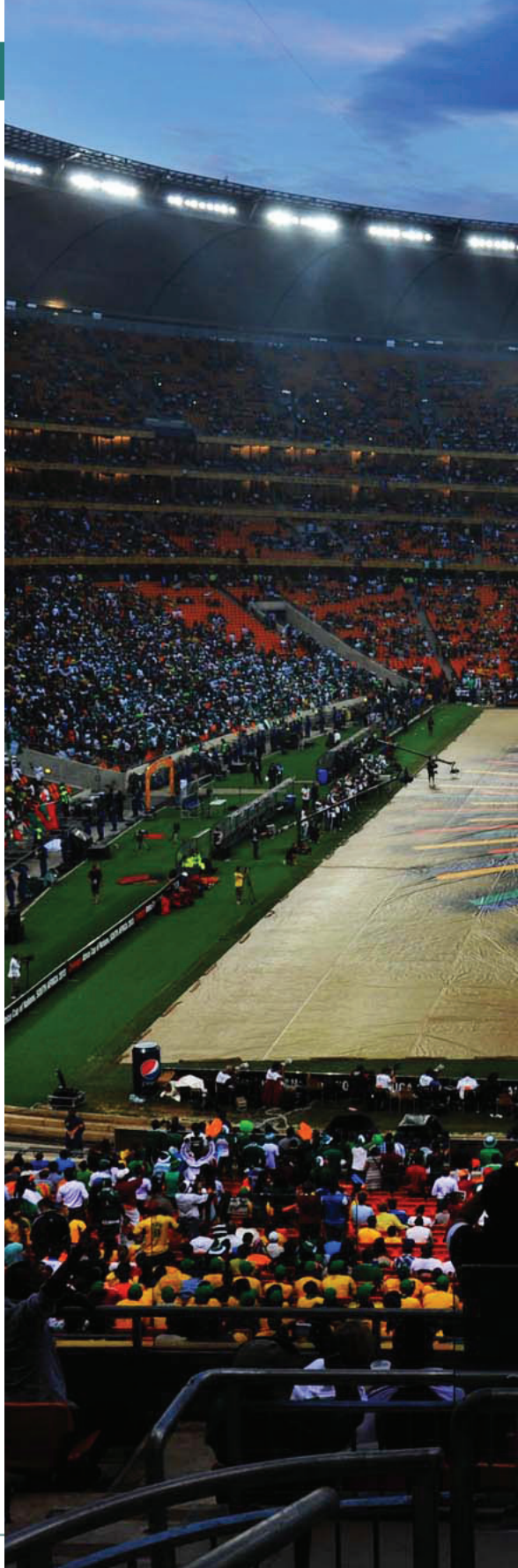
In July 2013, South Africa hosted the African Open Chess Championships for the second time in two years. Eight hundred players from 29 countries participated.

President Zuma said at the opening that sport contributed to advancing sustainable development in different sectors of South African society.

South Africa returned to international chess on 7 June 1992 when they played against Argentina in the Philippines. The Department of Basic Education encourages chess as a serious sport in schools.

South Africa intends to use chess as an educational tool, to enhance logic and lateral thinking for mathematics and sciences, which many people find difficult.

South Africa will count on the Local Organising Committee's commitment to supporting chess development programmes in underprivileged communities.



Standard
Samsung

Tourism

Tourism has taken its place as a vital contributor to economic growth, catapulting South Africa from a pariah prior to 1994 to one of the fastest-growing and most desired leisure holiday destinations in the world.

The inflow of tourists to South Africa is the result of the success of policies aimed at entrenching South Africa's status as a major international tourism and business events destination.

The purpose of the National Department of Tourism (NDT) is to be a catalyst for tourism growth and development in South Africa, and to drive the National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS).

To ensure the achievement of the sector's targets, the department supports the implementation of the NTSS and work, towards increasing the number of foreign arrivals from 9 933 966 in 2009 to 12 068 030 by 2015, and increasing the number of domestic tourists from 14 600 000 in 2009 to 16 000 000 by 2015.

In 2013/14, international tourist arrivals in South Africa grew by 10,2% year on year to almost 9,2 million.

Europe remained the highest source of tourists, with arrivals growing by 9,5% year on year to 1 396 978 tourists.

The United Kingdom (UK) was South Africa's biggest overseas tourism market: 438 023 UK tourists travelled to South Africa.

The United States of America (USA) was South Africa's second biggest overseas market, with 326 643 tourists, followed by Germany with 266 333 tourists.

France is now South Africa's fifth biggest overseas market with 122 244 tourists.

China became South Africa's fourth biggest overseas market at 132 334 tourists in 2013, up 55,9% on 2011 figures, while Indian arrivals grew by 18,2% to 106 774 visitors, and Brazilian arrivals grew by 44,7% to 78 376 visitors.

Africa remained the pillar of South Africa's tourism economy, with growth from the continent up by 8,5%.

From an African continental perspective, Nigeria and Tanzania were two of the continent's biggest growth markets during 2013/14, with tourist arrivals from these two countries growing by 37,5% and 45,8% respectively.

Business tourism has also increased, especially since the establishment of the country's first South African National Convention Bureau (SANCB) as a business unit under South African Tourism (SAT).

In the coming five years, South Africa will host over 200 international conferences, which are estimated to attract 300 000 delegates and provide an economic boost of more than R1,6 billion.

Foreign tourists spent a total of R76,4 billion in South Africa in 2013.

Legislation and policies

The NDT operates under the following legislation and policies:

The Tourism Act, 2014 (Act 3 of 2014) provides for the development and promotion of sustainable tourism for the benefit of South Africa, its residents and its visitors. It also provides for the continued existence of the South African Tourism Board, the establishment of the Tourism Grading Council, and the regulation of the tourist guide profession, among other things.

The Act aims to:

- promote the practising of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination
- promote quality tourism products and services
- promote growth in and development of the tourism sector
- enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism.

In terms of the Act, responsible tourism is tourism which:

- seeks to avoid negative economic, environmental and social impacts
- generates greater economic benefits for local people, enhances the well-being of host communities and improves working conditions and access to the tourism sector
- involves local people in decisions that affect their lives
- makes positive contributions to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage and to the maintenance of the world's diversity
- provides enjoyable experiences for tourists through meaningful connections with local people and a greater understanding of local cultural, social and environmental issues
- provides access for physically challenged people
- is culturally sensitive, engenders respect between tourists and hosts and builds local pride and confidence.
- The Tourism Act, 1993 (Act 72 of 1993), provides for:
  - promoting tourism to and in South Africa
  - regulating and rationalising the tourism industry
  - implementing measures aimed at the maintenance and enhancement of the standards of facilities and services hired out or made available to tourists
  - coordinating and rationalisating the activities of people who are active in the tourism industry
  - establishing a board with legal powers
  - authorising the Minister of Tourism to establish a grading and classification scheme in respect of accommodation establishments
  - authorising the Minister to establish schemes for prescribed sectors of the tourism industry
  - registering tourist guides
  - prohibiting any person to act for gain as a tourist guide unless he or she has been registered as a tourist guide in terms of the Act.

Budget and funding

The NTSS seeks to increase tourism's total direct and indirect contribution to the economy from R189,4 billion in 2009 to R318,2 billion in 2015 and R499 billion in 2020.

The department received additional allocations of R4,7 million in 2013/14 and R5,6 million in 2014/15 for improved conditions of service. A Cabinet-approved baseline cut of R667 000 in 2013/14 and R831 000 in 2014/15 was also made. Between 2012/13 and 2014/15, R29,6 million was allocated for spending on consultants to support the department's internal audit unit.

A few years ago, the NDT made the strategic decision to invest in the emerging markets in Africa, South America and in Asia. The results were astounding. In light of this, the department will invest R218 million over three years to grow South Africa's share of this market. It also opened offices in Angola, Kenya and Nigeria in 2013, and will expand its footprint to Ghana, Tanzania and Uganda through a hub strategy.

The department will continue to fund the Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP) with R25 million to support small, medium and macro enterprises (SMMEs) development in 2013/14.

In 2013/14, R3 million was allocated to roll out the Tourism Accelerated Apprenticeship Programme (TAAP). Consequently, 100 Further Education and Training College interns were recruited and placed at various institutions countrywide.

Role players

South African Tourism

SAT is mandated to market South Africa internationally as a preferred tourism destination to maximise the economic potential of tourism for the country and its people.

SAT encourages the trade to take domestic tourism seriously; to target products, experiences and marketing campaigns at domestic tourists and to creatively manage products and services

to meet the specific consumer needs of domestic tourists.

The "It's Here, Vaya Mzansi" campaign is an industry-wide project that relies on collaboration and partnership from the wider industry for success and to grow domestic leisure travel to meet targets. SAT partnered with more than 50 tourism companies in South Africa to create discount vouchers ranging from tour-operator services, accommodation and experiences including wine tastings, canopy tours and hiking.

In 2013, SAT opened fully-fledged offices in Angola, Brazil, Kenya and Nigeria, while also expanding its marketing presence and partnerships with the trade in South Korea, Ghana, Russia, Scandinavia, Shanghai in China, Tanzania and Uganda.

In 2014, SAT will introduce a global hub strategy created to effectively deliver the destination marketing message with a wider reach than ever before.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership

TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

Funding for TEP's small tourism business development interventions is provided by the NDT as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro-enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

Tourism Indaba

The Tourism Indaba that takes place in Durban annually is one of the largest tourism marketing events in Africa and one of the top three events of its kind in the world.

It showcases a wide variety of southern Africa's best tourism products and attracts international visitors and media from across the world.

The 2013 Tourism Indaba held from 11 to 14 May provided an opportunity to showcase South Africa and its people. To bolster growth, government has identified core markets, investment markets and tactical markets across regional Africa, the Americas, Asia and Australasia, as well as in Europe.

In positioning South Africa as a globally competitive tourism destination, government raised the profile of the country's heritage and cultural tourism assets. The heritage and cultural pavilion at the Tourism Indaba profiled and promoted the eight world heritage sites in South Africa.

Preliminary figures showed that over R40 million was injected into the Durban economy by the four-day 2013 Tourism Indaba. The number of visitors exceeded 11 000.

Indaba 2013 featured a number of additions that added value. One of these was Indaba Connect, which used new technology to enable thousands of delegates to connect and exchange information electronically. More than 11 000 users had been activated on Indaba Connect, making 136 585 connections among them and sharing 14 000 documents.

The technology brought significant green benefits and it was estimated that Indaba Connect had potentially saved 230 trees by minimising the reams of printed collateral and business cards normally available.

Another innovation, the Indaba Matchmaking Diary, proved an invaluable networking tool, with 2 744 meetings facilitated through this platform.

In another development, South Africa's benchmark-setting integrated marketing strategy has been profiled and celebrated with Meet South Africa iAmbassador blogger coverage of the country reaching 55 million people in one week on Twitter alone, and 15 of the world's most followed travel and lifestyle bloggers giving the destination phenomenal authentic endorsements and recommendations.

Indaba 2013 stand winners were named in different categories:

- Tour operator Tourvest Destination Management walked away with Platinum, while Gold and Silver went to Gauteng Tourism Signature Collection and Calypso Travels respectively.
- Transportation best stands awards went to Springbok Atlas (Platinum), Europcar (Gold) and Avis Rent-a-Car (Silver).
- Accommodation best stand winners were Leading Hotels of the World (Platinum), Molori Safari Lodge (Gold) and Tsogo Sun (Silver).

Meetings Africa

South Africa is now one of the world's emerging giants in business-event hosting. Meetings Africa 2013 took the first in a series of steps to include other destinations on the continent to eventually make Meetings Africa the single most influential and biggest pan-African business event trade exhibition on the continent.

Meetings Africa 2013 was held from 18 to 20 February and took on a distinct and proudly pan-African flavour under the theme of "Advancing Africa Together." The SANCB hosted Meetings Africa for the first time.

The SANCB introduced several changes to the Meetings Africa format to ensure greater opportunities for delegates to do business.

For the SANCB, the strategy was to broaden the opportunity to make Meetings Africa a truly African showcase, to grow the capacity of the collective African business events industry and transform regional Africa into a business event powerhouse.

Over 50 African association buyers, 200 international hosted buyers and 200 local corporate and government buyers attended.

Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the sector education and training authority (Seta) established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the tourism, hospitality and sport economic sector. Theta comprises the following chambers:

- hospitality
- conservation and tourist guiding
- sport, recreation and fitness
- tourism and travel services
- gaming and lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

Theta's main function is to contribute to raising skills or bringing skills to the employed or those wanting to be employed in their sector. This is done by ensuring people learn skills needed by employers and communities.

Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

The TGCSA's grading system is South Africa's only officially recognised system for the star grading of accommodation establishments.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are nine types of establishments:

- formal service accommodation (hotels, lodges)
- self-catering
- backpacker
- hostelling
- caravans
- camping
- meetings
- exhibitions
- special events.

Tourism Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter Council

The Tourism BBBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting BBBEE in entities within the sector

Blue Flag is a voluntary eco-label that is given to beaches that meet 32 main criteria spanning four aspects of coastal management: (1) water quality, (2) environmental education and information, (3) environmental management and (4) safety and services, which include excellent life-saving standards, top-rate parking and sparkling ablution facilities. South Africa's Blue Flag beaches and marinas for 2013/14 were:

Marinas
Thesen Island, Knysna
Yachtport, Saldanha Bay
Granger Bay Water Club, Cape Town
False Bay Yacht Club, Cape Town
Royal Alfred Marina, Port Elizabeth

KwaZulu-Natal
Southport Beach
Ramsgate Beach
Lucien Beach, Margate
Umzumbe Beach
Marina Beach
Alkanstrand Beach,
Richards Bay

Western Cape
Strandfontein Beach, Vredendal
Silverstroomstrand, Atlantis
Camps Bay, Cape Town
Clifton IV, Cape Town
Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
Mnandi Beach, False Bay
Llandudno, Cape Town
Kleinmond
Hawston Beach, Hermanus
Grotto Beach, Hermanus
Witsand, Hessequa
Lappiesbaai, Stilbaai
Gouritsmond, Hessequa
Preekstoel, Stilbaai
De Bakke, Mossel Bay
Kleinbrak, Mossel Bay
Santos, Mossel Bay
Hartenbos, Mossel Bay
Wilderness, Garden Route National Park
Buffalo Bay, Knysna
Brenton Bay, Knysna
Keurboomstrand, Plettenberg Bay
Robberg V, Plettenberg Bay
Nature's Valley, Garden Route National Park

Eastern Cape
Dolphin Beach, Jeffreys Bay
Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
King's Beach, Port Elizabeth
Kariega, Kenton-on-Sea
Middle Beach, Port Alfred
Kleinemond, West Beach, Ndlambe
Boknes Beach, Boknesstrand, Ndlambe
Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred

Northern Cape
MacDougall's Bay, Port Nolloth

- compiling reports on the status of BBBEE within the sector for the Minister and the BEE Advisory Council
- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister pertaining to BBBEE in the sector.

Programmes and projects

National Tourism Sector Strategy(NTSS)

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations global by 2020.

The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, gross domestic product (GDP) and job creation. The tourism sector is working towards creating 225 000 jobs by 2020.

To achieve all of its objectives, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism is also being targeted with South Africa looking to take advantage of hitherto untapped markets such as outbound tourists.

This strategy represents the department's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over two years in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy
- enhancing visitor experiences
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

Tourism Support Programme (TSP)

The TSP is a reimbursable cash grant designed to support the setting up tourism-related businesses. A key objective is to spread tourism investment across South Africa, while job creation is also a priority. It was introduced in 2008 and was set to end in 2014. A grant of between 15% and 30% of the investment costs for start-up and expansion was offered. Some 545 applications had been approved with an incentive value of R1,1 billion.

Originally managed by the Department of Trade and Industry, the TSP was transferred to the NDT in April 2013 in line with the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14.

This means that the department will in future also develop and implement an incentive that is better aligned with the current strategic priorities of the tourism sector.

Hospitality Youth Initiative (HYI)

The HYI is aimed at helping unemployed youth to find meaningful employment in the hospitality industry at entry level.

The programme targets unemployed youths between the ages of 18 and 35 who have a matric qualification.

The programme provides one month's theoretical training for entry into the hospitality industry.

Training focuses on communication, life skills, customer care, leadership and HIV and Aids management.

On completing the first phase,trainees are placed in tourism establishments where they receive on-the-job training with internationally accepted standards as laid down by the hospitality industry.

At the end of the training, beneficiaries receive certificates of competence and can be absorbed by hospitality establishments.

In 2012/13, 500 young people graduated as chefs and 120 were placed with established hospitality institutions.

Altogether 300 of them have enrolled for second-level training, which is equivalent to National Qualification Framework Level 5 (national diploma) and, owing to the success of the programme, another 500 young people were for the first time enrolled in the programme for 2013/14.

National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements

The National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to inconsistencies in service levels.

Research conducted in 2009 identified inconsistent service levels and a lacking culture of complaining about poor service as critical challenges in the sector.

The Service Excellence Requirements will provide a yardstick to be used by all tourism service providers in the value chain to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas, namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

The department also introduced a National Service Excellence campaign under the theme "Excellent Service Starts with Me". The campaign is aimed at creating awareness and educating consumers and tourism product owners about the requirements.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a tourism management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility protecting and conserving the natural environment, respecting and conserving, for local cultures and ways of life, and contribute to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging trend worldwide.

The NDT in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT.

South Africa has taken the lead on the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned with international standard ISO/IEC 17011.

The NMSRT comprises 41 criteria divided into four categories, namely:

- sustainable operations and management
- economic criteria
- social and cultural criteria
- environmental criteria.

Lilizela/Imvelo Tourism Awards

In May 2013, the Minister of Tourism launched the Lilizela Awards, which recognise excellence across the tourism industry. Lilizela is a Nguni word which means to ululate (an act of congratulations when someone has done something well).

The awards recognise and reward tourism players and businesses who work passionately and with pride to deliver a world-class product and service, and whose delivery grows South Africa's competitiveness as a global destination.

The awards acknowledge and applaud the efforts of people whose work sets global benchmarks in excellence. They will be rewarded across a number of broad categories: Service Excellence, Emerging Entrepreneur, Tourism Responsibility and Sustainability, Universal Accessibility and the Minister's Award.

The award categories are:

- Minister's Award: Recognises outstanding, unique, impactful people, events or organisations that have performed in a manner that urges the industry closer to tourism's 2020 vision (to grow arrivals to 15 million and create 225 000 new jobs and increase the direct and indirect contribution to the GDP from R189,4 billion 2009 to R499 billion.
- Service Excellence Award: A large portion of the decisions for this award is based on guests' feedback. Measure have been put in place to allow the public to cast their vote. The accommodation sector will be recognised during this first year, with the other service providers and operators to follow.
- Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Award: This award recognises black-owned SMMEs that have achieved notable success since starting up.
- Universal Accessibility Award: Facilities and services at accommodation establishments and venues that are accessible for people with disabilities, using the TGCSA criteria which were introduced with the normal quality grading criteria back in 2010.
- Sustainability Award: This award recognises businesses that best incorporate the three development and sustainability pillars into their business operating models.

International tourism South African Tourism

SAT's five-year plan contains five different programmes aimed at:

- increasing international arrivals, focusing on regional Africa
- promoting global visibility of the South African brand
- ensuring delivery of quality experiences using global best-practice grading systems
- ensuring quality execution of approved business plans and budgets
- providing the human resources, systems and structures to support the execution of SAT's business plans and budgets.

In an effort to make South Africa a most preferred tourism brand by 2014 and obtaining brand awareness of at least 79% in target markets SAT looked at three criteria: brand knowledge, brand journey and the conversion of positive brand awareness to sales. SAT aims to grade 9 000 properties by 2016/17.

In May 2013, South Africa was voted the top destination by members of the world's largest travel and lifestyle social network "Where Are You Now?" in the site's dream destination competition.

Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued.

If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas.

Passport holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the USA, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's means of transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa.

Several domestic airlines operate in the country.

There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

There was an 11,4% increase in the number of visitors to SANParks from 389 624 to 434 216 in 2012/13. Year-end results in 2013 revealed an overall occupancy rate of 70%; there were 527 755; and 696 234 campers. Increases in international markets were seen from Germany (16,9%), France (17,6%) and the United States of America (7,2%). SANParks has seen R848,9 million returns in tourism income in 2013.

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

Tourist guiding

The NDT entered into an agreement with the Culture, Arts, Tourism and Hospitality Sports Seta (Cathsseta) which seeks to prioritise tourist-guide training and development throughout South Africa.

The memorandum of understanding with Cathsseta also addresses areas of transformation within the tourist guiding sector, as well as the maintenance of standards through quality training and effective skills development programmes aimed at existing tourist guides.

The department engaged the Road Traffic Management Corporation to educate traffic officials throughout South Africa on how to enforce the legislation pertaining to tourist guides.

The NDT will also be working closely with the Department of Transport with a view to ensuring enforcement of tourist-guiding issues relating to tour operators and related regulations in the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009).

The department wants industry bodies that are committed to growing the tourist-guiding sector and elevating the profession to enter into formal agreements with stakeholder bodies that share department's vision.

The department undertook a process to review the *Regulations in Respect of Tourist Guiding*.

This included wide consultations with tourist guides and key stakeholders throughout the country to improve existing processes and systems to register tourist guides and ensure compliance within the sector.

The department is working with the provinces to establish a centralised database of tourist guides.

Once a viable database is in place, the department will be able to engage the departments of home affairs and justice, and other relevant authorities to ensure that the information received from the provinces is subjected to a vetting process as prescribed in the Tourism Act of 2014.

The training programmes for tourist guides taking place in provinces focus on skills development for existing tourist guides to make them more marketable and employable within the sector.

Tourism niche markets

Domestic tourism (*Vaya Mzansi*)

To increase domestic tourism, the department announced the new initiatives for 2013:

- Investing in new partnerships and relationships, including between provincial tourism marketers and SAT.
- Investing in a new marketing campaign for domestic tourists. This was launched during Tourism Month in September 2013 and targeted a broad cross-section of the South African population.

Adventure tourism

The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for the adventure tourism niche market. Activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain-biking, river-rafting – and just about any other extreme activity are supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best rock climbing and abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 white-water rafting. Opportunities for escorted or self-guided trips are also available.

For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang-gliding launch sites as well as numerous less known sites. There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides balloon and microlight flights, aerobatics and skydiving.

Thousands of kilometres of hiking trails wind through the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrains, many with adjacent mountain-bike trails.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on beaches and in the mountains. For the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in game reserves. The 216-metre Bloukrans Bridge on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Business tourism

South Africa remains one of the top 15 long-haul business-events destinations in the world and is the premier business-events destination in Africa.

The business-events industry was identified as an important contributor towards the NTSS's target of 15 million international arrivals by 2020.

Government recognises business-events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the first SANCB to further promote growth in the conferencing industry. The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business-events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

Over the next five years, South Africa will host 200 international conferences that will attract an estimated 300 000 delegates and an additional R1,6 billion to the economy.

Cruise tourism

The department aims to help position the tourism sector in such a manner that its economic benefits become a reality for all South Africans.

It is exploring ways to ensure that South Africa increases its global competitiveness by identifying and developing niche markets.

The department works closely with the cruise line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has to offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest-emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. This category accounts for 40% of international tourism.

The National Heritage and Cultural Strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources with mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products and to diversify the sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

South Africa's diversity is reflected in its cultural tourism with many destinations commemorating the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture to European settlement, apartheid rule and the struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal, which is home to the ancient rock art of the San; the Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg, which is the richest hominid fossil site in the world; Mapungubwe in Limpopo, one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD; and Soweto's Heritage Trail, a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation struggle, such as the student uprising on 16 June 1976.

Tourism Month is an annual celebration held in September to focus on the importance of tourism to South Africa's economy.

Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's peoples.

Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to have extensive growth potential.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also perform organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora and varied landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year.

Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa has 19 national parks as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves. Three of the country's eight UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) world heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

South Africa's popularity as an avi-tourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats. Birdlife South Africa, South Africa's national birding organisation has more than 8 000 members and 40 branches nationwide.

Rural tourism

The NDT's National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating community-driven bed-and-breakfast operations, catering for international and domestic tourists.

In supporting the geographic spread of tourism and in particular tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the department is focusing on rural communities.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. Sunset music concerts at the garden are held on Sunday evenings during summer, from late November until early April.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche offerings in the domestic and international markets.

South Africa's competitiveness improved from 66th to 55th out of 139 countries that are rich in natural and cultural resources.

Sustainable development will be achieved if the people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry.

More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

The world-class sporting events on South Africa's annual calendar include the:

- annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 10km course
- Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, which attracts 18 000 openwater swimmers annually
- Comrades Marathon.

In September 2013, the third annual Sports Events and Tourism Exchange (SETE) was hosted in Durban to outline the implementation of the Sport Tourism Strategy that was adopted at the 2012 conference.

SETE 2013 is also working to position Africa as the arena that has the potential and capabilities required to host international events and sports teams (especially during the European winter for training purposes).

It also encourages visitors to use their time wisely when travelling to an African country by experiencing all the tourism offerings available.

Township tourism

Township tours have the potential to present South Africa's culture and heritage and the NDT wants packages to be developed to achieve that goal.

Government wants to capitalise on job-creation opportunities in this sector.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and play, an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries-old reputation for making high-quality wine. *International Wine Review*, one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine, has rated South Africa's wine tourism the best developed in the world.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast.

All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme.

Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

Regional tourism

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other. One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry, which contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants, to theatres, live music and museums.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the Houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour.

There are also trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multi-media exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built from granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896.

The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100 ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend Able Seaman Just Nuisance stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is renowned for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors.

Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary.

The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and hosts an international windsurfing event.

Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk, Century City, is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch is the oldest town in South Africa. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country.

The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the mid-19th centuries.

The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys. The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch.

Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children. The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate the arrival in 1688 of the Huguenots who were predominantly French. In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route. There is also an annual book/literary festival in Franschhoek.

Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000 m^2 greenhouse. The butterfly park is located at the crossroads of the Paarl, Stellenbosch and Wellington wine routes, near Klapmuts.

The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre is on 15 ha situated between Klapmuts and Stellenbosch. Focusing mainly on African wildlife, Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

Drakenstein Lion Park was established as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, is near Stellenbosch, comprising the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley.

The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

On Le Bonheur Estate visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via ramp-ways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors can touch a baby crocodile, and during summer months, witness them being fed.

Paarl is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1 km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos supports many south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and orange-breasted sunbird. The Afrikaans Language Monument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Wellington is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the ochre san rock art trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Bonnievale on the Breede River, features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as bird watching and river boating.

Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, and roses, Robertson is known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses." It is known for its connoisseur-quality wines and its thoroughbred horses. Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Little Karoo. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist TO Honiball.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th-century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area. Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines.

Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley with its lush

In July 2013, Cape Town was named the fourth-best city in the world by *Travel + Leisure* magazine.

Singita in the Kruger National Park was voted the best hotel in the country, ending in the third spot worldwide.

vineyards and panoramic views or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

Garden Route

The Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of the southern coast, incorporating the stretch of coastline which includes Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Named for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails. Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide.

The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline.

Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War block-houses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphi-watching along the extensive coast.

The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere. George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, Outeniqua Pass, railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests.

The Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species, is popular among bird watchers. Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and bird watching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. The abundant fynbos and forest settings host over 200 species. Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries presents the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer. Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails. The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town.

The Klein-Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the Cango Caves, a series of subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the cave features magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers. Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public.

The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit. De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Little Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water-wheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley. At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/ South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land is five times the size of Great Britain. Here, visitors will find the Earth's largest variety of succulents on Earth. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo." The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park, on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village that was devastated by floods about a century after it was established, was rebuilt afterwards. It is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains. It is the ideal place to sample Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning).

Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57 km long (but two-hour drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters.

During April every year, Lambert Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival. The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous-fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Swartland region is known for its wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars.

The entertainment venue "Evita se Perron" is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers. Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Bird watching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species.

Saldanha is a water sport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Visitors can enjoy fishing (snoek in season), hiking and whale and bird watching.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide, while Lambert Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation.

The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town. Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February).

The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape.

The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders. At Velddrif/Laaiplek visitors can indulge in *bokkems* (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-Op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. World-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days. The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveld-huisie is an example of a typical Sandveld dwelling.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt.

Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Wuppertal, which is well-known for its rooibos and buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route.

The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Co-Operative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest co-operative wine cellar under one roof in the Southern Hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean. Klawer was named after the wild clover that grows in the area. During the flower season, the area is a riot of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting. Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge.

Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-tonne deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa.

The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924.

The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa east of Cape Town, lies the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by Unesco in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort and famous for the best land-based whale watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale watching.

The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach.

Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services.

The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum.

The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline.

The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999. The Agulhas National Park is a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain of 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters cleave into the Indian and Atlantic oceans.

The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the Southern Hemisphere. Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony. The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well-known for its young-berries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture.

The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance. Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in 1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas.

The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective.

Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works.

The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein.

A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities.

Pan Africanist Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley.

A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

Barkley West attracts many water-sports enthusiasts and anglers. Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park.

The park is not only home to large raptors, but also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors can view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari," Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water per day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible. The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment. The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.

Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, which features a 100m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas 11 waterwheels are still used. Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River. At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest.

The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties," who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The Kalahari Desert SpeedWeek was held at Hakskeen Pan, 200 km north of Upington during September 2013.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m^2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-hectare sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

Namaqualand

The Namas are the indigenous people of Namaqualand. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf. Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay has become known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade. Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the

Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000 ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns. The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvals-pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top Merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydroelectric Power Station within the dam's wall. The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near Brandvlei lies Verneukpan where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood. The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone. A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of NP van Wyk Louw, well-known Afrikaans author and poet, is also known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland. The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome, the world's only arid hotspot, stretches 116 000 km² from the southwestern Cape into southern Namibia.

The landscape offers seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus are ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses." The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archae-

ological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve completely surrounded by a city. Bloemfontein hosts the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September every year. The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of the area.

There is an Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry. The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain.

This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snow-capped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a backdrop to this pristine area.

Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State," owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area. Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains and follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south.

The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its asparagus and cherry farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination.

The bird watching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I.

Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m flat mountain, is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain.

Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings. Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer. Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola Mountain Region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart where troutfishing, hiking, riding and bird watching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. It also hosts the annual Buoy openwater swim and the Isuzu National Sailing Week held annually in April in Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

Bay World has an oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens. These include: St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba, bird watching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region is the home of a major section of the isiXhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of Mandela. In Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure through a display reflecting the life and times of Mandela.

Mandela received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors. To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa people call this place Izi Khaleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds. The southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges lie in East Griqualand.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, which is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and their population stands at about 300.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Smithfield, Barkly East, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp, Queenstown and Rhodes where a high-altitude cold swim was held in 2013 and 2014.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches. Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints" because of the more than 40 churches in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy. Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve has abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the frontier wars located in the area.

East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa's only river port city. It was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species. The museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles. There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word *tsitsikamma* is derived from the Khoekhoen words *tse-tsesa* meaning "clear," and *gami* meaning "water." South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a black-water tubing experience on the Storms River.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed.

Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve has one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection.

The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing eco-tourism areas in the country.

The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures.

Bela Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures.

Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including among others, the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe archaeological site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a World Heritage Site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000 ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, yielded the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve, enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog and the Injaka Dam at Bushbuckridge.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors. A number of game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld.

Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation, is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg.

The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa supporting more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his *Mafikeng Diary*, and the Mahikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is in the centre of North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. It is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone," or pyrophyllite, is found and mined. The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province.

Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil.

In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war.

The Old Farmhouse built in 1910 houses a unique African collection.

The Old Water Mill built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club.

The event consists of 42,2km, 21,1km,10km races and a 5km fun run.

San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Koranna-fontein.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting.

The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species.

Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site.

This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The 60 000 ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon trips, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available.

The reserve has the second-largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersport and an artificial beach. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River.

The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – “The Place Where the Sun Rises” – epitomises every traveller’s dream of the true African experience.

Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the Middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and bird watching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld.

The different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people’s history and cultures.

Mbombela

Mbombela is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld.

The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long walking route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Mbombela on a chartered route called the Valley of the Olifants Route. Rovos Rail trains also travel to Mbombela.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Mbombela is well known as an artist’s haven

and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The Blyde River Canyon is a 26km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.

The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dating back to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major draw card.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing. Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology. The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossom in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the San paintings embossed in some rocks. The region also

holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands are a paradise with their variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface. There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends."

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold" is the commercial powerhouse of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still has natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for watersports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

The broader 47 000 ha Cradle of Humankind site has many caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a World Heritage Site. About 40% of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils. A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area during ongoing work. The famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old, were discovered at the Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami.

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70m-high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria is a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. There is a museum adjacent to this site. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan has developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here, visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and other places of historic interest.

The Absa Money Museum lies in downtown Johannesburg. Historical records stretch all the way back to the beginnings of Johannesburg, and displays ranges from fairly early money forms, like cowrie shells and Venetian glass beads, through to gold coins recovered from sunken ships. The scientific study of money and its history, or Numismatics, is the essence of the museum's displays.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, which offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

The James Hall Museum of Transport was founded in 1964 and houses an historical collection of various modes of land transport used in South Africa, dating back 400 years.

The South African Museum of Military History holds an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The two-bedroom house where Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto, is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955. The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Pieterson Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory opened its doors to the public following the death of Mandela, in December 2013. The Nelson Mandela Foundation's Centre of Memory is open to the public as a place of memory-sharing and reflection on the life and times of Nelson Mandela.

At the Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg visitors can families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice. The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

People once imprisoned at the Constitution Hill facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as Daisy de Melker. The grace of this Victorian-style building belies the pain and suffering that occurred within. This is the place where the likes of Winnie Madikizela-Mandela, Albertina Sisulu, Fatima Meer and many other political activists were held.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, such as the Union Buildings, which celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for the presidential inauguration of former President Nelson Mandela in 1994, as well as those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999, and 27 April 2004, and of Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009, and 24 May 2014. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day, and Freedom Day. In December 2013 a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

Church Square is built around a statue of the former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, Paul Kruger, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history. Once completed, the 35 ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer War/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include milking, butter- and candle-making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the South African Air Force Museum, Police Museum, Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silverware and porcelain.

Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family home. A popular arts and crafts market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game including rhino, hippo and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, which is the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal, is a subtropical region of lush and well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Swaziland and Mozambique to the north.

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts.

Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrance, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the Southern Hemisphere.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile and Dolphin Mile open-water swimming events, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashova-shova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country – the Spar Mercury Ladies 10km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and has rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Walk-in aviaries hold many varieties of indigenous and exotic birds.

The maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa, are in the Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff.

North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast." The rarely seen larger humpback dolphins are also found here.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give it an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th-century king who established dominion here some 200 years before King Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of South Africa's largest game parks. Visitors should look out for the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings." A joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom. At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and was reconstructed. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The iSimangaliso isiZulu word meaning "miracle" Wetland Park is one of the jewels of South Africa's coastline, with a unique mosaic of ecosystems – swamps, lakes, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands, coastal forests and grasslands – supporting diverse animal, bird and marine life.

It is South Africa's third-largest park, spanning 280 km of coastline, from the Mozambican border in the north to Mapelane, south of the St Lucia estuary, and made up of around 328 000 ha of pristine natural ecosystems – including swamps, lake systems, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands and coastal forests.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2.

Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, is prolific. There is also a variety of mammals and a 140m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward offers safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers await the arrival of the game fish following the sardines.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg has various museums, including the Msunduzi Museum that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal, a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a beautiful herb garden, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Bird watching, horse riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000 ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl.

The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracted 18 000 swimmers in 2013.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered bearded vulture. The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here. The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal KwaZulu-Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. There are trout hatcheries in the Kamberg Reserve area and at Cathedral Peak.

Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The nearby Swamp Nature Reserve attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak has examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest.

Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is worth a visit.

Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.

The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersports can also be enjoyed. The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Power-boating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage are other interesting places to visit.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, and local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Transport

Sound and solid transport infrastructure remains crucial to generating economic growth, alleviating poverty, reducing inequality and increasing domestic and international competitiveness.

The Department of Transport's (DoT) spending in 2013 focused on maintaining road infrastructure, upgrading rail infrastructure and services, and constructing and operating transportation infrastructure.

The DoT's effort to make transport the heartbeat of the economy continues.

The department was finalising the National Transport Master Plan (Natmap). It will constitute a long-term plan to position transport as an enabler for social and economic development by rolling out infrastructure and services that respond to the needs of all South Africans and ensure the country meets its millennium development goals (MDGs).

Natmap will focus on integrated transport planning to ensure that the different modes of transport complement each other.

Natmap and the National Development Plan (NDP), which sets out critical national policy goals to be achieved by 2030. Both call for implementing the user-pay principle in a manner that does not crush the working class and poor people.

Within the prevailing economic climate, the fiscus alone is not able to finance the infrastructure backlog in South Africa.

Budget

In the 2013/14 financial year, the department's budget was R42,3 billion, of which R21,9 billion went to state-owned companies (SOCs) and agencies, which were the department's delivery agencies.

The Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa's (Prasa) Fleet Renewal Programme was concluded in December 2012. This will see a new coach assembly plant being built in Gauteng.

Some 8 300 direct jobs and a further 22 000 indirect jobs.

By March 2013, the total capital spend of R6,2 billion had been reached.

The South African National Road Agency (Sanral) received R3,454 billion for current operations and R7,043 billion for capital infrastructure.

Of the R42,3 billion allocated, R18 billion was transferred to provinces and municipalities towards road maintenance.

Effective coordination with provinces and municipalities is needed to ensure the department is not only a conduit of funds to other spheres of government, but that it takes the lead in monitoring and evaluating the implementation of government programmes.

The spending focus over 2013/14 was predominantly on maintaining road infrastructure; upgrading the rail infrastructure and services; and constructing and operating public transportation infrastructure.

Expenditure on these three areas included transfers, which comprised an average of 96,1% of the total budget allocation of the DoT over the medium term.

Grants were allocated to the:

- Provincial Road Asset Maintenance Grant – R8,696 billion
- Rural Roads Asset Management System Grant – R52,2 million
- Public Transport Infrastructure, Operations and Network Grants – R5,55 billion.

Other transfer payments included the:

- Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC) – R167 million
- Railway Safety Regulator (RSR) – R46,5 million
- The Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA) – R25 million
- South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa) – R6,4 million
- South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA) – R18,155 million
- Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (RTP) – R522 million.

Legislation

The DoT is guided by the following legislation and policies:

- The Transport Laws and Related matters Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013) aims, among other things, to amend the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency to collect toll on behalf of Sanral.
- The National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009) clarifies the concurrent roles and responsibilities of the different spheres of government in relation to public transport. It also consolidates public transport planning, service delivery, regulation and monitoring in the municipal sphere, establishes the national and provincial public transport regulators and enhances overall transport regulatory functions.
- The incorporation of the Shosholoza Meyl train service and the Autopax long-distance bus services into Prasa was finalised in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Service Amendment Act 2008, (Act 38 of 2008). Autopax will continue providing long-distance bus services that complement the long-distance rail services provided through Shosholoza Meyl.
- The National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 2008, (Act 64 of 2008), and the Cross-Border Transport Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 12 of 2008), allow for better road-traffic enforcement and improved cross-border regulation.
- The pilot project for the implementation of the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (Aarto) Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998), a demerit point system for traffic offences, has been rolled out in the municipal areas of Tshwane and Johannesburg. The system is expected to be extended to all municipal areas following the establishment of the RTIA, which will administer the system.
- The Civil Aviation Act, 2009 (Act 13 of 2009), was promulgated to harmonise and rationalise safety and security legislation for aviation to ensure compliance with International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards.
- The Air Service Licensing Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 21 of 2008), addresses corporate governance issues relating to the Air Services Licensing Council. The department plans to implement the airlift strategy and improve aviation safety and compliance with the standards set by the United States of America (USA) Federal Aviation Administration's international aviation safety assessment, and by the ICAO, an organ of the United Nations (UN).
- The Road Accident Fund (RAF) Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005), came into effect in August 2008 with the publication of regulations guiding, primarily, the assessment of injuries. The Act creates an equitable, affordable and sustainable system for victims of road accidents and their families. In November 2009, Cabinet approved the policy to provide benefits to road-accident victims as a form of social security and to move away from the current fault-based systems.
- The RAF: The no-fault policy for the proposed Road Accident Benefit Scheme was finalised. This will form part of the Comprehensive Social Security System (CSSS) and provide a more sustainable, affordable, equitable and reasonable scheme. It will also further eliminate disparities regarding access to treatment and compensation.
- The RAF (Transitional Provisions) Act 2012, (act 15 of 2012) provides for transitional measures regarding certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited to R25 000 under the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996) prior to 1 August 2008.

Role players

The DoT has established 12 public entities to deliver on certain elements of government's operational activities, namely the Airports Company South Africa (Acsa), Air Traffic and

Navigation Services (ATNS), the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), Prasa, the Ports Regulator, the RSR, the RAF, the RTIA, the RTMC, the SACAA, the Samsa and Sanral. These entities report to the Minister of Transport. Commercial role players include Transnet, South African Airways (SAA) and SA Express (SAX).

Airports Company South Africa

Civil aviation serves as a major catalyst for global economic activities and is vital to trade and tourism.

Acsa maintains an efficient, reliable and sustainable South African aviation industry, that maintains control over international air transport services within a well-defined regulatory framework, and is flexible enough to cater for changing needs and circumstances.

South Africa's airport network consists of 135 licensed airports, 19 military airports and up to 1 300 unlicensed aerodromes.

Acsa was established in 1993 to own and operate the nine principal South African airports, including the three main international gateways of OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport. Acsa is responsible for processing between 93% and 95% of all passengers departing on commercial airlines from airports within South Africa.

OR Tambo International Airport is the main international air gateway into South Africa and the SADC region.

The airport processes almost 19 million passengers and over 200 000 air traffic movements a year and also facilitates over 300 000 tonnes of cargo a year. It is projected to handle 30 million passengers and 360 000 air traffic movements by 2024.

Cape Town International Airport in the Western Cape has developed a strong regional presence through established business networks and partnerships. It handles an annual passenger throughput of 8,5 million people and up to 89 000 air traffic movements. The airport is projected to handle 12,6 million passengers and 177 000 air traffic movements by 2024.

King Shaka International Airport, located to the north of Durban, is a greenfield handling 4,7 million passengers and 44 000 air-traffic movements a year. The airport is projected to handle 7,3 million passengers and 64 000 air traffic movements by 2024.

Acsa recognises the need to unlock other sources of revenue to boost the company's revenue growth by identifying and participating in select airport management and operating concession opportunities as part of its overall growth strategy.

In May 2013, SA Air Link became the first airline to land on the new runway of the Mthatha Airport. The landing marked the beginning of a brighter future for the airport as it could now accommodate bigger aircraft following the completion of the new runway.

The National DoT allocated R465 million for the upgrade project.

The Eastern Cape DoT is positioning Mthatha Airport through a three-phase programme to serve as a passenger and freight hub linking road, rail and air transportation and effectively becoming a gateway to the eastern part of the province.

The Mahikeng Airport City Project is expected to pave the way for job creation and economic growth. In September 2013, the airport underwent a multimillion rand infrastructure upgrade, making it compliant with the regulations of the SACAA and the IAO. The Mafikeng International Airport will be repositioned as an airport city, while the former Mahikeng Industrial Development Zone will be designated as a special economic zone. Development of the freight hub at the airport started with the completion of an air, road and rail transport strategy and upgrading of the airport.

The N8 Airport Development Node to be undertaken by the Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality will be the single largest mixed development initiative ever undertaken by the municipality. The project will have two phases, with key characteristics of Phase 1 including an International Convention Centre and a cargo terminal during Phase 2.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

ATNS provides safe, efficient and cost-effective air traffic management solutions and associated services on behalf of the state, in accordance with ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices and the South African Civil Aviation Regulations and Technical Standards.

ATNS is responsible for air traffic control in approximately 10% of the world's airspace and is

The South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), Aeronautical Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS) and Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) will invest R52,4 million in a scarce and critical aviation skills development and sector transformation programme. To address the challenge of attracting and retaining skills in the aviation industry, the SACAA has entered into an agreement with the University of Pretoria to participate in training students in aerospace medicine. The first 10 degrees were conferred in March 2013.

Aviation agencies, in conjunction with the Department of Transport and relevant stakeholders, have developed an all-inclusive Civil Aviation Transformation Strategy. The strategy is the first in the country aimed at addressing transformation issues, which show that 4% of pilot licence holders are previously disadvantaged individuals.

the sole provider of air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa. ATNS trains air traffic controllers from South Africa, Africa and the Africa-Indian Ocean area.

South Africa is one of the 36 council members of the ICAO Council, serving under Part II and is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environment issues.

Through the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and African Civil Aviation Commission mechanism the department works to prevent an EU blacklist of African states and unilateral imposition of the European Union Emission Trading Scheme.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA was created to regulate cross-border road transport by providing an unsurpassed service comprising advising, facilitating and law enforcement. It plays a major role in promoting economic development within the SADC region by easing access to cross-border markets and improving the regulatory environment for trade and transport within the region.

Cross-border road transport is regulated through multilateral and bilateral road transport agreements, concluded with various SADC member states and in line with the stipulations of the SADC Protocol on Transport Communication and Meteorology.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

Established in 2009, Prasa merged the operations, personnel and assets of the South African Rail Commuter Corporation, Metrorail, Intersite Property Management Services, Shosholoza Meyl and the Autopax (Translux and City-to-City) long-distance bus company. As part of the process of integrating these entities, the role of Intersite was redefined to support Prasa's new strategic direction and objectives.

In July 2013, the Prasa board finalised the details of the 30% black economic empowerment component of the Gibela consortium, which increased black economic participation in the contract to 41%. The consortium is led by Alstom, which in December 2013 won the first Prasa contract to manufacture new rolling stock.

Alstom will establish a new manufacturing plant for rolling stock in Ekurhuleni. The new plant will create about 33 000 direct and indirect jobs and ensure that about 65% of each coach is produced from local inputs.

Prasa aims to spend R123,5 billion on its fleet renewal programme, to procure 7 224 coaches to replace its ageing fleet, through two 10-year contracts. For 2014/15 and 2015/16, R4 billion and R5,3 billion have been set aside respectively under Prasa's capital investment programme to fund new rolling stock. However, 20 train-sets were manufactured overseas and imported, to ensure that the first new trains are ready to roll by the first quarter of 2015.

The new coaches will gradually replace the current 4 600 coaches. The coaches will be used by Metrorail as well as in inter-city travel on a number of corridors such as between Maputo and Johannesburg.

As part of its capital investment programme, Prasa will be spending R32 billion between 2013/14 and 2015/16 on new rolling stock, upgrading the current fleet, improving stations and installing new signalling and rail systems.

In 2013/14, Prasa budgeted to spend R7,5 billion on its capital investment programme, and R13,9 billion in 2015/16.

In all, 134 of the 500 stations that Prasa operates will be modernised at an expected cost of R5,4 billion.

Prasa is also extending rail links in a number of areas, including:

- the R2 billion Bara link to provide new rail linkages in Soweto
- the R1,5 billion Motherwell rail link to extend rail lines into Motherwell, Port Elizabeth
- a R3,2 billion rail link between Cape Town and Cape Town International Airport
- a R2,5 billion rail extension between Daveyton and Etwatwa.

A feasibility study was also under way on the Moloto rail corridor linking Gauteng with Mpumalanga, while Prasa was also investigating the possibility of a rail link to Durban's King Shaka International Airport, Dube Trade Port and Ballito, in KwaZulu-Natal.

In September 2013, the Minister of Transport unveiled 48 refurbished 10M5 train coaches at Naledi station in Soweto. The trains were refurbished at a cost of R1,8 billion. The 10M5 trains include a completely new body and improved commuter comfort and control systems constructed from an innovative modular manufacturing system.

Commuters enjoy better seating, lighting suitable for reading and ventilation, improved braking and electronic interiors.

The NDP acknowledges that the Gauteng-Durban corridor is vital to the future of the national economy, and should be designated as a national competitiveness corridor. It accounts for about 46% of gross domestic product and would build on the DoT's 2050 Vision for the Durban-Gauteng freight corridor.

The corridor should be integrated as part of the anticipated transnational Durban-Dar es Salaam corridor.

According to the NDP, by 2030, the Durban-Gauteng-Free State logistics corridor should exemplify how to strengthen and optimise freight corridors.

As the corridor that handles most of the country's high-value freight, it is the first priority. It is also the most strategic corridor to achieve a shift of freight from road to rail by overcoming rail's main drawback (lack of intermodal flexibility) by improving the performance of terminals on either end.

It could demonstrate that the corridor improvement entails aligning the interests of cities with authorities across all tiers of government, as well as the transport operators that connect the intervening space.

In addition to the Coega initiatives, Transnet will revive and open some key railway lines, such as the Mthata-Amabhele line, Sterkstroom-Maclear line, Cookhouse-Blaney line, Stormberg-Rossmead line, Rossmead-Klipplaat line, Klipplaat-Port Elizabeth line, and Alicedale-Grahamstown line. In October 2013, the Minister of Finance announced that government has channelled additional funding into the transport sector to support Prasa's procurement of rolling stock in a bid to implement South Africa's priority projects.

Investment in projects by SOCs, including the Prasa's R123 billion fleet renewal programme, account for the largest investments in economic infrastructure by the public.

National Ports Regulator

The NPR was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA).

The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.

The TNPA is the largest port authority in Africa. It owns and manages ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports.

Park Station, Africa's largest railway station, has been transformed into an integrated public transport facility, and was refurbisted to accommodate retail shops and restaurants. The station is the central railway station in the city of Johannesburg and is also the terminus of Shosholoza Meyl long-distance services to Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth, East London, Bloemfontein via Kimberley, Komatipoort via Nelspruit and Musina via Polokwane.

Besides being the port landlord, it also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Based on the *White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002)*, the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

Railway Safety Regulator

The RSR oversees safety in the railway transport industry, through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement, guided by an enabling regulatory framework, including regulations and safety standards. Over the medium term, the RSR will continue to strive to work towards an effective railway safety compliance regime.

Road Safety and Road Accident Fund

With road safety being a challenge, the department is working on education, engineering and awareness campaigns to reduce the carnage. Fatalities and critical injuries mean more claims against the RAF. As government continues to shape the basis for its CSSS plans, there is an increased need for the RAF to fulfil its socio-economic mandate, while remaining financially sustainable, and being a customer-centric organisation.

In March 2013, direct claims worth more than R18,6 million were settled in a single day in Mthatha.

By the end of March 2013, 15 communities and more than 8 000 customers had been assisted and settlement offers to the value of R102 million been made during the outreach campaigns.

The RAF has also intensified its Patient Outreach Programme, which provides care to road accident victims who have suffered permanent injuries and require medical attention for life.

The organisation has implemented programmes that will see it transforming into an efficient service provider. Some of these initiatives include:

- streamlining business processes
- establishing dynamic leadership
- achieving quicker turnaround times for the settlement of claims
- improving the organisation's reputation.

For this reason, the RAF has realigned its structure and processes.

The new structure allows for specialisation and has created over 200 new positions. It is anticipated that more positions will be created in the next two years.

From September 2013, people living around Polokwane were able to claim money owed to them from the RAF.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA mandate is predicated on the objective of decriminalising road traffic infringements and dealing with them through administrative justice processes, thereby freeing the courts to deal with more serious crimes, including excessive speeding and driving under the influence.

The RTIA's objectives include:

- administering the procedures to discourage the contravention of road traffic laws and to execute the adjudication of infringements
- enforcing penalties imposed against people contravening road traffic laws
- providing specialised prosecution support services
- undertaking community education and community awareness programmes to ensure that individuals understand their rights and options.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC is responsible for coordinating road-traffic management across the three spheres of government. The core mandate of the corporation is to improve traffic-law compliance and reduce road fatalities.

In line with the UN MDGs and the Moscow Declaration on Road Safety, which calls for a Decade of Action for Road Safety, the corporation set itself goals over the medium term to reduce the road fatality rate by 25%. This objective would be achieved by:

- enforcing driver and vehicle fitness requirements
- coordinating effective prosecution of moving traffic violations
- implementing the national traffic law enforcement code.

The corporation also reviewed its strategic focus and developed a five-year strategic plan to improve financial management.

The RTMC will continue with the zero-tolerance approach against traffic offenders, while a comprehensive public media campaign and consultative programme are underway to educate the public about the Aarto Act, 1998.

The allocation of demerit points to infringers will be introduced nationalwide.

By May 2013, the RTMC had passed its target of stopping and checking a million vehicles a month. Its new target is 1,1 million vehicles a month.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil aviation safety and security standards. It performs administrative and oversight control over 11 801 registered aircraft, 2 022 licensed aircraft maintenance engineers, 430 air maintenance organisations, 303 air operating certificate holders, 200 aviation training organisations and 16 755 aeroplane and helicopter pilots.

Year-on-year accident comparisons between 2011/12 and 2012/13 indicates a 7% drop in reported fatalities.

In November 2013, Cabinet gave the SACAA approval to host together with the, ICAO, the first African Aerospace Medicine conference in February 2014. It brought together regulatory authorities and health practitioners in the aerospace environment to discuss challenges confronting the sector.

Hosting the event helped promote awareness and encourage African states to share information regarding aircrew performance, the safety of aircrew and passengers in flight as well as safety management.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

Samsa and the DoT are working on mobilising the maritime sector, organising its industries and drawing the attention towards what the sector can contribute to the achievement of government's social and economic goals.

Samsa has successfully pulled together elements of the sector and created a cohesive sense of the boundaries and drivers of the country's performance, with regional and international positioning options.

Samsa's 2013 achievements included:

- working towards the development of the 2050 African Integrated Maritime Strategy, which the AU adopted in December 2012 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
- assisting in implementing and executing the West Indian Ocean Marine Highway Project
- saving 76 persons and evacuating 15 through search and rescue efforts
- managing two major vessel casualties (the Eihatsu Maru and Panos Earth), which could have caused a major disaster along the South African coastline
- hosting the Diplomatic Conference on behalf of the International Maritime Organisation (IMO)

The City of Ekurhuleni hosted Africa's first Airport Cities World Conference and Exhibition from 24 to 26 April 2013.

in Cape Town, which led to the successful adoption of an Agreement on the Implementation of the Torremolinos Protocol of 1993 relating to the 1977 Torremolinos International Convention for the Safety of Fishing Vessels
- winning the Africa Maritime Agency of the Year Award (2012) based on the contribution to maritime skills development programmes and shipping
- creating about 460 jobs opportunities since 2010 through its Cadetship Programme
- holding the Brazil, Russia India, China and South Africa (BRICS) Maritime Trade and Investment Forum as a precursor to the 2013 fifth Brics Summit.

The maritime economic sector is of central and strategic importance to the National Growth Path (NGP), the Brics block and South Africa's influential role within the African Union (AU), India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) and the SADC.

The widening trade balance is to no small measure because of a lack of focus on shipping logistics and maritime transport. South Africa is the only country in all these partnerships that has no focused shipping and maritime transport sector policy and strategy and owns no ships.

Because South Africa owns no ships, it imports transport for all its outbound and inbound airborne cargo traffic, undermining the country's economic and security position.

Samsa is also focusing on increasing the number of qualified South African seafarers and ensuring that they are absorbed into employment, particularly the youth.

In 2013/14, Samsa placed further focus on developing the maritime education network by expanding the network number of maritime high schools offering maritime subjects in all provinces; establishing a partnership to offer maritime education and training at 10 Further Education and Training (FET) colleges; and launching a comprehensive Maritime University in partnership with the Department of Higher Education and Training.

The department also wants to increase the number of cadet officers on the *SA Agulhas* ship from 109 in 2013 to 200 in 2014.

In September 2013, Samsa sent 20 South Africans to obtain master's and two doctoral degrees in Maritime Affairs at the World Maritime University in Sweden.

In 2013, Samsa finalised the feasibility study and detailed business plan for the establishment of an All Africa Maritime Institute offering a wide range of maritime programmes ranging from shore-based to offshore oil and gas, fishing, leisure and seafarer, for possible opening around 2016.

Through Samsa the department continued investing in intelligent surveillance breakthrough technologies in ship tracking and maritime traffic management.

The Minister of Transport declared 2013 Maritime Year. South Africa has signed the Djibouti Code of Conduct, which empowered it to share resources and information with other countries in the fight against piracy and other crimes at sea.

Every year the IMO celebrates World Maritime Day. The exact date is left to individual governments but usually falls during the last week in September. The day is used to focus attention on the importance of shipping safety, maritime security and the marine environment and to emphasise a particular aspect of the IMO's work.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanral is responsible for the design, financing, maintenance, operation and rehabilitation of South Africa's national toll and non-toll roads.

Its functions include:
- being responsible for proclaimed national roads
- maintaining, upgrading, operating, rehabilitating and funding the national roads
- levying tolls to service toll roads
- managing concessionaires
- advising the Minister of Transport on road-related matters
- creating public value.

South Africa has a 750 000 km-long road network, of which Sanral manages 19 667 km of paved roads.

The non-toll road network accounted for 83,1% of the national network funded by the fiscus. In 2013, Sanral awarded 202 contracts for new works rehabilitation, improvement and routine development.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government.

It comprises the following operating divisions:
- Transnet Freight Rail
- Transnet Rail Engineering
- Transnet Port Terminals
- Transnet Pipelines
- TNPA.

In March 2013, Transnet and the China Development Bank signed a cooperation agreement, which will help finance the construction and upgrade of railway and port infrastructure.

The parties agreed on future collaboration on research and development initiatives, manufacturing, marketing and the construction of cross-border infrastructure throughout the continent.

The agreement, signed during Chinese President Xi Jinping's State visit to South Africa, is one of the various country-to-country collaboration agreements intended to strengthen economic and trade relations among the different Brics countries.

The state-owned transport and logistics company announced a R300 billion investment programme, the Market Demand Strategy, to redevelop and expand its ports, rail and pipelines infrastructure and equipment.

The National Skills Fund (NSF) allocated R175 million to Transnet Engineering to train an additional 1 000 learners at its six facilities across the country over the next three years as part of the National Skills Development Strategy.

South African Airways

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 26 destinations across the continent, as well as major destinations within South Africa and internationally from its Johannesburg hub at OR Tambo International Airport and is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services together with related services, which are provided through SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries: SAA Technical; Mango, its low-cost carrier; Air Chefs, the catering entity of SAA; and South African Travel Centre.

In April 2013, SAA submitted its long-term Turnaround Strategy to the Minister of Public Enterprises. There would be a three-phase implementation approach of the strategy, with continuous and cyclical monitoring and review over a 20-year period.

One of the key elements of the strategy was increased focus and emphasis on governance and accountability. SAA believes these will go a long way in restoring the airline's reputation in the global markets and among its stakeholders.

In March 2013, the airline topped the list of the most on-time airlines in the world in a report produced by an independent entity, FlightStats Inc. FlightStats is a leading provider of day-of-travel data services and applications to the travel industry and travelling public. According to the *FlightStats March 2013 On-Time Airline and Airport Performance Report*, SAA was one of the only two major international carriers that delivered over 90% of their flights on time in March.

In April 2013, SAA's business class was also voted as the Best Business Class product among Star Alliance carriers, by *FVW* magazine.

According to the airline, SAA ranked the highest for its comfortable fully lie-flat seats, while its class-leading comfortable duvet, extra-large pillow and padded bedding also got the nod from the magazine's mystery shopper.

It also scored 24 points out of 25 for its check-in and lounge facilities while the cuisine was rated 18 out of 20 points and service 19 out of 20.

In June 2013, SAA became one of the first six airlines in the world to achieve International Air Transport Association (IATA) Environmental Assessment (IEnvA) Stage 1 status.

This comes after the association embarked on the IATA IEnvA, which is a two-year initiative to develop and establish an environmental standard and environmental management system for over 240 IATA member airlines.

The aim of the two-year initiative is to create a minimum and recommended standard for airlines in areas such as general and on-board recycling, efficient flight and airport operations, limiting and reducing carbon emissions, general energy efficiency as well as environmentally conscious procurement procedures.

This makes SAA one of the world's leading carriers in the areas of environmental responsibility and sustainability.

In November 2013, SAA extended its codeshare network with Air Seychelles expanding its network to cover the island of Praslin in Seychelles. The new deal saw Air Seychelles place its "HM" code on 18 SAA flights per week between Johannesburg and Cape Town, Durban, and Port Elizabeth, and five SAA flights per week between Johannesburg and East London. SAA in turn will place its "SA" code on six Air Seychelles flights per week between Mahé and Praslin.

SA Express

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier established on 24 April 1994. Although the airline is operationally independent of SAA, its flights are incorporated within the strategic alliance with Airlink and SAA.

Programmes and projects

Road Transport Management System (RTMS)

The RTMS is an industry-led voluntary self-regulation scheme that encourages consignees, consignors and road transporters to implement a management system that preserves road infrastructure, improves road safety and increases productivity.

The system's key components are load optimisation, driver wellness, vehicle maintenance and productivity. It is designed to show transport companies how to take greater corporate responsibility for road safety.

A national RTMS steering committee is responsible for the promotion and administration of the RTMS in South Africa. It comprises individuals representing major industries and aligned stakeholders within the country.

National Transport Master Plan

The Natmap 2050 was finalised in 2013 in line with the NDP 2030. The long-term vision of Natmap 50 will sustain South Africa's projected growth and focus on integrated transport planning to ensure that the different modes of transport complement each other. Government policies, plans and programmes, including the NDP and the NGP, enjoin the nation to create a social contract to help propel South Africa to a higher developmental trajectory, as well as build a more cohesive and equitable society.

The transport sector is critical to realising the implementation of the 2030 vision of advanced economic development, job creation, growth, and provision of equitable access to opportunities and services for all, while fostering an inclusive society and economy.

Public Transport Strategy

South Africa is on its way to becoming the first country in Africa to have rapid public transport networks. Such networks will not only change the face of the country, but will boost economic development, job creation and tourism.

South Africa's public transport strategy, which comprises a multibillion rand transport infrastructure plan, is set to entirely reshape travel in South Africa. At the core of the plan is a high-quality integrated mass rapid public transport network that includes rail, taxi and bus services. The strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and BRT systems in cities.

The Public Transport Strategy is expected to improve public transport services for more than half the country's population.

The long-term goal of the strategy is to have 85% of a metropolitan city's population within 1 km of the network, and provide a transport service that is clean, comfortable, reliable, fast, secure, safe and affordable.

Consolidated government transport improvements will amount to R80 billion in 2013/14.

As part of government's commitment towards rural development, the S'hamba Sonke Programme addresses road maintenance on secondary roads and rural roads, with particular emphasis on repairing potholes, using labour-intensive methods of construction and maintenance.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

eNaTIS provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles. It manages and records applications for and authorisation of driving and learner's licences.

It is also a law-enforcement tool used to ensure that the details of stolen vehicles are circulated and prevents irregular and fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The system delineates the lifecycle of a vehicle, from the factory floor to the scrap yard.

It is compulsory for all new motor vehicles and motor vehicles requiring a police clearance to be microdotted.

The DoT and the South African Police Service (SAPS) would enforce the requirements through eNaTIS.

The registration of a motor vehicle introduced onto the eNaTIS by the manufacturer, importer or builder is only allowed if the microdot information was loaded onto the system.

S'hamba Sonke Road Maintenance Project

The S'hamba Sonke (meaning "walking together") Programme through the Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant consists of three budget components. The largest enables provinces to expand their maintenance activities. The other components allow provinces to repair roads damaged by floods and cover the cost of rehabilitation work created by coal haulage activities in Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

A new formula to allocate funds is being applied to all provinces. It is based on extent; condition; topography; road traffic and weather conditions. These factors reflect the different costs of maintaining road networks in each province.

Future allocations will also depend on the satisfactory use of the road asset management systems from 2013/14. The grant requires provinces to follow best practices for planning and to use and regularly update the road asset management system.

The grant has an allocation of R27,6 billion over the MTEF starting with R8 696 210 in 2013/14 rising to R9 126 190 in 2014/15 and reaching R9 773 920 in 2015/16.

The DoT, through the Rural Roads Asset Management Systems grant, supports local government in improving the planning and budgeting of rural roads infrastructure. The grant funds the collection of accurate data on the

condition and usage of rural roads in line with the Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework. Over the MTEF, this grant will be extended to more municipalities with an allocation of R225,2 million.

Rural Transport Strategy

Rural transport development has become one of the main challenges in the country requiring better mobility and access in rural areas.

The national transport survey found that a higher percentage of the population cannot afford the high cost of transport. This limits their access to transport and therefore social and economic opportunities. This perpetuates under-development and isolation from the mainstream public transport system.

The National Land Transport Act of 2009 provides for different levels of government to be responsible for planning. In line with this phenomenon, the department looked at ways to help six district municipalities develop their Rural Public Transport Network plans through various funding models in 2013.

In the same year, the department assessed the impact of the Rural Transport Strategy adopted by Cabinet in 2007. The process will contribute to the formulation of the National Planning Guidelines for rural district municipalities' public transport network plans.

This implementation intervention will address multi-year planning and streamline the various budgetary provisions. Finding sustainable ways of strengthening and expanding the provision of public transport services in district municipalities lies at the centre of this intervention.

Scholar Transport

The transport of learners to their educational institutions is one of the most critical challenges. They have difficulty getting access to safe public transport and transport infrastructure is inadequate, particularly in rural areas.

The objective of the National Scholar Transport Policy is to manage and oversee the implementation of an integrated learner transport service. The policy provides a framework for safe and secure transport for learners through the cooperation of stakeholders and law-enforcement authorities.

The department developed the national operational guidelines to remedy operational challenges that provinces had in implementing the Scholar Transport Programme. These measures are aimed at ensuring that the Scholar Transport Programme is effective and efficient.

Non-motorised transport

The promotion of NMT is mainly aimed at increasing transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The DoT has broadened its Shova Kalula ("Pedal Easy") Project into a more comprehensive NMT undertaking that incorporates, among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts.

The project forms part of government's action programme and is expected to contribute to its antipoverty strategy and second-economy interventions. It is believed that these initiatives improve rural communities' mobility and access to economic opportunities.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015.

The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates microbusinesses, which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the project's sustainability.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme

The TRP is an intervention by government to bring about safe, effective, reliable, affordable and accessible taxi operations by introducing new taxi vehicles designed to undertake public transport functions in the taxi industry.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about how best to help operators to benefit constructively through empowerment.

With the introduction of the new taxi vehicles in the TRP, the government, for the first time prescribed compulsory safety and other requirements to protect passengers, operators, pedestrians, motorists and other road users. The compulsory requirements are also meant to ensure passenger comfort.

Through the TRP, government has ensured the following changes:

- introduction of safety requirements for passengers
- comfort for passengers by insisting on the size and number of seats
- promotion of accessibility on the size and number of seats
- branding and colour coding of taxi vehicles so that legal taxis can be identified and differentiated from illegal ones, and so that members of the public can easily identify a taxi vehicle.

Resources

Roads

National roads

Government is responsible for overall policy, while Sanral is responsible for road-building and maintenance.

The DoT continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe.

A new national roads plan was developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

Between 2010 and 2015, R75 billion is to be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading; with an additional R3 billion budgeted for EPWP access roads, all of which are government's attempts to alleviate traffic congestion.

As part of rural development, roads in five rural development nodes – Magaliesburg, Winterveld, Hammanskraal, Rust de Winter and Bantu Bonke – were upgraded.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The DoT helps provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The toll-road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. Sanral manages some 1 832 km of these toll roads.

In its endeavour to continue the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, Sanral will continue the selective expansion of toll roads.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

The Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC) has expressed full support for the N2 Wildcoast Project and indicated that substantial funding could be available in 2013/14. The Greenfields portion of the highway was implemented as a toll road using a hybrid funding model.

Rail

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80 km-long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport.

It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

Government had paid a monthly ridership guarantee to the operator of the Gautrain, the Bombela consortium, since June 2012, amounting to R831,4 million by the end of March 2013.

The monthly patronage guarantee has been steadily dropping since 2012, because of an increasing number of people using the public transport system.

Average weekday passenger trips on the train increased from 26 000 at the beginning of April 2012 to 42 000 at the end of March 2013.

In October 2013, the Gautrain Management Agency proposed the development of seven new rapid rail routes along identified "high-mobility corridors" in Gauteng, which will be promulgated under the province's 25-year Integrated Transport Master Plan.

The proposed extensions, in order of priority, would include a link from the existing Sandton station to Randburg; a link from Ruimsig to the Samrand station; a link from the Samrand station to Tshwane East; a link from Rhodesfield to the East Rand Mall; a link from Naledi to Ruimsig; and a link from Mamelodi to Tshwane East.

The Gautrain ferries 52 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1,2 million people a year.

In October 2013, the construction of a R300-million road project, which will provide an alternative link between Johannesburg and Vereeniging, was launched. This is the second phase of the R82 road upgrade that will see the section of road between Eikenhof and Walkerville being converted into a dual carriageway.

The project was expected to create 250 jobs, and would contribute to social cohesion in the area and also equip many with new skills. Engineers had already concluded the design of the third phase of the project, a longer stretch of the road that is expected to cost R500 million.

Civil aviation

South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bloemfontein International in the Free State
- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape

In June 2013, SAA and SAX launched the Pilot Cadet Training and Development Programme for those who had been previously disadvantaged.

By 2013, the programme had produced 246 cadet pilots, 166 of whom have successfully completed training and been absorbed within SAA and SAX.

Through the launch of this programme, the three state-owned airlines – SAA, SAX and Mango – will strengthen their role as engines

of economic growth in the developmental state, and as leaders in the transformation of the aviation sector.

Airlift Strategy

The Airlift Strategy introduced effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa. In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air-transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

Airlines

Several domestic airlines, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies, operate in South Africa. SAA, British Airways (BA)/Comair, SAX, SA Airlink and Inter-Air operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands.

In addition to serving Africa, SAA also operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East. Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula and Mango. Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

In April 2013, SAA and Jet Airways, India's premier international airline, announced a code share agreement that would enable seamless air travel connectivity to several business centres in India and South Africa.

Under the agreement, SAA, the only airline with non-stop flights between Johannesburg and Mumbai, will code share on Jet Airways' operations between Mumbai and Delhi, Bangalore, Hyderabad, Chennai and Thiruvananthapuram. In turn, Jet Airways will code share on SAA's flights between Mumbai and Johannesburg and beyond to Cape Town and Durban.

Freight transport

Ports

South Africa's is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 million tonnes of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petro-chemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The country's ports handle over 430 Mt of varied cargo types, carried on over 9 000 ship calls a year. The nine commercial ports are crucial to South Africa's transport, logistics and socioeconomic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic.

Durban has developed into Africa's busiest multiservice port, handling up to 80 Mt of cargo and, on average, 4 000 ships a year.

Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion litres of petroleum products a year.

Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to

Botswana. Transnet Pipelines plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at Natref, from where almost 70% of their refined products and 80% at Secunda are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Investment in the pipeline sector is ongoing. Construction on a R5,8 billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450 km pipeline transports up to 3,5 Mℓ a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3,5 Mℓ of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1,5 Mℓ is diverted to Mbombela. The remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid-fuels demand lies within the Durban-Johannesburg Corridor. The Durban-Johannesburg Pipeline is no longer adequate for the transportation of the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

The multiproduct pipeline, being constructed at a cost of R23 billion between Durban and Johannesburg, will replace the existing Durban-Johannesburg pipeline. It was expected to increase capacity from 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres by December 2013.

Freight

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. Yet roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in Africa, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Government will also review its rail investment programme to accelerate the shift of freight transport from road to rail.

Passengers departing from OR Tambo International Airport, can take advantage of the online check-in facilities offered by the airlines or use the self-service check-in counters in various areas of the airport. Airport users are urged to use waiting time to visit the Oliver Reginald Tambo Memorial Exhibition, which is the viewing deck situated on the third floor of the International Departures Hall for a glimpse into airport history and the history of Oliver Tambo.

Airports Company South Africa implemented free Wi-Fi across all its network of airports for either 50MB or 30 minutes (whichever comes first).

Transnet will invest about R63 billion in the freight rail system over the next five years. For its part, organised business will continue to promote greater use of rail freight by companies.

Transnet Freight Rail (TFR)

TFR, the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenue. It is a world-class heavy-haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

Transnet Ltd, operating and controlling South Africa's major transport infrastructure, is also responsible for ensuring that the country's transport industries operate according to world-class standards. Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:

- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually
- exports 100% of the country's coal
- exports 100% of the iron ore
- 30% of the core network carries 95% of freight volumes
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion
- will, over the next five years, invest R35 billion in capital
- has 25 347 employees system-wide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

In March 2013, Transnet signed an agreement with the China Development Bank that is expected to yield a loan in the region of US$5 billion (R45 billion) to help finance the country's massive rail infrastructure upgrade programme.

In 2013, Transnet Freight Rail upgraded its iron ore line to move 60 million tonnes a year of the steelmaking material from mines in the Northern Cape to the Saldanha Bay port for export. The expansion and reduction in Kumba's output from its Sishen mine opened up capacity for junior mining houses.

Maritime

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It serves a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The DoT is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act of 1998.

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to

ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the IMO in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, human resources, and information technology issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation, Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports and as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre (MRCC) in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia, in 2007. South Africa also contributed R100 000 to be used in the operations of the International Maritime Security Fund.

South African Maritime Training Academy

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simon's Town in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology.

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town.

This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the DoT, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of at least 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 FET colleges across the country started to offer courses aimed at equipping young people for a career in the industry from 2013.

The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boiler makers. Annually between 1 200 and 1 600 students enter the maritime industry after completing their studies.

But this is not enough to meet the industry's immediate needs.

Africa's first-ever training vessel, the *SA Agulhas*, will go to Ghana, Abidjan in the Ivory Coast, before docking in Canary Wharf in London.

Through its involvement in the AU, South Africa was leading the development of an integrated African Maritime Strategy.

On her way to London, the *SA Agulhas* will pick up 12 cadets to join the 51 already on board. The 12 cadets represent cultures from Cameroon, Gambia, Ghana and the Ivory Coast.

Public transport

In terms of the Constitution, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation.

The DoT continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

The department has identified public transport as a key legacy project for the World Cup and beyond. This includes world-class airports, upgraded train stations, refurbished coaches and luxury buses, taxis and IRPTNs such as the BRT System.

Integrated public transport networks
Bus Rapid Transport

In 2013/14, over R5,5 billion was spent in up to 13 cities on planning, building and operating integrated public transport networks. Both Johannesburg and Cape Town constructed over 20 km of dedicated bus lanes on which services are operated, supported by over 100 km of complementary, feeder and distributor services.

In 2013/14, both Cape Town and Johannesburg expanded operations on Phase 1 Rea Vaya and My CiTi services to carry up to 100 000 passenger trips a day on each system. Nelson Mandela Municipality's Libhongo Lethu continued to run a pilot service on its upgraded network.

A feature of 2013/14 public transport network development was that construction commenced in four more cities, namely, Tshwane, eThekwini, Rustenburg and Mbombela. Each city offers some unique and innovative approaches to the development of quality public transport networks. George municipality was a new entrant to the public transport network development enterprise and during the course of the next two years George will complete its full city-wide network on a more modest scale than the networks being constructed in the metropolitan areas.

Buffalo City, Ekurhuleni, Mangaung, Msunduzi and Polokwane completed their public transport network development planning and service contract designs during 2013/14 and will commence with network development in 2014/15.

The integrated public transport networks rolled in the 13 municipalities are required to be universally accessible in line with the department's obligations under the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000) and national commitments made under the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, which South Africa signed in full in 2007.

The Tshwane Rapid Transit (A Re Yeng) was due to start operating in 2014.

The City of Johannesburg's new Rea Vaya bus system route was operational in October 2013.

The new route runs from Soweto and passes through Noordegesig, New Canada, Pennyville, Bosmont, Coronationville, Newclare, Westbury, Westdene, Melville, Auckland Park and Parktown, and it links to the CBD.

The faster, safer and cost-effective Rea Vaya bus service is exceeding its daily target of transporting 80 000 passengers daily.

The new services will be using 134 new buses, which have also been manufactured locally.

Residents and students will be able to travel to universities and hospitals much easier with Rea Vaya.

The introduction of the Rea Vaya smart card is another innovation that commuters can use to pay for travel easily and safely.

All the South African BRT systems will expand in phases over the next decade.

Aviation contributes R74,3 billion or 3,1% to South Africa's gross domestic product.

Infrastructure development

It is the mandate of the PICC to oversee the implementation of infrastructure projects that stimulate social and economic growth.

South Africa's infrastructure plans include economic and social infrastructure that will unlock key mineral resources and exports. The PICC coordinates this infrastructure plan.

In 2013, the Eastern Cape's Strategic Integrated Projects, which PICC coordinates, were at various stages of implementation.

With respect to the Ngqura Transhipment Hub project, more than R3,49 billion has already been spent on basic port infrastructure, and Transnet has committed an extra R15 billion for putting the port into operation and creating a manganese export facility.

Progress has been made with Project Mthombo, with Chinese oil company SINOPEC having completed a viability study in June 2013. The study found that a refinery is commercially viable at 300 000 barrels a day.

Once Cabinet approval has been secured, work on the project will proceed into the Front End Engineering Design phase.

In addition to the Coega initiatives, the Eastern Cape has established a high-level joint forum with Transnet.

One of its key achievements is the commitment by Transnet not only to develop the capacity of the ports in East London and Port Elizabeth, but also to revive and open some of the key railway lines, such as the Mthata-Amabhele line, Sterkstroom-Maclear line, Cookhouse-Blaney line, Stormberg-Rossmead line, Rossmead-Klipplaat line, Klipplaat-Port Elizabeth line, and Alicedale-Grahamstown line.

East London harbour was upgraded in 2013, at a cost of R2,3 billion to improve the auto-logistics platform, expand container handling and provide for coal exports.

This comes at the right time considering the progress that has been achieved at the Elitheni Coal Mine at Lady Frere.

The first container vessel of Elitheni coal left the East London port for Brazil in January 2013.

The initial contract would result in 2,5 million tons a year of coal exports by 2014, creating 2 000 direct and 20 000 indirect jobs.

On the Nkosi Dalibhunga Mandela Legacy Bridge and road, R59,3 million was spent. This initiative is expected to also boost tourism and local development and give local communities improved mobility.

The Department of Water Affairs completed the feasibility study for the Umzimvubu Multi-Purpose Water Resource Development. Three possible sites for dam construction were identified – Thabang, Somabadi, and Ntabelanga.

On the N2 Wild Coast road, the feasibility studies were completed and tender specifications finalised. Implementation commenced in 2013. This project was endorsed by the PICC as one of the anchor projects of the South East corridor and node.

Sanral has upgraded national roads, notably the N2 and N6. Over 2 000 km of former provincial roads were gazetted as national roads.

Rail

The DoT has embarked on a process of developing an all-encompassing national rail transport policy which will cover freight, long-distance passenger and commuter rail.

Prasa is at the forefront of government efforts to transform public transport in South Africa, with rail services forming the backbone of the network. Prasa's main responsibility is to integrate inter-modal facilities and services into public transport solutions that optimise the performance of the whole transport system.

The main thrust of the rail policy will focus on investment and new modern technology. It will address the regulatory framework required, particularly economic regulation, infrastructure and operations. It will also make proposals regarding the investment required to restore rail to its rightful place in the country's economy.

By 2020, existing logistics corridors are expected to be expanded upon and new corridors will have been established. A world-class export-oriented rail manufacturing sector and 6 405 km of rail are expected to have been replaced for the general freight, coal and ore lines, increasing the rail network capacity by 149,7 Mt.

Long-distance commuter services such as the Moloto, Durban-to-Johannesburg and Durban-to-Gauteng corridors were identified for development. The Durban-to-Gauteng Corridor is the busiest corridor in the Southern Hemisphere, both in terms of value and tonnage. It also forms the backbone of South Africa's freight transportation network.

Ports

Transnet Port Terminals is expected to spend R33 billion over the next seven years on upgrading and expanding South Africa's ports, as part of a massive state-led infrastructure drive aimed at boosting the country's economic growth.

The expansion projects will see major increases in the container-handling capacity of the ports in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal and Ngqura outside Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape.

Durban Container Terminal's Pier 1 will see its capacity grow from 700 000 to 1,2 million 20-foot equivalent units (TEUs) by 2016/17, while its Pier 2 capacity will expand from 2,1 million to 3,3 million TEUs by 2017/18.

In May 2013, the Minister of Public Enterprises unveiled Transnet's seven new state-of-the-art ship-to-shore cranes at the Durban Container Terminal – Pier 2. The new cranes will improve efficiency, result in employee upskilling and add 400 new jobs in the short term.

The cranes are part of Transnet's rolling R300 billion seven-year investment programme – the Market Demand Strategy. Over the next 20 years, Transnet Port Terminals, which operates 45 cranes in seven ports across the country, will buy 39 new ship-to-shore cranes.

The Ngqura Container Terminal, which has been earmarked as a trans-shipment hub, will be expanded from 800 000 to two million TEUs by 2018/19.

Container capacity is also being created in other terminals, such as the Durban Ro-Ro and Maydon Wharf Terminal, through the acquisition of new equipment, including mobile cranes and various infrastructure upgrades.

The port is said to be the deepest container terminal in sub-Saharan Africa and will accommodate the new generation of giant container ships that regularly visit the country's shores.

Given its positioning and size, the Ngqura Trade Port will go a long way in boosting South Africa's trade with other countries in the region and is expected to support the country's new growth path. The planning of the Ngqura has been integrated with that of the Coega Development Zone.

The bulk handling capacity at Ngqura, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, and Saldanha in the Western Cape will also come in for major expansion.

Safety-critical, environmental and legal compliance projects are also in the pipeline.

Some R1,2 billion will be spent on creating new capacity, including new storage areas, at Richards Bay.

Transnet is also pursuing the re-engineering of the port to create additional capacity for bulk products at the terminal.

Saldanha's iron-ore bulk facility, which has undergone significant expansion in recent years, will be further expanded, taking its capacity from 60 Mt to 82 Mt a year.

Additional manganese capacity will be created by relocating the existing 5,5 Mt a year export facility in Port Elizabeth to a new two-berth manganese facility at the Port of Ngqura, boosting capacity to 12 Mt a year from 2016/17.

Safety of travellers

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign has become an important part of the DoT's road safety projects and awareness efforts, especially during critical periods for road traffic management such as Easter and the December holidays.

The Arrive Alive campaign is seen as a national effort by all South Africans to take hands in promoting road safety.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

Government renewed its mission to curb the escalating rate of accidents throughout the country with the launch of the Arrive Alive Festive Season Campaign in the Free State in November 2013.

The Free State experiences high traffic volume because most roads leading to travellers' destinations pass across this province.

The Transnet National Ports Authority and the Maputo Ports Development Company (MPDC) signed a landmark Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) in June 2013, that will pave the way for cooperation between the two port authorities.

The MoU opened up collaboration on matters of mutual interest in the areas of infrastructure development, engineering, training and marine services.

Other areas of collaboration include assistance with the unbundling of the MPDC into a Port Authority and Port Operations, the transition of cargo from road to rail, and nautical matters.

The launch coincided with the World Remembrance Day for road traffic victims observed internationally on the third Sunday of November every year.

The campaign emphasised that the reduction in road deaths was urgent and non-negotiable.

The campaign will see government stepping up law-enforcement operations focusing on responsible driving while arresting drunk, reckless and speeding drivers. According to DoT statistics, about 40 people are killed on South African roads every day, costing the economy R306 billion annually.

The RAF pays out about R15 billion to victims of road accidents every year.

UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The UN General Assembly resolution proclaiming a Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 was tabled by the Government of the Russian Federation and co-sponsored by more than 90 countries.

The initiative aims to save lives by halting the increasing trends in road traffic deaths and injuries world-wide.

As part of South Africa's contribution to this global initiative, efforts were focused on four key areas:

- fatigue or driver fitness
- drinking and driving
- use of seat belts
- pedestrian safety.

A key aspect of the integrated Road Safety Management Programme is increasing pedestrian safety. In planning and design, Sanral provides for interventions such as traffic calming, safe stopping areas for public transport, and pedestrian bridges. The department also engages communities adjacent to national roads to find solutions to pedestrians' needs.

To contribute to safety on the roads, Sanral has developed a database of projects that need to be implemented in areas that are hazardous to pedestrians. The solutions range from pedestrian bridges, pavements, road safety education and traffic calming measures.

When it comes to managing safety on freeways, Sanral's incident management system, supported by central coordination centres, embraces interaction between emergency services and law enforcement agencies on all declared national routes.

Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002),

is the enabling legislation for setting up the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport. The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with SADC railway operations
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS), developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements, and the management of human factors.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and indeed the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways.

This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator.

The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railway Association (Sara).

Since the RSR's creation, there has been increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa and regional railways operating into South Africa.

The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems.

Through its Sara membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central part in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the *Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail*.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC).

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food-stocks and economic development.

The sea plays an important role in both the SADC's economy and international commerce and thus maritime security is essential for the SADC's continued economic and political stability.

The SADC, therefore, has both an international and regional responsibility to help promote good order at sea.

Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international antipirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security.

The threat around the Horn of Africa and SADC waters detrimentally affects the SADC's trade and economy. Maritime security is a regional concern to all SADC member states. Both SADC coastal states and SADC land-locked states depend equally on maritime trade.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy entails a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all members necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways.

Some countries, for example, provide land-based equipment such as radar, as well as soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC has established robust rules of engagement for antipiracy, which are largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces.

Regarding the legal framework, SADC member states are expected to:

- ratify or accede to international maritime conventions/treaties/regimes and the incorporation of these into their national law

- put in place comprehensive legal regimes at national level, consistent with international law, to prosecute pirates
- stop the practice of "catch-and-release" of pirates since it allows experienced pirates to execute more sophisticated acts of piracy
- strengthen and harmonise regional and domestic legal frameworks for arrest, awaiting trial detention, prosecution and imprisonment or repatriation of pirates
- take responsibility for its own maritime security in cooperation with other regions, task forces, navies and role players.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services.

Various laden, very large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established pollution prevention strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa acts in terms of the Indian Ocean Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of West Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Search and rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue (SAR) Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all SAR activities within South Africa's area of responsibility.

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28,5 million km^2 in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into the aeronautical and maritime SAR areas.

The aeronautical SAR region covers Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland, and associated flight information regions.

The maritime SAR area stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side. It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the South Pole.

Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and Samsa.

Search and rescue only works when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of search and rescue services within their territories to ensure that persons in distress get assistance.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities.

Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform way across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of search and rescue operations.

The SADC approached the ICAO and the IMO to fund the training requirements identified for the region.

In collaboration with the DEA, the DoT is also planning to create search and rescue capacity in the Antarctic region.

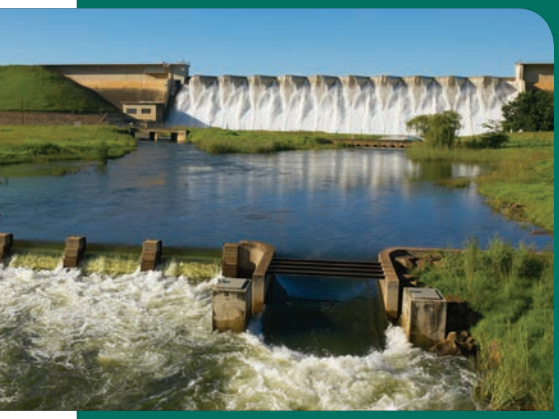
The DoT, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance are members of Sasar and contribute their services and facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet (the national amateur radio emergency communication network) and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The ARCC Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search and rescue services and coordinates aeronautical search and rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

9881
M2

Water Affairs



South Africa is the 30th driest country in the world.

Water is a critical element to sustainable socio-economic development and the eradication of poverty and is at the core of the green economy in the context of sustainable development and eradicating poverty.

Water has a critical function in the South African economy where it contributes 60% towards agriculture and irrigation.

Census 2011 established that 91% of the population has access to improved water sources, while 79% have access to improved sanitation.

The improvement is the result of the country's 15 water provision authorities including local and district local municipalities, driven by the millennium development goals (MDGs), climate change, improved framework for government and financing. The goal is 100% access to water.

The United Nations (UN) declared 2013 the International Year of Water Cooperation to raise awareness of the potential for increased cooperation, and the challenges facing water management in light of the increase in demand for water access, allocation and services.

The importance of high-quality water for human consumption, and high standards for waste-water management in the economic development of the country and sustainable environmental management can never be overemphasised.

Legislation

In September 2013, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs issued a notice of intention to declare fracking a controlled activity of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

The notice, which was published in the Government Gazette for public comment, included the exploration for and/or production of onshore unconventional oil gas resources.

The department's key priority was to protect the environment and water resources, and take every precaution to ensure that the possible effect of fracking on water resources was carefully managed and minimised.

An interdepartmental monitoring committee has been established for the exploration and production of unconventional oil and gas.

The monitoring committee will review the existing regulatory framework for the regulation of fracking and develop the necessary regulations and guidelines on the methodologies of hydraulic fracturing.

It will also develop guidelines to ensure that the effect of exploration and production of shale gas resources are prevented, managed or mitigated.

South Africa's Constitution and Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment.

Government fulfils these rights through the Department of Water Affairs (DWA), assisted by specific legislation:

- The National Water Act of 1998 ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people.
- The Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Water Affairs to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions.
  - The Water Services Act of 1997, places an obligation on the Minister to maintain a National Water Services Information System and to monitor the performance of all water services institutions.
- The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the promotion of water-related research through a Water Research Commission (WRC) and a Water Research Fund.
- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), makes provision for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote co-operative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.
- The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency.

The department is responsible for policy development, regulation and oversight of sanitation provision.

Sanitation provision is governed by the Strategic Framework on Water Services (2003) and the Water Services Act of 1997.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register.

This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses that must be registered include:

- diversion of rivers and streams
- discharge of waste or water containing waste
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m³ or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission
- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To further promote sustainable and equitable water resources management, the department has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

Policies and strategies

National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

In July 2013, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs released the second National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS2), which sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management.

Since the publication of the first strategy in 2004, new challenges have emerged, and many changes have occurred in the water sector, which required new thinking and innovation.

These included the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

The NWRS2 outlines the key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

This strategy seeks to propel towards the achievement and attainment of an inclusive sustainable and equitable economy.

The NWRS2 seeks to ensure that the management of national water resources contributes towards achieving South Africa's growth, development and socio-economic priorities in an equitable and sustainable manner over the next five to 10 years.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by government in the National Development Plan (NDP) and National Water Act imperatives that support sustainable development. It is centred on three key objectives:

- Water supports development and the elimination of poverty and inequality. The strategy recognises that the manner in which water was allocated in the past was unequal and favoured certain sections of the population. The intention, therefore, is to redress past imbalances in the manner in which water was allocated.
- Water contributes to the economy and job creation.
- Water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The NWRS2 also focuses on water conservation and the management of water demand as key priorities.

According to research published by the Water Research Commission, non-revenue water for urban supply systems was at 36,8% over the past six years, equal to 1 580 Mℓ^3 a year.

Water for Growth and Development (WfGD)

The WfGD Framework points to the relationship between the availability of water and the many forms of economic activity that depend on the available supply of water of specific levels of quality.

The department's position is that the country's economic growth target cannot be achieved at the expense of the ecological sustainability of water resources or meeting people's needs.

It wishes to respond to the needs of the different economic sectors and this is best achieved when water supply and the impact of use are factored in during planning.

Rather than being an add-on or afterthought, the department's position is that the need for water has to be mainstreamed and placed at the nucleus of all planning decisions both in the public and private sector.

For water to support economic growth without compromising primary needs or ecological sustainability requires adequate integrated strategic planning.

Although the WfGD framework was approved by Cabinet, it was never gazetted.

The revised NWRS-2, however, has incorporated aspects of the WfGD that pertain to water resource management as key core strategies.

During National Water Week in March 2013, the Minister of Water Affairs launched new stamps to popularise the water message.

Raw Water Pricing Strategy

Since 1994, there have been continued efforts to reform and realign the water value chain so that it can efficiently achieve government's objectives.

These include ensuring equitable access to water and sanitation, the sustainable use of water for optimum social and economic benefit, and ensuring the sustainability of water resources and water services delivery, as outlined in the NWRS of 2004 and Strategic Framework for Water Services of 2003.

As part of this process, the DWA is looking at pricing, financing and economic regulation reforms in the water sector.

This project will review the raw water pricing strategy, develop infrastructure funding models and recommend an appropriate model and institutional arrangements for an economic regulator for water.

It is generally agreed that pricing and economic regulation play a key role in the provisioning of infrastructure by assuring necessary investments to support socio-economic growth and ensuring that services are widely available and accessible and priced at levels that support of current and future needs.

The project will contribute to the following:

- The revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to ensure equitable and appropriate raw water tariffs that will enable sustainable operation and management of raw water infrastructure and will adequately fund catchment management.
- Funding/financing models for water resources infrastructure.
- The establishment of an economic regulator for the entire water value chain.

The project is strategic in nature and will enable the DWA to have sound water-pricing policies, cost-reflective tariffs for the entire water value chain in South Africa and a good funding framework for infrastructure.

The project is divided into three work-streams, each to be led by the DWA together with different institutions to provide support.

The 2013 review of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy addressed the issue of water scarcity and how best to use water pricing as a tool for driving more efficient water-use without having a negative effect on small-scale or under-resourced water users.

National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas. It also plays an important role in the supply of water

to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country.

There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources.

The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in NWRS-1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions are undertaken.

Reuse Strategy

The DWA has developed a water reuse strategy to encourage informed decisions relating to water reuse.

Reuse could be significantly increased with reuse of return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea.

In coastal cities, water reuse and desalination compete as two options for water conservation.

Reuse is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs. Membrane technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved.

The reuse of treated waste water will have to be managed carefully to ensure public health safety.

Rainwater harvesting

The DWA supports a national rainwater harvesting programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities now use roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options.

Though there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year rainwater harvesting can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented in a short timeframe.

Desalination strategy

The department has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water reuse. Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water.

It has become more attractive since the NWRS-1 because of improved technologies, decreasing costs and increasing water scarcity.

However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

Like other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with Nema of 1998.

The DWA will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination.

The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field.

Budget and funding

A budget of R4,334 billion was set aside for the Interim Water Supply Programme to address backlogs in rural areas through immediate interventions in the 23 district municipalities prioritised by Cabinet over the next three years.

Building the skills base and the capacity of the State to deliver quality services, the DWA Learning Academy has 536 active bursars of which 418 have been absorbed into the department's training programme and 118 candidates are enrolled at various universities – 270 of them are in engineering, 241 in the sciences and 25 in surveying. By May 2013, 166 graduates had been appointed in permanent and/or candidate occupation specific dispensation (OSD) engineering and science posts within the department. Candidates graduating from the Learning Academy will also supplement the skills required at municipal level.

The department's budget has also grown significantly owing to increased allocations for infrastructure development. The total allocation is R10,2 billion for 2013/14, R12,4 billion for 2014/15 and R15,5 billion for 2015/16.

Capital investment in new water and sanitation infrastructure for the entire value chain including the refurbishment of existing infrastructure is projected to require an estimated R670 billion, over the next 10 years, or R67 billion per year. By May 2013, only 45% (R30 billion) per year was available from government sources. These investments will have to be funded from on-budget and off-budget sources through the private sector.

The work on the first pipeline, which connects water treatment works at Steelpoort with the De Hoop Dam, and the pipeline to Sekuruwe in the Waterberg and Pruissen in the Capricorn areas in Limpopo are the veins for delivering domestic water to the most needy communities and the mines in the area. Once complete, government

will have invested in excess of R4,5 billion on the project that will benefit more than two million people in the Sekhukhune, Capricorn and Waterberg areas.

The Komati Water Augmentation Project providing an additional yield of 57 million cubic metres of water a year to improve the security of supply for Eskom's Duva and Matla power stations and for the new Kusile Power Plant was implemented far below its projected costs, resulting in efficiency saving of R500 million on completion.

Water boards are key strategic entities that play an important role in socio-economic development investing R3,3 billion during the 2012/13 financial year.

In KwaZulu-Natal, a number of water projects were implemented. The R186 million water supply project in the Maphumulo area of the Ilembe District benefiting 150 000 people was inaugurated. In the Ugu District, a further 100 000 people benefited from the Mahlabatshana water scheme.

A new project, the Richmond Pipeline, will be developed at a cost of R134 million and will provide water to 200 000 people.

In North West, the first phase of the R1,2 billion Pilanesberg scheme is being implemented. The project developed in partnership with the mines will provide a further 100 Mℓ of water per day for the benefit of local municipalities and mines. At least 700 direct jobs will be created and 6 000 indirect permanent jobs through new mining developments.

In the Free State, R156 million will be invested in two new pipeline projects providing additional water to the Botshabelo and ThabaNchu municipalities and the Mangaung Metro.

By May 2013, government had invested R1,7 billion and 35 dams had been successfully rehabilitated. The department implemented projects in every province with a total budget of R3,7 billion over the next three years.

The Blue Scorpions, the department's enforcement unit, plays a vital role in enforcing the water laws especially in areas such as the Vaal River system where illegal water use is rife. The department has already invested about R23,6 million in the area to strengthen law enforcement efforts. By 2013, the department had been able to stop water theft in the order of 50 million cubic meters per year.

The winners of the 2013 Water Sector Awards on Water Conservation and Water Demand Management were announced in October 2013. The winners were awarded in recognition and acknowledgement of their initiatives in water conservation and water-demand management per category:

- agriculture: Lower Olifants River Water Users Association, Western Cape; and Water Research Commission, Gauteng
- business: Sun City Resort, North West; Garden Court Hartfield, Gauteng
- industry, mining and power generation: Richards Bay Minerals, KwaZulu-Natal; Eskom, Gauteng; Optimum Coal Mine, Mpumalanga
- domestic or local government local municipalities: Emfuleni (Sasol and GIZ), Gauteng; Drakenstein, Western Cape; New Castle, KwaZulu-Natal
- metropolitan and district municipalities: City of Cape Town, Western Cape; Johannesburg Water, Gauteng; City of Tshwane, Gauteng.

Role players

Water boards

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services (bulk potable and bulk waste water) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas. They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the Water Services Act, 1997. In certain situations, the Minister of Water Affairs may direct water boards to amend their business plans to meet all the requirements of the Water Services Act, 1997. There are nine water boards in South Africa.

Catchment management agencies (CMAs)

The main responsibilities of CMAs are to manage water resources at catchment level in collaboration with local stakeholders, with specific focus on involving local communities in the decision-making processes, in terms of meeting basic human needs, promoting equitable access to water, and facilitating social and economic development.

In essence, CMAs are service-delivery agencies and are listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). There are nine CMAs in South Africa.

Water-user associations (WUAs)

WUAs are cooperative associations of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities at local level for their mutual benefit. They operate in terms of a formal constitution as set out in Schedule 5 of the National Water Act, 1998.

Water Research Commission

The WRC has a vital role in water research by establishing needs and priorities, stimulating and funding research, promoting the transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector.

The commission provides support to the water sector and all its relevant institutions and partners.

Over the medium term, it will focus on water resources management, water-linked ecosystems, water use and waste management, and water use in agriculture.

The WRC, in partnership with the departments of water affairs, and science and technology, hosted a Water Research and Development Symposium in September 2013.

The symposium was held under the theme "Local Water Solutions for Global Impact."

The aim was to present and celebrate excellence in the South African water research and development domain, and to link various institutions operating at different stages of the water innovation value chain.

As part of the UN International Year of Water Cooperation, the symposium sought to debate the scientific development imperatives for South Africa from a water perspective and the innovations that address this agenda.

For the first time, the public had a chance to engage directly in a dialogue format with the members of the Parliamentary Portfolio Committees and the scientific community outside the confines of Parliament.

The theme for the pre-symposium parliament session was "The future of water in South Africa and the role of the scientific community of practice: a public engagement session with parliamentarians."

Water is core to achieving the Department of Science and Technology's (DST) Global Change Grand Challenge, as well as broader national targets relating to the green economy.

The DST and the WRC are to develop the roadmap, which aims to provide a 10-year platform for research, development and innovation in the water and wastewater sectors of South Africa.

This includes providing a platform for the country to compete with leading countries in water technology, increase the numbers of technology-based small and medium-sized enterprises operating in the water sector and increase access to water and sanitation in rural communities.

Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The DWA is responsible for the regulation of water use in South Africa by ensuring that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest, and is also required to create a register of all water users in the country.

The National Water Act of 1998 makes provision for cost recovery on services rendered by the department to water users. It is against this background that the department created the WTE within its administration.

The main function of the WTE is development, operation and maintenance of specific water resources infrastructure and managing water resources in specific water management areas.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority

The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority is a State-owned entity (SOE) specialising in project financing, implementation and liability management. It is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the DWA, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure. The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority is primarily responsible for off-budget projects.

Komati River Basin Water Authority

The Komati Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Swaziland. The aim of the authority is to manage the water resources of the Komati River basin sustainably. The authority is responsible for financing, developing, operating and maintaining the water resources infrastructure in the basin, comprising the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa and the Maguga Dam in Swaziland.

Water Tribunal

The Water Tribunal was established in 1998 to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters covered by the National Water Act of 1998, such as the issuing of licences to use water. It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.

The WRC and the Judicial Services Commission recommend people to be included as members of the Water Tribunal, and the Minister of Water Affairs appoints them. The members have to be familiar with water management, engineering, law and other related matters, and they are given administrative support by the DWA.

Strategic Water Partners Network – South Africa (SWPN-SA)

SWPN-SA is one of South Africa's most innovative public-private civil-society sector partnerships, making progress that would not have been possible.

The International Finance Corporation, the Japanese International Cooperation Agency and the Development Bank of Southern Africa hosted the Water Works conference in Midrand in November 2013 to promote private-sector participation in the water sector.

The role of the private sector is becoming increasingly essential in the introduction of water infrastructure and in enabling access to water.

The efforts of the SWPN-SA are integral to the second draft National Water Resources Strategy, which the DWA released in 2012.

A cornerstone of the SWPN-SA is developing innovation that leverages the strength and expertise of the DWA, the South African private sector, civil society, and expert organisations.

In 2013, additional investors contributed to the SWPN-SA, including Anglo American, BHP Billiton, Eskom, Nestlé, Sasol, South African Breweries and the 2030 Water Resources Group. The New Partnership for Africa's Development Business Foundation's role as secretariat has proved important and has facilitated continued dialogue among members within the working groups on projects.

Resources

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country is about 49 200 million m^3 a year. This is less than half that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to sub-humid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high. Water resources are unevenly spread across South Africa. The variable rainfall distribution and characteristics give rise to an uneven run-off and distribution of water resources, with more than 60% of the river flow arising from only 20% of the land area.

To compensate for the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and droughts, more than two-thirds of the country's mean annual run-off are stored in dams. Most of the economically available yield from surface water resources has been fully developed and used, and opportunities for developing new and economic dams are few.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchment areas have, therefore, been implemented.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed in many parts of South Africa.

Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households since 1994.

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country, which still has significant undeveloped and under-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m^3 per year, including about 4 800 million m^3 per year of water originating in Lesotho, and about 700 million m^3 a year originating in Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa.

Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the country's total water requirements, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total nett abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m^3 per year for the whole of South

Africa, after allowing for the reuse of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m^3 per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future.

In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system that covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan, east of Johannesburg; to Lenasia, south of the city; Zuurbekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape and even as far as parts of Botswana.

The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba. Other countries such as Botswana, Ghana, Mozambique, Namibia, Zambia, and Zimbabwe also have hidden aquifers.

Dams and water schemes

In an attempt to adequately respond to demand and anticipate future demand, South Africa has built numerous large and medium-sized dams, and developed sophisticated inter-basin transfer schemes. The country now has more than 500 government-owned dams countrywide. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m^3 of water down to 0,2 million m^3 of water.

South Africa currently uses about 10 200 million m^3 of water per year from its major dams. This amount is about 20% of the total mean run-off volume of water South Africa receives a year. Evaporation accounts for a very high 8% loss of stored water resources (the hot climate contributes to this, as well as the large surface areas of many dams), and a further 6% is lost through various land-use activities. Most water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

The DWA follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes have to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs, while the guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must also be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management.

Government has implemented key projects to augment South Africa's water resources, such as:

- The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority has procured funding to implement the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project's first two phases at a cost of about R2 billion, to deliver water to Eskom's new Medupi power station and other industries in the area, as well as domestic water to the Lephalale Local Municipality. The first water delivery is expected in 2014.
- In July 2013, the Bloemendal Bulk Water Project, which helped address issues of water-borne diseases and water shortages in Delmas, in the Victor Khanye Local Municipality. The bulk water project is part of the government's drive to bring services to the people of the country. The project is designed to supply 25 Mℓ/d (potable water) and is sufficient to meet water demand in the service area up to 2026. The new project incorporates a 10 Mℓ reservoir located at mid-point of the new pipeline and is designed to improve system operation as well.
- In November 2013, President Zuma launched the Spring Grove Dam, in Mooi River, KwaZulu-Natal. Spring Grove Dam (or Mooi Mngeni Water Scheme) supplies water to the eThekwini Metropolitan Municipality and the uMgungundlovu District, Msunduzi Local, Ugu Local, Sisonke and iLembe local municipalities. It created 960 jobs when it was constructed. The R1 billion dam is part of government's infrastructure development plan that is also designed to create jobs, improve the quality of life and boost the economy.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two-thirds of South Africa's surface area depend largely on groundwater.

Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also very important.

Through government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale user situation.

Groundwater also contributes considerably to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the department is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This is particularly relevant to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Managing water quality and wastewater

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the department started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and wastewater systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking-water quality standards and 80% compliance with wastewater effluent standards.

Introduced in 2008, this incentive-based regulation system aims to improve the quality of municipal drinking-water quality and management of waste water.

Because of the scale and magnitude of resources needed for the national certification programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other. In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

The department was honoured to receive international recognition in terms of Environmental Engineering Excellence for the Blue Drop and Green Drop Certification programmes from the American Academy for Environmental Engineers. This academy is affiliated to the International Water Association.

Blue Drop Programme

South Africa's drinking-water quality matches best international practice and follows the guidelines set out by the World Health Organisation. As it involves a benchmark score of 95%, the Blue Drop certification is the recognition of exceptional performance, and should not be equated to a pass mark. It simply credits exceptional drinking-water quality.

Green Drop Programme

The Green Drop certification measures the performance of waste-water treatment works.

The 2013 Green Drop Report indicated that 41% of the 914 water supply systems assessed require attention. Similarly, 55% (or 821) waste-water treatment works require serious, critical and urgent refurbishment.

On-site sanitation systems provided in mostly rural areas have been found to be relatively robust, with inadequate provision for pit emptying.

Programmes and initiatives

"No Drop" assessments

To reduce leakages from the water supply networks and boost the efficiency of water use the DWA implemented "No Drop" assessments across all municipalities in South Africa from October 2013.

The report assessment programme would be rolled out to municipalities from October to March 2014, with the results of the first assessments to be published in the *Blue Drop/No Drop Report* in 2014.

Thereafter, the results, which would provide the public and the water sector with audited and verified information on water use, water loss and efficiency of water used and managed within a municipality, would be released every two years.

The results would be integrated into the Blue Drop scorecard. The No Drop assessment would deal with water loss issues, while the already-implemented Blue Drop assessment dealt with the quality of drinking water.

The supply-demand curve shows that South Africa will face a supply-demand deficit of around 17% representing 3,8 billion kilolitres of water by 2030.

Ageing infrastructure, inadequate maintenance and repairs to existing infrastructure, slow responses to water leaks and bursts, shortcomings in technical competency in municipalities and a culture of water wastage challenge the water sector.

Data from 132 municipalities – 75% of the total volume of municipal water supply – revealed that the current level of nonrevenue water reached 36,7%, of which 25,4% was considered to be losses via physical leakages.

Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM)

The DWA, with the assistance of the Royal Danish Government, initiated a programme in 2000 to pilot IWRM approaches in three water management areas of South Africa: Crocodile West – Marico (mainly in North West), Mvoti to uMzimkulu (KwaZulu-Natal) and Olifants-Doorn (mainly in the Western Cape).

These water management areas were selected as they represent a cross-section of water resources conditions as well as water-use conditions and user interests.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands.

National Water Resources Infrastructure (NWRI) Programme

The NWRI ensures reliable supply of water from bulk raw-water resources infrastructure. The programme solicits and sources funding to implement, operate and maintain bulk raw-water resources infrastructure efficiently and effectively by strategically managing risks and assets.

Some augmentation projects were identified and prioritised for implementation by 2014. These include:

- emergency works in Mopani
- construction of the Nwamitwa Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- raising the Tzaneen Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- the Mdloti River Development and raising of Hazelmere Dam
- the Mokolo from Crocodile River (West) Water Augmentation Project Phase 1
- the Nandoni Pipeline Project
- raising the Clanwilliam Dam in the Olifants-Doorn River Water Resources Project
- phase two of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project
- the Komati Water Augmentation Project
- phase two of the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme
- the Vaal River Eastern Sub-System Augmentation Project.

The NWRI Maintenance Programme ensures the availability of water for domestic use.

The following progress was made in 2012:

- nine out of 25 national dams were rehabilitated
- seven of 28 water conveyance projects were completed, measures were put in place to expedite the process to meet the 2014 targets
- following the process of verification to determine safety, health and environment, about 91 dams with a safety risk were classified
- a total of 195 dams were identified for safety risks.

Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant Programme

Regional bulk infrastructure is defined as the infrastructure required to connect water on a macro or sub-regional scale, over vast distances, with internal bulk and reticulation systems or any bulk infrastructure that may have an impact on water resources in terms of quality and quantity. The department is responsible and accountable for the management of funding, which is administered by the National Treasury.

Over 16 000 households will benefit from the R52 million Makapanstad and Mathibestad Bulk Water Project, which aims to address water shortages in villages in the Moretele Local Municipality in North West.

Upon completion, the project will address water shortages in the villages of Kwa-Mmatlwaela, Tladistad, Leeukraal, Kgomo-Kgomo, Kontante, Moretele, Makapanstad, Phomolong, Potoane, Prieska, Mathibestad, Thulwe and Opperman.

The Mathibestad and Makapanstad Bulk Water Project is funded through the Provincial Infrastructure Grant and Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

Strategic integrated projects (SIPs)

In June 2013, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs launched SIP 18, which is aimed at addressing water supply and sanitation backlogs to millions of households.

SIP 18 was approved by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC).

The launch of the 18th SIP is part of the PICC's 18 SIPs, which are divided into geographic, energy, spatial and social infrastructure development projects. These projects – headed by different departments – cover more than 150 specific infrastructure interventions in rail, road and ports, dams, irrigation systems, sanitation and electricity.

This programme is a 10-year plan that will address the estimated backlog of adequate water to 1,4 million households and that of basic sanitation to 2,1 million households. SIP 18 is expected to fast-track the issuing of water licences, expand the capacity of the water system, speed up build programmes, address backlog projects and rehabilitate and upgrade existing water and sanitation infrastructure.

The project, which will also focus on priority small towns and rural areas where water service delivery is a problem, is also expected to create jobs, raise the quality of service delivery of water around the country and extend water supply to areas that are either underserviced or unserviced.

Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million m³ per year)

Water management	Natural mean annual run-off (1)	Ecological reserve (1,2)
Limpopo	985	156
Luvuvhu/Letaba	1 185	224
Crocodile West and Marico	855	165
Olifants	2 042	460
Inkomati (3)	3 539	1 008
Usutu to Mhlatuze (4)	4 780	1 192
Thukela	3 799	859
Upper Vaal	2 423	299
Middle Vaal	888	109
Lower Vaal	368	48
Mvoti to Umzimkulu	4 798	1 160
Mzimvubu to Keiskamma	7 241	1 122
Upper Orange	6 981	1 349
Lower Orange (5)	502	69
Fish to Tsitsikamma	2 154	243
Gouritz	1 679	325
Olifants/Doring	1 108	156
Breede	2 472	384
Berg	1 429	217
Total	**49 228**	**9 500**

1) Quantities refer to the water management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water management area).
2) Total volume given based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.
3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million m³/a).
4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million m³/a).
5) Includes contributions from the Sengu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4 765 billion m³/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs

The department identified several projects that will be used to drive SIP 18, including the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme, a R5-billion project to be implemented in the area.

Rand Water's BG3 pipeline, which is sub-Saharan Africa's largest water pipeline, running from the Vaal Dam to its Zoekfontein Plant, which is 8,6 km away, was also launched in June 2013.

The Vaal Dam is about 2,5 hours' drive from Johannesburg. The pipeline will increase water distribution in this district and surrounding areas.

The BG3 pipeline runs adjacent to Rand Water's existing BG1 and BG2 pipelines that supply water to Gauteng and parts of the neighbouring Free State, Mpumalanga and North West.

Once in commission, the BG3 pipeline will allow for Rand Water's two pipelines (BG1 and BG2) to be shut down for refurbishment and maintenance. The BG3 pipeline will augment raw water capacity to Zuikerbosch by up to 2100 Mℓ/d, which will accommodate the region's projected growth in water demand to 2030.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project (KWSAP), which was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga, was launched in June 2013.

The KWSAP augments the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Subsystem to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges. The Matla power station reservoir will in turn also provide water to Kusile power station, which is under construction.

The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in Mpumalanga. The KWSAP will be able to deliver an additional 57 million m³ of water a year to the Komati Water Scheme. On the department's instruction, the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority is financing and implementing the project. The project is part of SIP 18.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme ensures the continued structural and operational safety of the dams owned by the DWA.

The municipalities of Mohokare, Letsemeng, Tokologo, Dihlabeng, Phumelela and the Sterkfontein Dam Water Scheme are included in Strategic Infrastructure Project 18 of the PICC.

Various strategic projects of the DWA during 2013/14 included:

- The Bulk Water Schemes in the Xhariep District, namely Phase 2 of the Jagersfontein/Fauresmith and Rouxville/Smithfield/Zastron

projects. Regional Bulk Water Schemes in the Masilonyana and Tokologo local municipalities in the Lejweleputswa district and the Moqhaka Local Municipality in the Fezile Dabi district.

- Regional Bulk Water Schemes in the Setsoto, Dihlabeng and Phumelela local municipalities, the Sterkfontein Dam Scheme and the Nketoana Regional Water Scheme Augmentation in the Thabo Mofutsanyana district.
- Significant progress with the refurbishment of water and wastewater treatment works, including those at Bethlehem and Saulspoort, Ficksburg, Vredefort, Heilbron, the Matjhabeng and Moqhaka local municipalities.
- the upgrade of the Jacobsdal raw water pipeline
- refurbishment at the Clocolan pump station
- upgrade of Ficksburg sewerage network
- refurbishment of the waste water treatment works of Wepener.

The Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality embarked on an extensive programme aimed at eradicating ventilated improved pit toilets (VIP) and pit latrines, specifically in Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu. In addition, an extensive programme aimed at extending the bulk water and sewer purification plants will be implemented.

The De Hoop Dam in Limpopo was officially opened in March 2014; the Komati Water Augment Project, which provides Eskom's Duva and Matla power stations Spring Grove Dam in KwaZulu-Natal had been finished.

In North West, the first phase of the R1,2 billion Pilanesberg scheme was implemented in May 2013, in partnership with the mines to provide a further 100 Mℓ of water for the benefit of local municipalities and mines. About 700 direct jobs were created, while new mining developments will open up 6 000 indirect permanent jobs.

In the Free State, R156 million will be spent on two new pipeline projects that will supply additional water to the Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu municipalities as well as Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality.

The department was processing draft reforms to the National Water Act, while a review of the National Water Resources Strategy had been successful.

Support for resource-poor farmers

In accordance with the National Water Act of 1998, and regulations on financial assistance to resource-poor farmers, the Minister of Water Affairs may allocate assistance to those farmers who fulfil requirements as per regulations.

To ensure that water resources are protected, the regulations explicitly state that financial assistance may be granted and used only for activities that ensure water is protected, used, developed, conserved and managed in a sustainable and equitable manner.

Rainwater harvesting

Rainwater harvesting enables people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented to have access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness creation sessions.

Water Allocation Reform

The Water Allocation Reform Programme's objectives are to ensure equitable access to water, eradicate poverty and promote social and economical development. The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate the availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability.

Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen the active participation of rural women in water resource management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to address them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Management of water conservation and demand

Although South Africa has been classified as a water-scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water depletes the country's

According to *The General Household Survey (GHS) 2012 Report*, 90,8% of South African households had access to piped water while the percentage of households with no toilets or bucket toilets decreased from 12,3% in 2002 to 5,3% in 2012. Households in the Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga and Limpopo were most likely to lack access to toilet facilities or to still use bucket toilets.

resources and reduces revenue to water services authorities.

The municipalities' revenue is lost due to leaking pipes, illegal connections and poor billing systems.

In terms of the water-use efficiency programme, 68 municipalities were supported in implementing water conservation and water demand measures to reduce water loss by 519 million m³. Measures to improve efficient water use in the catchment areas were also undertaken and the volume of water loss was reduced to 32 million m³.

In August 2013, municipal mayors were challenged to create effective partnerships with women and the youth in their planning programmes, especially the water and environmental sectors, to find ways to protect the environment and conserve water for socio-economic development, and women and youth empowerment.

The initiative seeks to promote cooperation and share learning at all levels of government to strengthen the commitment to waste management and water conservation. It further seeks to ensure programmes and key stakeholders are part of an integrated approach, and to identify innovations to address challenges and gaps at local government level.

Women had a significant role to play in the preservation of water and the environment, as they were the ones who bore the brunt of the consequences of not having these resources.

Enhanced Local Government Support Approach

A rapid response unit in the department addresses poor performance of water and waste-water systems, which has resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The specialists within the unit enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational situations, where the lives of citizens and the environment are under threat because of water and wastewater treatments failures.

Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The Freshwater Programme aims to grow and consolidate freshwater activities within Sanbi.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects. Key to the programme's operation will be the further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives.

This includes managing the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water affairs, environmental affairs and agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

National Water Week celebrations coincided with the United Nations (UN) General Assembly declaring 2013 as the UN International Year of Water Cooperation. Water Week is celebrated annually on 22 March internationally.

Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs. The evaporation and rainfall station network has 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still operating in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the department's website at *www.dwa.gov.za*.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges monitors rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands has to be strengthened through improved land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

Adopting of ecosystem-based approaches and implementing the open-space planning and management programmes aggressively will add impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at

local government level. It will require integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The DWA is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxiclogical quality status of the country's water resources.

River Health Programme (RHP)

The *River Health Report* will be used for assessing the pattern of water quality. Generally, water quality is good in the upland regions and deteriorates downstream, particularly in areas affected by mining and urban development. Because of the longitudinal nature of rivers, poor water quality may extend far downstream of the source of pollutants.

The RHP was implemented in all nine regions, comprising 48 projects.

Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The implementation of resource-directed measures, such as ecological water requirements/reserve, the classification of water resources and setting resource quality objectives as part of water-use authorisations, also indicated a need for the massification of natural-resource management programmes.

These include Working for Water, Working for Wetlands, Working on Fire, Working for Woodlands and Working for Energy, which are key components of the management of water quantity and quality in South Africa.

The RHP is part of the National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme initiated in 1994.

Based on the information obtained from the RHP, four compared to the planned two major rivers were rehabilitated namely the:

- Buffalo River in the Eastern Cape
- Luvuvhu River in Limpopo
- Hart River in the Northern Cape
- Berg River in the Western Cape.

Two more rivers, in the Eastern Cape and Limpopo, were identified as flagship projects.

In 2012/13, the department's Adopt-a-River project, which fights the pollution of rivers, led to 24 rivers being cleaned, while creating 985 jobs for women.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit it, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

National Chemical Monitoring Programme

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. The main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is because of high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected

(hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly because of poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are prone to cholera outbreaks.

National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the status of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

Education and awareness

Youth development and National Water Week

National Water Week is an awareness campaign by the DWA to highlight the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and under-development in South Africa.

The campaign seeks to continue building on ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community.

In 2013, Water Week was observed from 18 to 24 March under the theme *Water is Life – Respect It, Conserve It, Enjoy It*.

National Water Week celebrations coincided with the UN General Assembly declaring 2013 as the UN International Year of Water Cooperation. The objective is to raise awareness of the potential for increased cooperation and the challenges facing water management in view of the increase in demand for water access, allocation and services.

The aim is to highlight water cooperation initiatives, and identify crucial issues concerning water education, water diplomacy, transboundary water management, financing cooperation, national/international legal frameworks, and the linkages with the MDGs.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

South Africa has signed cooperative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa shares four of its major river systems with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued participating in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana on Joint Permanent Cooperation and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

As President of the African Ministers Council on Water (AMCOW), South Africa made significant contributions towards the council's work through its strong leadership in financial and staff regulations. South Africa provided leadership in the preparation of a triennial workplan, which has instilled donor confidence in AMCOW's programmes.

The DWA facilitated a workshop on water between South Africa and Japan, to share and exchange technical information and opportunities.

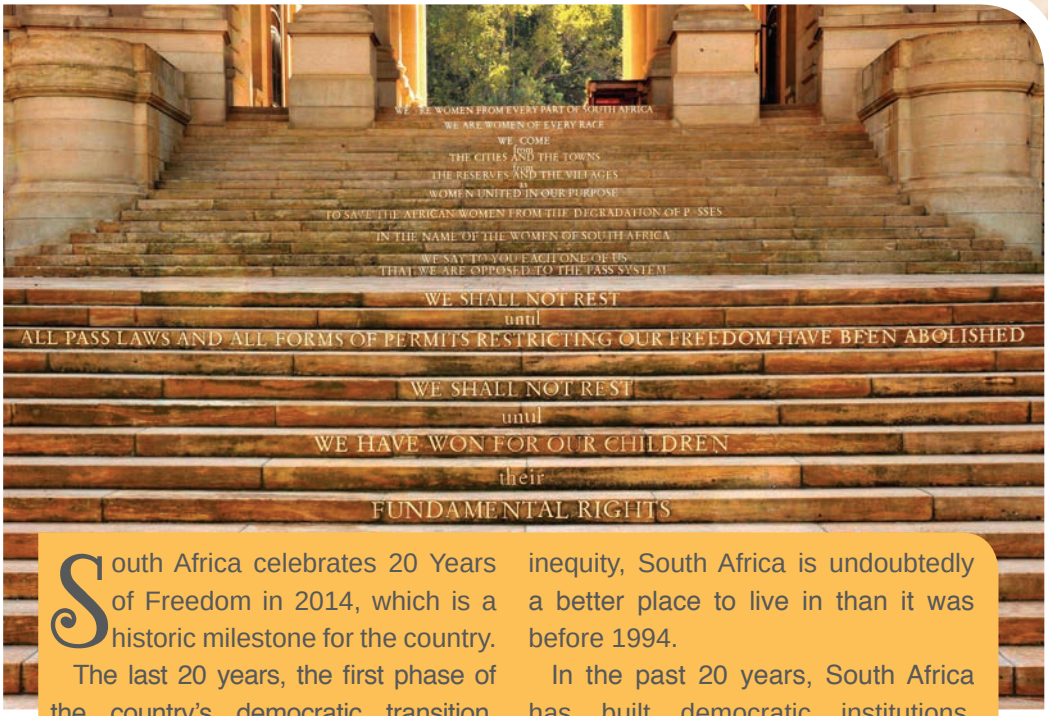
This has led to the signing of a joint resolution between South Africa and the Japan Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transport and Tourism to encourage and strengthen mutual cooperation in water management.

South Africa has entered into a partnership with the World Economic Forum. The Strategic Water Partners Network was established, focusing on the water efficiency supply chain, with a focus on agriculture and water quality.

The Inga Hydro-Electric Project could become the largest hydro-electric project in the world, and is expected to generate a massive 40 000 MW of electricity – more than the current electricity generation in South Africa.

In September 2013, the DWA acquired additional engineers from Cuba to assist in South Africa's water infrastructure.

South Africa 20 Years of Freedom



South Africa celebrates 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which is a historic milestone for the country.

The last 20 years, the first phase of the country's democratic transition, laid the foundations for a non-racial, non-sexist, united and prosperous South Africa, and a society based on fundamental human rights, equality and unity in diversity.

Non-racial majority rule based on one-person, one-vote has brought about government based on the will of the people. Despite some remaining challenges such as the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequity, South Africa is undoubtedly a better place to live in than it was before 1994.

In the past 20 years, South Africa has built democratic institutions, transformed the Public Service, extended basic services, stabilised the economy and taken its rightful place in the family of nations.

The *Twenty Year Review*, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people.

However, there had been a significant improvement in people's lives since 1994. Compared to the apartheid era, where the majority had no political rights and parties opposed to apartheid were banned, all South Africans now have the right to freedom of association and are free to make political choices and campaign for any political party or cause.

Whereas the majority of South Africans were denied the right to vote during the apartheid era, every adult citizen now has the right to participate in free, fair and regular elections, the right to vote and to stand for public office and, if elected, to hold office.

All South Africans have the right to assemble, to demonstrate, to picket and to present petitions, provided this is done peacefully and unarmed.

South Africans now have the right to freedom of expression. The press and other media can express themselves freely and there is academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

The Bill of Rights also makes provision for the right to access any information that is required for the exercise or protection of any rights. The freedom of expression does not extend to propaganda of war, incitement of imminent violence or advocacy of hatred based on race, ethnicity, gender or religion.

Compared to the apartheid era, all South Africans are now equal before the law and have the right to equal protection and benefit of the law. Whereas during apartheid people were detained without trial, mainly for their political beliefs, all citizens now have the right to freedom and security of the person, which includes the right not to be detained without trial and not to be treated or punished in a cruel, inhuman or degrading way.

Everyone who is detained has the right to be informed of the reason for being detained and to legal representation. Everyone who is arrested for allegedly committing an offence has the right to remain silent and to a fair trial or hearing before a court.

... every adult citizen now has the right to participate in free, fair and regular elections ...

While the apartheid state sought to deprive the majority of South Africans of their citizenship and controlled their movement through oppressive pass laws and other means, no citizen may be deprived of citizenship and everyone has the right to freely move through the Republic, reside anywhere and hold a passport.

Whereas the apartheid state reserved skilled jobs for white South Africans, all citizens now have the right to choose their trade, occupation or profession.

All citizens have the right to fair labour practices, to form and join a trade union and participate in its activities and programmes and the right to engage in collective bargaining.

No one may be subjected to slavery, servitude and forced labour. While access to education was racially determined during apartheid, all South Africans now have the right to basic education (including adult basic education) and to further education, which the state has sought to progressively make available and accessible, through reasonable measures.

All South Africans now have the right to access healthcare services, water and social security and appropriate social assistance if they are unable to support themselves and their dependants. No one may be refused emergency medical treatment.

Every child, regardless of race, has a right to basic nutrition, shelter, basic health services and social services. Every child also has the right to family care or parental care and to be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation and exploitative labour practices.

Compared to the apartheid era, all citizens have the right to freedom of sexual orientation, conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion. All marriages concluded under any tradition, or a system of religious, person or family law are now recognised.

Compared to the further oppression and discrimination they experienced during the apartheid era, women have equal rights before the law, including the right to make decisions regarding reproduction.

Every child, regardless of race, has a right to basic nutrition, shelter, basic health services and social services.

National Development Plan (NDP)

The NDP, also known as Vision 2030 and adopted by Cabinet in 2012, is the country's blueprint to reduce poverty, unemployment and inequality.

In the words of President Jacob Zuma: "The plan has been adopted as a national plan for the whole country. It is our roadmap for the next 20 years. All the work we do in government is now part of the comprehensive National Development Plan, including all operational plans, be they social, economic or political."

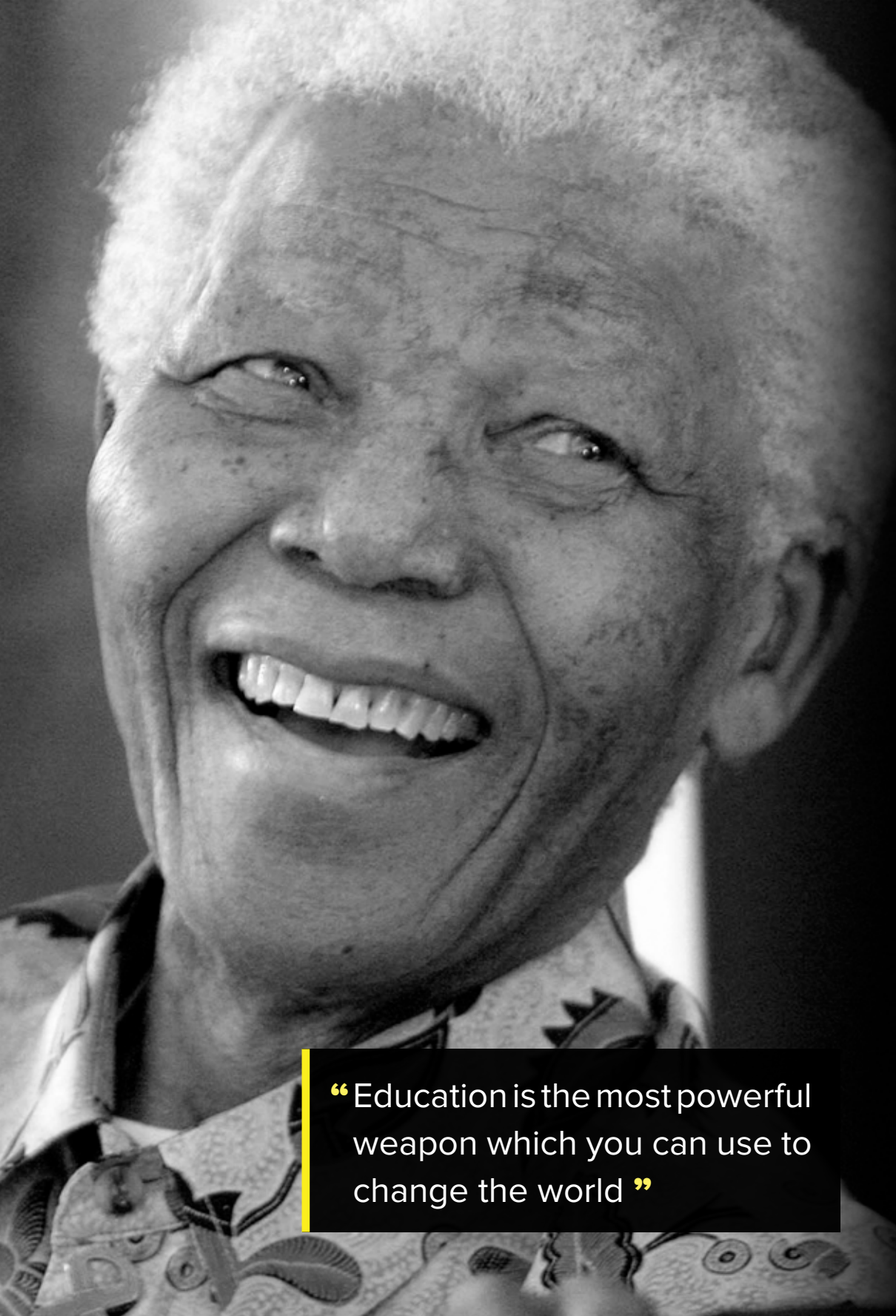
Since 2012, the focus has been on implementing the parts of the NDP that did not require long lead times and additional funding. For example, the NDP proposal to establish an Office of the Chief Procurement Officer in National Treasury, in order to ensure value for money and reduce corruption, has been implemented.

Legislation to prevent public servants from doing business with the State was introduced in Parliament in 2013, as proposed in the NDP. Implementation of the Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act 26 of 2013), aimed at helping young people enter the labour market, began in 2014.

Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

Source: *Twenty Year Review*



“Education is the most powerful weapon which you can use to change the world”

NELSON MANDELA

1918 - 2013

Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela was born to Nongaphi Nosekeni and Henry Gadla Mandela on 18 July 1918, in Mvezo, near Mthatha in the then Transkei (now Eastern Cape). His father was the key counsellor/adviser to the Thembu royal house.

After his father's death in 1927, the young Mandela became the ward of Chief Jongintaba Dalindyebo, the acting regent of the Thembu nation.

In 1939, he enrolled for a Bachelor of Arts (BA) degree at the University of Fort Hare, where he met Oliver Tambo. He was elected as a member of the Students' Representative Council but was suspended along with Tambo for joining in a protest boycott.

Mandela met Walter Sisulu in 1941 in Johannesburg and in 1942 he completed his BA degree through the University of South Africa. He joined the African National Congress (ANC) in 1943 while studying law at the University of the Witwatersrand.

Mandela met Evelyn Nomathamsanqa Mase in 1945. They had four children: Thembikile (1946), Makaziwe (1947), who died at nine months, Makgatho (1951) and Makaziwe (1954). The couple divorced in 1958.

He was instrumental in the formation of the radical ANC Youth League (ANCYL) in 1944 and was elected the league's National Secretary in 1948 and its President in 1952.

He became National Volunteer-in-Chief, travelling around the country organising resistance against discriminatory legislation.

As a qualified lawyer, he opened South Africa's first black law firm in central Johannesburg in December 1952, together with Tambo.

He was a key player in the ANC's Campaign for the Defiance of Unjust Laws in 1952.

During the whole of the 1950s, Mandela was a victim of various forms of repression. He was banned, arrested and imprisoned.

In June 1958 he married Nomzamo Winnie Madikizela. They had two children, Zenani (1958) and Zindziswa (1960). In April 1992 they were separated and finally divorced in 1996.

Together with other leaders of the ANC, he formed the armed wing of the liberation movement, Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK), and became its commander-in-chief.

In 1962, Mandela left the country as 'David Motsamayi' and travelled abroad for several months.

On his return he was arrested for leaving the country illegally and for incitement to strike. He conducted his own defence. He was convicted and jailed for five years in November 1962. While serving his sentence, he was charged, in the Rivonia trial, with sabotage and sentenced to life imprisonment. He was transferred to Robben Island in May 1963.

While he was in jail his mother and son died, his wife was banned and subjected to continuous arrest and harassment, and the liberation movement was reduced to isolated groups of activists.

Mandela rejected offers made by his jailers to be released on condition that he renounced violence. "Prisoners cannot enter into contracts. Only free men can negotiate," he said. He served a total of 27 years in prison for his conviction to oppose apartheid and its injustices.

Released on 11 February 1990, Mandela was inaugurated as the first democratically elected President of South Africa on 10 May 1994 following the country's first democratic elections on 27 April. In his inauguration speech he said:

"We understand it still that there is no easy road to

freedom. We know it well that none of us acting alone can achieve success. We must therefore act together as a united people, for national reconciliation, for nation building, for the birth of a new world. Let there be justice for all. Let there be peace for all. Let there be work, bread, water and salt for all. Let each know that for each the body, the mind and the soul have been freed to fulfil themselves. Never, never and never again shall it be that this beautiful land will again experience the oppression of one by another and suffer the indignity of being the skunk of the world. Let freedom reign."

In 1993, Mandela and then Pesident FW de Klerk were jointly awarded the Nobel Peace Prize "for their work for the peaceful termination of the apartheid regime, and for laying the foundations for a new democratic South Africa".

On 18 July 1998, Mandela married Graça Machel.

This world icon worked tirelessly even after the achievement of democracy in South Africa to continue improving lives. Shortly before his 86th birthday in June 2004, Mandela officially retired from public life. Even as he retired from politics, his attention shifted to social issues such as HIV and AIDS and the wellbeing of the nation's children.

> "I learned that courage was not the absence of fear, but the triumph over it. The brave man is not he who does not feel afraid, but he who conquers that fear."

In November 2009, the United Nations (UN) General Assembly declared, 18 July Nelson Mandela International Day, to honour his birthday. This is the first time that the UN has designated a day dedicated to a person.

As a testimony to his sharp political intellect, wisdom and unrelenting commitment to make the world a better place, Mandela formed the prestigious group called The Elders – an independent group of eminent global leaders who offer their collective influence and experience to support peace building, help address major causes of human suffering and promote the shared interests of humanity.

He died on 5 December 2013 after a long illness.

Addendum

Abbreviations

A

AARTO	Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences
ABC	Agricultural Business Chamber
ABC	Audit Bureau of Circulations
Abet	Adult Basic Education and Training
ABF	Annual Bilateral Forum
Absa	Amalgamated Banks of South Africa
AC	Advisory Committee
ACAP	Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels
ACE	Advanced Certificate in Education
ACEP	African Coelacanth Ecosystems Programme
ACIP	Accelerated Community Infrastructure Programme
ACP	African-Caribbean-Pacific
Acsa	Airports Company of South Africa
ACT	Arts and Culture Trust
ADEA	Association for the Development of Education in Africa
ADEP	Agriculture Development Enhancement Programme
ADPA	African Diamond Producers' Association
ADS	Approved Destination Status
AEC	African Economic Community
AEON	African Earth Observatory Network
Afasa	African Farmers' Association of South Africa
AFB	Air Force Base
AfD	*Agence Française de Développement*
AfDB	African Development Bank
AFF	agriculture, forestry and fisheries
Afis	Automated Fingerprint Information System
AFU	Asset Forfeiture Unit
AG	Auditor-General
AG	Attorney-General
Agis	Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System
AGOA	African Growth and Opportunity Act
Agri BEE	Agri Black Economic Empowerment
Agri SA	Agri South Africa
AGSA	Auditor General of South Africa
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
AIICT	Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AIP	Association of Independent Publishers
Aisa	African Institute of International Affairs
AMAA	African Movie Academy Awards
AMCEN	African Ministerial Conference on the Environment

AMCHUD	African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development
AMCOW	African Ministers Council on Water
AMD	South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association
AMD	acid mine drainage
AML/CFT	anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism
AMP	African Mining Partnership
ANA	annual national assessment
ANC	African National Congress
Andi	African Network on Drugs and Diagnostic Innovation
AP	Associated Press
APAC	Agricultural Produce Agents Council
APRM	African Peer Review Mechanism
APS	Anti-Poverty Strategy
APSW	African Public Service Week
AQA	Air Quality Act
AQMP	Air-Quality Management Planning
ARC	Agricultural Research Council
ARCC	Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre
ARCC	Africa Regional Certificate Committee
ARDM	Agricultural Risk and Disaster Management
Aressa	Antarctic Research Strategy
ARF	African Renaissance Fund
Armscor	Armaments Corporation of South Africa
ART	antiretroviral treatment
ARV	antiretroviral
ASA	Advertising Standards Authority
Asean	Association of South-East Asian Nations
ASELPH	Albertina Sisulu Executive Leadership Programme in Health
AsgiSA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa
ASIB	Aviation Safety Investigation Board
Asidi	Accelerated Schools Infrastructure Development Initiative
ASKAP	Australian Square Kilometre Array Pathfinder
ASP	African Stockpile Programme
ASRDC	Agricultural and Sustainable Rural Development Committee
ASSAf	Academy of Science of South Africa
Astron	Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy
ATA	Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission
ATAF	African Tax Administration Forum
ATI	Agricultural Training Institute
ATM	Automated Teller Machine
ATM	African Traditional Medicine
ATM	AIDS, tuberculosis and Malaria
ATNS	Air-Traffic Navigation Service
ATP	Agritourism Programme
AU	African Union
AUC	African Union Commission
AUPSC	African Union Peace and Security Council
AVMP	Animal and Veld Management Programme
AVR	antiretroviral treatment
AWCC	African West Coast Cable
AWHF	African World Heritage Fund

B

B&Bs	bed-and-breakfast establishments
BA	British Airways
BAA	Black Administration Act
Basa	Banking Association of South Africa
Basa	Business and Arts South Africa
Basic	Brazil, South Africa, India and China
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation
BBBEE	Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment

BCLME	Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem
BCOCC	Border Control Coordinating Committee
BEAC	Banque d'Etats de l'Afrique Centrale
BED	Business and Entrepreneurial Development
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
BEEAC	BEE Advisory Council
BER	Bureau for Economic Research
BioFISA	Finnish-South African Partnership Programme
Blindlib	South African Library for the Blind
Blind SA	Blind Workers' Organisation of South Africa
BLNS	Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland
BMCC	Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee
BNC	Binational Commission
BNG	Breaking New Ground
BoP	base of pyramid
BPO	Business Process Outsourcing
BPO&O	Business Process Outsourcing and Offshoring
Brics	biotechnology regional innovation centres
BRICS	Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa
BRT	Bus Rapid Transport
BSRP	Building for Sport and Recreation Project
Bt	billion tons
BSA	Boxing South Africa
BTech	Bachelor's Degree in Technology
BWIs	Bretton Woods Institutions

C

CA	Council of Administrators
CA	Conservation Agriculture
Cabri	Collaborative African Budget reform Initiative
CADF	China-Africa Development Fund
CAF	Confederation of African Football
CAPE	Cape Action for People and the Environment
CAPS	Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement
CAR	Central African Republic
CAR	capital adequacy ratios
Cara	Criminal Asset Recovery Act
Caricom	Caribbean Community
Casp	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
CAV	Centurion Aerospace Village
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CBE	Council for the Built Environment
CBOs	community-based organisations
CBRTA	Cross-Border Road Transport Agency
CC	Constitutional Court
CCA	Common Country Assessment
CCAMLR	Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources
CCCF	Comprehensive Country Cooperation Framework
CCD	Convention to Combat Desertification
CCETW	Conference on Education and Training Youth Workers
CCMA	Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
CCMT	Comprehensive Programme for HIV and AIDS Care, Management and Treatment
CCTV	closed-circuit television
CDA	Central Drug Authority
CDI	Cooperative Development Initiative
CDM	clean development mechanism
CDWs	community development workers
CEE	Commission for Employment Equity
CEF	Central Energy Fund

CEM	Council of Education Ministers
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CESSM	Centre for Exercise Science and Sports Medicine
Cesul	Centre-South Project
CET	Community Education and Training
CF	Compensation Fund
CFC	Central Foreign Currency
CFCs	chlorofluorocarbons
CFG	Courier Freight Group
CFL	compact fluorescent lamp
CFM	case-flow management
CGE	Commission on Gender Equality
CGS	Council for Geoscience
CHE	Council on Higher Education
CHOGM	Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting
CHP	Comprehensive Housing Plan
CHPC	Centre for High-Performance Computing
CIO	Chief Information Officer
CIPC	Companies and Intellectual Property Commission
Cipro	Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office
Cirad	French Agricultural Centre for International Development
CIS	Cadastral Information System
CIS	collective investment schemes
CIT	company income tax
Cites	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
CJCP	Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention
CJS	criminal justice system
ClaRA	Communal Land Rights Act
CLPA	Child Labour Programme of Action
CMAs	catchment management agencies
CMS	Convention of Migratory Species
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO_2	carbon dioxide
COEs	centres of excellence
Cofisa	Cooperation Framework on Innovation Systems between Finland and South Africa
CoGTA	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Comsec	Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Limited
COP	Conference of the Parties
COP	Code of Practice
COPE	Congress of the People
Cosatu	Congress of South African Trade Unions
CPA	comprehensive peace agreement
CPA	Cotonou Partnership Agreement
CPA	Communal Property Association
CPA	Criminal Procedures Act
CPB	Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
CPD	Continuing Professional Development
CPF	Community Policing Forum
CPI	Consumer Price Index
CPIDP	Construction and Industry Development Programme
CPIX	consumer price index, excluding mortgage costs
CPSI	Centre for Public Service Innovation
CRDP	comprehensive Rural Development Programme
CRL Commission	Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Commission
CRLR	Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
CRUs	community residential units
CSD	Centre for Science Development
CSD	Commission on Sustainable Development
CSG	Child-Support Grant
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

CSOs	civil society organisations
CSP	Comprehensive Strategic Partnership
CSSDCA	Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Cooperation in Africa
CSSS	Comprehensive Social Security System
CSTL	Care and Support for Teaching and Learning
CTL	coal-to-liquid
CWP	Community Work Programme

D

DA	Democratic Alliance
DAC	Department of Arts and Culture
DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
DANIDA	Danish International Development Assistance
DBE	Department of Basic Education
DBSA	Development Bank of Southern Africa
DDT	Digital Terrestrial Television
DDT	dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DeafSA	Deaf Federation of South Africa
DERO	Desired Emission Reduction Outcomes
DFIs	development finance institutions
DG	Director-General
DHA	Department of Home Affairs
DHET	Department of Higher Education and Training
DHS	Department of Human Settlements
Dirco	Department of International Relations and Cooperation
DLS	Denel Land Systems
DMMA	Digital Media and Marketing Association
DMR	Department of Mineral Resources
DNA	Deoxyribonuleic Acid
DNA	Domain Name Authority
DNA	Designated National Authority
DoC	Department of Communications
DoH	Department of Health
DoJ&CD	Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
DoL	Department of Labour
DoT	Department of Transport
DPCI	Directorate of Priority Crime Investigation
DPSA	Department of Public Service and Administration
DPRK	Democratic People's Republic of Korea
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DRDLA	Department of Rural Development and Land Affairs
DSD	Department of Social Development
DSM	Demand-Side Management
DST	Department of Science and Technology
DST	Domestic Tourism Strategy
DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
DWA	Department of Water Affairs

E

EAAB	Estate Agency Affairs Board
EAP	Employee Assistance Programme
EC	European Commission
EC	Executive Council
EC	Enforcement Committee
ECC	Employment Conditions Commission
ECD	early childhood development
ECF	Education Collaboration Framework
Ecosoc	Economic and Social Council
Ecowas	Economic Community of West African States

EDCCTP	European Developing Countries Clinical Trails Partnership
EED	Economic Development Department
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EFT	Electronic Funds Transfer
EFTA	European Free Trade Area
EIAs	environmental impact assessments
EIAMS	Environment Impact Assessment and Management Strategy
EIB	European Investment Bank
Efta	European Free Trade Area
Elgosa	Enhanced Local Government Support Approach
ELRC	Education Labour Relations Council
EMIA	Export Marketing and Investment Assistance Scheme
eNaTIS	Electronic National Traffic Information System
eNCA	eNews Channel Africa
EPA	economic partnership agreement
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ETEYA	Emerging Entrepreneur of the Year Award
EU	European Union
EV	electric vehicle
EWS	Early Warning System

F

FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
Fabi	Forestry Agricultural Biotechnology Institute
FAIS	financial advisory and intermediary service
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organisation
FAQs	frequently asked questions
FAW	First Automobile Works
FBOs	faith-based organisations
FCIS	foreign collective investment scheme
FCOs	fishery-contol officers
FCS	Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences units
FDC ARVs	fixed dose combination antiretrovirals
FDI	Foreign Direct Investment
FED	Forestry Enterprise Development
Fedusa	Federations of Unions of South Africa
FET	Further Education and Training
FETCBU	Further Education and Training Colleges Bargaining Unit
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FIC	Financial Intelligence Centre
FIFA	*Fédération Internationale de Football Association*
FIG	Foreign Investment Grant
FILDA	*Feira Internacional de Angola*
FINA	*Fédération Internationale de Natation*
FLISP	Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme
FM	Frequency Modulation
FNB	First National Bank
FNL	*Forces National de Liberatio*n
FOCAC	Forum on China-Africa Cooperation
Fosad	Forum of South African Directors-General
FPA	Fire Protection Association
FPB	Film and Publication Board
FPM	Fibre Processing and Manufacturing
FRD	Foundation for Research Development
F'SATI	French-South African Institute of Technology
FSB	Financial Services Board
FSB	Financial Stability Board
FSD	Financial Surveillance Department
FSL	Forensic Science Laboratory
FSP	financial services-provider

FSS	Forensic Science Service
FT	Fischer-Tröpsch
FTA	Free Trade Area
FTFA	Food and Trees for Africa
FTSE	Financial Times of London Stock Exchange

G

G8	Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia
G20	Group of 20
GBADS	ground-based air defence systems
GBH	grievous bodily harm
GCIS	Government Communication and Information System
GDP	gross domestic product
GDPR	gross domestic product per region
GDS	Growth and Development Summit
Gems	Government Employees Medical Scheme
GEPF	Government Employees Pension Fund
GEOSS	Global Earth Observation System of Systems
GET	General Education and Training
GETC	General Education and Training Certificate
GFCS	Global Framework for Climate Change Services
GFS	government finance statistics
GFZ	German Research Centre for Geoscience
GGR	Gross Gambling Revenue
GHG	greenhouse gas
GIS	Geographical Information System
Gito	Government Information Technology Officer
Gitoc	Government Information Technology Officers Council
GLTP	Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park
GM	Genetic modification
GMOs	genetically modified organisms
GPA	Global Political Agreement
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPSSBC	General Public Service Bargaining Council
GRC	Gambling Review Commission
GPW	Government Printing Works
GRNP	Garden Route National Park
GSLWP	Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park
GTL	gas-to-liquid
GTTP	Global Travel and Tourism Programme
GWh	gigawatt-hour

H

ha	hectare (s)
HALCA	Highly Advanced Laboratory for Communications and Astronomy
HartRAO	Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
HCBC	home community-based care
HCT	HIV Counselling and Testing Campaign
HD	high definition
HDA	Housing Development Agency
HDIs	historically disadvantaged individuals
HE	Higher Education
Hedcom	Heads of Education Departments Committee
Hesa	Higher Education South Africa
HG	Higher Grade
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLC	high-level consultations
HMO	Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
HPCSA	Health Professions Council of South Africa
HR	human resources
HRD	human-resource development

HRDCSA	Human Resources Development Council of South Africa
HRDSSA	Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa
HRM	human-resource management
HRTEM	High-Resolution Transmission Electron Microscopy
HSDG	Human Settlements Development Grant
HSGIC	Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee
HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council
HYI	Hospitality Youth Initiative

I

IAEA	International Atomic Energy Agency
IATA	International Air Transport Association
IBA	Independent Broadcasting Authority
IBC	International Broadcasting Centre
IBIS	Integrated Ballistics Identification System
IBO	International Boxing Organisation
IBSA	India-Brazil-South Africa
ICA	Infrastructure Consortium for Africa
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
Icasa	Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
ICC	International Cricket Council
ICC	International Criminal Court
ICEB	International Council on English Braille
ICFR	Institute for Forestry Research
ICMA	Inkomati Catchment Management Agency
ICMS	Integrated Case Management System
ICSU	International Council for Science
ICT	information and communications technology
ICV	infantry combat vehicle
ID	identity document
Idasa	Institute for Democracy in Africa
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IDZ	Industrial Development Zone
IEC	Independent Electoral Commission
IECs	integrated energy centres
IEnvA	IATA Environmental Assessment
IEP	Integrated Energy Plan
Ieri	Institute for Economic Research on Innovation
IFMS	Integrated Financial Management System
IFP	Inkatha Freedom Party
IFSNP	Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme
IGR	intergovernmental relations
IHL	International Humanitarian Law
IIC	International Investment Council
IIPSA	Infrastructure Investment Programme for South Africa
IIWTMP	Integrated Industry Waste Tyre Management Plan
IJS	integrated justice system
IKS	indigenous knowledge system
ILAM	International Library of African Music
ILS	instrument landing system
IMC	International Marketing Council
IMC	Inter-Ministerial Committee
IMF	International Monetary Fund
IMO	International Maritime Organisation
Impact	International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism
IMS	Integrated Manufacturing Strategy
Inep	Integrated National Electrification Programme
INP	Integrated Nutrition Programme
IOC	International Olympic Committee

IOR-ARC	Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Cooperation
IOR	Indian Ocean Rim
IP	Intellectual Property
IPA	International Publishers Association
IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
IPC	International Paralympic Committee
IPCA	International Prison Chaplaincy Association
IPID	Independent Police Investigative Directorate
IPP	Independent Power Producer
IPPC	International Plant Protection Convention
IPR	intellectual property rights
IRB	International Rugby Board
IRP	Integrated Resource Plan
IRDP	Integrated Residential Development Programme
IRPS	International Relations, Peace and Security
IRPTN	Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network
ISAD	Information Society and Development
IRR	Institutional Realignment and Restructuring
ISHP	Integrated School Health Programme
ISO	International Standards Organisation
ISPs	Internet service-providers
ISUP	Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme
ISS	Institute for Security Studies
ISS	International social services
ISSET-Seta	Information Systems Electronic and Telecom Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority
IST	Innovation, Science and Technology
IT	information technology
Itac	International Trade Administration Commission
Itec	Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation
ITC	Information and Communication Technology
Ited	International Trade and Economic Development
iThembaLabs	iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences
ITS	intelligent transport service
ITU	International Telecommunications Union
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature
IWF	Isivande Women's Fund
IWR	Institute for Water Research
IWRM	Integrated Water Resources Management
IyA	Inkaba-ye Africa

J

JBC	Joint Bilateral Commission (for Cooperation)
JC	Joint Commission
JCBC	Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation
JCC	Joint Commission of Cooperation
JCM	Joint Consultative Mechanism
JCPS	Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
JICA	Japanese International Cooperation Agency
Jipsa	Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition
JMC	Joint Ministerial Commission
JPC	Joint Permanent Commission
JPCC	Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation
JPCCDS	Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation for Defence and Security
JRMCs	joint route management committees
JSC	Judicial Service Commission
JSE	Johannesburg Stock Exchange
JWC	Junior World Championships

K

Kat	Karoo Array Telescope
KfW	Kreditstalt für Wiederaufbau [German Development Bank]
KLF	Komatiland Forests
km	kilometre
KM	Knowledge Management
KOAFEC	Korea-Africa Economic Conference
KPCS	Kimberley Process Certification Scheme
KRC	Kirstenbosch Research Centre
kWh	kilowatt-hours

L

l	litre
LAGs	liquids, aerosols and gels
Land Bank	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa
LARP	Land and Agrarian Reform Project
LCRC	Local Criminal Record Centre
Legal Aid SA	Legal Aid South Africa
LED	local economic development
LGSA	Local Government Strategic Agenda
LGTAS	Local Government Turnaround Strategy
LHWP	Lesotho Highlands Water Project
LIS	Library and Information Service
Liasa	Library and Information Association of South Africa
LPG	liquid petroleum gas
LRA	Labour Relations Act
LRAD	Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development
LSE	London Stock Exchange
LTMS	Long-Term Mitigation Scenario
LTPS	Land Transport Permit System
LTR	Land and Tenure Reform

M

m^3	cubic metres
m	metre
M&E	monitoring and evaluation
Macufe	Manguang Cultural Festival
Mafisa	Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa
Mappp-Seta	Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority
MBR	Methyl Bromide
MCA	MultiChoice Africa
MCA-N	Millennium Challenge Account Namibia
MCC	Medicines Control Council
MCEP	Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme
MCLI	Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative
MCM	Marine and Coastal Management
MCS	Movement Control System
MDB	Municipal Demarcation Board
MDC	Movement for Democratic Change
MDDA	Media Development and Diversity Agency
MDGs	millennium development goals
MDI	Home Ownership Mortgage Indemnity Guarantee Fund
MDR-TB	multidrug-resistant tuberculosis
MEC	Member of the Executive Council
MEFMI	Macroeconomic and Financial Management Institute of Eastern and Southern Africa
Mercosur	South American Common Market
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MFN	Most Favoured Nation
MFRC	Micro-Finance Regulatory Council

MFSA	Marketing Federation of South Africa
MHIC	Mental Health Information Centre
MHSA	Mine Health and Safety Act
MHSC	Mine Health and Safety Council
MHSI	Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate
Mice	meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions
Midem	Music Market International (*Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale*)
MIDP	Motor Industry Development Programme
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MIGDETT	Mining Growth, Development, and Employment Task Team
MiningTek	Mining Technology Division
MinMec	Minister and MECs forum
Mintek	Council for Mineral Technology and research
Misa	municipal infrastructure support agent
MIT	Massachusetts Institute of Technology
MK	Umkhonto we Sizwe
Ml	million litres
MMM	MultiMarket Model
MMR	Maternal Mortality Ratio
MMSD	Mineral and Mining for Sustainable Development
MoU	Memorandum of Understanding
MPAs	marine protected areas
MPC	Monetary Policy Committee
MPDC	Maputo Ports Development Company
MPRDA	Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act
MQA	Mining Qualifications Authority
MRC	Medical Research Council
MRCC	Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre
MST	Mathematics, Science and Technology
Mt	million tons
MTB	mountain biking
MTBPS	Medium Term Budget Policy Statement
MTech	Master's Degree in Technology
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTN	Mobile Telephone Network
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
MW	medium wave
MW	megawatt
MYIP	Multi-Year Implementation Plan

N

NAASP	New Asian-African Strategic Partnership
NAC	National Arts Council (of South Africa)
NACCA	National Action Committee for Children Made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS
NACF	National Anti-Corruption Forum
NACH	National Anti-Corruption Helpline
Naci	National Advisory Council on Innovation
Nactu	National Council of trade unions
NAEHMP	National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme
Nafu	National African Farmers' Union
NaHSLI	National Human Settlements Land Inventory
NAM	Non-Aligned Movement
NAMC	National Agricultural Marketing Council
NAMHRI	Network of African National Human Rights Institutions
NAP	National Action Plan
NAP	National Anti-Corruption Programme
NAPF	National Aquaculture Policy Framework
Napwa	National Association for People Living with HIV and AIDS
Nareg	National Reference Group
NARF	National Agricultural Research Forum

Narmco	National Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Committee
Narysec	National Rural Youth Service Corps
NBA	National Biodiversity Assessment
NBF	National Biodiversity Framework
NBI	National Botanical Institute
NBS	National Biotechnology Strategy
NBSAP	National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan
NCA	National Credit Act
NCACC	National Conventional Arms Control Committee
NCC	National Communications Centre
NCD	non-communicable disease
NCHM	National Cultural History Museum
NCLIS	National Council for Library and Information Services
NCOH	National Centre for Occupational Health
NCOP	National Council of Provinces
NCPCF	National Community Policing Consultative Forum
NCPR	National Child Protection Register
NCR	National Credit Regulator
NCRF	National Community Radio Forum
NCPS	National Crime Prevention Strategy
NCS	National Curriculum Statement
NCV	National Certificate Vocational
NDA	National Development Agency
NDMC	National Disaster Management Centre
NDP	National Development Plan
NDPP	National Director of Public Prosecutions
Necsa	Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa
Nedlac	National Economic Development and Labour Council
Needu	National Education and Evaluation and Development Unit
NEF	National Empowerment Fund
Nema	National Environmental Management Act
Nemba	National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act
Nemisa	National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act
Nepa	National Education Policy Act
Nepad	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NER	National Electricity Regulator
Neri	National Energy Research Institute
Nerpo	National Emergent Red Meat Producers Organisation
Nersa	National Energy Regulator of South Africa
NETSAFRICA	Network of Tuscan and South African Local Governments
NFAC	National Forests Advisory Council
NFSD	National Framework for Sustainable Development
NFVF	National Film and Video Foundation
NFVSA	National Film, Video and Sound Archives
NGB	National Gambling Board
NGOs	non-governmental organisations
NGP	New Growth Path
NHBRC	National Home-Builders Registration Council
NHC	National Health Council
NHF	National Health Fund
NHFC	National Housing Finance Corporation
NHI	National Health Insurance
NHLS	National Health Laboratory Service
NHRBC	National Home-Builders Registration Council
NHS	National Health System
NIA	National Intelligence Agency
NICOC	National Intelligence Coordinating Committee
NIPMO	National Intellectual Property management Office
NIPP	National Industrial Participation Programme

NIRP	National Integrated Resource Plan
NIU	National Intervention Unit
NKC	National Khoi-San Council
NLB	National Lotteries Board
NLBs	national language bodies
NLDS	National Livestock Development Strategy
NLP	National LandCare Programme
NLS	National Language Service
NLSA	National Library of South Africa
NLUs	national lexicography units
NMC	Network Management Centre
NMMU	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
NMPP	New Multi-Product Pipeline
NMT	non-motorised transport
NMSRT	National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism
NNEECC	National Nuclear Energy Executive Coordination Committee
NNR	National Nuclear Regulator
NNP	New National Party
NP	National Party
NPA	National Prosecuting Authority
NPAES	National Protected Area Expansion Strategy
NPA	National Ports Authority
NPC	National Planning Commission
NPCA	Nepad Planning and Coordinating Committee
NPoA-Sharks	National Plan of Action for the Conservation and Management of Sharks
NPOs	non-profit organisations
NPR	National Ports Regulator
NPR	National Population Register
NPT	Non-Prolifiration Treaty
NQF	National Qualifications Framework
NRDS	National Research and Development Strategy
NRF	National Research Foundation
NRGP	National Responsible Gambling Programme
NRMDP	National Red Meat Development Programme
NRSO	National Register for sex offenders
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act
NSA	National Skills Authority
NSBA	National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment
NSBAC	National Small Business Advisory Council
NSDF	National Spatial Development Framework
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NSDS	National Skills Development Strategy
NSF	non-statutory forces
NSI	National System of Innovation
NSIF	National Spatial Information Framework
NSF	National Skills Fund
NSFAS	National Student Financial Aid Scheme
NSNP	National School Nutrition Programme
NSP	National Strategic Plan
NSRP	National Sport and Recreation Plan
NSSD	National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan
NSVC	National Sports Volunteer Corps
NTSS	National Tourism Sector Strategy
Nurcha	National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency
NWCRU	National Wildlife Reaction Unit
NVFFA	National Veld and Forest Fire Act
NWIF	National Water Investment Framework
NWMS	National Waste-Management Strategy
NWRI	National Water Resource Infrastructure
NWRS	National Water Research Strategy

NYDA	National Youth Development Agency
NZG	National Zoological Garden

O

OAU	Organisation of African Unity
OBP	Onderstepoort Biological Products
ODA	Official Development Assistance
OECD	Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
OHS	occupational health and safety
OHSC	Office of Health Standard Compliance
OIC	Office of Interception Centres
OIE	*Office International des Épizooties* (Organisation for Animal Health)
OMOs	Open-market operations
OPDs	official publications depositories
OSD	Occupation Specific Dispensation
OTB	Overberg Test Range
OTC	over-the-counter
OVC	orphans and vulnerable children

P

PAC	Pan Africanist Congress
Paia	Promotion of Access to Information Act
PAJA	Promotion of the Administrative Justice Act
Palama	Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
PanSALB	Pan South African Language Board
PAP	Pan-African Parliament
Papu	Pan-African Postal Union
PAT	Progress Assessment Tool
PAYE	pay-as-you-earn
PCC	President's Coordinating Council
PCV13	Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine
PDIs	previously disadvantaged individuals
PDR	People's Democratic Republic
Pepfar	President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief
PFIP	Partnership Framework Implementation Plan
PFM	Participatory Forest Management
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PGMs	platinum-group metals
PHC	primary healthcare
PHP	People's Housing Process
PIC	Public Investment Corporation
PICC	Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission
PIT	personal income tax
PJCC	Permanent Joint Commission for Cooperation
PLAs	Provincial licencing authorities
PLAS	Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy
PMDS	Performance Management Development System
PMSC	Private Military and Security Company
PMTCT	Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission
PNC	Presidential National Commission
PoA	Programme of Action
Pool	Pool for Open Innovation
PPECB	Perishable Products Export Control Board
PPPs	public-private partnerships
PPPFA	Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act
Prasa	Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa
PRC	Permanent Representatives Committee
PRC	People's Republic of China

PSC	Peace and Security Council
PSC	Public Service Commission
PSCBC	Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council
PSDF	Provincial Spatial Development Framework
PSeta	Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority
PTA	Preferential Trade Agreement

Q

QCTO	Quality Council for Trades and Occupations
QIDS-UP	Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme
QLTC	Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign
QSAPE	Qualifying South African Production Expenditure

R

R&D	research and development
RAASA	Recreation and Aviation Administration South Africa
RAC	Regional Advisory Committee
RAF	Road Accident Fund
RAS	Registration Administration System
RADP	Recapitalisation and Development Programme
RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Programme
RCD	research capacity development
RDI	research, development and innovation
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
REC	regional economic community
REID	Rural Enterprise Infrastructure Development
REIPPP	Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme
RFSTP	Regional Food Security Training Programme
RHLF	Rural Housing Loan Fund
RHP	River Health Programme
Rica	Regulation of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act
RoK	Republic of Korea
RPPO	Regional Plant Protection Organisation (for Africa)
RSR	Railway Safety Regulator
RTIA	Road Traffic Infringement Agency
RTMC	Road Traffic Management Corporation
RTMS	Road Traffic Management Strategy
RTSB	Road Traffic Safety Board
RWH	Rainwater harvesting

S

S&T	science and technology
SAA	South African Airways
SAAF	South African Air Force
SAAO	South African Astronomical Observatory
Saaqis	South African Air-Quality Information System
SA Army	South African Army
Saasta	South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement
Saats	South African Air Traffic System
Saba	South African Braille Authority
Sabap	Southern African Bird Atlas Project
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
Sabca	Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment
SABDC	South African Book Development Council
Sabi	South African Biosystematics Initiative
Sabif	South African Bioinformatics Facility
SABS	South African Bureau of Standards
SABT	South African Ballet Theatre
SACAA	South African Civil Aviation Authority
Sacci	South African Chamber of Commerce and Industry

SACMEQ	Southern and Eastern Africa Consortium for Monitoring Education Quality
SACE	South African Council for Educators
Sacob	South African Chamber of Business
SACSSP	South African Council for Social Service Professions
Sacu	South African Customs Union
SADB	South African Diamond Board
SADC	Southern African Development Community
SADCC	Southern African Development Coordination Conference
Sadi	South African Defence Industry
SADPMR	South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator
SADR	Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic
Saeon	South African Environmental Observation Network
Safcol	South African Forestry Company Limited
SAFIPA	South Africa-Finland Partnership
SAGNC	South African Geographical Names Council
Saha	South African History Archive
Sahara	Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance
Sahra	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRC	South African Human Rights Commission
Saiab	South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
SAICA	South African Institute of Chartered Accountants
SAIDS	South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
SAJEI	South African Judicial Education Institute
SALB	South African Library for the Blind
Salga	South African Local Government Association
SALRC	South African Law Reform Commission
Salt	South African Large Telescope
Samaf	South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund
Samas	South African Music Awards
SAMB	South African Mzanzi Ballet
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
Samsa	South African Maritime Safety Authority
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
Samro	South African Music Rights Organisation
SAN	South African Navy
Sanac	South African National AIDS Council
Sanai	South African Academy of Intelligence
Sanap	South African National Antarctic Programme
Sanas	South African National Accreditation System
Sanbi	South African National Biodiversity Institute
Sanca	South African National Council of Alcohol and Drug Dependence
SANCB	South African National Convention Bureau
Sancor	South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research
SANDF	South African National Defence Force
Sanedi	South African National Energy Development Institute
Sanef	South African National Editors' Forum
Saneri	South African National Energy Research Institute
SANParks	South African National Parks
Sanral	South African National Roads Agency Limited
Sanren	South African National Research Network
Sansa	South African National Space Agency
SAOBC	South African Ostrich Business Chamber
Sapca	South African Pest Control Association
Sapo	South African Port Operations
Sapo	South African Post Office
SAPP	Southern African Power Pool
SAPS	South African Police Service
Saqa	South African Qualifications Authority
SAR	search and rescue
SARB	South African Reserve Bank

SARChI	South African Research Chairs Initiative
Sars	South African Revenue Service
Sasa	South African Schools Act
Sasar	South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation
Sascoc	South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee
SASS	South African Secret Service
Sassa	South African Social Security Agency
Sasseta	Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority
Sastela	Southern Africa Solar Thermal and Electricity Association
SAT	South African Tourism
Sawen	South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network
Sawima	South African Women in Mining Association
Sawis	South African Wine Industry Information and Systems
SAWS	South African Weather Service
SAYAS	South African Young Academy of Science
SAX	South African Express Airways
SCA	Supreme Court of Appeal
SCCU	Specialised Commercial Crime Unit
SCI	Social Cohesion and Integration
SciELO	Scientific Electronic Online
Scoa	Standard chart of accounts
Scopa	Standing Committee on Public Accounts
SCRHD	Social Contract for Rapid Housing delivery
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDIP	Service-Delivery Improvement Plan
SDP	Strategic Defence Procurement
Seda	Small Enterprise Development Agency
Sefa	Small Enterprise Finance Agency
SET	science, engineering and technology
Seta	Sector Education and Training Authority
SETE	Sports Events Tourism Exchange
SEZs	special economic zones
SFF	Strategic Fuel Fund
SFAC	Sasol Fuels Application Centre
SGB	School Governing Body
SHF	Social Housing Foundation
SHRA	Social Housing Regulatory Authority
SIP	Strategic Investment Programme
SIPs	Strategic integrated projects
Sita	State Information Technology Agency
SIU	Special Investigating Unit
SKA	Square Kilometre Array
Skep	Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme
SMEs	small and medium-sized enterprises
SMMEs	small, medium and micro-enterprises
Soca	Sexual Offences and Community Affairs
SOCs	state-owned companies
SOEs	state-owned enterprises
SpaceX	Space Exploration Technologies
SPCD	Social Protection and Community Development
SPS	Sanitary and phytosanitary measures
SPS	Soil Protection Strategy
SRSA	Sport and Recreation South Africa
S&T	science and technology
Stats SA	Statistics South Africa
STB	set-top box
STIs	sexually transmitted infections
STT	Securities Transfer Tax
SWPN-SA	Strategic Water Partners Network – South Africa

T

t	ton
TAU SA	Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa
TAC	total allowable catch
TB	tuberculosis
TBCSA	Tourism Business Council of South Africa
TCCs	Thuthuzela care centres
TCTA	Trans Caledon Tunnel Authority
TDCA	Trade Development and Cooperation Agreement
Tenet	Tertiary Education and Research Network of South Africa
TEP	Tourism Enterprise Programme
TEU	twenty-foot equivalent unit
TFCAs	transfrontier conservation areas
TFR	Transnet Freight Rail
TFTA	Tripartite Free Trade Area
TGCSA	Tourism Grading Council of South Africa
Theta	Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority
TIA	Technology Innovation Agency
TICAD	Tokyo International Conference on African Development
Tisa	Trade and Investment South Africa
TMNP	Table Mountain National Park
ToPS	Threatened or Protected Species
TRC	Truth and Reconciliation Commission
TRP	Taxi Recapitalisation Programme
TRT	tactical response teams
TSP	Tourism Support Programme
TYIP	Ten-Year Innovation Plan

U

UAE	United Arab Emirates
UAVs	unmanned aerial vehicles
UCLV	United Cities and Local Government
UEMP	Urban Environmental Management Programme
UIF	Unemployment Insurance Fund
UJ	University of Johannesburg
UK	United Kingdom
Umalusi	General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council
UN	United Nations
UNCCC	United Nations Convention on Climate Change
UNCCD	United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification
Unced	United Nations Conference on Environment and Development
UNCRDP	United Nations Convention on the Rights of People with Disabilities
UNCSW	United Nations Commission Focusing on Women
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
Unep	United Nations Environment Programme
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
UNGA	United Nations General Assembly
UNHRC	United Nations Human Rights Council
Unicef	United Nations Children's Fund
UNIDB	United Nations International Day for Biological Diversity
Unisa	University of South Africa
UNODC	United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime
UNPFA	United Nations Population Fund
UNSC	United Nations Security Council
UNSCF	United Nations Strategic Cooperation Framework
UNSG	United Nations Secretary-General
UNWTO	United Nations World Tourism Organization
UP	University of Pretoria
UPU	Universal Postal Union

USA	United States of America
Usaasa	Universal Service and Access Agency
Usaf	Universal Service and Access Fund
USAID	United States Agency for International Development
USDG	Urban Settlements Development Grant
USO	universal service obligation
USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

V

V&A	Victoria and Alfred (Waterfront)
VAT	value-added tax
VCT	voluntary counselling and testing
VEP	Victim Empowerment Programme
VFR	victim-friendly rooms
VLBI	very long baseline interferometry
VOC	Dutch East India Company
VOD	victim-offender dialogue

W

WACS	West African Cable System
WADA	World Anti-Doping Agency
WAR	Water Allocation Reform
WASA	Wind Atlas for South Africa
WBA	World Boxing Association
WEF	World Economic Forum
WfGD	Water for Growth Development
WfW	Working for Water
WHO	World Health Organisation
WiH	Women in Housing
WIO-LaB	West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project
WIPO	World Intellectual Property Organisation
WISA	Women in Science Award
Wits	University of the Witwatersrand
WMA	water management area
WMO	World Meteorological Organisation
WRC	Water Research Commission
WRCC	World Radio Communication Conference
WRS	Water Resource Strategy
WSAs	water service authorities
WSDPs	water-services development plans
WSDSP	Workplace Skills Development Support Programme
WSSD	World Summit on Sustainable Development
WTE	Water Trading Entity
WTO	World Trade Organisation
WUAs	water-user associations
WWF	World Wildlife Fund for Nature
WWF-SA	World Wildlife Fund for Nature South Africa

X

XDR TB	Extreme Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis

Y

YES	Youth Environment Services
YiH	Youth in Housing

Z

ZADNA	.za Domain Name Authority
Zanu-PF	Zimbabwean African National Union Patriotic Front
ZCC	Zion Christian Church

National government departments and organisational components

Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Website: www.daff.gov.za
Private Bag X250, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 319 6000 Fax: 012 319 6943

Arts and Culture
Website: www.dac.gov.za
Private Bag X897, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 3000 Fax: 012 441 3699

Basic Education
Website: www.education.gov.za
Private Bag X895, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 357 3000 Fax: 012 323 0601

Civilian Secretariat of Police
Website: www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za
Private Bag X922, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 2500 Fax: 012 393 2536

Communications
Website: www.doc.gov.za
Private Bag X860, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 8000 Fax: 012 427 8161

Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Website: www.cogta.gov.za
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 0600 Fax: 012 334 0603

Correctional Services
Website: www.dcs.gov.za
Private Bag X136, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 307 2000 Fax: 012 323 6088

Defence
Website: www.dod.mil.za
Private Bag X910, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 355 6220 Fax: 012 347 7445

Economic Development
Website: www.economic.gov.za
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 394 1006 Fax: 086 556 2052

Energy
Website: www.energy.gov.za
Private Bag X96, Pretoria, 0002
Tel: 012 406 8000 Fax: 012 323 5848

Environmental Affairs
Website: www.environment.gov.za
Private Bag X447, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 3911 Fax: 012 322 2682

Government Communications (GCIS)
Website: www.gcis.gov.za
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 473 0000 Fax: 012 473 0593

Health
Website: www.doh.gov.za
Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 395 8000 Fax: 012 395 9165

Higher Education and Training
Website: www.dhet.gov.za
Private Bag X893, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 5555 Fax: 012 323 0291

Home Affairs
Website: www.dha.gov.za
Private Bag X114, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 406 2500 Fax: 086 512 7864

Human Settlements
Website: www.dhs.gov.za
Private Bag X644, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 421 1311 Fax: 012 341 8513

Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
Website: www.ipid.gov.za
Private Bag X941, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 399 0000 Fax: 012 326 0408

International Relations and Cooperation
Website: www.dirco.gov.za
Private Bag X152, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 351 1000 Fax: 012 329 1000

Justice and Constitutional Development
Website: www.doj.gov.za
Private Bag X81, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 1111 Fax: 012 315 1749

Labour
Website: www.labour.gov.za
Private Bag X117, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 4000 Fax: 012 320 2059

Military Veterans
Website: www.dod.mil.za
Private Bag X910, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 671 1212 Fax: 012 671 1108

Mineral Resources
Website: www.dmr.gov.za
Private Bag X59, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 444 3956 Fax: 012 341 2228

National Treasury
Website: www.treasury.gov.za
Private Bag X115, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 5111 Fax: 012 315 5126

Performance Monitoring and Evaluation
Website: www.thepresidency-dpme.gov.za
Private Bag X1000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 0014 Fax: 012 308 1988

Presidency (The)
Website: www.thepresidency.gov.za
Private Bag X1000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 300 5200 Fax: 012 323 8246
and
Private Bag X1000, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 464 2100 Fax: 021 461 2838

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
Website: www.palama.gov.za
Private Bag X759, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 6000 Fax: 012 441 6030

Public Enterprises
Website: www.dpe.gov.za
Private Bag X15, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 431 1000 Fax: 012 342 1039

Public Service and Administration
Website: www.dpsa.gov.za
Private Bag X916, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 1183 Fax: 012 336 1831

Public Works
Website: www.publicworks.gov.za
Private Bag X65, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 406 1000 Fax: 012 272 8986

Rural Development and Land Reform
Website: www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za
Private Bag X833, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 8911 Fax: 012 312 6066

Science and Technology
Website: www.dst.gov.za
Private Bag X894, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 843 6300 Fax: 012 349 1037

Social Development
Website: www.dsd.gov.za
Private Bag X901, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 7794 Fax: 012 312 7470

South African Police Service
Website: www.saps.gov.za
Private Bag X94, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 1000 Fax: 012 393 2819

South African Revenue Service
Website: www.sars.gov.za
Private Bag X923, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 422 4000 Fax: 012 422 6848

Sport and Recreation South Africa
Website: www.srsa.gov.za
Private Bag X896, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 304 5000 Fax: 012 323 8440

State Security
Website: www.ssa.gov.za
Private Bag X87, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 4000 Fax: 012 480 7582

Statistics South Africa
Website: www.statssa.gov.za
Private Bag X44, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 8911 Fax: 012 310 8500

Tourism
Website: www.tourism.gov.za
Private Bag X424, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 444 6000 Fax: 012 444 7000.

Trade and Industry
Website: www.thedti.gov.za
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 0861 843 384 Fax: 0861 843 888

Traditional Affairs
Website: www.dta.gov.za
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 5824 Fax: 012 336 5952

Transport
Website: www.transport.gov.za
Private Bag X193, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 3000 Fax: 012 328 3370

Water Affairs
Website: www.dwaf.gov.za
Private Bag X313, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 6696 Fax: 012 336 8664

Women, Children and People with Disabilities
Website: www.wcpd.gov.za
Private Bag X931, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 359 0071 Fax: 086 683 5502

Parliamentary information

National Assembly
Website: www.parliament.gov.za
PO Box 15, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 403 2595 Fax: 021 461 9462

National Council of Provinces
Website: www.parliament.gov.za
PO Box 15, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 403 2110 Fax: 021 461 9460

Provincial government

Eastern Cape
Website: www.ecprov.gov.za
Private Bag X0047, Bhisho 5605
Tel: 040 635 0123 Fax: 040 635 0124

Free State
Website: www.fs.gov.za
Private Bag X227, Bloemfontein, 9300
Tel: 051 408 1105 Fax: 051 408 1566

Gauteng
Website: www.gautengonline.gov.za
Private Bag X61, Marshalltown, 2107
Tel: 011 355 6000 Fax: 011 836 9334

KwaZulu-Natal
Website: www.kwazulunatal.gov.za
Private Bag X9037, Pietermaritzburg, 3200
Tel: 033 341 3329 Fax: 033 394 4505

Limpopo
Website: www.limpopo.gov.za
Private Bag X9483, Polokwane, 0700
Tel: 015 287 6000 Fax: 015 295 3840

Mpumalanga
Website: www.mpumalanga.gov.za
Private Bag X11291, Nelspruit, 1200
Tel: 013 766 1000 Fax: 013 766 2494

Northern Cape
Website: www.northern-cape.gov.za
Private Bag X5016, Kimberley, 8300
Tel: 053 838 2600 Fax: 053 838 2690

North West
Website: www.nwpg.gov.za
Private Bag X65, Mmabatho 2735
Tel: 018 388 2456 Fax: 018 388 3008

Western Cape
Website: www.westerncape.gov.za
Private Bag X9043, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 483 4705 Fax: 021 483 3921

Government structures and organisational components

Agricultural Research Council
Website: www.arc.agric.za
PO Box 8783, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 9700 Fax: 012 342 3948

Airports Company South Africa
Website: www.acsa.co.za
PO Box 75480, Gardenview, 2047
Tel: 011 723 1400 Fax: 011 453 9353

Armaments Corporation of South Africa
Website: www.armscor.co.za
Private Bag X337, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 428 1911 Fax: 012 428 5635

Auditor-General
Website: www.agsa.co.za
PO Box 446, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 426 8000 Fax: 012 426 8257

Central Energy Fund
Website: www.cef.org.za
PO Box 786141, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 201 4700 Fax: 011 201 4820

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
Website: www.ccma.org.za
Private Bag X94, Marshalltown, 2107
Tel: 011 377 6650 Fax: 011 834 7351

Commission on Gender Equality
Website: www.cge.org.za
PO Box 32175, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 403 7182 Fax: 011 403 7188

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
Website: www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za
Private Bag X833, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 9244 Fax: 012 321 0428

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities
Website: www.crlcommission.org.za
Private Bag X90 000, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 537 7600 Fax: 011 880 3495

Competition Commission
Website: www.compcom.co.za
Private Bag X23, Lynnwood Ridge, 0040
Tel: 012 394 3200 Fax: 012 394 0166

Constitutional Court
Website: www.constitutionalcourt.org.za
Private Bag X1, Constitution Hill, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 359 7539 Fax: 011 403 6524

Council for Geoscience
Website: www.geoscience.org.za
Private Bag X112, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 1911 Fax: 012 841 1221

Council for Mineral Technology
Website: www.mintek.co.za
Private Bag X3015, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 709 4111 Fax: 011 793 2413

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
Website: www.csir.co.za
PO Box 395, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 2911 Fax: 012 349 1153

Council on Higher Education
Website: www.che.ac.za
PO Box 94, Persequor Park, 0020
Tel: 012 349 3840 Fax: 012 349 3942

Denel (Pty) Limited
Website: www.denel.co.za
PO Box 8322, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 671 2700 Fax: 012 671 2751

Development Bank of Southern Africa
Website: www.dbsa.org
PO Box 1234, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 313 3911 Fax: 011 313 3086

Eskom
Website: www.eskom.co.za
PO Box 1091, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 800 8111 Fax: 011 800 4299

Film and Publication Board
Website: www.fpb.gov.za
Private Bag X2205, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 483 0971 Fax: 011 483 0971

Financial Intelligence Centre
Website: www.fic.gov.za
Private Bag X177, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 641 6000 Fax: 012 641 6215

Government Printing Works
Website: www.gpw.gov.za
Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 4500 Fax: 012 323 0009

Human Sciences Research Council
Website: www.hsrc.ac.za
Private Bag X41, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 302 2000 Fax: 012 302 2001

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Website: www.icasa.org.za
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 566 3000/1 Fax: 011 566 4000/1

Independent Electoral Commission
Website: www.elections.org.za
Private Bag X112, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 622 5700 Fax: 012 622 5784

Independent Development Trust
Website: www.idt.org.za
PO Box 73000, Lynnwood Ridge, 0043
Tel: 012 845 2000 Fax: 012 348 0894

Industrial Development Corporation
Website: www.idc.co.za
PO Box 784055, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 269 3000 Fax: 011 269 3116

International Marketing Council
Website: www.brandsouthafrica.com
PO Box 87168, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 483 0122 Fax: 011 483 0124

Judicial Service Commission
Private Bag X1, Constitutional Hill, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 838 2010 Fax: 011 649 0944

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited
Website: www.khula.org.za
PO Box 28423, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 394 5560 Fax: 012 394 6901

Land and Agricultural Bank of South Africa
Website: www.landbank.co.za
PO Box 375, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 686 0500 Fax: 012 686 0682

Land Claims Court
Website: www.law.wits.ac.za/lcc
Private Bag X10060, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 781 2291 Fax: 011 781 2217/8

Media Development and Diversity Agency
Website: www.mdda.org.za
PO Box 42846, Fordsburg, 2033
Tel: 011 643 1100 Fax: 011 643 1129

Municipal Demarcation Board
Website: www.demarcation.org.za
Private Bag X28, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2481/2 Fax: 012 342 2480

National Advisory Council on Innovation
Website: www.naci.org.za
Private Bag X894, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 844 0252 Fax: 086 681 0144

National Agricultural Marketing Council
Website: www.namc.co.za
Private Bag X935, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 341 1115 Fax: 012 341 1811

National Archives of South Africa
Website: www.national.archives.gov.za
Private Bag X236, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 441 3200 Fax: 012 323 5287

National Arts Council of South Africa
Website: www.nac.org.za
PO Box 500, Newtown, 2113
Tel: 011 838 1383 Fax: 011 838 6363

National Development Agency
Website: www.nda.org.za
PO Box 31959, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 018 5500 Fax: 011 403 2514/5

National Economic Development Labour Council
Website: www.nedlac.org.za
PO Box 1775, Saxonwold, 2132
Tel: 011 328 4200 Fax: 011 447 2089

National Empowerment Fund
Website: www.nefcorp.co.za
PO Box 31, Melrose Arch,
Melrose North, 2076
Tel: 011 305 8000 Fax: 011 305 8001

National Energy Regulator
Website: www.nersa.org.za
PO Box 40343, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 401 4600 Fax: 012 401 4700

National Film and Video Foundation
Website: www.nfvf.co.za
Private Bag X04, Northlands, 2116
Tel: 011 483 0880 Fax: 011 483 0881

National Film, Video and Sound Archives
Website: www.national.archives.co.za
Private Bag X236, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 3200 Fax: 012 323 5287

National Gambling Board
Website: www.ngb.org.za
Private Bag X27, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 394 3800 Fax: 012 394 4800

National Home-Builders' Registration Council
Website: www.nhbrc.org.za
PO Box 461, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 317 0000 Fax: 011 317 0105

National House of Traditional Leaders
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 395 4659 Fax: 012 395 4650

National Housing Finance Corporation
Website: www.nhfc.co.za
PO Box 31376, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 644 9800 Fax: 011 484 0204

National Lotteries Board
Website: www.nlb.org.za
PO Box 1556, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 432 1300 Fax: 012 432 1402

National Nuclear Regulator
Website: www.nnr.co.za
PO Box 7106, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 674 7100 Fax: 012 663 5513

National Prosecuting Authority
Website: www.npa.gov.za
Private Bag X752, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 845 6000 Fax: 012 804 7335

National Research Foundation
Website: www.nrf.ac.za
PO Box 2600, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 481 4000 Fax: 012 349 1179

National Youth Development Agency
Website: www.nyda.gov.za
PO Box 982, Halfway House 1685
Tel: 011 651 7000 Fax: 011 805 9709

Pan South African Language Board
Website: www.pansalb.org.za
Private Bag X08, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 341 9638 Fax: 012 341 5938

Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (Pty) Limited
Website: www.petrosa.co.za
Private Bag X5, Parow, 7499
Tel: 021 929 3000 Fax: 021 929 3144

Public Protector
Website: www.publicprotector.org
Private Bag X677, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 366 7000 Fax: 012 362 3473

Public Investment Corporation
Website: www.pic.gov.za
Private Bag X187, Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 742 3400 Fax: 012 346 3276

Small Enterprise Development Agency
Website: www.seda.org.za
PO Box 56714, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 441 1000 Fax: 012 441 2064

South African Airways
Website: www.flysaa.com
Private Bag X13, Kempton Park, 1627
Tel: 011 978 1000 Fax: 011 978 3507

South African Bureau of Standards
Website: www.sabs.co.za
Private Bag X191, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 428 7911 Fax: 012 344 1568

South African Civil Aviation Authority
Website: www.caa.co.za
Private Bag X73, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 545 1000 Fax: 011 545 1465

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator
Website: www.sadpmr.co.za
PO Box 16001, Doornfontein 2023
Tel: 011 223 7000 Fax: 011 334 8898

South African Forestry Company Limited
Website: www.safcol.co.za
PO Box 1771, Silverton, 0127
Tel: 012 436 6300 Fax: 012 754 2733

South African Human Rights Commission
Website: www.sahrc.org.za
Private Bag X2700, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 877 3600 Fax: 011 403 0668

South African Law Reform Commission
Website: www.salawreform.justice.gov.za
Private Bag X668, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 392 9540 Fax: 012 323 4406

South African Local Government Association
Website: www.salga.net
PO Box 2094, Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 369 8000 Fax: 012 369 8001

South African National Parks
Website: www.sanparks.org
PO Box 787, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 426 5170 Fax: 012 343 0153

South African National Roads Agency Ltd
Website: www.sanral.co.za
PO Box 415, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 844 8000 Fax: 012 844 8200

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation
Website: www.necsa.co.za
PO Box X582, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 305 4911 Fax: 012 305 3111

South African Post Office Limited
Website: www.postoffice.co.za
PO Box 10000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 401 7000 Fax: 012 401 7707

South African Reserve Bank
Website: www.resbank.co.za
PO Box 427, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 313 3911 Fax: 012 313 3929

South African Tourism
Website: www.southafrica.net
Private Bag X10012, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 895 3000 Fax: 011 895 3001

Special Investigating Unit
Website: www.siu.org.za
Private Bag X844, Silverton, 0127
Tel: 012 843 0000 Fax: 012 843 0115

Technology for Women in Business
Website: www.twib.co.za
PO Box 395, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 4983 Fax: 012 841 4954

Telkom SA Ltd
Website: www.telkom.co.za
Private Bag X74, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 311 3911 Fax: 012 323 6733

Trade and Investment South Africa
Website: www.thedti.gov.za
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 394 3014 Fax: 012 394 4016

Transnet Freight Rail
Website: www.transnet.net
Private Bag X47, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 544 9584 Fax: 011 544 9599

Water Research Commission
Website: www.wrc.org.za
Private Bag X03, Gezina, 0031
Tel: 012 330 0340 Fax: 012 331 2565

Government communication and information centres

Eastern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X608, East London, 5200
Tel: 043 722 4903 Fax: 043 743 8174

Free State Provincial Office
PO Box 995, Bloemfontein, 9300
Tel: 051 448 4504 Fax: 051 430 7032

Gauteng Provincial Office
Private Bag X16, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 834 3560 Fax: 011 834 3621

KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Office
Private Bag X54332, Durban, 4000
Tel: 031 301 6787/8 Fax: 031 305 9431

Limpopo Provincial Office
PO Box 2452, Polokwane, 0700
Tel: 015 291 4689 Fax: 015 295 6982

Mpumalanga Provincial Office
PO Box 2856, Nelspruit, 1200
Tel: 013 753 2397 Fax: 013 753 2531

Northern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X5038, Kimberley, 6132
Tel: 053 832 1378/9 Fax: 053 832 1377

North West Provincial Office
Private Bag X2120, Mafikeng, 2745
Tel: 018 381 7071 Fax: 018 381 7066

Upington Regional Office
PO Box 2872, Upington, 8800
Tel: 054 332 6206 Fax: 054 332 6218

Western Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 697 0923 Fax: 021 696 8424

Parliamentary Office
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 461 8145 Fax: 021 461 1446

Thusong Service Centres

Website: www.thusong.gov.za

Eastern Cape

Burgersdorp Service Centre
Commander Building, Burgersdorp
Tel: 051 653 0595 Fax: 051 653 0742

Centane Service Centre
20 Bell Ave, Centani
Tel: 047 498 1126 Fax: 047 498 1032

Cofimvaba Service Centre
Cnr High Street & Bellair Ave Cofimvaba
Tel: 047 874 0444 Fax: 047 874 0553

Jansenville Service Centre
77 Main Road, Jansenville
Tel: 049 891 0142

KwaNophoui Service Centre
Mtsila and Nguse Village Junction, Mt Frere
Tel: 039 254 5000 Fax: 039 254 0343

Qunu Service Centre
Qunu Village, Mthatha
Tel: 047 538 7017 Fax: 047 538 7017

Silindini Service Centre
Silindi Administrative Area, Silindi
Tel: 047 548 1803 Fax: 047 548 1078

Sterkspruit Service Centre
79 Main Road, Sterkspruit
Tel: 051 611 1335 Fax: 051 611 1335

Tombo Service Centre
Tombo Village, Port St Johns
Tel: 047 564 1152 Fax: 047 564 1206

Tsilitwa Service Centre
Sulenkama, Qumbu
Tel: 082 564 8890 Fax: 047 553 0189

Viedgesville Service Centre
Viedgesville Village, Mthatha
Tel: 047 538 9011 Fax: 047 538 9011

Free State

Botshabelo Service Centre
1230 Section E, Botshabelo
Tel: 051 532 6791 Fax: 051 532 6791

Kopanong Service Centre
398 Booysen Street, Madikgetla, Trompsburg
Tel: 051 713 0189 Fax: 051 713 0192

Mantsopa Service Centre
Old Tribal Council Office, Tseki, Qwaqwa
Tel: 079 728 8654

Namahadi Service Centre
Charles Mopeli Stadium, Witsieshoek
Tel: 058 789 1147 Fax: 058 789 1147

Phiritona Service Centre
2264 Makoko Hlabane str, Phiritona
Tel: 058 852 1411 Fax: 058 852 1917

Qalabotjha Service Centre
1279 Gamede str, Qalabotjha, Villiers
Tel & Fax: 058 821 1127

Tokologo Service Centre
Malebogo Community Hall, Hertzogville
Tel: 053 421 9051 Fax: 053 421 9244

Zastron/Mohokare Service Centre
Cnr Parsegrouw & Vechtkop str, Zastron
Tel: 051 673 1671 Fax: 051 673 1082

Gauteng

Alexandra Service Centre
Cnr 8th Avenue & Roosevelt str, Alexandra
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Atteridgeville Service Centre
1770 Komane St, Atteridgeville
Tel: 012 373 8856 Fax: 086 512 0928

Bekkersdal Service Centre
Cnr Godlo & Panyapanya st, Bekkersdal
Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888

Boipatong Service Centre
Cnr Mamelodi & Dr Nkomo str, Boipatong
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Boitshepiville Service Centre
Stand 2013 Phase 2, Tshepiso
Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

Brandvlei Service Centre
Stand 64, Ventersdorp Road, Brandvlei
Tel: 011 416 2107 Fax: 011 414 1888

Daveyton Service Centre
Daveyton Mall, Eiselen Str, Daveyton, Benoni
Tel: 011 926 7121 Fax: 011 926 7171

Diepsloot Service Centre
Stand 381 Diepsloot West, Diepsloot
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Dobsonville Service Centre
2332 Luthuli Street, Dobsonville
Tel & Fax: 011 982 1200

Duduza Service Centre
1 Nala Street, Duduza, 1496
Tel & Fax: 011 738 8516

Ekangala Service Centre
Section 4, Ekangala
Tel: 082 930 0297

Eldorado Park Service Centre
4064 Link Crescent Ext 5, Eldorado Park
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Eyethu Service Centre
Cnr Nkosi & Matukane str, Rethabiseng
Tel: 012 805 0117 Fax: 012 805 0121

Faranani Service Centre
PO Box 70021, Tsakane 1550, Brakpan
Tel: 011 999 8086 Fax: 011 999 8046

Ga-Rankuwa Service Centre
Municipality Building, Zone 5, Ga-Rankuwa,
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Hammanskraal Service Centre
Hammanskraal Skills Centre, Hammanskraal
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Hekpoort Service Centre
PO Box 94, Krugersdorp
Tel: 011 660 1105 Fax: 011 660 6726

Impumulelo Service Centre
Municipal Building, Impumulelo Street, Devon,
Tel: 017 688 0051

Ipelegeng Service Centre
1238 White City, Jabavu, Soweto
Tel: 083 417 7958

Kagiso Service Centre
8740 Kagiso Avenue, Kagiso Ext 12
Tel: 011 660 1105

KwaThema Service Centre
Nkosi St, Tornado Section, KwaThema
Tel: 011 741 2256 Fax: 011 736 7730

Lord Khanyile Service Centre
Cnr Freedom and Osizweni st, Ivory Park
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Mabopane Service Centre
425 Mabopane Rd, Mabopane
Tel & Fax:012 711 3160

Mamelodi Service Centre
19864 Makhubela St, Mamelodi West
Tel: 012 805 0117 Fax: 012 805 0121

Maponya Urban Mall Service Centre
368 Maponya Mall, Soweto
Tel: 011 938 4257

Mohlakeng Service Centre
262 Ralerata Street, Mohlakeng
Tel: 011 414 1072 Fax: 011 414 1888

Muldersdrift Service Centre
Plot 4 Rietfontein, Muldersdrift
Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888

Munsieville Service Centre
Next to Police Station, Munsieville
Tel: 083 584 6856

Olievenhoutbosch Service Centre
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

Onverwacht Service Centre
Onverwacht Library, Cullinan
Tel & Fax: 012 732 0564

Orange Farm Service Centre
15747 Orange Farm Ext 4, Orange Farm
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Orlando East Service Centre
1425 Sofasonke Street, Orlando East
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Poortjie Service Centre
Next to Poortjie taxi rank, Johannesburg
Tel & Fax: 011 982 1200

Rabie Ridge Service Centre
Cnr Stilt & Korhaan St, Rabie Ridge
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Ratanda Service Centre
Cnr Heidelberg & Boshoek St, Ratanda
Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

Refilwe Service Centre
Metsweding Local Municipality
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Sebokeng Service Centre
88 Moshoeshoe St, Sebokeng
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Sicelo Shiceka Service Centre
Sicelo Stadium, Meyerton
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Soshanguve Service Centre
49 Nafcoc Shopping Centre Soshanguve
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

Tarlton Service Centre
8 Cecilia Street, Tarlton
Tel: 011 414 1888 Fax: 011 414 1167

Tembisa Service Centre
238 Igqagqa Section, Tembisa
Tel: 011 999 4240 Fax: 011 942 4254

Thokoza Service Centre
8015 Khumalo Street, Thokoza
Tel: 011 999 2200 Fax: 011 905 0186

Vosloorus Service Centre
1 Berry Maree Rd, Vosloorus
Tel & Fax: 011 899 4505

Zithobeni Service Centre
2237 Mothibe Drive, Zithobeni
Tel: 013 937 0133

KwaZulu-Natal

Archie Gumede Service Centre
1106 Zazi Road, Clermont
Tel: 031 311 2561/2

Bhamshela Service Centre
Noodsberg Rd, Ozwathin
Tel: 032 294 9076 Fax: 032 294 9075

Bhomela Service Centre
1106 Zazi Rd, Clernaville
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

Driefontein Service Centre
next to Tribal Court, Driefontein
Tel: 083 537 7845

Dududu Service Centre
Ugu District, Dududu, Scottburgh
Tel: 039 974 0989 Fax: 039 974 0432

Dukuza Service Centre
Okhahlamba Local Municipality, Dukuza
Tel: 036 438 6102 Fax: 036 438 6136

Ekuvukeni Service Centre
F2748, Ekuvukeni
Tel: 034 261 1000 Fax: 034 261 2035

Imbabazane Service Centre
White Mountain Rd, Imbabazane
Tel: 036 353 0681 Fax: 036 353 6661

Impendle Service Centre
38 Ikhwezi Rd, Impendle
Tel & Fax: 033 996 0445

Inhlazuka Service Centre
Richmond Local Municipality, Inhlazuka
Tel: 031 781 1008 Fax: 031 781 1076

Ixopo Service Centre
40 Main Rd, Sisonke, Ixopo
Tel & Fax: 039 834 1599

Jozini Service Centre
Circle street, Jozini
Tel: 035 572 1292 Fax: 035 572 1266

KwaMadlala Service Centre
Ugu District, KwaMadlala
Tel: 039 688 2278 Fax: 039 688 2279

KwaMdakane Service Centre
8853 Nellie's Farm, Dannhauser
Tel: 034 305 9431 Fax: 034 314 3785

KwaNzimakwe Service Centre
Road D 1095, KwaNzimakwe
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

KwaXolo Service Centre
D 686 Road, Port Shepstone
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

Lindela Service Centre
Nxamalala, Lindela Village, Nkandla
Tel & Fax: 035 476 4241

Malangeni Service Centre
Malangeni Mission
Tel: 039 974 1061 Fax: 039 974 4148

Mapumulo Service Centre
Next to Post Office, Mapumulo
Tel: 032 294 9076 Fax: 294 9075

Mbazwana Service Centre
Main Rd, Sodwana Bay, Mbazwana
Tel: 035 571 0970 Fax: 035 571 0232

Pietermaritzburg Service Centre
242 Longmarket Street, Pietermaritzburg
Tel: 033 897 6892 Fax: 033 342 5442

Tugela Ferry Service Centre
Main Rd, Tugela Ferry
Tel & Fax : 033 493 0282

Ulundi Service Centre
2 Ulundi Administrative Building, Ulundi
Tel & Fax: 035 870 0219

Limpopo

Babirwa Service Centre
Taueyatsoala Tribal Office, Babirwa
Tel: 015 505 5345 Fax: 015 571 5808

Bophelong Service Centre
5050 Sedibeng Ext 10, Bophelong
Tel: 016 986 3711 Fax: 016 986 0305

Botlokwa Service Centre
1154 Mphakane Village, Dwarsrivier
Tel: 015 527 1596 Fax: 015 527 1742

Bulamahlo Service Centre
PO Box 51, Shiluvane 0873
Tel & Fax: 015 355 4610

Eldorado Service Centre
PO Box 69, Raditshaba
Tel: 015 592 9900 Fax: 015 592 8019

Festus Sengaka Mothudi Service Centre
Ga-Ramokgopa Village, Ga-Ramokgopa
Tel: 015 291 4689 Fax: 015 295 6982

Fetakgomo-Atok Service Centre
Atok Bogalatladi Village, Ga-Nkwana
Tel: 015 622 8000 Fax: 015 622 8026

Kgautswane Service Centre
Kgautswane Village
Tel: 013 231 7515 Fax: 013 238 0122

Leboeng Service Centre
Leboeng Safety Centre, Burgersfort
Tel: 013 769 9026 Fax: 013 769 9201

Lesedi Service Centre
Khopo Village, Mopani, Tzaneen
015 307 8452 Fax: 015 307 8049

Mabatlane Service Centre
268 Paul Kruger St, Vaalwater, Modimolle
Tel: 014 755 3751 Fax: 014 755 3824

Makhuva Service Centre
PO Box 30, Phangweni, Giyani
Tel & Fax: 015 812 5602

Makuya Service Centre
Masisi-Makomve Road, Mutale
Tel & Fax: 015 962 5307

Mapela Service Centre
Mesopotamia Village, Mapela
Tel: 015 413 0002 Fax: 015 413 0023

Mapodile Service Centre
Eerstegeluk, Steelpoort
Tel: 072 185 2031 Fax: 086 620 4242

Maruleng Service Centre
75 Metz Village, Maruleng
Tel: 015 383 9944 Fax: 086 514 0997

Mokwakwaila Service Centre
Mokwakwaila Village
Tel: 082 904 5903

Mtititi Service Centre
Mtititi Village
Tel: 076 338 7328

Relela Service Centre
Mopani District, Relela Village
Tel & Fax: 015 355 3137

Selwane Service Centre
Selwane Village, Phalaborwa
Tel: 015 780 6300 Fax: 015 780 6421

Mpumalanga

Breyten Service Centre
Cnr Grobler and Breytenbach St, Breyten
Tel: 017 861 3124 Fax: 017 861 3810

Casteel Service Centre
PO Box 2736, Acornhoek, 1360
Tel: 013 777 6014 Fax: 013 777 6113

Daggakraal Service Centre
260 Sinqobile Municipal Offices, Daggakraal
Tel: 082 684 4462

Driefontein Service Centre
57 Corner Store Street, Driefontein
Tel: 076 309 0003

King Mokhosonke Cluster Service Centre
1 Engwenyameni, KwaMhlanga
Tel: 072 152 6652

Louisville Service Centre
Old Kangwane Offices, Louisville
Tel: 013 781 0659 Fax: 013 781 0659

Marapyane Service Centre
Marapyane Shopping Centre
Tel & Fax: 012 724 3812

Matsamo Service Centre
R570 Schoemansdal, Shongwe Mission
Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

Mbangwane Service Centre
Mbangwane Rd, Ehlazeni
Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

Mmametlhake Service Centre
Main Rd, Bamokgoko, Mmamethlake
Tel: 083 262 7085

Moremela Service Centre
Moremela Village
Tel: 072 901 5983 Fax: 086 561 2694

Morgenzon Service Centre
166 Sivukile, Mainstreet, Morgenzon
Tel: 017 714 7719

Mpuluzi Service Centre
E 1340 Fernie B, Fernie
Tel &Fax: 017 888 0300

Sakhile Service Centre
1029 Hlongwane st, Sakhile
Tel: 017 714 7719

Siyathemba Service Centre
5080 East St, Siyathemba, Balfour
Tel & Fax: 017 683 1031

Tholulwazi Service Centre
307 Shaka Maseko st, Leandra
Tel: 017 683 3027 Fax: 017 683 1311

Thuthukani Service Centre
New Denmark Hostel, Malungisani st
Tel: 082 828 1798 / 017 744 7719

Wonderfontein Service Centre
Portion 428, Nkangala
Tel: 013 246 7443

Northern Cape

Augrabies Service Centre
PO Box 194, Augrabies, 8814
Tel: 054 332 6206 Fax: 054 332 6218

Calvinia Service Centre
304 Church st, Calvinia
Tel: 027 341 1216 027 341 1992

Colesberg Service Centre
PO Box 101, Colesberg, 9795
Tel: 051 753 2197 Fax: 051 753 2182

Galeshewe Service Centre
Cnr Matanzima & Letsholo st, Galeshewe
Tel: 053 872 1197 Fax: 053 872 2647

Manne Dipico Service Centre
62 Sparrow St, Pescodia, 8309
Tel: 053 873 1072 Fax: 053 873 1298

Springbok Service Centre
7 Van Riebeeck st, Springbok
Tel: 027 712 2461 027 712 1899

Tlhokomelo Service Centre
Matanzima st, Mankuwane, Kimberley
Tel: 053 872 2644 053 872 2647

Upington Service Centre
8 Basson st, Upington
Tel: 054 322 6206 Fax: 054 322 6218

Vanzylsrus/Kgomotsego Service Centre
33 Short st, Vanzylsrus
Tel: 053 781 0409 Fax: 053 781 0210

North West

Bokamoso/Jerico Service Centre
Jerico Main Road, Jerico
Tel: 012 318 9582

Kgetleng Service Centre
Erasmus st, Swartruggens, 2835
Tel & Fax: 014 544 0011

Khutsong Service Centre
Portion 1, Khutsong South, Carltonville
Tel: 018 783 9032 Fax: 018 783 9033

Leretlhabetse Service Centre
Lebotlwane Village
Tel: 012 716 1000 Fax: 012 716 1068

Monakato Service Centre
Monakato Village, Monakato
Tel: 014 554 8815 Fax: 014 554 8593

Tshedimosetso Service Centre
Boikhutso Village, Ventersdorp, 2710
Tel & Fax: 018 264 2332

Tshidilamolomo Service Centre
Tshidilamolomo, 2753
Tel: 018 361 0152 Fax: 018 361 0149

Victor Tong Service Centre
Morokweng Village, 8614
Tel & Fax: 053 761 0093

Western Cape

Atlantis Service Centre
1 Nottingham st, Sharwood Park, Atlantis
Tel & Fax: 021 572 1872

Beaufort West Service Centre
3 De Vries St, Rustdene
Tel & Fax: 023 415 3144

Bitterfontein **Service Centre**
Cnr Kok & Long st, Bitterforntein
Tel & Fax: 027 642 7344

Bonteheuwel Service Centre
Cnr Jakkalsvlei & Elder St, Bonteheuwel,
Tel: 021 695 5425 Fax: 086 512 5237

Citrusdal Service Centre
Bohemia St, Citrusdal
Tel & Fax: 027 921 2620

Guga'sthembe Service Centre
Washington St, Langa
Tel: 021 400 4573 Fax: 021 418 8221

Hartebeeskraal
1 Nottingham St, Sharwood Park, Atlantis
Tel & Fax: 021 572 1872

Hawston Service Centre
Church St, Hawston
Tel & Fax: 028 315 2784

Ilingelethu Service Centre
Ilingelethu Sports Field, Malmesbury
Tel: 022 486 4593 Fax: 022 486 4415

Khayelitsha Service Centre
Steve Biko Rd, Kayelitsha Mall
Tel: 021 360 1228 Fax: 021 361 4340

Klipdrift Service Centre
Eden District, George
Tel: 044 880 1174 Fax: 044 880 1165

Laingsburg Service Centre
Cnr Main & Third Ave, Goldnerville
Tel & Fax: 023 551 1899

Langebaan Service Centre
7 Antonio Sieni St, Langebaan
Tel & Fax: 022 772 2622

Mbekweni Service Centre
Simile st, Mbekweni
Tel & Fax: 023 345 2737

Mitchell's Plein Service Centre
Cnr Kilimanjaro & Berman St, Tafelsig, Mitchell's Plein 7785
Tel: 021 397 2629 Fax: 021 397 2890

Murraysburg Service Centre
23 Beaufort st, Murraysburg
Tel: 023 415 3144

Oudtshoorn **Service Centre**
3 12th Ave, Bongulethu, Oudtshoorn
Tel & Fax: 044 274 3087

Riversdale Service Centre
Van den Berg St, Riversdale
Tel & Fax: 028 713 3647

Simunye Service Centre
Xipula St, KwaNokuthula
Tel: 044 501 3134 Fax: 044 533 6993

Swellendam Service Centre
1 Vollenhoven St, Swellendam
Tel: 028 514 3732 Fax: 028 514 3334

Thembalethu Service Centre
Cnr Jeriko St & Sandkraal Rd, Thembalethu
Tel: 044 880 1711 Fax: 044 880 1712

Unobuntu Service Centre
Cnr Nketza and Mtwazi St, Zwelethemba
Tel: 023 348 2739 Fax: 023 345 1031

Van Rhynsdorp Service Centre
1 Nelson Mandela St, Van Rhynsdorp
Tel: 027 219 1917 Fax: 027 219 1574

Vicky Zimri Service Centre
Bohemia st, Citrusdal
Tel & Fax: 022 921 2620

Vredendal Service Centre
1 Bult Rd, Vredendal North, 8160
Tel: 027 201 3420 Fax: 027 213 1031

Waboomskraal Service Centre
Main Rd, Waboomskraal
Tel & Fax: 044 886 0040

Zolani Service Centre
Sithandathu Ave, Nyanga East
Tel: 021 386 8656 Fax: 021 386 1032

Foreign representatives in South Africa

Albania (Republic of)
PO Box 2000, Witkoppen, 2068
Tel: 011 465 3871 Fax: 011 465 3853

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)
PO Box 57480, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5074/5 Fax: 012 342 6479

Angola (Republic of)
PO Box 8685, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 0049/50 Fax: 012 342 7039

Argentina (Republic of)
PO Box 11125, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 3524 Fax: 012 430 3513

Australia
Private Bag X150, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 6000 Fax: 012 342 4202

Austria (Republic of)
PO Box 95572, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 452 9155 Fax: 012 460 1151

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
410 Farenden St, Sunnyside, Pretoria, 0002
Tel: 012 343 2105/7 Fax: 012 343 5222

Belarus (Republic of)
PO Box 4107, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 430 7664 Fax: 012 342 6280

Belgium (Kingdom of)
625 Leyds St, Muckleneuk, Pretoria, 0002
Tel: 012 440 3201/2 Fax: 012 440 3216

Benin (Republic of)
PO Box 26484, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6978 Fax: 012 342 1823

Bolivia (Republic of)
PO Box 91026, Auckland Park, 2006
Tel: 011 646 1408 Fax: 011 646 1408

Botswana (Republic of)
PO Box 57035, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 430 9640 Fax: 012 342 1845

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
PO Box 3269, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 366 5200 Fax: 012 366 5299

Bulgaria (Republic of)
PO Box 26296, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 3720 Fax: 012 342 3721

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)
49 Charles st, Bailey's Muckleneuk, Pretoria
Tel: 012 346 6205 Fax: 012 346 6003

Burundi (Republic of)
PO Box 12914, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 4881/3 Fax: 012 342 4885

Cameroon (Republic of)
PO Box 13790, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 460 0587 Fax: 012 460 7942

Canada
Private Bag X13, Hatfield ,0028
Tel: 012 422 3000 Fax: 012 422 3052

Central African Republic
822 Arcadia st, Arcadia, Pretoria
Tel: 072 586 4700

Chile (Republic of)
PO Box 2449, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 460 8090 Fax: 012 460 8093

China (People's Republic of)
PO Box 95764, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 431 6500 Fax: 012 342 4244

Colombia (Republic of)
PO Box 12791, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 3106 Fax: 012 362 3118

Comoros (Union of)
817 Thomas Ave, Arcadia, 0083
Tel: 012 342 1853 Fax: 012 342 1853

Congo (Democratic Republic of)
PO Box 28795, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 344 6475 Fax: 012 344 4054

Congo (Republic of)
PO Box 40427, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5508 Fax: 012 342 5510

Costa Rica (Republic of)
PO Box 1210, Parklands, 2121
Tel: 011 486 4716 Fax: 011 646 7514

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
PO Box 13510, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 6913 Fax: 012 342 6713

Croatia (Republic of)
PO Box 11335, Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342 1206 Fax: 012 342 1819

Cuba (Republic of)
PO Box 11605, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 2215 Fax: 012 346 2216

Cyprus (Republic of)
PO Box 14554, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5258 Fax: 012 342 5596

Czech Republic
PO Box 13671, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 431 2380 Fax: 012 430 2033

Denmark (Kingdom of)
PO Box 11439, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 9340 Fax: 012 342 7620

Djibouti (Republic of)
138 West Street, Sandton, 2196
Tel: 011 719 9111 Fax: 011 884 7455

Dominican (Republic of)
PO Box 25897, Monument Park, 0105
Tel: 012 362 2463 Fax: 086 567 9613

Ecuador (Republic of)
Suite 3 Selati Park, 36 Selati Park
Tel: 012 346 1662 Fax: 012: 346 7082

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
PO Box 30025, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 343 1590/1 Fax: 012 343 1082

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
48 Florence St, Colbyn, Pretoria
Tel: 012 342 9945 Fax: 012 342 7250

Eritrea (State of)
PO Box 11371, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 333 1302 Fax: 012 333 2330

Estonia (Republic of)
PO Box 154, Paarl, 7622
Tel: 021 913 3850 Fax: 021 913 2579

Ethiopia (Federal Republic of)
PO Box 11469, Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346 3542 Fax: 012 346 3867

Finland (Republic of)
PO Box 443, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 343 0275 Fax: 012 343 3095

France (Republic of)
PO Box 4619, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 425 1600 Fax: 012 425 1609

Gabon (Republic of)
PO Box 9222, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 4376/7 Fax: 012 342 4375

Gambia (The Republic of)
Private Bag X9949, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 884 3710 Fax: 011 883 5925

Germany (Federal Republic of)
PO Box 2023, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 8900 Fax: 012 343 9401

Ghana (Republic of)
PO Box 12537, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5847/9 Fax: 012 342 5863

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)
1267 Church St, Hatfield, 0001
Tel: 012 430 7351 Fax: 012 430 4313

Guinea (Republic of)
PO Box 13523, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 7348 Fax: 012 342 7348

Guyana (Republic of)
PO Box 1877, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 789 9760 Fax: 011 789 9763

Holy See (Nuncio of the Vatican)
PO Box 95200, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 346 4235/6 Fax: 012 346 1494

Hungary (Republic of)
PO Box 13843, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 3020/30 Fax: 012 430 3029

India (Republic of)
PO Box 40216, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5392/5 Fax: 012 342 5310

Indonesia (Republic of)
PO Box 13155, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 3350/3 Fax: 012 342 3369

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
PO Box 12546, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5880/1 Fax: 012 342 1878

Iraq (Republic of)
PO Box 11089, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 2048 Fax: 012 362 2027

Ireland
PO Box 4174, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 5062 Fax: 012 342 4752

Israel (State of)
Private Bag X50, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 470 3500 Fax: 012 470 3555

Italy (Republic of)
796 George Avenue, Arcadia, 0083
Tel: 012 423 0000 Fax: 012 430 5547

Jamaica
1119 Burnet Street, Hatfield, 0083
Tel: 012 362 6667 Fax: 012 366 8510

Japan
Private Bag X999, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 452 1500 Fax: 012 460 3800/1

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
PO Box 14730, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 8615 Fax: 012 346 8611

Kenya (Republic of)
PO Box 35954, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 362 2249 Fax: 012 362 2252

Korea (Republic of)
PO Box 939, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 460 2508/9 Fax: 012 460 1158

Korea (Democratic People's Republic)
PO Box 1238, Garsfontein, 0042
Tel: 012 991 8661 Fax: 012 991 8662

Kuwait (State of)
Private Bag X920, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 0877 Fax: 012 342 0876

Latvia (Republic of)
Private Bag X9, Postnet Suite Box 480, Benmore Gardens, 2010
Tel: 011 750 1600 Fax: 011 447 0607

Lebanon (Lebanese Republic of)
PO Box 941, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 430 2130 Fax: 012 430 2238

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
PO Box 55817, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 460 7648 Fax: 012 460 7649

Liberia (Republic of)
PO Box 14082, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2734 Fax: 012 342 2737

Libya (State of)
PO Box 40388, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 3902 Fax: 012 342 3904

Lithuania (Republic of)
PO Box 1737, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 486 3660 Fax: 011 486 3650

Madagascar (Republic of)
PO Box 11722, Queenswood, 0120
Tel: 012 342 0983 Fax: 012 342 0995

Malawi (Republic of)
PO Box 11172, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 0146 Fax: 012 342 0147

Malaysia
PO Box 11673, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5990/3 Fax: 012 430 7773

Mali (Republic of)
PO Box 12978, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 7464 Fax: 012 342 0670

Malta (Republic of)
322 Koeberg Rd, Milnerton, Cape Town, 7441
Tel: 021 430 7860 Fax: 021 430 5002

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
146 Anderson St, Brooklyn, 0181
Tel: 012 362 3578 Fax: 012 362 3304

Mauritius (Republic of)
1163 Pretorius St, Hatfield, 0083
Tel: 012 342 1283/4 Fax: 012 342 1286

Mexico (United Mexican States)
PO Box 9077, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 460 1004 Fax: 012 460 0973

Monaco (Principality of)
1 Milton's Way, 11 Bell Crescent Close, Westlake Business Park, Westlake
Tel: 021 702 0991/2 Fax: 021 702 0993

Morocco (Kingdom of)
PO Box 12382, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 343 0230/40 Fax: 012 343 0613

Mozambique (Republic of)
PO Box 40750, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 401 0300 Fax: 012 326 6388

Myanmar (Union of)
PO Box 12121, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 341 2556/7 Fax: 012 341 2553

Namibia (Republic of)
PO Box 29806, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 481 9100 Fax: 012 344 5998

Nepal (Kingdom of)
453 Fehersen St, Baileys' Muckleneuk
Tel: 012 346 2399 Fax: 012 460 5535

Netherlands (The Royal)
PO Box 117, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 425 4500 Fax: 012 425 4511

New Zealand
Private Bag X27, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 435 9000 Fax: 012 435 9002

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
PO Box 27332, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 342 0805 Fax: 012 342 1668

Norway (Kingdom of)
PO Box 11612, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 364 3700 Fax: 012 342 6099

Oman (Sultanate of)
PO Box 2650, Brooklyn, 0075
Tel: 012 362 8301 Fax: 012 362 6258

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
PO Box 11803, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 4072/3 Fax: 012 362 3967

Palestine (State of)
PO Box 56021, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6411 Fax: 012 342 6412

Panama (Republic of)
239 Kloof Ave, Waterkloof Ridge, 0181
Tel: 012 346 0703 Fax: 012 346 7034

Paraguay (Republic of)
PO Box 95774, Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 347 1047 Fax: 012 347 0403

Peru (Republic of)
PO Box 907, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 440 1030 Fax: 012 440 1054

Philippines (Republic of the)
PO Box 2562, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 346 0451/2 Fax: 012 346 0454

Poland (Republic of)
PO Box 12277, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 430 2631/2 Fax: 012 430 2608

Portugal (Republic of)
PO Box 27102, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 341 2340/1/2 Fax: 012 341 3975

Qatar (State of)
Private Bag X13, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 452 1700 Fax: 012 346 6732

Romania (Republic of)
PO Box 11295, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 460 6940/1 Fax: 012 460 6947

Russian Federation
PO Box 6743, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 362 1337/8 Fax: 012 362 0116

Rwanda (Republic of)
PO Box 55224, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6536 Fax: 012 342 7106

Saharawi (Arab Democratic Republic of)
PO Box 11352, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5532 Fax: 012 430 7428

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
PO Box 13930, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 4230/40 Fax: 012 362 4239

Senegal (Republic of)
PO Box 2948, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 460 5263 Fax: 012 346 5550

Serbia (The Republic of)
PO Box 13026, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 460 5626 Fax: 012 460 6003

Seychelles (Republic of)
PO Box 1548, Ferndale, Randburg, 2160
Tel: 012 348 0270 Fax: 012 348 0069

Singapore (Republic of)
PO Box 11809, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 6035 Fax: 012 342 4425

Slovakia (Slovak Republic)
PO Box 12736, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2051/2 Fax: 012 342 3688

Slovenia (Republic of)
PO Box 1655, Durbanville, Cape Town, 7551
Tel: 021 976 6249 Fax: 086 604 6603

Spain (Kingdom of)
PO Box 35353, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 460 0123 Fax: 012 460 2290

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic)
410 Alexander Street, Brooklyn, 0181
Tel: 012 460 7690 Fax: 012 460 7702

Sudan (Republic of)
PO Box 25513, Monument Park, 0105
Tel: 012 342 4538 Fax: 012 342 4539

Suriname (Republic of)
PO Box 149, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 346 7627/45 Fax: 012 346 0802

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
715 Government Ave, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 344 1910 Fax: 012 343 0455

Sweden (Kingdom of)
PO Box 13477, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 426 6400 Fax: 012 426 6464

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)
PO Box 2508, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 452 0660 Fax: 012 346 6605

Syrian (Arab Republic of)
PO Box 12830, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 4701 Fax: 012 342 4702

Taipei
PO Box 649, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 430 6071 Fax: 012 342 7110

Tanzania (United Republic of)
PO Box 56572, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 4393 Fax: 012 430 4383

Thailand (Royal Thai)
PO Box 12080, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5470 Fax: 012 342 4805

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
PO Box 95872, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 460 9688 Fax: 012 346 7302

Tunisia (Republic of)
PO Box 56535, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6282/83 Fax: 012 342 6284

Turkey (Republic of)
PO Box 56014, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6055 Fax: 012 342 6052

Uganda (Republic of)
PO Box 12442, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 6031/3 Fax: 012 342 6206

Ukraine
PO Box 57291, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 460 1946 Fax: 012 460 1944

United Arab Emirates
PO Box 57090, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 7736 Fax: 012 342 7738

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
255 Hill Street, Arcadia, 0002
Tel: 012 421 7500 Fax: 012 421 7555

United States of America
PO Box 9536, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 431 4000 Fax: 012 342 2299

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)
PO Box 14818, Hatfield, Pretoria 0028
Tel: 012 362 6521/2 Fax: 012 362 6523

Venezuela (Republic of)
PO Box 11821, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 6593 Fax: 012 362 6591

Vietnam (Socialist Republic of)
PO Box 13692, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 8119 Fax: 012 362 8115

Yemen (Republic of)
PO Box 13343, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 425 0760 Fax: 012 425 0762

Zambia (Republic of)
PO Box 12234, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 326 1854 Fax: 012 326 2140

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
PO Box 55140, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5125 Fax: 012 342 5126

Representatives of the Republic of South Africa abroad

Afghanistan (Transitional Islamic State of)
Representation accredited from Pakistan.

African Union and United Nations Economic Commission for Africa
PO Box 1091, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
Tel: +251113711002 Fax: +251113711330

Albania (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Rome, Italy

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)
21 Rue du Stade, Hydra, Algiers 16000, Algeria
Tel: +21321484418 Fax: +21321484419

Andorra (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Madrid, Spain

Angola (Republic of)
Caixa Postal 6212, Luanda, Angola
Tel: +244222330593 Fax: +244222398730

Antigua and Barbuda
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Argentina (Republic of)
Avenida Marcelo T de Alvaear 590, 8th Floor
C1058AAF, Buenos Aires, 1058, Argentina
Tel: +541143172900 Fax: +541143119993

Armenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kyiv, Ukraine.

Australia (Commonwealth of)
Rhodes Place, State Circle, Yarralumla,
Canberra ACT 2600, Australia
Tel: +61262727300 Fax: +61262723203

Austria (Republic of)
Sandgasse 33, Vienna 1190
Tel: +431 320 6493 Fax: +431 320 0814

Azerbaijan (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Turkey.

Bahamas (The Commonwealth of the)
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Bahrain (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Saudi Arabia.

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
Representation accredited from India.

Barbados
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Belarus (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Russia.

Belgium (Kingdom of)
(Embassy to Belgium and Luxembourg and
Mission to the European Communities)
17-19 Motoyer 1000, Brussels 1040
Tel: +3222854400 Fax: +3222855020124

Belize
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Benin (Republic of)
Lot F4, Cotonou
Tel: +2292130685 Fax:+2292130695

Bhutan (The Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from India.

Bolivia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from India.

Bosnia-Hertzegovina
Representation accredited from Greece.

Botswana (Republic of)
Private Bag 00402, Gaborone, Botswana
Tel: +2673904800 Fax: +2673905501

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
SES - Avenida das Nacoes, QD 801, Lote 6,
CEP: 70 406-900, Brasilia - DF, Brazil
Tel: +556133129500 Fax: +556133228491

Brunei Darussalam (Negara Brunei Darussalam)
Representation accredited from Malasia

Bulgaria (Republic of)
26 Bacho Kiro St, 2nd Floor, Sofia 1000
Tel: +35929395015 Fax: +359 29395017

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)
Villa 1110, Hotel Sofitel, Burkina Faso
Tel:+22650376099 Fax: +22650376097

Burundi
BP 185 Bujumbura, Burundi
Tel: +25722244650 Fax: +25722249164

Cambodia (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Thailand.

Cameroon (Republic of)
Boite Postal 1636, Yaounde, Cameroon
Tel: +23722200438 Fax: +23722200995

Canada
15 Sussex Drive, Ontario KIM 1M8, Ottawa
Tel: +16137440330 Fax: +16137411639

Cape Verde (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Senegal.

Central African Republic
Representation accredited from Cameroon.

Chad
BP 1243, N'Djaména, Chad
Tel: +252524006 Fax: +865178850

Chile (Republic of)
Torre San Ramon Piso 17, Avenida 11 de Septiembre
2353, Providencia, Santiago
Tel: +5622312860 Fax: +5622313185

China (People's Republic of)
5 Dongzhimenwai Dajie, Beijing 100600
Tel: +86108532000 Fax: +861065320177

Colombia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Venezuela.

Comoros (The Union of)
PO Box 2589, Moroni, Union of Moroni
Tel: +269734783 Fax: +269734524

Congo (Republic of)
82 Avenue, Marechal Lyautey, Brazzaville
Tel: +2425301388 Fax: +115076073

Congo (Democratic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]oite Postale 7829, Kinshasa 1
Tel: +243814769700 Fax: +243815554322

Cook Islands
Representation accredited from Australia.

Costa Rica (Republic of)
San Jose, Costa Rica
Tel: +5062221470 Fax: +5062238223

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
08 BP 1806, Abidjan 08, Cote d'Ivoire
Tel: +22522445963 Fax: +22522447450

Croatia (Republic of)
Agrokor dd Trg D Petrovica 3, 10 000 Zagreb
Tel: +138514894111 Fax: +138514844363

Cuba (Republic of)
Ave 5ta 4201, esq 42, Miramar Playa
Ciudad de La Habana, Havana, Cuba
Tel: +5372049671 Fax: +5372041101

Cyprus (Republic of)
PO Box 2312, 1506 Nicosia, Cyprus
Tel: +35722374411 Fax: +35722377011

Czech (Republic)
PO Box 133, 10000 Prague 10
Tel: +420267311114 Fax: +420267311395

Denmark (Kingdom of)
PO Box 128, DK-2900 Hellerup, Copenhagen
Tel: +4539180155 Fax: +4539184006

Djibouti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ethiopia.

Dominica (Commonwealth of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Dominican Republic
Representation accredited from Cuba.

East Timor (Republic of Timor Leste)
Representation accredited from Indonesia.

Ecuador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Peru.

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
55 Road 18, Maadi, Cairo
Tel: +20223594365 Fax: +20223595015

El Salvador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mexico.

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
PO Box 5, Malabo, Equatorial Guinea
Tel: +240333099522 Fax: +240092746

Eritrea (State of)
PO Box 11447, Asmara, State of Eritrea
Tel: +291115251 Fax: +2911152072

Estonia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Finland.

Ethiopia (Federal Democratic Republic of)
PO Box 1091, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
Tel: +251113711002 Fax: +251113711330

European Union
17-19 Montoyer 1000, Brussels 1040,
Tel: +3222854400 Fax: +3222854402

Fiji (Republic of the Fiji Islands)
Plot 1, 16 Kimberly St, Suva, Fiji
Tel: +6793311087 Fax: +6793311086

Finland (Republic of)
Rahapajankatu 1A 5, 00160 Helsinki
Tel: +358968603100 Fax: +358968603160

France (Republic of)
59 Quai d'Orsay, 75343 Paris Cedex 07
Tel: +33153592323 Fax: +33153592333

Gabon (Republic of)
BP 4063, Libreville, Gabon
Tel: +241791150 Fax: +241774536

The Gambia
Representation accredited from Senegal.

Georgia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ukraine.

Germany (Federal Republic of)
Postfach 080461, Berlin 10004, Germany
Tel: +4930220730 Fax: +4930220731

Ghana (Republic of)
PO Box TF298, Trade Fair, Accra, Ghana
Tel: +233302740450 Fax: +23330274460

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)
PO Box 61152, GR 151-10, Athens, Greece
Tel: +302106178020 Fax: +3026106640

Grenada
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Guatemala (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mexico

Guinea (Republic of)
Coleah, Mossoudougou, Conakry
Tel: +22430466015 Fax: +22430466016

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)
CP 1334, Bissau, Guinea-Bissau
Tel: +2456655444

Guyana (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Haiti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Holy See (The Vatican)
Representation accredited from Switzerland.

Honduras (Republic of)
2 Ave 12 Calle, Barrio Las Acacias, Casa 104
San Pedro Sula, Honduras
Tel: +5045522093 Fax: +5045532553

Hong Kong
27/F Great Eagle Centre, Room 2706-10,
23 Harbour Road, Wanchai, Hong Kong
Tel: +85225773279 Fax: +85228901975

Hungary (Republic of)
Gardonyi Geza ut 17, H-1026 Budapest
Tel: +3613920999 Fax: +3612007277

Iceland (Republic of)
PO Box 462, 121 Reykjavik, Iceland
Tel: +3545910355 Fax: +3545910358

India (Republic of)
B18 Vasant Marg, Vasant Vihar, New Delhi 110 057, India
Tel: +911126149411 Fax: +911126143605

Indonesia (Republic of)
PO Box 1329, Jakarta, Indonesia
Tel: +62215740660 Fax: +62215740661

International Monetary Fund [World Bank]
Suite 380 3201, New Mexico Avenue NW,
Washington DC 20016, USA
Tel: +12023648320 Fax: +12023546008

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
PO Box 11365-7476, Tehran, Iran
Tel: +982122702866 Fax: +98212719516

Ireland
2nd Floor, Alexandra House Earlsfort Centre, Earlsfort Terrace, Dublin 2, Ireland
Tel: +35316615553 Fax: +35316615590

Israel (State of)
PO Box 7138, Tel Aviv 61071, Israel
Tel: 97235252566 Fax: +97235253230

Italy (Italian Republic)
Via Tanaro 14, Rome 00198, Italy
Tel: +3906852541 Fax: +390685254302

Jamaica
15 Hillcrest Ave, Kingston 6, Jamaica, WI
Tel: +187696204840 Fax: +18769780339

Japan
4th Floor, Hanzomon First Building, 1-4 Kjimachi - Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102-0093
Tel: +81332653366 Fax: +81332653573

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
PO Box 851508, Sweifieh 11185, Amman
Tel: +96265921194 Fax: +96265920080

Kazakhstan (Republic of)
Kashad Business Centre, 17th Floor, Kobanbai,
Batyra 6/1, Astana 010000
Tel: +7172925326 Fax: 00 77172925329

Kenya (Republic of)
PO Box 42441, Nairobi, Kenya
Tel: +254202827100 Fax: +254202827245

Kiribati (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia.

Korea (Democratic People's Republic of)
Representation accredited from China.

Korea (Republic of South)
1-37 Hannam-dong, Yongsan-Ku, Seoul 140-885,
South Korea
Tel: +8227924855 Fax: +8227924856

Kuwait (The State of)
PO Box 2262, 40173 Mishref, Kuwait
Tel: +96525617988 Fax: +96525617917

Kyrgyz Republic
Representation accredited from Kazakhstan.

Lao People's Democratic Republic
Representation accredited from Thailand.

Latvia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Sweden.

Lebanon (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Syria.

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
Private Bag A266, Maseru 100, Lesotho
Tel: +26622225800 Fax: +26622325228

Liberia (Republic of)
5 Sophie Rd, Congo Town, Monrovia
(no further contact details available)

Libya (Great Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)
PO Box 1230, Tripoli, Libya
Tel: +218213337006 Fax: +218213339250

Liechtenstein (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Switzerland.

Lithuania (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Denmark.

Luxembourg (Grand Duchy of)
Representation accredited from Belgium.

Madagascar (Republic of)
BP 12101-05, Zoom, 101 Antananarivo
Tel: +261202243350 Fax: +261202249512

Malawi (Republic of)
PO Box 30043, Lilongwe 3, Malawi
Tel: +2651773722 Fax: +2651772571

Malaysia (Federation of)
Suite 22, 01 Level 22, 3 Jalan Kia Peng,
50450 Kuala Lumpur
Tel: +60321702400 Fax: +60321688591

Maldives (Republic of)
Representation accredited from India.

Mali (Republic of)
Boite Postal 2015, Bamako, Mali
Tel: +22320292925 Fax: +22320292926

Malta
Representation accredited from Italy

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
PB 2006, Nouakchatt, Mauritania
Tel: +2225241287 Fax: +2225245591

Mauritius (Republic of)
PO Box 908, Port Louis, Mauritius
Tel: +2302126925 Fax: +2302126936

Mexico (United Mexican States)
Apartado Postal 105-219, Colonia Polanco 11560,
Mexico DF
Tel: +525511004970 Fax: +525552829259

Micronesia (Federated States of)
Representation accredited from Australia.

Moldova (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ukraine.

Monaco (Principality of)
Representation accredited from France.

Mongolia
Representation accredited from PRC.

Montenegro
Representation accredited from Greece

Morocco (Kingdom of)
34 Rue des Saadiens, Rabat 10100
Tel: +2125376760 Fax: +2125724550

Mozambique (Republic of)
Caixa Postal 1120, Maputo, Mozambique
Tel: +25821491614 Fax: +25821493029

Myanmar (The Union of)
Representation accredited from Thailand.

Namibia (Republic of)
PO Box 23100, Windhoek, Namibia
Tel: +264612057111 Fax: +26461227771

Nauru (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia.

Nepal (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Sri Lanka.

Netherlands (The Kingdom of the)
Wassenaarseweg 40, 2596 CJ, The Hague
Tel: +31703924501 Fax: +31703460669

New Zealand
PO Box 25406, Wellington, New Zealand
Tel: +6448158484 Fax: +6444725010

Nicaragua
Representation accredited from Mexico.

Niger (Republic of)
PO Box 13417, Niamey, Niger
Tel: +22720726083 Fax: +22720726082

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
Plot 371, Diplomatic Zone, CBD Abuja
Tel: +23494624200 Fax: +23494133829

Niue
Representation accredited from Australia.

Norfolk Island
Representation accredited from Australia.

Norway (Kingdom of)
Drammensveien 88C, 0271 Oslo
Tel: +4723273220 Fax: +4722443975

Oman (Sultanate of)
PO Box 231 PC 118, Al Harthy Complex, Muscat, Oman
Tel: +96824647300 Fax: +96824694792

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
48 Khayabane-e-lqbal, Sector F-8/2, Islamabad, Pakistan
Tel: +92512262354 Fax: +92512250114

Palestine (State of)
PO Box 567, Ramallah, West Bank
Tel: +97282841313 Fax: +97282841323

Palau (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia.

Panama (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Peru.

Papua New Guinea
Representation accredited from Singapore.
Paraguay (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Argentine

Peru (Republic of)
PO Box 27-013, L27, Lima, Peru
Tel: +5116124848 Fax: +5114223881

Philippines (Republic of the)
PO Box 3339, Makati Central Post Office, 1200 Makati City
Tel: +6328899383 Fax: +6328899337

Poland (Republic of)
IPC Business Centre, 6th Floor, UL Koszykowa 54, Warsaw 00-675, Poland
Tel: +48226256228 Fax: +48226256270

Portugal (Republic of)
Avenida Luis Bvar 10, 1069-024 Lisbon
Tel: +351213192200 Fax: +351213535713

Qatar (State of)
PO Box 24744, Doha, Qatar
Tel: +9744857111 Fax: +9744835961

Romania
26-28 Stirbei Voda, 2nd Floor, Union International Business Centre, Bucharest
Tel: +40213133725 Fax: +40213133795

Russian Federation
Granatny Pereulok 1, Building 9, 103102 Moscow, Russian Federation
Tel: +74959261177 Fax: +74959261178

Rwanda (Republic of)
PO Box 6563, Kacyiru-Sud, Kigali, Rwanda
Tel: +250252583185 Fax: +250252583185

Saint Kitts and Nevis
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Saint Lucia
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic
Representation accredited from Algeria

San Marino (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Italy.

São Tomé and Principe (Democratic Republic of)
PO Box 555, Sâo Tomé and Principe
Tel: +239225719 Fax: +2392224916

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
PO Box 94006, Riyadh 11693, Saudi Arabia
Tel: +96614229716 Fax: +96614229712

Senegal (Republic of)
PO Box 21010, Dakar-Ponty, Dakar
Tel: +221338651959 Fax: +22133864 2359

Serbia
Representation accredited from Greece.

Seychelles (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mauritius.

Sierra Leone (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ivory Coast.

Singapore (Republic of)
15th Floor Odeon Towers, 331 North Bridge Road, Singapore
Tel: +6563393319 Fax: +6563396658

Slovak Republic
Representation accredited from Austria

Slovenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Austria.

Somalia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ethiopia.

South Sudan (Republic of)
House 873, Southern Block K-3-K, South Tongping Area, Juba, South Sudan
Tel: +27211922000440

Spain (Kingdom of)
Edificio Lista, Calle de Claudio Coello 91-6
Cor of J Ortega Y Gasset, Madrid 28006
Tel: +34914363780 Fax: +34915777414

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic)
114 Rosemead Place, Colombo 07, Sri Lanka
Tel: +94112689926 Fax: +94112688670

Sudan (Republic of the)
PO Box 12137, Khartoum, Sudan
Tel: +249183585301 Fax: +249183585082

Suriname
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
PO Box 2507, Mbabane, Swaziland
Tel: +2684044651/4 Fax: +2684044335

Sweden (Kingdom of)
4th Floor, Fleminggaten 20, SE-112 26, Stockholm, Sweden
Tel: +468243950 Fax: +4686607136

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)
29 Alpenstrasse, 3006 Berne 6, Switzerland
Tel: +41313501313 Fax: +41313681751

Syrian (Arab Republic)
PO Box 9141, Damascus, Syria
Tel: +963161351520 Fax: +963116111714

Taiwan
PO Box 118-140, Taipei, Taiwan
Tel: +886227153251 Fax: +886227125109

Tajikistan (United Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kazakhstan

Tanzania (United Republic of)
PO Box 10723, Msaki, Dar-es-Salaam
Tel: +255222601800 Fax: +255222600684

Thailand (Kingdom of)
Floor 12 A, M-Thai Tower,All Seasons Place, 87 Wireless Road, Prathumwan, Lumpini, Bangkok, 10330, Thailand
Tel: +6626592900 Fax: +6622501063

Togo (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ivory Coast

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
PO Box 7111, Trinidad
Tel: +18686229869 Fax: +18686227089

Tunisia (Republic of)
7 Rue Achtart, Nord-Hilton, Tunis, Tunisia
Tel: +21671798449 Fax: +21671796742

Turkey (Republic of)
PO Box 30, Kucukesat, 06662 Ankara
Tel: +903124466861 Fax: +903134466434

Uganda (Republic of)
PO Box 22667, Kampala, Uganda
Tel: +256417702100 Fax: +256414348216

Ukraine
P O Box 7, Central Post Office, 22 Kreshchtyk Street, 01001 Kyiv, Ukraine
Tel: +380442877172 Fax: +380442897206

United Arab Emirates
PO Box 29446, Abu Dhabi
Tel: +97124473446 Fax: +97124473031

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
South Africa House, 9 Duncannon Street
Trafalgar Square, London WC2N 5DP
Tel: +442074517299 Fax: +442074517284

United Nations – New York
333 East 38th Street, 9th Floor, New York
NY 10016, United States of America
Tel: 00 1212 213 4880 Fax: 00 1212 213 0102

United Nations – Geneva
65 Rue du Rhone, 1204 Geneva, Switzerland
Tel: 004122 849 5454 Fax: 004122 849 5432

United States of America
3051 Massachusetts Avenue NW, Washington DC 20008, United States of America
Tel: +120222324400 Fax: +120222651607

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)
Dr Gabriel Otero 6337 Carrasco, Montevideo
Tel: +59826017591 Fax: +59826003165

Uzbekistan (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Turkey

Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of)
PO Box 2613, Carmelitas DF 1010, Caracas
Tel: +582129520026 Fax: +582129520277

Vietnam
IPO 102, Hanoi, Vietnam
Tel: +8449362000 Fax: +8449361991

Yemen (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Saudi Arabia

Zambia (Republic of)
Private Bag W369, Lusaka, Zambia
Tel: +2601260999 Fax: +2601263001

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
PO Box A1654, Avondale, Harare
Tel: +2634753147 Fax: +2634757908

Acknowledgements

Agricultural Research Council
AdFocus, Financial Mail
Agence France-Presse
Annual Report 2012/13, The Department of Social Development
Annual Performance Plan, Department of Social Development
Annual Report 2012/13, The Presidency
Annual Report 2012/13, The South African Social Security Agency
A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector, published by the German Technical Cooperation
Audit Bureau of Circulations

Beeld
Budget Vote 2013/14
Business Day
Business Map
Business Report

C.A.P.E. (*www.capeaction.org.za*)
Chamber of Mines
Civil Aviation Authority
Council for Geoscience

Delivery Agreements for Outcome 10
Denel
Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Department of Arts and Culture
Department of Arts and Culture's 2013 Budget Vote
Department of Basic Education
Department of Correctional Services
Department of Defence Strategic Plan 2012
Department of Education Annual Report 2012/13
Department of Energy
Department of Environmental Affairs
Department of Health Budget Vote, 2013/14
Department of Health Annual Report 2012/13
Department of Home Affairs
Department of Human Settlements, *Annual Report 2012/13*
Department of International Relations and Cooperation
Department of International Relations and Cooperation Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014
Department of Mineral Resources Annual Report 2013
Department of Public Service and Administration
Department of Public Service and Administration, *Annual Report 2012/13*
Department of Science and Technology, Strategic Plan 2011 – 2016
Department of Social Development Strategic Plan 2010 – 2015
Department of Tourism, *Annual Report 2012/13*
Department of Trade and Industry
Department of Transport
Department of Water Affairs Annual Performance Plan, 2012/13
Department of Water Affairs Annual Report, 2012/13
Department of Water Affairs Budget Vote Speech 2012/13
Department of Water Affairs Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014
Development Bank of Southern Africa
Development Indicators 2012, published by The Presidency

Education for All, 2013 Country Report, South Africa
Energy Efficiency Strategy, First Review Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2009
Engineering News
Eskom

Estimates of National Expenditure 2013, published by National Treasury

Financial Services Board, Annual Report 2013
FNB Dance Umbrella
Forestry South Africa

General Household Survey, 2013
Government Communication and Information System, *Annual Report 2012/13*
Government Mid-Term Review, 2013
Green Drop Progress Report 2012

Human Sciences Research Council

Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14

Legal Aid South Africa
Library and Information Association of South Africa

Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
Mail&Guardian
Medical Research Council
Medium Term Strategic Framework
Mid-Term Review of the Priorities of Government 2013
Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2013, published by Statistics South Africa
Millennium Development Goals Country Report 2010
Mineral Resources 2012/13 Medium-Term Expenditure Framework Strategy Plan
M-Net Print Media SA

National Development Agency
National Development Plan: Vision 2030
National Health Laboratory Service
National Household Travel Survey
National Library of South Africa
National Ports Authority of South Africa
National Treasury Annual Report 2012
National Water Resource Strategy 2012
National Zoological Gardens of South Africa

Office for Public Enterprises
Office of the Public Service Commission

Pretoria News

Quarterly Bulletin, September 2013, published by the South African Reserve Bank

Road Accident Fund
Rural Housing Loan Fund

Sabinet
Sanral Annual Report, 2012/13
Sapa
SAPS Annual Report 2012/13
Secretariat for Safety and Security
Servcon
South Africa & SADC Media Facts, *2013*
South African Broadcasting Corporation
South African Government News Agency
South African Law Reform Commission
South African National Biodiversity Institute
South African National Defence Force
South African Police Service (SAPS)
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
South African Qualifications Authority
South African Rail Commuter Corporation
South African Reserve Bank
South African Revenue Service
South African Weather Service
Sowetan Live
Sowetan Online
Sport and Recreation South Africa
SRSA Annual Report 2012/13
SRSA Annual Performance Plan 2013 - 2014
State of the Nation Address 2013
Statistics South Africa

The National Housing Code
The Sowetan
The Star
The Sunday Times
The Times
The Truth about Drugs: Tik, published by The Foundation for a Drug Free World
Thubelisha Homes
Times Live
Transnet Annual Report, 2012/13
Transnet Freight Rail Limited

Water Research Commission

http://afis.meraka.org.za
http://allafrica.com
http://cms.privatelabel.co.za
http://eprints.ru.ac.za
http://en.wikipedia.org
http://focus.rw/wp/2012
http://housingnc.ncape.gov.za
http://land.pwv.gov.za
http://www.medicalschemes.com
http://themediaonline.co.za

www.abc.org.za
www.acsa.co.za
www.act.org.za
www.actonline.co.za
www.agis.agri.co.za
www.ai.org.za
www.allafrica.com
www.arc.co.za
www.arivia.co.za
www.army.mil.za
www.arrivealive.co.za
www.artsculturetrust.co.za
www.artzone.co.za
www.asasa.org.za
www.aspworldtour.com
www.atns.co.za

www.backabuddy.co.za
www.basa.co.za
www.bbc.co.uk
www.bcb.uuc.ac.za
www.beeld.com
www.bizcommunity.com
www.blindsa.org.za
www.bluemagnet.co.za
www.bondexchange.co.za
www.bookslive.co.za
www.brandsouthafrica.com
www.brassicastoday.com
www.bullion.org.za
www.businessday.co.za
www.butterflyworld.co.za
www.bwi.co.za

www.capeaction.org.za
www.capegateway.gov.za
www.capehoneybushtea.co.za
www.capenature.co.za
www.capetourism.org
www.cape-town.net
www.capetown.gov.za
www.capetownbookfair.com
www.cbd.int
www.cbe.org.za
www.cbrta.co.za
www.cdpsp.mil.za
www.cef.org.za
www.centralkaroo.co.za
www.cesa.org.za
www.channel24.com
www.cheetah.co.za
www.childline.org.za
www.cites.org
www.clarens.co.za
www.constitutionallyspeaking.co.za
www.collectacan.co.za
www.cpsi.co.za
www.cr/commission.org.za
www.createsa.org.za
www.csir.co.za

www.daff.gov.za
www.dbe.gov.za
www.dcs.gov.za
www.deloitteblog.co.za
www.designindaba.com
www.dfa.gov.za
www.dfac.mil.za
www.dhs.gov.za
www.dla.gov.za
www.dmma.co.za
www.doc.gov.za
www.dod.mil.za
www.doorway.co.za
www.dpe.gov.za
www.dplg.gov.za
www.dpsa.gov.za
www.drak.co.za
www.drugaware.co.za
www.drugfreesport.co.za
www.dsd.gov.za
www.dst.gov.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.dwa.gov.za

www.ecdc.co.za
www.ectourism.co.za
www.education.gov.za
www.ekapa.ioisa.org.za
www.enatis.com
www.energy.gov.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.epnetwork.co.za
www.epwp.gov.za
www.eskom.co.za
www.etv.co.za
www.eumunicipaloutreach.org.za
www.ewn.co.za
www.explore.co.za

www.ffc.co.za
www.fin24.com
www.finweek.com
www.fm.co.za
www.freestatebusiness.co.za
www.freestateprovince.co.za
www.freshplaza.com
www.fsb.co.za
www.fxi.org.za

www.gauteng.net
www.gautengfilm.co.za

www.gautengonline.gov.za
www.gautrain.co.za
www.gcis.gov.za
www.gdace.gpg.gov.za
www.geda.co.za
www.genderlinks.org.za
www.geoscience.org.za
www.giraffehouse.co.za
www.globaldialogue.info
www.godisa.net
www.goldfacts.org
www.google.com
www.gostudy.mobi
www.gov.za
www.guardian.co.uk

www.hartrao.ac.za
www.hasa.co.za
www.health24.com
www.hesa.org.za
www.hlls.ac.za

www.icasa.org.za
www.idasa.org.za
www.idc.co.za
www.imc.org.za
www.imo.org
www.implatz.co.za
www.indaba-southafrica.co.za
www.info.gov.za
www.intelligence.gov.za
www.inw.org.za
www.iol.co.za
www.iol.co.za/mercury
www.irbkeeprugbyclean.com
www.iss.co.za
www.itac.org.za
www.itweb.co.za
www.iwmf.org

www.jhbzoo.org.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.jse.co.za
www.justice.gov.za

www.komatilandforests.co.za
www.kzn.org.za
www.kzntransport.gov.za

www.landbank.co.za
www.labourguide.co.za
www.labour.gov.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.lebonheurcrocfarm.co.za
www.liasa.org.za
www.lionrescue.org.za
www.litnet.co.za
www.lovelife.org.za
www.media24.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mediaonline.co.za
www.mediaclub.com
www.meetingsafrica.co.za
www.mfsa.co.za
www.mg.co.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.mintek.co.za
www.monkeys.co.za
www.mpumalanga.com
www.mpumalangacompanies.co.za
www.mpumalangainfotourism.info
www.mrc.ac.za
www.mtn.co.za
www.mtn-sama.co.za
www.multichoice.co.za
www.murrob.com
www.mybroadband.co.za
www.myfundi.co.za

www.nac.org.za
www.naci.org.za
www.national.archives.gov.za
www.nbi.org.za
www.nda.agric.za
www.nelsonmandelamuseum.org.za
www.nelsonmandela.org
www.netball-sa.co.za
www.news24.co.za
www.nia.gov.za
www.nlb.org.za
www.nlsa.ac.za
www.nrf.ac.za
www.northerncape.org.za
www.northerncapebusiness.co.za

www.opa.co.za
www.orbicom.co.za

www.pansalb.org.za
www.peaceparks.org
www.petrosa.co.za
www.pic.gov.za
www.pilanesbergnationalpark.org

www.places.co.za
www.plantzafrica.com
www.pmg.org.za
www.projectsiq.co.za
www.politicsweb.co.za
www.polity.org
www.polokwane.org.za
www.ports.co.za

www.prasa.com
www.propertyscene.co.za
www.publicprotector.org

www.raf.co.za
www.researchchannel.co.za
www.responsiblegambling.co.za
www.reuters.com
www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za
www.risa.org.za
www.rsr.org.za
www.ru.ac.za

www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saa.co.za
www.saaa.gov.za
www.saao.ac.za
www.saarf.co.za
www.sabcnews.com
www.sabinetlaw.co.za
www.sabs.co.za
www.sacanegrowers.co.za
www.sacc.org.za
www.sacu.int
www.safcol.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sahistory.org.za
www.sahra.org.za
www.sahoneybush.co.za
www.saimm.co.za
www.saitnews.co.za
www.salb.org.za
www.salga.net
www.samsa.org.za
www.samint.co.za
www.sanbi.org.za
www.sanef.org.za
www.saneri.org.za
www.sanews.gov.za
www.sanifaa.org.za
www.sanparks.co.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.sapfa.org.za
www.sapo.co.za
www.sanral.co.za
www.sarooibos.org.za
www.sars.gov.za
www.sasa.co.za
www.sasdi.co.za
www.sasol.co.za
www.sasportsawards.com
www.sass.gov.za
www.sassa.gov.za
www.sati-web.za
www.sa-venues.com
www.sawis.co.za
www.secdef.mil.za
www.sentech.co.za
www.servconhousing.co.za
www.shine2010.co.za
www.skep.org.za
www.soulcity.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.southafricandams.co.za
www.soweto.co.za
www.speedo.co.za
www.spier.co.za
www.spoornet.co.za
www.sport24.com
www.srsa.gov.za
www.stelmus.co.za
www.supersoccer.cp.za
www.supersport.com.
www.superswimmer.co.za
www.sustainabledevelopment.un.org
www.swazihighcom.co.za

www.telkom.co.za
www.tep.co.za
www.thedplg.gov.za
www.thegremlin.co.za
www.thehda.co.za
www.theinnovationhub.com
www.thenewage.co.za
www.thepresidency.gov.za
www.theworx.biz
www.thinksport.co.za
www.timeslive.co.za
www.tonight.co.za
www.tourismboard.org.za
www.tourismgrading.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.tradeinvestsa.co.za
www.transnet.co.za
www.transport.gov.za
www.tlabs.ac.za
www.travel.iafrica.com
www.travelwires.com
www.trees.co.za

www.ucmp.berkeley.edu
www.umdloti.org
www.umalusi.org.za
www.un.org

www.visitmosselbay.co.za
www.visit-south-africa.co.za
www.vodacom.co.za
www.voortrekkermuseum.co.za

www.weathersa.co.za
www.wheretostay.co.za
www.wikipedia.org
www.wwf.org.za
www.yeboweb.co.za
www.zetler.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Combined reading list

The land and its people

Brink, A & Bank, LJ. 2013. *Inside African anthropology: Monica Wilson and her interpreters.* New York: Cambridge University Press.
Busch, B, Busch, L & Press, K. [2014]. *Interviews with Neville Alexander: the power of languages against the language of power.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Chidester, D. 2014. *Religions of South Africa.* Routledge.
Clingman, S. 2013. *Bram Fischer: Afrikaner revolutionary.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Coetzee, C. 2013. *Accented futures: language activism and the ending of apartheid.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
De Jongh, M. 2012. *Roots and routes: the Karretjie people of the Great Karoo. The marginalisation of a South African first people.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Du Plessis, J & Lubbe,G (eds). 2013. *A man of principle: the life and legacy of JC de Wet.* Claremont: Juta.
Kuljian, C. 2013. *Sanctuary: how an inner-city church spilled onto a sidewalk.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Tishken, JE. 2013. *Isaiah Shembe's prophetic uhlanga: the worldview of the Nazareth Baptist Church in colonial South Africa.* New York: Peter Lang.
Zeilig, L. 2013. *Steve Biko.* Pretoria: HSRC Press.

History

Alexander, N. 2013. *Thoughts on the new South Africa.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Crais, C & McClendon, TV. 2014. *The South Africa reader: history, culture, politics.* Durham: Duke University Press.
Dikderm, S & Hlope, H. 2013. *The unauthorised history of South Africa.* Cape Town: Zebra.
Eckel, J & Moyn, S (eds). 2014. *The breakthrough: human rights in the 1970s.* Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
Fraser, S. 2014. *South Africa.* Random Struik.
A History of South Africa from the distant past to the present day. 2013. Pretoria: Protea Boekehuis.
Jansen, JD, Nyamnjoh, F, Pillay, U & Hagg, G (eds). 2013. *State of the nation: South Africa 2012-2013.* Pretoria: HSRC Press.
Klotz, A. 2013. *Migration and national identity in South Africa, 1860-2010.* New York: Cambridge University Press.
Noonan, SS. 2013. *South Africa.* Philadelphia: Mason Crest Pub.
Saul, JS & Bond, P. 2014. *South Africa – the present as history from Mrs Ples to Mandela and Marikana.* James Curry Ltd.

Agriculture, forestry and fisheries

Beinart, W & Brown, K. 2013. *African local knowledge and livestock health: diseases and treatments in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Bredenkamp, BV & Upfold, S. 2012. *South African forestry handbook.* 5th ed. Menlopark: Southern African Institute of Forestry.
Duncan, G, Brown, N & Nurrish, L. 2013. *Grow proteas.* Cape Town: South African National Biodiversity Institute.
Faber, M. 2013. *A crop-based approach to address vitamin A deficiency in South Africa.* Pretoria: ARC-Roodeplaat.
Hebinck, P & Cousins, B (eds). 2013. *In the shadow of policy: everyday practices in South Africa's land and agrarian reform.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Kamenetsky, R & Okubo, H. 2013. *Ornamental geophytes: from basic science to sustainable production.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
Pittock, J. 2014. *Water, food and agricultural sustainability in southern Africa.* [S.l.]: Tilde University Press.
South African forestry handbook 2012. 2012. Pretoria: Southern African Institute of Forestry.
South African wine industry directory 2012/13: facts, figures,regulations, wineries, suppliers, contact details. 2012. Paarl: Wineland Publications.
Van der Waal, K (CS). 2014. *Winelands, wealth and work: transformations in the Dwars Valley, Stellenbosch.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Arts and culture

Brown, R. 2013. *A native of nowhere: the life of Nat Nakasa.* Jacana Media.
Gorelik, B. 2013. *Incredible Tretchikoff.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Kirby, PR. 2013. *Musical instruments of the native people of South Africa.* 4th ed. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Lewis-Williams, JD. 2013. *San rock art.* Athens: Ohio University Press.
Martin, D-C. 2013. *Sounding the Cape: music, identity and politics in South Africa.* [Stellenbosch]: African Minds.

Murray, B. 2013. *Brett Murray*. Jacana Media.
Nel, J. 2013. *Braai the beloved country.* Jacana Media.
Niehaus, IA. 2013. *Witchcraft and a life in the new South Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Schmahmann, B. 2013. *Art and visual culture at universities in post-apartheid South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Schmahmann, B. 2013. *Picturing change: art and visual culture of universities in post-apartheid South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Communications

Chan-Meetoo, C (ed). 2013. *Media ethics and regulation: insights from Africa.* Mankon, Cameroon: Langaa Research and Publishing CIG.
Limb, P (ed). 2012. *The people's paper: a centenary history and anthology of Abantu-Batho.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Litheko, M. 2013. *South Africa's renegade reels: the making and public lives of black-centered films.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Maggs, J. 2012. *The Annual 2011/12: advertising, media, marketing and branding.* Rivonia: Future Publishing.
Moyo, D & Chuma, W (eds). 2012. *Media policy in a changing South Africa: critical reflections on media reforms in the global age.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Oosthuizen, L. 2014. *Media ethics in the South African context.* Cape Town: Juta.
Papadopoulos, S & Snail, S. 2012. *Cyberlaw @ SA III: the law of the Internet in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Pitchford, J. 2013. *Carte Blanche: the stories behind the stories.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball Pub.
Tager, M & Chasi, C. 2013. *Perspective son television in South Africa.* Pearson.
Wasserman, H (ed). 2013. *Press freedom in Africa: comparative perspectives.* London: Routledge.

Economy

Choma, H & Raligilia, KH. 2013. *The Contract of Employment in South Africa.* Saarbrücken: LAP Lambert Academic Pub.
Corby, S. 2014. *Adjudicating employment rights: a cross-national approach.* [S.l.]: Palgrave Macmillan.
Langford, M. 2013. *Socio-economic rights in South Africa: symbols or substance?* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Nieman, F & Nieuwenhuizen, C (eds). 2014. *Entrepreneurship: a South African perspective.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Roux, A. 2014. *Everyone's guide to the South African economy.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
The South African business forecast report: includes 10-year forecasts to end-2018. London: Business Monitor.
Stelzner, S. 2013. *Labour and employment compliance in South Africa.* Alphen aan den Rijn: Wolters Kluwer Law & Business.
Swanepoel, BJ, Erasmus, BJ & Schenk, HW. 2014. *South African human resource development: theory and practice.* 5th ed. Cape Town: Juta.
Tshitereke, C. 2013. *The experience of economic redistribution: the growth, employment and redistribution strategy in South Africa.* London: Routledge.
Van Heerden, CH. 2013. *Contemporary retail and marketing cases.* Cape Town: Juta.

Education

Harber, C (ed). 2013. *Education in Southern Africa.* London: Bloomsbury Academic.
Healy-Clancy, M. 2013. *A world of their own: a history of South African women's education.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Hibbert, L & Van der Walt, C (eds). 2014. *Multilingual universities in South Africa: reflecting society in higher education.* Multilingual Matters.
Higgins, J. 2013. *Academic freedom in a democratic South Africa: essays and interviews on higher education and the humanities.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Motala, S, Dieltiens, V & Sayed, Y (eds). 2013. *Finding place and keeping space: exploring meaningful and equitable learning in South African schools.* Pretoria: HSRC Press.
Nel, M (ed). 2014. *Life orientation for South African teachers.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Sayed, Y, Kanjee, A & Nkomo, M (eds). 2013. *The search for quality education in post-apartheid South Africa: interventions to improve learning and teaching.* Pretoria: HSRC Press.
Smit, MH (ed). 2013. *Fundamentals of human rights and democracy in education: a South African perspective.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Van Rooyen, JW (ed). 2013. *Financial management in education in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Viewpoints: the University of Cape Town and its treasures. 2013. Claremont: UCT Press.

Energy

Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate change, carbon trading and civil society: negative returns on South African investments.* 2nd ed. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Broughton, EK. 2011. *A framework for coherent decision-making in environmental impact assessments in the energy sector of South Africa.*
Energy efficiency made simple. 2008. Bedfordview: Crown Publications.

Scoping study on water use of crops/trees for biofuels in South Africa: report to the Water Research Commission. Gezina: Water Research Commission. (WRC)
Swartz, CD. [n.d.]. *Energy efficiency in the South African water industry: a compendium of best practices and case studies: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.
Water conservation through energy conservation. 2007. Gezina: WRC.
Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner energy, cooler climate: developing sustainable energy solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Environmental affairs

Alves, RN & Rosa, L (eds). 2013. *Animals in traditional folk medicine: implications for conservation.* Heidelberg: Springer.
Carnaby, T. 2013. *Beat about the bush: updated and revised. Mammals and birds.* Jacana Media.
Checklist of birds in southern Africa: cross-referenced to Sasol birds of southern Africa. 2013. [Johannesburg]: BirdLife South Africa.
Fourie, PF. 2014. *Kruger National Park questions and answers.* Random Struik.
Green, L (ed). 2013. *Contested ecologies: dialogues in the south on nature and knowledge.* Pretoria: Human Sciences Research commission (HSRC) Press.
Haschick, A. 2014. *Coastal gardening in South Africa.* Random Struik.
Linscott, G. 2013. *Into the river of life: a biography of Ian Player.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball Pub.
Raimondo, D, Grieve, K, Helme, N, Koopman, R & Ebrahim, I (eds). *Plants in peril.* Pretoria: South African National Biodiversity Institute.
South African National Biodiversity Institute. 2013. *Life: the state of South Africa's biodiversity 2012.* Pretoria: SANBI.
Victor, JE, Hamer, M & Smith, GF. 2013. *A biosystematics research strategy for the algae, animals, plants, bacteria and archaea, fungi and plants of South Africa 2013-2018.* Pretoria: South African National Biodiversity Institute.
Walker, C & Walker, A. 2012. *The rhino keepers: struggle for survival.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Finance

Croome, B, Oguttu, A, Muller, E, Legwaila, T, Kolitz, M, Williams, RC & Louw, C. 2013. *Tax Law: an introduction.* Cape Town: Juta.
Haupt, P. 2014. *Notes on South-African income tax.*
Hull, G & Gibson, C. 2012. *The VAT Handbook.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Mahadea, D & Van Zyl, J (eds). 2012. *Entrepreneurship and small business management.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Mitchell, K & Mitchell, L. 2014. *Graded questions on income tax in South Africa, 2014.* 35th ed. Durban: LexisNexis.
Moeti, K, Kafunisa, J, Nsingo, S & Makonda, T. 2014. *Public finance fundamentals.* 2nd ed. Cape Town: Juta.
Roeleveld, J, Warneke, D & West, C. 2014. *Questions on South African tax.* 15th ed. Cape Town: Juta
Stiglingh, M, [et al]. 2013. *Silke: South African income tax 2014.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Swart, N. 2012. *Personal financial management: the southern African guide to personal financial planning.* Claremont: Juta.
Van Wyk, K, Botha, Z & Goodspeed, I. 2012. *Understanding South African financial markets.* 4th ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Government systems

Calland, R. 2013. *The Zuma years: South Africa's changing face of power.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Daniel, J, Naidoo, P, Pillay, D & Southall, R (eds). 2013. *New South African review 3: the second phase – tragedy or farce?* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Du Preez, M. 2013. *A rumour of spring: South Africa after 20 years of democracy.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Mahele, P & Qobo, M. 2014. *The fall of the ANC: what next?* Johannesburg: Picador Africa.
Mandela, N. 2013. *Long walk to freedom: the autobiography of Nelson Mandela.* London: Abacus.
Parson, R. 2013. *Zumanomics revisited: the road from Manguang to 2030.* Jacana Media.
South African Democracy Education Trust (SADET). 2013. *The road to democracy in South Africa, Volume 6, Part 1.* Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press.
Thornhill, C & Cloete, JJN. 2014. *South African municipal government and administration.* Pretoria: Van Schaik Academic Publishers.
Wessels, JS, Pauw, JC & Thani, XC (eds). 2014. *Reflective public administration: context, knowledge and methods.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Wessels, JS, Pauw, JC & Thani, XC (eds). 2014. *Reflective public administration: ethics.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Health

Bala, P. 2014. *Medicine and colonialism: historical perspectives in India and South Africa.* London: Pickering & Chato.
Foxcroft, C & Roodt, G (eds). 2013. *Introduction to psychological assessment in the South African context.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
Horwitz, S. 2013. *Baragwanath Hospital, Soweto. A history of medical care 1941-1990.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Jones, TF. 2012. *Psychiatry, mental institutions, and the mad in apartheid South Africa.* Routledge.
Lagardien, A. 2013. *Applicability of community-led total sanitation in South Africa: a case-study experience of opportunities and challenges: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.
Laher, S & Cockcroft, K (eds). 2013. *Psychological assessment in South Africa : research and applications.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Mbali, M. 2013. *South African AIDS activism and global health policies.* Palgrave Macmillan.
Noble, V. 2013. *A school of struggle: Durban's Medical School and the education of black doctors in South Africa.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Vasuthevan, S & Mthembu, S. 2013. *De Haan's health of Southern Africa.* 10th ed. Claremont: Juta.
Wissing, MP (ed). 2013. *Well-being research in South Africa.* Dordrecht: Springer.

Human settlements

Alexander, P. 2013. *Class in Soweto.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Birnbaum, J & Fox, L. 2014. *Sustainable revolution: permaculture in ecovillages, urban farms, and communities worldwide.* Berkeley, Calif: North Atlantic Books.
Desai, A & Vahed, G (eds). 2013. *Chatsworth: the making of a South African township.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Hlongwane, P. 2013. *Jozi.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Kihato, CW. 2013. *Migrant women of Johannesburg: life in an in-between city.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Komnick, G. 2013. *Cape Town memories of the '60s.* Cape Town: Günther Komnick Studio.
Kruger, L. 2013. *Imagining the edge city: writing, performing, and building Johannesburg.* Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Malcomess, B & Kreutzfeldt, D. 2013. *Not no place: Johannesburg, fragments of spaces and times.* Auckland Park: Fanele.
Retief, H & Hammond, M. 2014. *Orania.* Umuzi.
Thelen, D & Morgan, KL. 2013. *Experiencing Sophiatown: conversations among residents about the past, present and future of a community.* Auckland Park: Fanele.

International relations and cooperation

Derman, B & Kaarhus, R (eds). 2013. *In the shadow of conflict: crisis in Zimbabwe and its effects in Mozambique, South Africa and Zambia.* Harare: Weaver press.
Filatova, II & Davidson, A. 2013. *The hidden thread: Russia and South Africa in the Soviet era.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Gleijeses, P. 2013. *Visions of freedom: Havana, Washington, Pretoria and the struggle for South Africa, 1976-1991.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
International Conference on "Gold Dust and Galaxy Morphology" (1996:Johannesburg). 2013. *New extragalactic perspectives in the new South Africa: proceedings of the conference.* Edited by DL Block, JM Greenberg. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publ.
Macmillan, H. 2013. *The Lusaka years 1963 to 1994: the ANC in exile in Zambia.* Jacana Media.
Martin, WG. 2013. *South Africa and the world economy: remaking race, state, and region.* Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press.
Murithi, T (ed). 2014. *Handbook of Africa's international relations.* London: Routledge.
Nombulelo, G, Mthuli, N & Eliphas, N. 2013. *How are the US financial shocks transmitted into South Africa?* Lambert Academic Publishing.
Owens, SC (ed). 2013. *Brazil, Russia, India, China, and South Africa: investment climates.* New York: Novinka.
Siko, J. 2014. *Inside South Africa's foreign policy: diplomacy in Africa from Smuts to Mbeki.* Taurus & Co Ltd.

Justice and correctional services

Bellengère, A. 2013. *The law of evidence in South Africa: basic principles: procedural law.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
Bezuidenhout, C (ed). 2013. *Child and youth misbehaviour in South Africa: a holistic approach.* 3rd ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Bosman-Sadie, H & Corrie, L. 2013. *A practical approach to the Children's Act.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Claassens, A & Smythe, D. 2013. *Marriage land and custom: essays on law and social change in South Africa.* Claremont: Juta.
Hoctor, SV. 2013. *Criminal law in South Africa.* Alphen aan den Rijn: Wolters Kluwer Law & Business.
Mubangizi, JC. 2013. *The protection of human rights in South Africa: a legal and practical guide.* Lansdowne: Juta.
Rai, S. 2013. *Law relating to protection of women from domestic violence.* New Delhi: Orient Publishing Company.
Scott, H. 2013. *Unjust enrichment in South African law: rethinking enrichment by transfer.* Hart Publishing.
South Africa. 2013. *The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa: 1996.* 12th ed. Edited by Juta's statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta Law.
Wolhuter, L, Olley, N, Denham, D, Bezuidenhout, C & Hargovan, H. 2014. *Crime and criminology in South Africa.* Abington: Routledge.

Mineral resources

Alexander, P. 2013. *Marikana: voices from South Africa's mining massacre.* Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.
Davenport, J. 2013. *Digging deep: a history of mining in South Africa, 1852-2002.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Frankel, PH. 2013. *Between the rainbows and the rain: Marikana, migration, mining and the crisis of modern South Africa.* Johannesburg: Agency for Social Reconstruction.
Gibson, R. 2012. *Battlefields of gold: how Gold Fields fought for survival and won.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Jika, T. 2013. *We are going to kill each other today: the Marikana story.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Lurie, J. 2013. *South African geology: for mining, metallurgical, hydrological, and civil engineering.* Lupon Pub.
McCulloch, J. 2013. *South Africa's gold mines & the politics of silicosis.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Ndlovu, PF. 2012. *Diamond law: change, trade and policy in context.* Cape Town: Juta.

Police, defence and intelligence

Cartwright, J. 2012. *Where's the chicken? Making South Africa safe.* Kenilworth: Mercury.
Couzins, T. 2013. *South African battles.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Els, PJ. 2012. *Chronicles of "The Heights".* Pretoria: PelsA Books.
Els, PJ. 2012. *We fear naught but God: The story of the South African Special Forces – "The Recces".* Pretoria. PelsA Books.
Grobler, L. 2013. *Crossing the line: when cops become criminals.* Auckland park: Jacana Media.
Montesh, M & Basdeo, V. 2012. *Police reform in the new democratic South Africa.* Routledge.
Scholtz, L. 2013. *The SADF in the Border War: 1966-1989.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Von der Heyde, N. 2013. *Field guide to the battlefields of South Africa.* Cape Town: Struik.
Vrey, F, Esterhuyse, A & Mandrup, T. 2013. *On military culture: theory, practice and African armed forces.* Claremont: UCT Press.
Wiener, M. 2012. *Killing Kebble: an underworld exposed.* Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan South Africa.
Williams, D. 2012. *Springboks, troepies and cadres: stories of the South African Army, 1912-2012.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.

Rural development and land reform

Aliber, M, Maluleke, T, Manenzhe, T, Paradza, G & Cousins, B. 2013. *Land reform and livelihoods: trajectories of change in northern Limpopo Province, South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Betge, D. 2013. *The policies of land reform in South Africa: an analysis of actors and institutions based on four case studies.* Münster, Germany: Edition Forschung.
Cavanagh, E. 2013. *Settler colonialism and land rights in South Africa: possession and dispossession on the Orange River.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Changuion, L & Steenkamp, B. 2012. *Disputed land: the historical development of the South African land issue, 1652-2011.* Pretoria: Protea Boekhuis.
Hebinck, P & Cousins, B (eds). 2013. *In the shadow of policy: everyday practices in South African land and agrarian reform.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Hendricks, FT, Ntsebeza, L & Helliker, K (eds). 2013. *The promise of land: undoing a century of dispossession in South Africa.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Kepe, T & Ntsebeza, L. 2012. *Rural resistance in South Africa: the Mpondo revolts after fifty years.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Land, memory, reconstruction, and justice: perspectives on land claims in South Africa. 2010. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.
Nelson, F (ed). 2010. *Community rights, conservation and contested land: the politics of natural resource governance in Africa.* London: Earthscan.
Setumu, T. 2011. *His story is history: rural village future through the eyes of a rural village boy.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Science and technology

Hughes, C. 2012. *Flowers in the sky: a celebration of Southern African starlore.* Somerset West: C Hughes.
James, W. 2010. *Nature's gifts: why we are the way we are.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Landman, K, Hunter, T & Jackson, J. 2012. *An introduction to engineering surveying.* Cape Town: Juta.
Legislation and policy affecting the development, protection, management and exploitation of intellectual property in South Africa. 2009. Compiled by Spoor and Fisher under the guidance of C Bull et al. Pretoria: Southern African Research and Innovation Management Association.
Panday, S. 2010. *Environmental education and its relationship to science education: educating for sustainable living in a South African context.* Saarbrücken: LAP Academic Lambert Pub.
Southern African steel construction handbook. 2010. Johannesburg: South African Institution of Steel Construction.
Van Rooyen, H & De Beer, J (eds). 2010. *Teaching science.* Braamfontein: Macmillan.
Verhoef, G. [et al]. 2009. *Systems and support mechanisms for developing, protecting, managing and exploiting intellectual property in South Africa.* Pretoria: Southern African Research and Innovation Management Association.

Social development

Biko, H. 2013. *The great African society: a plan for a nation gone astray.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball Pub.
Engler, H. 2013. *Marrying black girls for guys who aren't black.* Jacana Media.
Hansen, TB. 2013. *Melancholia of freedom: social life in an Indian township in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Ijeoma, EO, Nzewi, O & Sibanda, M. 2013. *South Africa's public administration for community service* [S.l.]: Independent Service Delivery Monitoring Networks (ISDMN) SA in association with School of Public Administration, University of Fort Hare.
Lubbe-De Beer, C & Marnell, J (eds). 2013. *Home affairs: rethinking lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender families in contemporary South Africa.* Jacana Media.
Smith, C, Lobban, G & O'Loughlin, M (eds). 2013. *Psychodynamic psychotherapy in South Africa: contexts, theories and applications.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Stevens, G, Duncan, N & Hook, D (eds). 2013. *Race, memory and the apartheid archive: towards a psychosocial praxis.* Johannesburg : Wits University Press.
Stewart, P & Zaaiman, J (eds). 2014. *Sociology: a South African introduction.* Cape Town: Juta.
Stoffberg, H, Hindes, C & Muller, L (comp). 2012. *South African landscape architecture: a compendium.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Visser, M & Moleko, AG. 2012. *Community psychology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Sport and recreation

Alegi, P. 2013. *Africa's World Cup: critical reflections on play, patriotism, spectatorship and space.* University of Michigan Press.
Alegi, P & Bolsmann, C. 2012. Routledge.
Odendaal, A, Reddy, K & Samson, A. 2012. *The blue book: a history of Western Province cricket, 1890-2011.* Auckland Park: Fanele.
Sport and Recreation South Africa. 2011. *Strategic plan, 2011-2015.* Pretoria.
Sport versus art: a South African contest. 2010. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Urquhart, C. 2013. *The kings of swing: behind the scenes with South Africa's golfing greats.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Van der Berg, W. 2012. *The extraordinary book of South African rugby.* Johannesburg: Penguin.
Van der Berg, W. 2013. *True to the Blue: 75 years of the Blue Bulls Rugby Union.* Pretoria: Lapa Publishers.
Van der Merwe, S & Smith, S. 2012. *Supervan and I: the memoir of SA's greatest driver & his alter ego.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Van Reenen, R. 2012. *From locker room to boardroom: converting rugby talent into business success.* Cape Town: Zebra press.

Tourism

Gordon-Davis, L & Cumberlege, P. 2013. *Legal requirements for hospitality businesses.* Cape Town: Juta.
Greenwood guide to South Africa: hand-picked accommodation. 4th ed. London: Greenwood Guides.
Hiscock, D. 2010. *Cape Town's man-made wonder: Table Mountain cableway, the first 80 years.* [Cape Town]: Table Mountain Aerial Cableway Co.
Muir, J. 2013. *Walking Cape Town: urban walks and drives in the Cape Peninsula.* Cape Town: Struik Travel & Heritage.
Saayman, M. 2013. *En route with tourism: an introductory text.* 4th ed. Cape Town: Juta.
South Africa. Department of Tourism. 2012. *Rural tourism strategy, April 2012.*
South Africa. National Department of Tourism. 2012. *Domestic tourism growth strategy, 2012-2020.*
Swanepoel, S. 2012. *Wine tourism handbook, South Africa: enjoying wine at the source.* World Focus Media.

Transport

Chart, S. 2013. *89 bags and counting: my long haul to OR Tambo International and the mystery of the pilfered baggage.* Jacana Media.
Gautrain for people on the move. 2010. Johannesburg: Gautrain Management Agency (GMA).
Gautrain Management Agency. 2010. Annual report 2010. Johannesburg: GMA.
Hloben, P. 2011. *Steam encounters: lingering whispers of the South African locomotive's story.* Johannesburg: Rexxon.
Ross, G. 2007. *The romance of Cape mountain passes.* Cape Town: New Africa Books.
South Africa. Department of Transport. [200-]. [e-resource]. *Moving South Africa: a transport strategy for 2010: report and strategy recommendations.*
Van der Merwe, J. 2011. *Agent-based transport demand modelling for the South African commuter environment.*
Van der Westhuizen, NJ. 2012. *The integration of railway conditioning monitoring technologies to establish continuous track asset management improvement.* Pretoria: [s.n.].
Van Wyk, L (ed). 2011. *The sustainable transport & mobility handbook: South Africa. Vol 2, The essential guide.* Cape Town: Alive2green.

Water affairs

Dippenaar, MA. 2013. *Hydrogeological overview: Pretoria's fountains: arteries of life.* [Pretoria]: WRC of South Africa.

Hosking, SG. 2013. *Trends in the insight into the growing South African municipal water service delivery problem: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Malherbe, J. [et al]. 2013. *Tropical systems from the southwest Indian Ocean into southern Africa: impacts, dynamics and projected changes: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Movik, S. 2012. *Fluid rights: water allocation reform in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Palmer, CG. 2013. *A preliminary examination of water quality compliance in a selected Lowveld river: towards implementation of the reserve: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Pouris, A. 2013. *A pulse study on the state of water research and development in South Africa: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Productive use of domestic piped water for sustaining livelihoods in poor households. [Gezina: WRC].

Swartz, CD. [n.d.]. *Energy efficiency in the South African water industry: a compendium of best practices and case studies: report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Van Wyk, JH. 2013. *Thyroid-disrupting activity in the South African aquatic environment: report to the Water Research Commission.* [Gezina]: WRC.